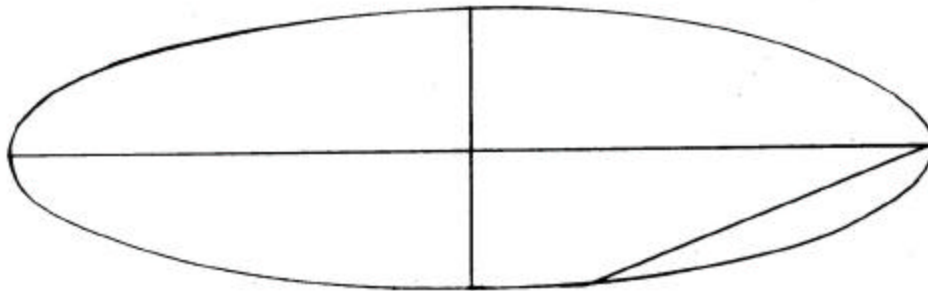


THE BAYER ELLIPSE MANUAL

**CONTAINING SELECTIONS FROM
THE COLLECTED WRITINGS OF
GEORGE BAYER
FOCUSING UPON ELLIPSES**



**RESEARCH MANUAL FOR
THE BAYER & GANN ELLIPSES**



SACRED SCIENCE LIBRARY

033

WWW.SACREDSCIENCE.COM

TABLE OF CONTENTS

**WE HAVE COLLECTED ALL REFERENCES TO ELLIPSES, GEOMETRY AND
ASTRONOMY FROM THE COLLECTED WORKS OF GEORGE BAYER.
EXCERPTS ARE TAKEN FROM THE FOLLOWING TITLES.**

SECTION 1: GEORGE WOLLSTEN: EXPERT STOCK & GRAIN TRADER.

**SECTION 2: STOCK & COMMODITY TRADERS HANDBOOK OF TREND
DETERMINATION**

**SECTION 3: “MONEY” INVESTING IN STOCKS, TRADING IN COMMODITIES,
OR THE TIME FACTORS IN THE STOCK MARKET.**

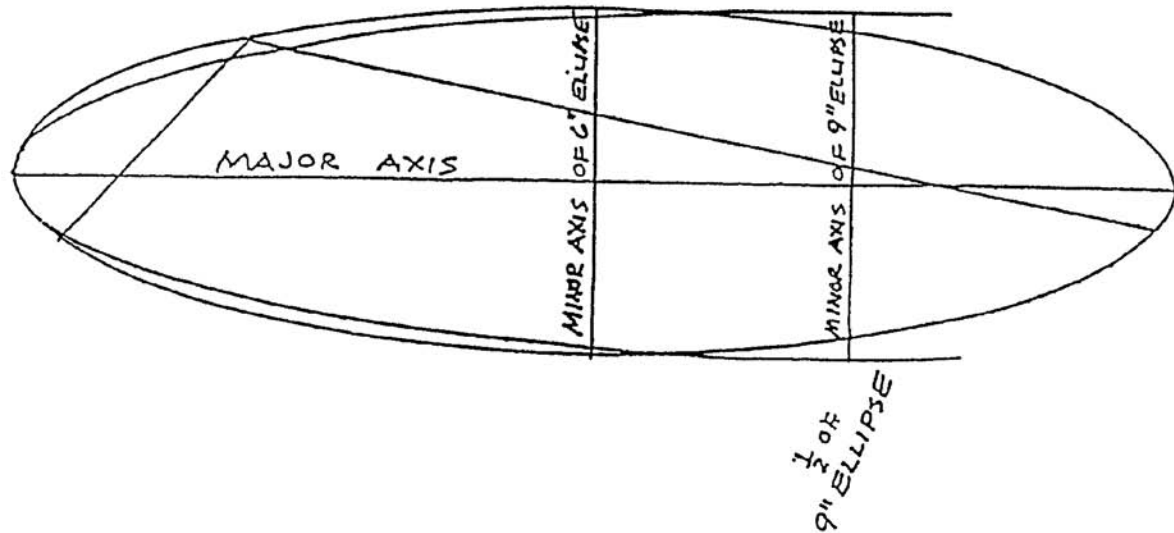
SECTION 4: BIBLE INTERPRETATION.

SECTION 5: TURNING 400 YEARS OF ASTROLOGY TO PRACTICAL USE.

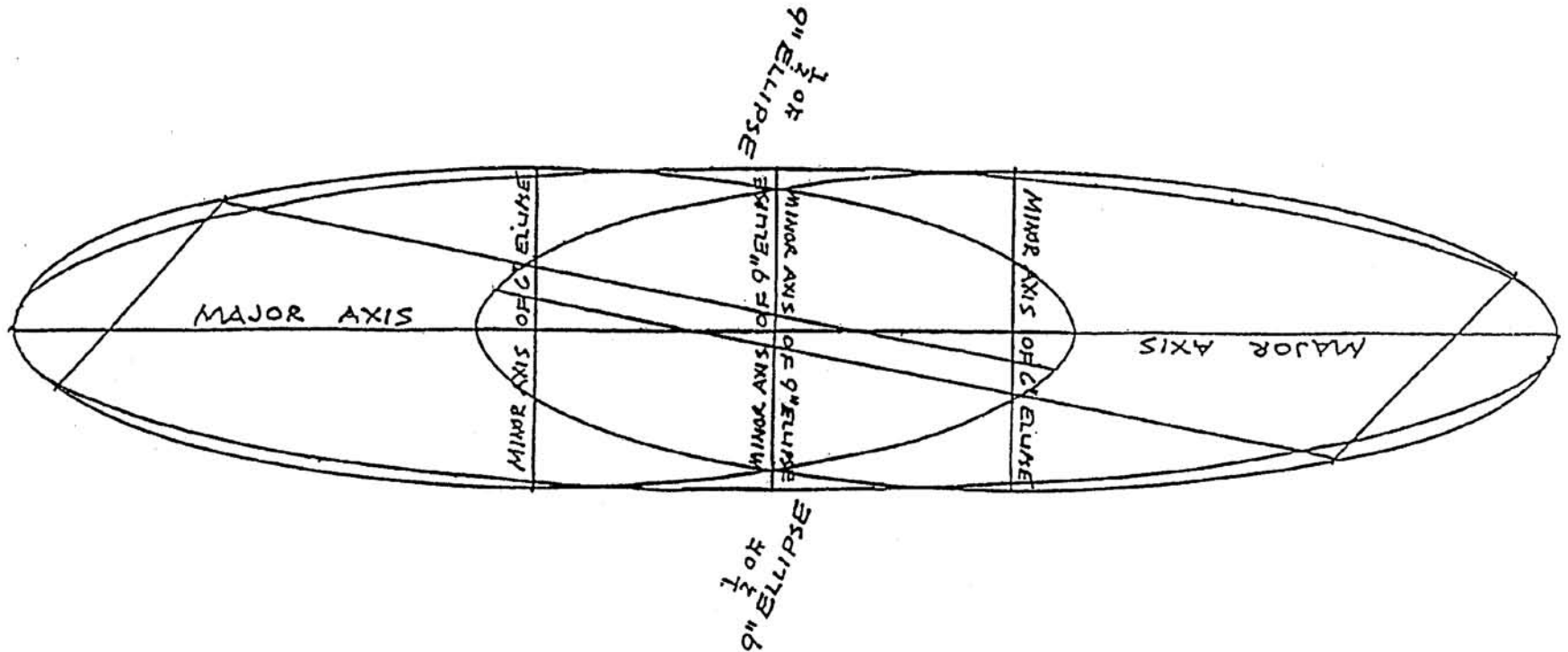
**SECTION 6: THE EGG OF COLUMBUS. THE HIDDEN MOVEMENTS IN
STOCKS & COMMODITIES MARKETS.**

SECTION 7: PREVIEWS OF THE MARKETS.

GEORGE BAYER'S 6 INCH ELLIPSE

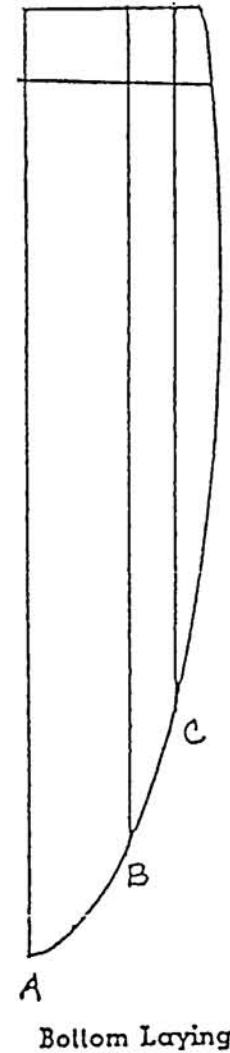
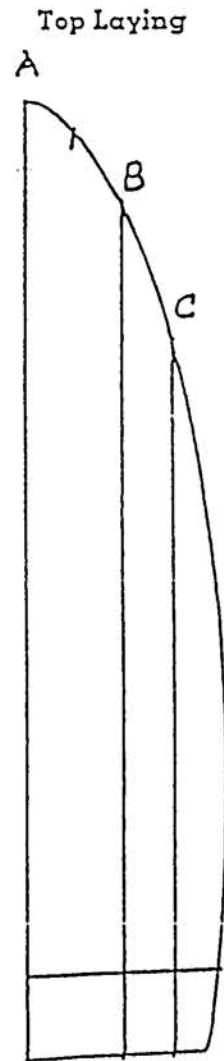


GEORGE BAYER'S
9 INCH ELLIPSE



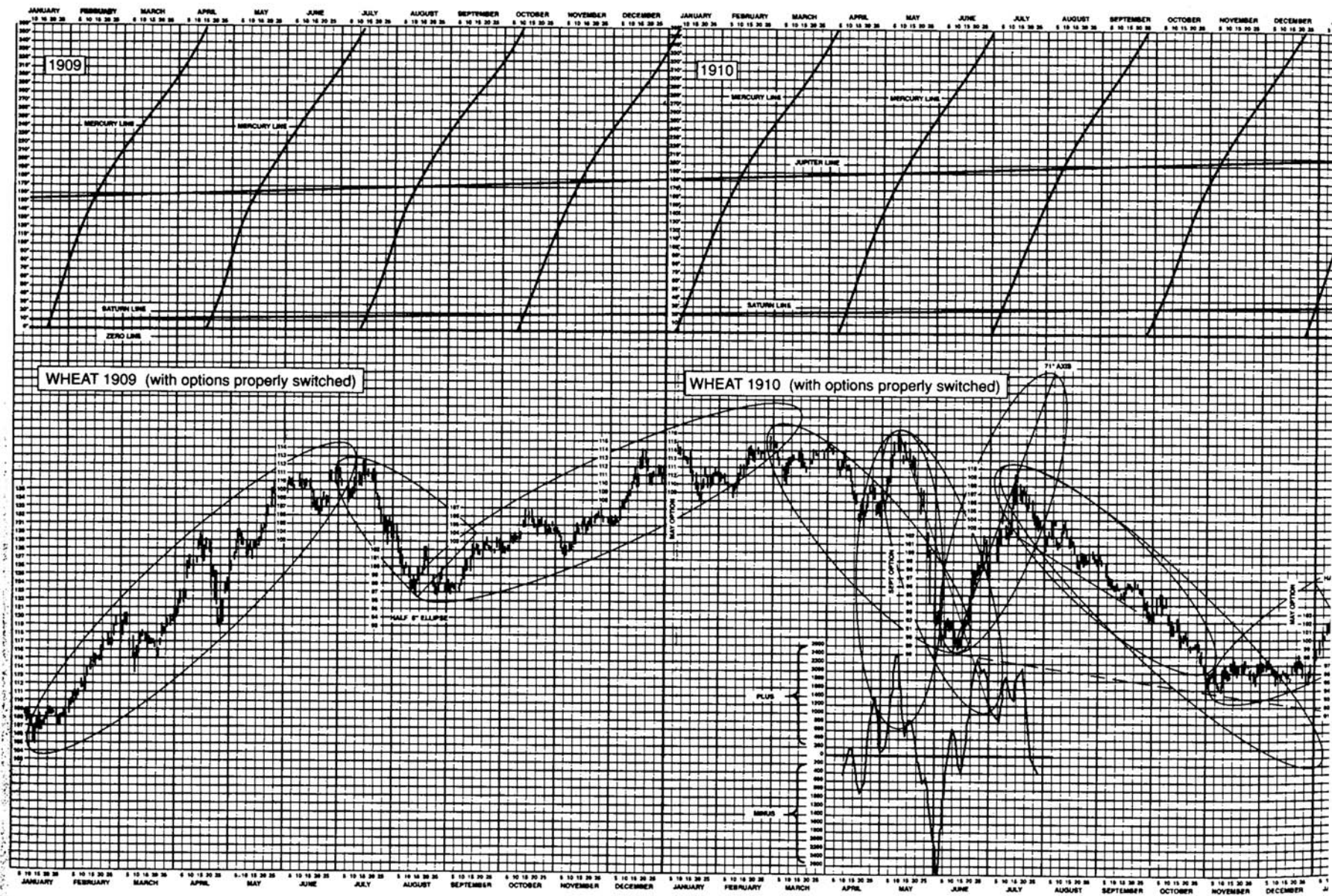
GEORGE BAYER'S

1/2 ELLIPSE



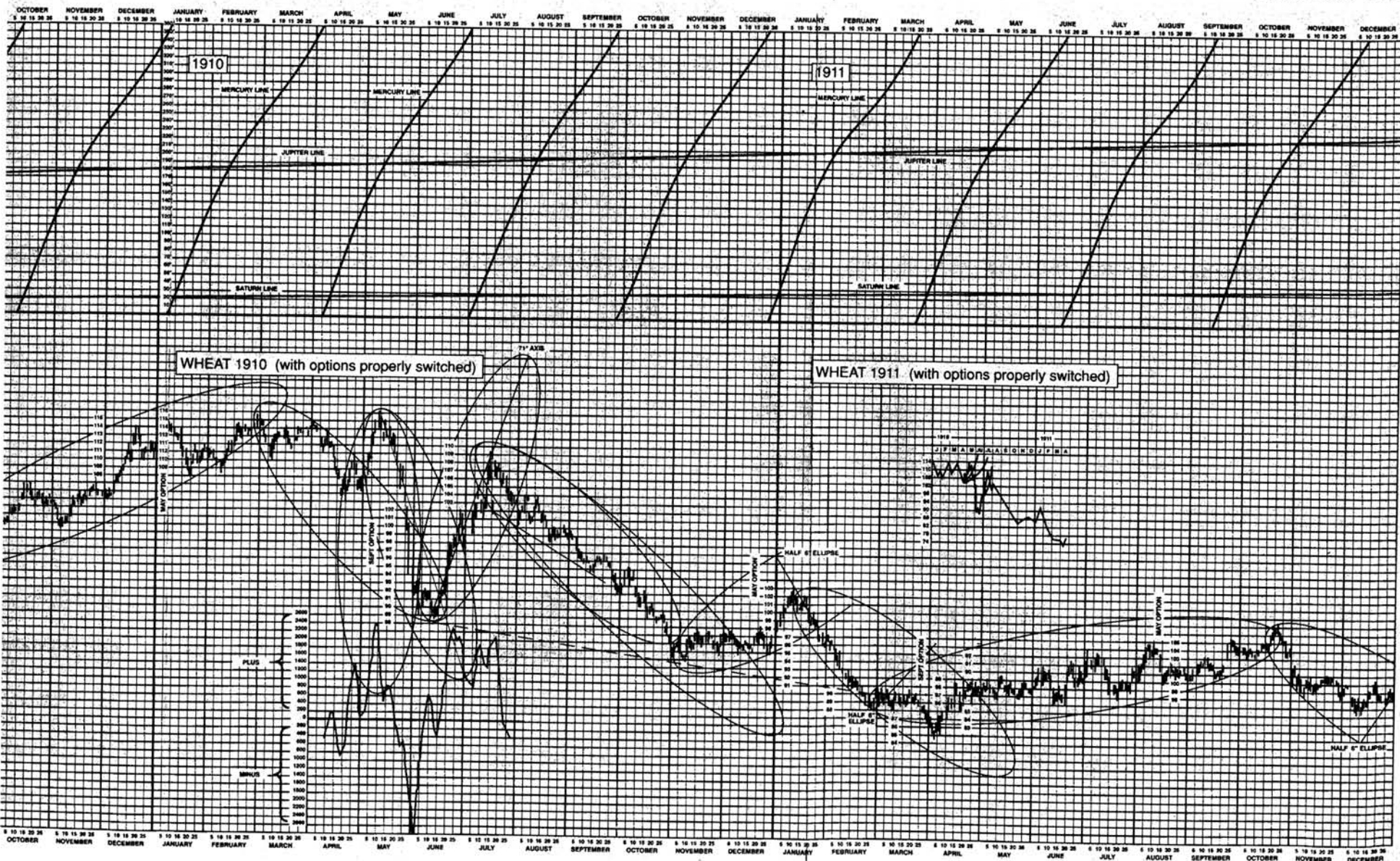
COPYRIGHT 2003
SACRED SCIENCE INSTITUTE

GEORGE BAYER WHEAT 1909-1911 CHART 1



GEORGE BAYER WHEAT 1909-1911 CHART 2

Wheat 1909-1911

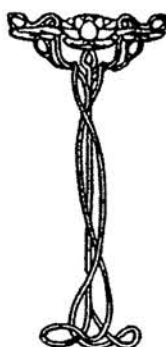


George Wollsten

EXPERT STOCK AND GRAIN TRADER

BY

George Bayer



1946
CARMEL-BY-THE-SEA
CALIFORNIA

SACRED SCIENCE INSTITUTE
WWW.SACREDSOURCE.COM

Illustrations

The Six-Inch Ellipse With Half of Nine-Inch Ellipse Inserted . . .	153
The "Polish Ellipse" Showing Bottom and Top Laying . . .	191
Original Pattern Used to Discover the Squaring of the Circle . . .	226
Short and Quick Construction to Square the Circle . . .	227
Wheat, Daily High and Low Range Charted for 1909-1911 . . .	

George Wollsten, the Expert Grain Trader

Cents: Pig's Knuckles, Liver & Onions." The place was not crowded. He found the place to be a bar. A long counter was full of assorted meats, salads, hot dishes also could be had as had been marked on the Black Board. He watched a moment to see how the affair had to be tackled. He noticed that everybody just helped himself. Sliced bread was found in masses in a basket. Customers made their own sandwiches and each had a mug of beer. To be sure he would not do anything wrong he asked the man behind the counter how much a meal would cost him. "Did you buy your beer?" asked the man. "When you have the beer, then help yourself to anything you want." "Then all eats are free around here?" asked George. "It says so on the Board outside," retorted the man. George was dumbfounded. "That's America for you," he thought, "generous in giving away food. How much profits must there be in this mug of beer for a nickel," he wondered.

In less than half an hour George was back at the ticker. His wheat had been up to 1.12 3/4. He saw it on the Board, but the last sale was 1.12 1/2. "I must not expect too much the first day" he said to himself "all good things take time. In fact, I shall go home and do some work now. That wheat will move all by itself. I have seen and learned enough to-day that was new to me and I need some time to digest this" he added. "I think I'll go home" he said to Mr. Mayer. "Shall I call you at the close? Glad to do it" said Mayer. "Thanks, don't bother. I'll see it in the paper" said George. "By the way," said Mr. Mayer, "will you fill out this card so that we may know where to address your mail. Our statistician has many times stocks that show a good advance and then he sends out letters to customers about them, besides, confirmations will be sent to you on all trades which you make, that's why" he concluded.

Half an hour later George was home. Overcoat and hat had disappeared in the closet. He laid down on the bed for a while thinking about the future. "The future seems to generate out

George Wollsten Goes to New York to Trade Stocks and Grains

of the past like a plant comes out of a seed. The seed disappears; after a while nobody thinks what has happened to it. They see only the plant or the tree that has grown out of it. Take those ancient Greek and Latin books, written nearly two or three thousand years ago. There could have been but one original written by one or several people. This was the seed. Two thousand years later copies of what had been written are still spread all over the world. Schools and scientists seriously study their contents to-day. The seed either has disappeared or is kept in a safe place in some Museum. It has grown a mental tree of enormous size. They must have known the time to put out seed," he thought. "Did they use a Jupiter crossing to start? or did they just sit down and write because they just wanted to write something?" George was very much interested in the past of things, especially in the past of grain prices. He could not work up too much enthusiasm for stocks. "I will work in them some other time" he would say, "because no man can serve two Lords. One thing after another. Two is company, but three is a crowd. Myself and wheat are two; the third has to wait. Multitude, of which much is spoken in books is apt to get me all mixed up," he concluded.

He had fallen asleep and all was dark when he awoke. His watch showed 5:15. It was not his habit to sleep during afternoons, but the excitements of this important day had been too much. Like the seed that is consigned into the ground before it would sprout, so he needed a little darkness and calm.

He washed up, went down to get the paper and had an early dinner at the same time. His wheat had gone up to 1.13 1/4 and closed at 1.12 7/8. He felt good when he returned to his room. On the way he met Mr. Holten in the lobby and had a few words with him, thanking him at the same time for introducing him to Mr. Muller, but made it rather short so as to get to work.

He wrote a long letter to Grete and Jim giving them in

George Wollsten, the Expert Grain Trader

detail of those events that would be of interest to them. About the market he told them very little. "They don't understand it anyhow, so why waste time and paper," he thought. He wrote Jim to send down the books as soon as they would arrive.

For two days George checked the average length of one of the swings in wheat, that is of a complete up move or of one downwards. He found that small swings in one direction last about 9 days. Just by that many days later his wheat had climbed to 1.14 1/2. There he sold out. The transaction gave him a hundred dollars profit after deducting the commission of the broker. This profit put him on easy street for a while. He wanted some more time to work out certain ideas that were more or less dark to him before he would make another trade. For a whole week he bothered little about the market except to plot the daily performance in his chart. He kept charts of several stocks, of the Dow-Jones averages, also of cotton and of the other grains. His room was a bed room, office and sitting room all at one time. It had a hot and cold shower attached which made it quite comfortable. George was all set for the time being. Grete or Jim would not disturb him any further. The farm, as nice as it was to live with them, was not close enough to the market. He knew he had to be closer. On the other hand, he thought that Mr. Mayer as well as the traders that stayed at the Board day in and day out from the time the market opened until its close, who watched every sale that passed underneath the wheel, were entirely too close for their own welfare.

One day he remembered about the astronomy book he had wanted to buy. He also recalled that on the ride over to Long Island City with Muller and Holten they had passed several book shops. He took a stroll through 59th Street. In one of the stores he acquired a copy of Herschel Astronomy and one of Norton. As soon as he came back he began to study them. He soon discovered that there are two ways to measure planets'

George Wollsten Goes to New York to Trade Stocks and Grains

positions, one as seen from the earth, the other if we imagine ourselves to be on the Sun and were to look from it out into space to view the planets from there. The way planets are viewed from the Sun was contained in the Tables furnished by the Nautical Almanac, but the other way, "that's a horse of a different color" he said. I shall have to try to obtain some of those ephemerides and see how they look and what I can do with them. The clerk at the desk soon directed him to a place where he could find astrological books and ephemerides. While on his way down to 32nd Street he felt as if in the one week he had become somewhat acquainted with the town. It was not as hard as he had first thought it would be. There was an East Side and a West Side. Streets had numbers from 1 to 180 or 242. Avenues ran through the length of the Island which were also numbered. Was that hard? Only the downtown part of the City had street names.

We soon see George in the store asking for ephemerides for astrologers. "What year?" asked a little old lady that waited on him. "Give me four or five years backward including the current year," he said. She soon brought some small blue paper covered booklets from the rear, saying "fifty cents a piece." He paid her, comparing at the same time the size with the ones from Washington. The name on each of the booklets said 'Raphael's Ephemerides of Planets' Places. A few people were sitting in the small reading room that was connected with the store. He unpacked his own again there, paged through it to verify that they really were planetary tables. They contained a maze of figures, but instead of positions being in straight degrees and minutes from 0° to 360° they were shown with the signs attached, such as Aries, Taurus, etc. He wrapped them up again and went home.

The market had played around without doing much for the whole week. Wheat had receded to 1.13. The next morning, it was the 25th of February, George went down early

George Wollsten, the Expert Grain Trader

to buy himself another contract of wheat because after idling for a week he figured it ought to get a push and Jupiter, after it is crossed keeps up the good work for a while anyhow. "I may make another two points to keep me going," he said.

He paid 1.13 1/8 for it. The opening was the low for the day. He talked very little while with the broker and went home early to work again.

Somehow or other the little blue books which contained the geocentric positions of the planets did not appeal to him. He saw quickly that the positions given therein were entirely different than those in the Nautical Almanacs; he saw that Mercury and the others were moving backwards too when viewed from the earth, whereas by heliocentric view they always moved forward. "Of course, we have two lives," he mused, "one represents our main work and endeavor which always moves forward, the other is pleasure. I will quite often go back to visit Grete and Jim; I will also some time go back to visit my folks in Europe, but that will not take me away from my general forward movement. If I do go back it's just for fun and play but I can't do anything constructive with such movements. So I consider the geocentric movements of planets to represent their fun and pleasure, while their movement in heliocentric view is the real thing, the real forward movement." One is for astrologers, the other is for scientific work." He put them in his suit case where the back pages of his newspapers lay at rest.

Certain people have a talent to choose things that are good for them while they leave others alone. Adam was one of those lucky ones had not Eve later on given him that apple, a fruit that is round and looks like one of those gaps which the market likes to make at times. The serpent was the anterior cause. George suddenly thought of Sepp Muller how he got bitten by the stock market serpent. He looked over the stock pattern. There he saw that serpent winding itself up and down, and

George Wollsten Goes to New York to Trade Stocks and Grains

up and down, striking once in a while. He also imagined to see the apple into which Eve bit. He imagined his old violin which he was obliged to scrape for many years and recalled those two f's, one on each side that allow the sound to come out of the box. What about the word "If," does the "I" of this word not sound like "up, joohoo" and does its "f" not sound like the smell of a foul egg, with the egg between the I and the F? Is Mrs. Adam merely the counter part, the F of the I? The German word for breath is "Atem." "There you are," he said, "breathe, up and breathe down." I have to consult the Bible sometime, he continued, if it does not give me some cues about market movements!"

By putting the small ephemerides to the side George saved himself many years of drudgery to wade through something that would have taught him astrology. There is something to astrology, no doubt, several major changes would have to be made before it becomes useful. A certain fellow by the name of Bayer had worked out a method of astrology which took him fully twelve years to arrive at completion. He had made out of one single horoscope, the way astrologers use five others, all arrived from that one. By this means all events that could happen would come forth. However, it takes about two days just to erect the frame work with complicated calculations.

The methods which George produced, as we soon shall see, are so much simpler and easier and to the point for trading that results are almost immediate without much effort. The average astrologer who puts his work to test in markets will be a failure, a positive failure. That is why they cling to forecasting people's future. It matters little whether aunt Fiffy comes for her visit on the 18th or the 27th, when the horoscope says: "relatives come to your house," but with markets one can be a wreck in less than a week.

George looked again at his stock chart for the time Mr. Muller was run through the wringer. "If Jupiter does not

George Wollsten, the Expert Grain Trader

cause an upmove when it is crossed by Mercury, something is fishy and it is a top," he said. This applies to grains possibly also to people.

Especially one thought made him keep away from the geocentric positions "if there are influences from cosmos working on the mind of the people that live on earth, it cannot very well be an influence that connects with the earth proper such as a geocentric conjunction between Jupiter and Mercury, for example." He thought of a thunder storm as a cosmic phenomenon caused by air overloaded and overheated with electricity. True, the air is part of the earth; so is the tree into which the lightening passes to enter the earth. However, that which develops the excess of electricity is neither the air nor the earth. It's beyond it. This may be against all laws of physics as taught in schools, but I now make my own laws.

THE ELLIPSES

George could see perfectly that Jupiter, Saturn and Mercury could affect heliocentrically the little bits of brains of the ants that crawl around the earth and verified the facts from his charts. Of course, he continued, while looking now at a picture in Herschel's astronomy, all planets run around the Sun in ellipses, yes, in ellipses. . . . Ell . . . ip . . . s . IS He dropped the book, looked at the 1904-1905 wheat charts and cried out "El . . ipse . . IS. Hell itself it is. His Latin came to help him; ipse can mean "itself" or "of one's own accord" or "alone." He saw now ellipses in his wheat chart, even though there were none visible to anybody. Such condition we call vision. "There they are," he said. Parts of them are clearly visible, others are seemingly invisible, such like the Moon with its phases. At the time of the last sickle one can often discern the entire contour of the Moon and yet but one quarter of it shines brightly. "I can complete an ellipse around these movements" he said which will look like a bath tub to fit them into, nay, they fitted themselves that way," he added.

George Wollsten Goes to New York to Trade Stocks and Grains

He had looked at the wheat prices on his chart from June 5 to August 22, 1904, also at the part from March 9th to April 26th of the same year. They had taught him drawing in school, so it was not difficult to draw an ellipse fairly accurate around the periods. One was a long and narrow ellipse, the other was rather short and fat.

He went down to the desk. On the way he met Holten. "Where can I buy some celluloid sheets" he accosted him. "Celluloid? What do you want to do with celluloid Mr. Wollsten, artists use that? You can get some over at 45th Street on Sixth Ave., just above the Hippodrome, there are the Artist's Supply Stores. "Thanks a million" said George and rushed out of the door as it was getting late. He bought an entire sheet to make sure he would not run short. George had figured that it would take a good many of ellipses of all sorts and try out which ones would fit best. How he would arrive at selecting the right ones that was part of his study and work. On the way home he paged through in his mind old mathematic books to recall the correct construction of an ellipse. "Two circles, major and minor axis, no, I better get me a book" he mused. On 59th Street he picked up an old geometry book that gave the details. "Those things are cheap, twenty-five cents," he said, as he continued home, "but who can put those things to use?" Triumphantly he walked through the lobby, Mr. Holten could not make out what had struck George. As much as he had a desire to invite Holten up to his room, he decided against it. He would be distracted by his presence and he had a lot of melted gold on the fire that required immediate attention before it would cool off. "And time is money," he thought. The "Evening Mail" he picked up before he came home. Wheat had advanced to 1.14 $\frac{3}{4}$ and it closed at 1.14 $\frac{1}{2}$. It was a Friday again, one of his lucky days.

That evening he made five ellipses of various sizes, a fat

George Wollsten, the Expert Grain Trader

one, a lean one, a long one, a thin one and one of baby size. The lengths and width had been selected on account of various patterns formed by the movement of wheat.

Saturday was but a short day. Wheat closed at 1 o'clock. He did not go down. Shortly before the close he called Mr. Mayer on the phone to get an idea what wheat was doing. He heard: 1.14 $\frac{7}{8}$ high, 1.14 $\frac{3}{8}$ low and last. "I will be down Monday early to watch it," he told Mayer. From the quotation he figured that wheat must keep going now. "If it does not make a push upward Monday, I will sell out and may even take a short position," he said.

About that time Jim at Upper Red Hook had driven over to Pine Plains to bring the rest of the chicks home. The first batch did well. His fruit trees were all pruned, the snow began to disappear. During some years even in March heavy snow falls could be expected. At spots facing the south the earth began to get soft and chickens walked all the way from the coops to try for real early worms. Grete was busy making her baby's clothes. They had seen a doctor who informed them that they could expect their baby by early September. "Your wife is a strong and healthy woman, so don't worry about anything," he told Jim.

The chickens had increased laying ever since George left, though prices dropped in proportion. All told, Jim had bought 1,500 chicks. The barn housed them comfortably. Of course the feed cost had increased with such quantity, but the revenues would in due order do the same. He planned to sell off the old hens with the exception of a few for home use so as to make place for the little brood as soon as they had outgrown the barn. He even planned to construct a second chicken coop.

Things had turned rather quiet about the house. Life even seemed to have become a little monotonous. Jim could not work much outside. He looked after the chickens and cut wood

George Wollsten Goes to New York to Trade Stocks and Grains

for the stove. Much of his time was used to read the "Upper Red Hook Herald" as soon as the delivery boy had brought his copy.

He had decided to order lumber for the new coop and started to build. The job kept him busy into early April. He wanted to make a good job of it so that should George come once for a visit he could show his ability as a carpenter.

George had worked over Sunday with the ellipses. He tried them in all sorts of ways. He soon saw that there were endless possibilities to lay from bottoms, from tops, from gaps, there were possibilities to set them straight up, to lay them side-wise across from a top or from a bottom, to lay them at an angle, to fit them through consecutive higher bottoms upwards or through consecutive lower tops when the trend led down. He had produced them on celluloid. On the first one he pricked with a pin patiently, holes all around the periphery, until it gave him the contour. The actual drawing had been made on paper and by laying the celluloid over it, he reproduced it on to the celluloid that was transparent. It was a tedious job. Afterwards he trimmed it all around with scissors. Mr. Holten was the man who dug up a pair somewhere. George's face would shine during those tests periodically like the full Moon, at times his face would be like that of the New Moon, disappointment being clearly drawn in to it. The ups and downs of markets mirrored themselves remarkably in his physiognomy.

Monday, the last day of February, George arrived on time at Mr. Mayer's office. Wheat had opened unchanged. During the next 15 minutes it became strong and the price ran up $1\frac{1}{2}$ points in a rush of buying. Because he saw that new advance, his thoughts wandered off to Sepp Muller when he had told him of his trading experience. It was Sepp Muller that made him get up, walk over to Mayer and said "Sell two May contracts at the market." Meekly Mr. Mayer took the

George Wollsten, the Expert Grain Trader

order. A few minutes later he received a slip that showed 10M WK sold at 1.15 3/4. George put the slip into his pocket without saying a word. Mayer had expected to hear at least a few words why he shorted wheat when it looked so good, when everybody talked about the big advance that was just now beginning. Disappointed he retired to the 'judge's dais.' After a while George asked Mr. Mayer for a check of \$100—from his account and soon left to do some more work at home.

He was trying out other ways and means to discover when wheat would turn up from a low or down from a high. All sorts of ideas had developed while riding subways. He had seen a stock trader who used a "system" by keeping tab of 15 different stocks of which he took prices every quarter hour, added those prices carefully and made a chart with the aid of this special average. Another trader, Mr. Peeper had talked to him during the morning. He asked him whether he kept charts. "I see you come only once in a while to the office, stay for a while and beat it out again." George answered him that he traded solely on intuition. "If they look good I buy, if they look better I sell them," he said. "Why, you take terrible chances that way," replied Mr. Peeper. "You should use charts. I'll show you" he said opening a binder that was carefully tied with several ribbons. He had about a hundred charts of all sorts of stocks neatly plotted. George saw trend lines drawn on those charts that connected a low with the next following low, also high points connected with the next high points, so that a sort of a channel was indicated. Through this channel the trend was supposed to run. When the channel was violated, that is should prices push through it either above or below, he expected the trend to change. George sized up the idea quickly, especially the virtue of those lines, but, he noticed that just at critical places this channel would many times be exceeded by a point or even two and instead of continuing in that direction, prices would go completely the

George Wollsten Goes to New York to Trade Stocks and Grains

opposite way. "Those charts are very beautiful," he said to Peeper, but thought "I'll check on this as soon as I get home." Suddenly Peeper said "Have you heard about the new charts which they use?" "Not me," said George, "which ones?" "They now make weight charts by combining the number of advances and declines of the stocks that are traded every day in a certain proportion. I think they take three consecutive days the advances and deduct two consecutive declines. Finally they obtain a difference which they plot on a chart. After they have plotted it for several days a line is produced which waves up and down in irregular fashion, but turns around just about when a top or bottom is made." "That sounds very interesting, Mr. Peeper," said George. "Tell me that once more, I want to mark it down; I have a poor memory for such complicated things." He picked a pad off Mayer's desk whose eyes threw lances because he had not asked permission to use it, but George was the customer and the customer is always in the right, so Mayer had to take out another pad from his third drawer and put it in the very same place. It simply meant 'keep it.'

Mr. Peeper repeated: Take 15 stocks I believe; then separate those which advanced to-day from those that declined to-day. Do so for three consecutive days. On the third day you add up the total value that shows on the advancing side. Of those that declined you make your total already on the second day, because only two days are used to make that total, so that on the third you make your total for this column out of the declines of the second and third day.

Whatever value appears from the advancing column from that is deducted the declining column. The result is then plotted each day.

"I got that now" said George. "Do you happen to have such a chart?" asked George. Peeper fumbled through his carton of charts and found one that showed these wavy lines. George

George Wollsten, the Expert Grain Trader

noticed a sort of zero line drawn in it around which the serpent wound itself. The values seemed to him to run at times into plus and at other times into minus. The pattern looked to him more like the picture of Mercury with Aesculapius, only it was lying sidewise instead of standing. He saw Adam again, he saw Eventide, he saw Day and Night. "Why," he thought, "that man has the first chapter of Genesis solved and don't know it. However, they took six days that time," he added. He was all afire on the inside. He spoke for half an hour with Mr. Peeper, thanked him for what he had shown him and went home to put all this to test. There he had his charts as well as the time to do so.

For several days thereafter George went down town each day to sort of snoop around whether or not any other ideas were floating around the "Street." The wavy line was as big a monster to him as was the actual grain chart with the only difference that it wound itself around a centre axis, whereas the grain chart had the form of a roof, running upward in the bull cycle and downward in the bear cycle. He had not done anything with it as yet since the ellipses kept him occupied sufficiently for the time being. He thought of Ecclesiastes where it says "there is a time for everything; a time to sow, and a time to reap, a time to give and a time to take" while he drew the two axes through the ellipses, the major and the minor.

His search for additional ideas down-town convinced him that every trader in the Board Room had some sort of a "system" which he followed, that was supposed to reveal the trend of markets. How could they otherwise get up the nerve to trade so often? Some indication must cause them to act. The great majority uses daily high and low charts with trend lines drawn into underneath two consecutive low levels while the trend rose or above two consecutive high levels when the trend declined. Supposing the market's trend would reach that

George Wollsten Goes to New York to Trade Stocks and Grains

line a third time, that is where they would buy respectively sell, expecting that the price would be chased back again from such a channel line. It might take a week or two weeks until the price would reach that "wall," it may never be reached or it may pass the wall with a bang.

One morning Mr. Mayer introduced George to a kindly looking old gentleman, Mr. Rotolo. It was him who always received the piece of yellow tape from the boys after they had posted the prices from it on the Board. They were so used to do it like an old lady passes the rosary buds.

Mr. Rotolo kept a "Sale to Sale chart." He used a regular chart sheet, ignored the dates shown on top and bottom margins and plotted on each small line one sale after the other as shown by the tape of one option, May wheat, at the present time. Each day the chart's January 1st was his opening price line. Rotolo, dark haired, with a moustache like bicycle handles of a high wheeler was about 50 years old. His accent told of his Italian origin. He was a native of Riva on Lake Garda. During all the thirty years in the country he was not able to shake off the accent. He was happy when somebody looked at his work. He made his trades rather on the quiet whenever his trend line would indicate a change. Other traders did not pay much attention to him since they considered his "system" too involved, besides it required nearly five hours constant watch and marking. It was more "business like" to listen to some wild cat story or to read the newspapers. He was the "Queer Duck" for the other grain traders, although when grains were boiling they never failed to try to take advantage of his patient detail work. Like a painter paints his landscape with cattle, trees and clouds, so he plotted sale after sale every day. Once in a while for want of better ways to kill time, one or the other would come over to inquire of him "Rotolo, what's new? Let's see the chart! Is that dip going to become an abyss? What do you think of it?" the visitor would say, worried

George Wollsten, the Expert Grain Trader

but hiding his emotions as much as possible. From his charts Rotolo would measure very closely the times when Reynolds or Lopez would call for a visit.

Around the ticker tape more stories were told in one day than printed in the newspaper. The subjects touched most anything. The other day they chewed over Stanley's travels through Africa while grains moved quiet. When the story reached the situation where the natives were about ready to roast him, one of the more tender hearted trader-listeners gave an order to sell out his grain. It looked so dead, ready to "fall out of bed." That way the time passed every day; always something else came up for discussion. If they had no news the ticker would supply fluctuations.

George spent much time with Mr. Rotolo who had given him a lot of back charts of the "Sale of Sale" type. "But, watch out," said Rotolo, "I keep equal spaces for the hours! In case there is too much trading in one hour, my points are set very close together; in quiet hours the points are farther apart, but note, each day ends with April 25th of the chart! If I would not do that my pattern would not talk to me. I have tried it in many different ways already and this way I found best." "I see," said George, "you keep rythm like the organist who plays 8th and 16th notes and yet stays in his regular time." "That is what the fellows don't understand; when they see a fast run away they think it keeps on running but it is often times only some little news from Washington or Iowa may have a shower. After that we are back in time," he said. George thought Rotolo's arguments rather clever. He had not thought to compare the movement of grains with church music so far. "There are many slants to this market timing" he said. "It will be years before I really shall finish learning."

He made another comparison. "When they serve a dinner, we first get some ripe olives, a sardine, some slices of salami.

George Wollsten Goes to New York to Trade Stocks and Grains

Then they bring on the soup, followed by a nice fish. After the fish comes the roast meat, possibly a roasted duck or turkey. As the final dish we will get sweets. On holidays there might even be champagne. Nuts are supposed to end the meal. After such lavish dinners there is bound to follow a show of the best vaudeville in town. The market seems to provide us with similar courses in the form of a banquet." George remembered having had a few of such dinners. However, invariably he felt quite uncomfortable after it was all over. The stomach was overloaded. "Isn't it the very same way with the meal dished up for traders in the market?" he asked himself.

In the meantime the additional volumes of Ephemerides had been sent down by Jim. Immediately he began to plot all the years back to see whether or not Jupiter, Saturn and Mercury kept faith with him. For ten days he compared, sized up and set ellipses into his charts. The results appeared good to him even though much had to be cleared up. He found many cases where Jupiter had made a top from which a big decline would start. Saturn did similar tricks. Even the prices however careful he set ellipses would once in a while run outside of the periphery, just enough to make one think the trend does continue and yet, the trend turns around to form an ellipse the opposite way.

"Of course," he mused, "were it that easy, many a clever trader would just grab each move without ever taking a loss." But the world was not built of one mountain, that would be monotonous! We need hills and dales in grains movements as well as with ourselves; we are bound to make errors. I wonder" he continued, "if ellipses do not make a blunder once in a while themselves! Supposing I consider the ellipse as a bath tub or—better yet, as a barrel which I fill with water. Now,—that barrel may spring a leak, George pointed on his chart where the movement of wheat had trespassed by a point beyond the ellipse circumference for a few days. Some-

George Wollsten, the Expert Grain Trader

one higher up who watches over those movements must have noticed it and quickly plugged up the leak, which made the movement of wheat get back inside of the ellipse."

Whenever George looked at the market's action he always tried to associate actions of nature whether they were related with weeds, grasses, trees, animals, parts of man's body, mountains or valleys.

One day he decided that one length of an ellipse was to be considered as one cycle. Such cycles had various lengths because the angles to set the ellipse varied. The ellipses varied in themselves. But they had nothing in common with our year's length nor with the four seasons, that is with the Sun. However, he thought that since it was only a matter of two planets, Jupiter and Saturn, crossed by Mercury the number of ellipses should be reduced to merely two to keep up the harmony. Like an inventor who had to make many models for his invention, so George, on May 9th of that year completed two ellipses.

One ellipse measured 6.25 inches; the other measured 9.25 inches. They had the same width of 1.95 inches.

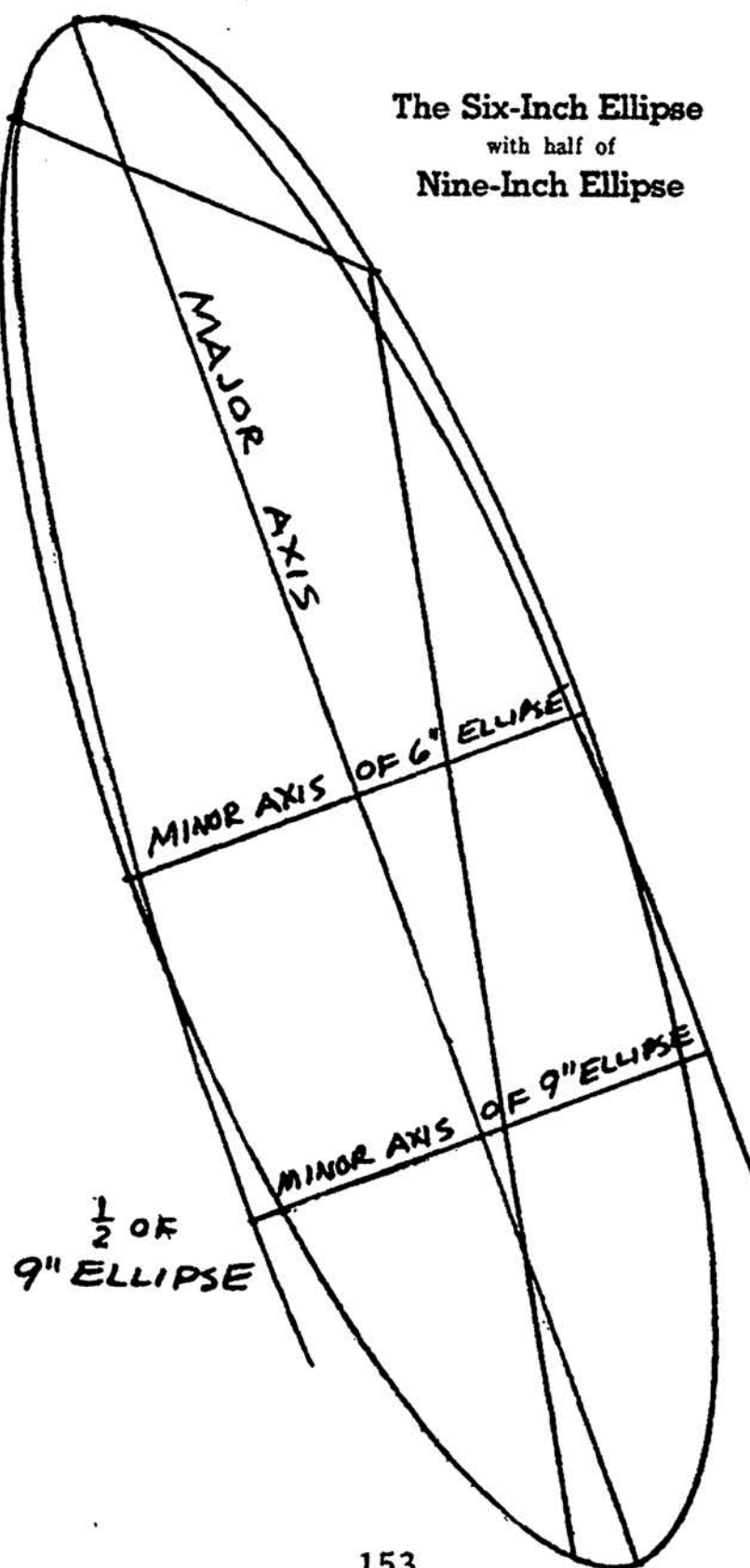
For some reason he combined them into one, by using the same minor axes. (See picture).

This was not the only innovation George made on this 9th day of May. He made one more important discovery.

THE 71° and 78° ANGLES

He used a transparent semi-circular protractor and drew into it the 71° as well as the 78° angle from the centre outward to the periphery of it. He had noticed that if he would set this protractor to a low place, the trend would first run up the 78° line then fall back unto the 71° angle, run up on it for a while and only when the trend broke the 71° angle, it was all over with the up move. From a top he would do the same way by laying the protractor the opposite way.

George Wollsten Goes to New York to Trade Stocks and Grains



George Wollsten, the Expert Grain Trader

He scratched lines into the protractor with a pin point again and ran some ink through the grooves to make them visible. At times when very big moves occurred such as it happened in 1904, he simply would add a ruler to extend the lines beyond the protractor.

George carried a long positions ever since the first of the month. Six points profit had accrued so far. Jupiter told him him that on this day will be a top of importance and not a "jump-up" place. Therefore he sold on May 9th two contracts. Besides, he sold two more which made him short. He had increased his trading from one contract to two contracts. His judgement was right. He also had noticed that stocks did not recover very well from the sharp drop they had suffered during April. Matters discussed by traders around the tickers sounded too hopeful for him. He never could forget Muller's story.

The discovery about the 71° and 78° angles helped George in many ways. His analysis was correct. Wheat had been walking up on a 78° angle since May 2nd. On Monday it had advanced two points, but in spite of all that advance, it walked across the 78° line of his protractor to be ready to go down to the 71° line. Besides, when he had set his six inch ellipse upright into the low place of April 20th he could see a regular pocket had been formed, whose left side was the high of March 31st, whose right side was this very day, Jupiter's day and the "Valley" low place was shown for April 20th. To-day's high was just 1 point higher compared to the high of March 31st. "That's just fine" he said, "that extra point must have caused everybody to buy and the shorts that were put out around the low levels are running to cover here for fear the market will run through on the upside."

The informations obtained from Mr. Peeper and Mr. Rotolo had not been used as yet. "On their ideas I will start work pretty soon" he said.

George Wollsten Goes to New York to Trade Stocks and Grains

A few days later wheat started a sharp comeback after it had receded 5 cents. "That's alright" he said. "I will keep my short position just the same. He had found out that after a valley is made, be it a big one or a small one, the market often times holds until Mercury reaches 0° . It does not need the crossing of a planet, just as long as the helio-centric co-ordinate of Mercury shows 0° . He had seen it happen quite often. However, the change may occur just a few days before or after that 0° is reached.

He did not like the idea too much that Mercury at its zero place would not decide to register in the exact day of 0° and was trying to find out the cause of this failure. He considered it was not an actual conjunction of planets, but merely an action of Mercury proper at the time it passed 0° heliocentrically.

After the middle of May wheat turned down again. It had missed the top of May 9th by just one point, that is one cent. New York became quite warm already. He thought again of Jim and Grete and decided to take a run up to see them. He had ordered the "Evening Mail" to be sent to Upper Red Hook for a month, packed his charts and the other tools to do some work in the country. The commitments he left intact. For safety's sake he placed what is called a "stop loss order." He said to Mr. Mayer "Stop my September wheat $1/4$ point above the high of May 9th" at $1.16 \frac{1}{2}$. The last commitment he had made in September wheat instead of May wheat, which option ran out during the month.

Thursday, May 19th during the afternoon George came walking into Jim's farm. He had forgotten to notify them. Nobody was at the house. Grete was in the new chicken coop feeding the chicks. Jim was in town on an errand. He had sold the entire lot of last year's chickens. While George began unpacking his belongings, Grete came back to the kitchen to prepare supper. "Why, George!" she exclaimed "when did

George Wollsten, the Expert Grain Trader

you get here?" Hungry, I presume from the long ride? "You look good, all browned already" said George. "Where is Jim? Haven't seen him nowhere around." He is in town. We sold the old chickens to make room for the young brood. That was alright to do, wasn't it," she asked. "How do you like the run we made for the chickens," she said, looking out from the window. "Looks alright to me" said George. There is Jim coming now!" he added as he glanced through the apple trees to the road. "He will be as much surprised as I was," said Grete.

The kitchen door opened. "Grete, that..." he was just going to say something when he saw George at the sofa. "When did you get here, George? I thought so; one nice day you'd be just fed up with the city and with those stars of yours, with your charts and all the other crazy things. Only the other day I had said to Grete: watch, one nice day George will be back and we will have to look for a larger farm." He shook his hand heartily while George bit on his teeth to withstand the pain of the hand shake. "I just come for a visit" he said and to bring you back the \$500 which you let me have to get started." "No sir, they are yours," said Jim. You also worked here. In case I do need them some time I shall ask you for them but I just received that amount for the rest of the old chickens." They sat on the sofa. Grete began to prepare the evening meal. "We will finish the stew of yesterday," she said, "but I will make some pancakes for you, special. See if there are any eggs in the coop!" Dutifully George went to the coop and came back with six of them. Two he had in the left pocket, two in the right, two in one hand which gave him a chance to close the coop without breaking any. "Is that all?" said Grete when she saw him marching across the yard with but two eggs. "Your chickens are not that lazy" he said jokingly, pulling the others from his pockets.

That evening George did not get to work. He had to tell

George Wollsten Goes to New York to Trade Stocks and Grains

of his doings in New York, also about Mr. Holten. He himself was anxious to hear how things had gone and how Mr. Schafer was doing. In a short while more information was gleaned on both sides than a dozen letters could have conveyed. Grete had changed her girlish figure quite a bit during the last three months. George told them that he had made nearly \$1,500.00 trading wheat down at New York. "And all this money was made with those crazy stars which I found in the books from Washington," he added. "Of course," said Jim "you have learned in school many things which I never have heard nor will hear, but everyone has his own way to make a living just like each bee knows where to go to get its honey. Have you seen my bee hives already?" "You got bees now?" said George somewhat surprised. "Yes, I started with three hives about a month ago when a lost swarm landed in that apple tree next to the chicken fence. I put them in a hive and to make it worth while I bought two more swarms over near Pine Plains. They cost me \$25.00. One has a Western Queen." "Why just a Western Queen? Aren't the Eastern ones good enough for you?" said George. "They claim that the Western Queens make the workers bring in from 10 to 12 pounds more honey each year than the Eastern Queens do, but I will tell you next fall. I will keep track of each hive and I know where the Western Queen is" he said.

George told them that he intends to stay about three weeks or four at the most, unless "you want to get rid of me sooner," he added. "You are at home here as we are even though you were a nuisance the last few weeks with your old planets and stars but you can be much alone now. We are busy outside with so many things that do not interest you whatever, that the whole house is just yours." "Only let me in once in a while to see that you are not starving while we are out" added Grete.

The next day George paid a visit to Mr. Schafer who was

George Wollsten, the Expert Grain Trader

delighted to see him. He inquired of him how he was getting along down in the big city. George told him briefly that his progress was slow but steady, that his idea about captains of boats and the celestial Time Tables had been wonderful. "I have a lot to learn, though, but Rome wasn't built in one day." While they chatted Mr. Schafer brought him through his extensive orchards. He had to admire the Newton Pippins which he had set out last Spring and informed him that it was Geneva Stock on French seedlings. "They should bear in four or five years. The only trouble with us now is the Western competition that may keep prices down, but our exports increase according to the Commerce Year Book," he added.

After a while George made a tour through Upper Red Hook. The place had grown close to him during the half year he had lived there. It seemed to be home to him. The constant rush to get places down at New York formed a big contrast to the quiet, easy going life around here. Yet, also the happy villagers reach their goal. He walked through Dingle's, then went to the bank to open an account of his own with the check Jim refused to accept. The president recognized him and asked a few questions about where he had kept himself for the last several months. Then he walked down to the mill, even though he had nothing in particular to do there. But old thoughts come back. What change had come to him within the short space of time! He was now a full fledged grain trader. Before he felt himself a nuisance. He now had a foot hold on something worthwhile. Part of the way he whistled old Vienna tunes and came back hungry like a tiger. The fresh air had done him good. Not for once did he think of his grain commitments or whether prices had gone up or down. What did he care just then? He carried a stop, just in case. If the prices did decline as he expected, so much the better.

George Wollsten Goes to New York to Trade Stocks and Grains

Jim was again in his trees. This time he looked over the branches to see if one or the other was interfering with more important branches. In that case he would do some "thinning." However, it was more the joy of looking at the swelling fruit as small as they were. "Too bad," he mused, "that George could not see the trees in bloom, the solid mass of flowers all over." Any heart could feel the trend of Nature, how it produced beauty and food. His bees lived then in Paradise. The pastures had now become their gathering grounds. All sorts of flowers produced multicolored carpets there.

A good meal awaited the brothers who both came in at the same time. Smoked ham with potato salad and pickles supplied the table. Bread Pudding was the dessert.

Grete had fixed the table for George again the way he used to have it during the winter. Even the suitcase was in its proper place where he used to keep his paper file and the books. She laid out the charts for him, together with pencil and ruler, everything so that "His Grace" merely had to sit down and get going.

"Don't you make such a fuss with me, I just won't have that" said George when he saw the nice arrangement. "You have your own business to attend to and I have plenty of time for a few weeks," he added. Just the same he felt flattered.

George began to work now with those advances and declines of which he had taken notes from Mr. Peeper. Of course, Mr. Peeper used the combinations for all the stocks that were traded, the total of which ran to some 350 varieties. This gave him the big stumbling block when he tried it for wheat. One always had enough stocks that would show plus signs, also a certain number that would show minus signs after trading was over. With wheat, however, there was but one wheat, and three active options thereof. He had considered to use all the grains, oats corn, rye together with wheat, possibly barley yet, each in the three options. This would

George Wollsten, the Expert Grain Trader

give him 15 changeable units. The test was to be made back for about six months to see what sort of a wavy line would result. The old newspaper file came in handy now. Of each day he had kept but the market page.

His first step was to copy the closing prices of each grain and of each option patiently on sheets, but after two hours work he changed his mind about the procedure. "To arrive at any pattern would take weeks that way," he decided. "I will take wheat alone and one option only. When the option is about to expire I shall switch over into the next option. I only shall use the price differential from one day to the next and give each day its plus or minus sign, depending upon whether we advance or declined." Part of the work he could use, the daily high price of one wheat option. After complete tabulation of the rest he produced a double column, from day to day, that showed how much was the advance and how much the decline. In order to make adding easier he used decimals instead of fractions, so that $1/8$ would be marked as 12 or 13, $3/8$ would be marked as 37 or 38, etc. Out of this he made two more columns, the one containing the total of three days taken from the "advances" column and the other containing the total from the "declines column." Of this he used but two consecutive days.

George had the patience. In less than one week a pattern appeared that looked similar to the picture seen from Peeper.

He began to check the days when the line had turned down to see whether grain would decline in harmony. He discovered soon that the line contained a lot of unnecessary kinks that would fool a trader into thinking the trend had changed. Yet the line would straighten out again and prices would continue mounting. The same way the line would do while it moved down into the minus side.

"Man-made stuff" he said. This product is in crude state and needs refining. Nature is hidden in it, I can see from the

George Wollsten Goes to New York to Trade Stocks and Grains

winding line. The kinks must be straightened out as much as possible before I can use this line. It needs different combinations. Whoever thought of such combinations first was a clever man who tried for rythm. But I have to make out of a buggy one of those automobiles that come more and more in use.

While George worked his problems on the farm, September wheat had taken a tumble to 1.02. Yesterday's reports showed it had broken the low level of April 20th. "Is this the beginning of the bear market?" said George. "Was the movement from April 20th to May 9th the last kick-up before a big slide is due? Mr. Jupiter, please tell me of that!" He looked for the time when Saturn would be crossed again by Mercury. The chart showed July 5th. Mercury would hit 0° on June 30th. "Those days will become the critical days. But, that's a long way off; for two weeks we decline already and after all, wheat is worth something" he mused. He looked at the chart into which he had drawn from the top of May 9th his 78° and 71° angle. The 71° angle was now definitely broken. It appeared to him as if prices tried now for the 78° angle. He decided to cover his shorts as soon as the 71° angle was crossed upwards again.

"Even though I may be late by one day in covering, I shall see in the morning paper and there is time enough to get in touch with Mr. Mayer before the market opens. I even will "double up" which will make me long again." He was somewhat nervous all day but tried to hide it from Grete and Jim. A few times he was on the verge of going back to New York in case a sharp turn-about face would occur. Yet, his Jupiter told him there was no rush. He himself (Jupiter), had turned down prices so why hurry and expect them to go the other way without the planets' assistance. Sepp came to his mind again. He also saw Mr. Mayer whom he had never asked about his opinion. Mayer had asked him twice to join

George Wollsten, the Expert Grain Trader

his Golf Club where he used to enjoy a game twice a week. He had asked him to see a box fight. Once he even had tickets for Madison Square Garden. But George had to refuse that day because he had a test to make that evening which he considered of more importance. With Muller and Holten he went to see one a week later. It was plain that Mayer was fishing to find out where George obtained his dope when the others had been buying right and left right in front of him. Mayer had even repeated orders, reading slips aloud saying "is this correct, Mr. Wind, buy 5 contracts WZ market?" and, in spite of these warnings George would walk away from the grains to chat with Peeper of the Stock crowd without giving wheat even a tumble as soon as he had sold out and shorted it. Mayer could neither make head nor tail of him. "What nerve of that up-stater" as he called him when he spoke to some of his intimates while George was away. "What nerve that man Wollsten has is unbelievable. Things look attractive and he goes short! He'll burst one nice day, we'll live to see it. He is just the counter part of Sepp Muller, you may remember him." But George did not want to burst; he had come to New York to do business. He had come to stay.

During Saturday, May 28th wheat dropped 6 1/4 cents in spite of the short day. His option had declined to 96.

GEORGE COLLIDES WITH JIM AND GRETE

On Sunday he went to the village Drugstore three blocks out of his way to buy a New York paper. When he looked at the quotations he hardly could believe it.

"That's 20 points profit I am in. What a drop in 3 weeks" he said as he walked back to the church where Grete and Jim waited for him. "Such speed cannot keep up for a long time. I believe I shall go back Decoration Day to be at the Office bright and early. No, I shall stay and phone Mayer to cover the shorts, at least I have clinched that profit and then, . . ."—

George Wollsten Goes to New York to Trade Stocks and Grains

he nearly knocked down Jim and Grete who waited at the corner. He had walked with eyes wide open but did not see them until he had the collision. "Where do you keep your eyes, in your pocket?" asked Jim. "You nearly knocked us over in broad daylight." "Excuse me both, I just did not see you" said George. "I was thinking of going back to New York because that wheat market dropped too much yesterday to be very healthy for the shorts and I am short too." "Whatever that means is no reason to walk all over us," said Jim.

All three were a little put out on account of that accident. George was sorry; Grete didn't mind it at all, but she had to take her husband's part. She also became somewhat quiet. In order to smoothen out the situation, George invited them for a short trip to New York. He arranged it that Mr. Schaffer's man was going to take care of feeding the flock, the horse and Peter as well for a few days. One can invite brother and sister-in-law when six hundred dollars come flown in over night! "You both have been working hard and need a holiday" he told them. "Instead of cooking a meal we shall eat in the Dining Car" he continued. "Now you can laugh, because you have succeeded to smoothen out matters and even take us along with you" said Jim. "I was just figuring what kind of a meal we shall have on the train" retorted George. "What's so funny about that? You are not going to feed us peanuts and cough drops on the way down? otherwise you shall have here fried eggs morning, noon and night until you stop laughing. Don't forget, he who laughs last, laughs best." Jim was in a regular fighting mood.

GEORGE TAKES JIM AND GRETE TO NEW YORK

Grete had put the finishing touches to her household. A suitcase that contained everything for a two-days trip was ready. George had enough clothes and linen home. His own toilet articles he had sneaked into Grete's suit case while she

George Wollsten, the Expert Grain Trader

turned her back. They caught the 11:17 just in time, changing at Poughkeepsie to the Montreal Limited going south. They just had made themselves comfortable when a boy passed through, calling "Last call for Lunch." A few minutes later they were seated at a table in the Diner. Jim and Grete gazed at the novelty of the thing. "I like that" said Grete, "don't you?" Grete was looking at her husband who glanced at George, expecting from him a come-back about what he had said of peanuts and cough drops. George who quickly noticed it, said "you'll see, the food is delicious." It was good. "It's seldom that two holidays come in succession, so we might just as well take advantage of them and I don't make six hundred dollars every day either. These are exceptions and we might just as well take them" said George.

He lodged them at the St. Andrews. That hotel was close by. He selected a nice room with all conveniences and a fine view over to the Jersey side. Grete was all eyes. What a difference between this place and their farm home. She admired the bell boys with their uniforms and shiny buttons; she was a little scared of the big lobby that appeared to her as if it were the entrance to a big castle of some duke or prince. Jim was similarly surprised. He recalled his Albergo Chiave d'Oro. That one had no carpets that made one feel like walking on dough. They felt as if they were out of place, especially when they noticed people that sat around had been waiting and watching for them, at least it appeared to them that way. First Grete turned red, then white. Jim was glad when an elevator swallowed them to be carried to some other unknown place. George, of course, enjoyed the scene. He had to get even with Jim.

Gradually their pulse became normal again. "I shall leave you both alone for about two hours. I will go to my hotel. In the mean time you can take a rest, and a nice hot bath.

George Wollsten Goes to New York to Trade Stocks and Grains

I'll show you the hot water. At seven I will be back and take you out for peanuts and cough drops," he added.

At his hotel he found Mr. Holten sitting in an easy chair blowing rings with a Sunday Havana. "Will you join me for a small party in about two hours?" he asked him patting him on the shoulder. "Since when are you throwing parties, what got into you? Mr. Wollsten" Holten asked as he blew a nice oblong one due to the patting that had coincided with his expulsive movement. "Jim and his wife are at the St. Andrews for a visit. I will take them back home on Monday noon." "Is that so" said Holten, "of course, I will join you." "Meet me at 6:50. I will be seeing you then" said George and went up to his room.

George was all in. He had to lay down for a while to size up the situation about his wheat and its drop yesterday. "I just can't believe it." He got up, went down to the lobby and bought two other Sunday papers to see what quotations they contained. "Same thing" he said.

About an hour later George began to wash up, but had to stop suddenly. He began to search the telephone book for the number of Jim's hotel. "Give me 57212 please. Room 418 and keep on ringing it" he told the operator after he had the hotel connection. After a while he heard "Jim Wollsten, yes." "Jim, this is George. Get me that toilet bag with the razor which I put into Grete's suit case. I can't go out without combing my hair. I forgot to take it along. Take a cab, it is not far." "Grete thought there was a fire or something" said Jim through the phone. "I am soaking wet, had to jump out of the water for you. I will be down soon if I can find the bag."

Half an hour later Jim entered, all polished up, "you scared us for a while with your phone call. Here is your comb. I had to leave Grete all alone to worry that I find back and she is with child," he said. "I better go right back."

George Wollsten, the Expert Grain Trader

"No, wait; we will call her on the telephone right now and tell her of your safe arrival." He called the number again. After a while a faint voice came saying "Mrs. Wollsten, who are you?" "Grete, halloh Grete, this is George. Jim has arrived and we will be back soon, don't you worry," he said.

Pretty soon we see the trio walk up Broadway to meet Grete. Holten remembered her, of course, from the day she had arrived and was pleasantly surprised to hear her speak quite a bit of English. Occasionally a German word would be mixed. "Glad to see you," he said, when they met in the lobby "you have become quickly used to our country. Jim and George have told me all about your nice farm and about the apples and the chickens." "We have decided to go to the Hippodrome after dinner," he added. "What home you say?" asked Grete. The little party had reached the dining room of the hotel where a good meal was waiting for them. Later on they took in a show at the Hippodrome which ended the day perfectly.

After Grete and Jim had retired she said to him "How true is the proverb "the unexpected happens often" Who would have thought this morning that we would be in New York at night and see a beautiful show besides? What will the morrow bring?"

On the way home George was thinking hard how to entertain them the next day. "I have it," he exclaimed half asleep already. He got out of bed again, called 57212 again, Room 418. "As sure as we are in New York that's George" said Grete as she answered the ring, that night owl don't know when it's time to sleep." "I'll meet you both at 7:30 all ready to go, that's all, good night," he said and hung up.

Jim and Grete happily awaited George at the appointed time. "We will have breakfast right here," said George. They lulled a few waiters out of their folded arms that stood in corners awaiting their entrance to assign them a good table.

George Wollsten Goes to New York to Trade Stocks and Grains

One pulled out the chairs, another began to pour ice water, a third tendered the menus, a fourth with pencil and pad in hand seemed to wait impatiently for the order, sizing up the situation and combination of the early guests. He quickly noticed that one of the party was a man who knew his way around. The others seemed to be visitors from a small place—the hands told him that farming was their line. After the orders had been given George asked them how they liked New York so far. He talked of everything except of the plans for to-day.

THE TRIP TO WASHINGTON

Pretty soon we find them in a busy subway train whose cars carried signs "Brooklyn." They left the train at Pennsylvania Station. After walking through a maze of underground passages they reached the main station which had opened but a few years ago. "What do you want with us at this station?" said Jim. "We take a run down to Washington" said George. "We have to look over that city so that we know where those ephemerides have come from. Besides you have seen enough of New York and we never have been there." For a long time he had in mind to see Washington for once but always something did come up to prevent the trip. Besides, Grete and Jim would have something to remember for a long time. The idea had come to him just as he tried to fall asleep last night.

George bought three return tickets for Washington. The Southern Limited was just about ready to leave. In four hours the Capitol was reached. It gave them about six hours to enjoy the sights. George, the snooper was able to find the Capitol Building without asking directions. They went to see many other interesting places of the city. Someone pointed out the Government Printing Offices, a huge build-

George Wollsten, the Expert Grain Trader

ing in which the "Books of Gold" had been printed. They even discovered the White House.

"Mr. Schafer will be surprised when he gets from us a card mailed from Washington" said Grete as they were on the way back to New York.

As the train approached the city the conversation turned to things of to-morrow. The holidays had come to an end.

George had figured he would take Jim down with him to the Broker's Office to show him the inside of the place where he traded. He intended to watch wheat and make a decision during the first 15 minutes of trading. Grete was to take things easy. Jim liked the plan. They had talked about the apple crop, about bees, and chickens, also about the wheat, oat and rye crops of the mid-West. George had not bothered much with any grain except wheat. He had kept charts of each.

However, he had seen that they had somewhat different movements than wheat which showed in the charts. "Oats might take a sharp drop while wheat keeps up its strength or declines but a cent" he remarked. I can't have too many irons in the fire, one is enough" he said.

The train pulled back into Penn Station. Soon we see them in the subway. Compared to the morning the cars were loaded now to capacity. "Theatre goers," said George at Times Square, when the train had to accept another load of mankind. They had to stand in the car, changing weight from one leg to the other, holding on straps from a bar above them, surrounded by odors of human flesh. Big fans on the ceiling tried to blow them out through small openings near the ceiling. George estimated that a car carried about 200 people on the inside, with some 25 standing on each outside platform. He had counted ten cars as the train had pulled into the station. As they left the subway George said to Jim "Your

George Wollsten Goes to New York to Trade Stocks and Grains

whole population of Upper Red Hook would disappear in one of those trains just like Jonah in the whale."

GEORGE AND JIM VISIT BROKER'S OFFICE

Shortly before ten o'clock Jim and George entered the Broker's Office. Mayer had missed George. He had called twice the hotel to report of the big break in wheat on Saturday, but "Mr. Wollsten is not in" was the answer. He just could not understand how anyone can stay away from the tape when profits accrue at such terrific speeds. He even had inquired of the order clerk whether or not Mr. Wollsten had placed some kind of an order directly. This was a few minutes ago. "Did that fellow have an accident somewhere?" he asked the clerk. Mayer was all upset about George and his twenty points profit. Two thousand dollars ahead and the fellow don't even bother about it was beyond his capacity.

Mayer's sharp eyes had espied George as he entered when only the nose was showing as yet. "He brings another fellow now, I wonder who he could be" he thought. By that time both had walked down passing the high tribunals at their right, Jim was somewhat confused like any stranger that comes for the first time to such a place. He walked close behind George. "This is my brother, Mr. Jim Wollsten" said George to Mr. Mayer to introduce him. I am going to show him "your" place. Mayer was quite flattered. Interiorly he thought "not a bad fellow, he has much respect for me; I like him." "Mr. Wollsten," he began "wheat has dropped to 94 and I did not know where to lay my hands on you. Don't you remember that early this month they talked of an unusually dry summer and now they talk of a bumper crop. That's just what caused the drop." "That's interesting" answered George. "How fast things can change, don't they?" Suspicious about that answer, Mayer could not make out whether George was kidding or whether he meant just

George Wollsten, the Expert Grain Trader

what he said. However, he took advantage of the time saying "Stocks are down again, Steel was off half a point at the opening. This won't help wheat very much." As he thought fast like all customers' men do, he remembered that George was short and not long like the others, he added "cut your losses short, but let your profits run, that's the way we say in Wall Street." All the while he watched Jim who wheeled his hat between the fingers.

"Are you trading up in Albany, Mr. Wollsten?" he suddenly came out figuring there might be a chance to get another account. "No, I grow apples; I won't have anything to do with them stars nor..." George turned red saying immediately to Jim "Look, these things here bring out the sales of all stocks as soon as they are consummated," pointing at the tickers but thinking at the same time "darn fool, what a mistake did I make to take you along."

However, the damage was done. He knew so now. Mr. Mayer who always took George as an enigma, unsolvable had now heard something that gave him a cue as to the source of George's wisdom. He came right out saying "I always had a hunch that you are a clever astrologer, Mr. Wollsten." "Oh yea?" said George. In order to change the subject he said "I am going to watch this market for a few minutes, then we shall go again." They sat down, chatting about unimportant things; George tasted gall in his throat so mad he was. But it lasted only a few minutes. He himself thought fast. Jim had noticed nothing out of the ordinary. George knew what to do. As fast as his spirit had dropped as fast did it come back. In fact he laughed a few times when his brother would ask some questions.

WU opened off a cent. A few sales came at this price; then it dropped another half a cent. Suddenly George called: "Mr. Mayer, buy me 10M September wheat at the market." Mayer had been awaiting this order for quite a while and

George Wollsten Goes to New York to Trade Stocks and Grains

placed it immediately through the order window. George waited quietly to find out the price at which he covered it. It was unfortunate that Jim had popped out about the stars. He was a farmer but not a trader. This man Mayer does not like it too well because I do not ask him any questions. I have to work alone and not do a lot of chatting about the stars. Therefore I better quit this place and change brokers. It is not Mayer's fault, but my own to have taken Jim along, but sometimes innocent people have to suffer for others' mistakes.

"92 1/4, Mr. Wollsten," said Mayer, handing him a slip. "Fine," said George. "By the way, will you tell them to close my account and let me have a check for to-morrow or the next day? I am going upstate," he continued. Mr. Mayer grew pale. He had done very little business of late since markets had been sagging, and grains had dropped too. He could ill afford to lose a customer. Rapidly the events of the last half hour passed through Mayer's mind. He knew it. It was on account of those evil stars. He should have shut up and acted as if he had not heard the words about the stars. "But, Mr. Wollsten you do very well in your trading, what makes you stop so suddenly?" was all he could bring forth. He worked on a "long shot" saying "Mr. Wollsten, let's go out for a moment, I want to tell you something." He took George by the arm who told Jim to wait a while. Mayer brought George out to a corner of the big vestibule. Nobody was around. "I know why you go to some other broker and not upstate. Your brother has said something or was going to which you wanted to keep a secret. I will never tell anybody nor make any remark whatever. I will try to get your orders filled as fast as possible. I believe you have noticed it. Please stay. You know that time when Sepp Muller sold out I was just about laid off through no fault of my own. I have a feeling that we go into a bear market." He thought very fast to make sure he would

George Wollsten, the Expert Grain Trader

not spoil the "build-up" he had made by talking himself out of it again, so he added: "I really don't know. The market can go either way." "Alright" said George "You have heard nothing, seen nothing and you let it be that way. I will stay with you. Cancel the order." Satisfied both ways they marched back into the trading room and Mayer took to his dais from which he could overlook his realm. He had acted just on time, fast, furious, and had won. George took his seat on the "witness chair" next to the judge.

He was telling Mr. Mayer that he intended to go upstate in a few minutes to take a rest for a week or ten days. "Take this order down: Buy open stop 15M September wheat at 94." He intended to buy wheat only when and if the price had reached 94. On the tape it was still selling at 92 1/2 or well below the price at which he had entered the order. He had good reasons for such decision. "I may phone or wire you in case I decide to have this changed" he added. Mr. Mayer made out the order and brought it to the window. His pep was well exhausted from the last hour's events. He did not even want to know when George would come back, what he would do up there,—nothing. All he could bring out was that he hoped he would have a nice time and would enjoy himself while away.

As soon as George and Jim had vanished into the outer rooms Mayer felt relieved. The customer's Man at the adjoining desk had noticed something had gone amiss with Mayer's customer whom he had known but slightly. It happened occasionally arguments would arise because some customer's Man would make "cookoo eyes" at another's customer, that they talked to him without being asked first by him. It was petty jealousy. They were somewhat afraid of each other. One might take a position with some other broker and it was possible that he might drag the other's customer along with him.

George Wollsten Goes to New York to Trade Stocks and Grains

"What happened to your man," he would say to find out if Mayer had lost a customer. "Wasn't he satisfied with the price?" Mayer, happy, answered him "He will be my star customer after a while, you shall see, but, you leave your paws off him if you know what's good for you," he added. "Don't you snoop around and watch my business! Attend to your own!" There were no partitions between one desk and the next, but he who knows the 'inside' also knows that an invisible Chinese Wall runs through. Borrowing a witness chair from the neighbor to seat a customer might cause trouble for a week, although he had no earthly use for it at the time. One was supposed to bring one up from the lower level.

Mayer began to call various customers by telephone now to tell them about the market's doings. He took a cue from George's action that a low level was imminent, otherwise that fox who who used stars would not have covered his shorts. He himself had tried a little about astrology a few years ago when he had some customers that always spoke to him about the stars. However, he also had found out that when big moves came the star operators did not fare any better than the regular run and disappeared with them in good time. For a long time he had discounted those things, but here comes that fox and seemingly makes them work. He remembered very well that only a few months ago he had started with 5,000 bushels and here he gives me an order for 15,000 already. His account could stand eight or even nine contracts, that is 40,000 bushels or so, if he felt like buying that many. "Wollsten might be an exception" he thought.

"That's a mad house" said Jim as they emerged from the place. "How can you stand it in there, that ticking, talking and everything, I am glad I don't have to make my living that way. You can have all of it. A day or two in the city is

George Wollsten, the Expert Grain Trader

enough for me for a long time. The thought bothers me that something may go haywire at home, which is a thing you seemingly can't understand. I shall be happy to get home again. We will leave this afternoon, at least Grete and myself will, in case you have some more places to go to," he added. "No, that's all I will come along with you for a few weeks. I have been working quite a bit," said George. Jim looked at him as if he wanted to say "you and your work." But he kept quiet not to offend his brother who after all had shown them a good time.

When they reached the hotel Grete was ready to join them. After a final meal they selected the 4:20 to bring them home.

In a month or so it would have been too late for Grete to undertake such a strenuous trip. For weeks the conversation centered on the trip to New York and Washington.

IMPROVEMENTS MADE ON "JIGGLE LINE"

George's vacation was actually the beginning of serious work and study. The jiggly line bothered him. "How can I straighten that line so that it would not have so many kinks? I shall try some other combinations such as four units on one side and two units on the other, or I can try five units on one side and three on the other. It may give better results. He worked the period from January to May again.

He began to use the following combination: On the advance side he first used four units, carried them out into the next column and out of this second column he again made a new unit, using three units to obtain a third total which he placed into the third column.

On the declining side he used three units to obtain a total for a second column and repeated it into a third column.

A little sketch will illustrate this better than words can convey.

George Wollsten Goes to New York to Trade Stocks and Grains

Advances		Wheat 1910
April 20	0	no advance between dates
21	187	advanced 1 7/8 points
22	112	advanced 1 1/8 points
23	75	advanced 3/4 points
24	75	advanced 3/4 points
26	0	advanced not
27	0	advanced not
28	37	advanced 3/8 points
29	12	advanced 1/8 points
30	50	advanced 1/2 points

The actual Table for the advancing side looked as follows for the period of April 20th to April 30th:

Date	Advances	4 Units	3 Units
April 20	0		
21	187		
22	112		
23	75	375	
25	75	450	
26	0	262	1087
27	0	150	862
28	37	187	600
29	12	50	387
30	50	100	337

First he added the total of advances from April 20th, 21st, 22nd and 23rd, that is four consecutive values which had given him a value of 375. This value placed over into the column marked "4 Units." We note that for April 20th he had placed a 0, because there had been no advance from the preceding day, in fact, the market had declined on April 20th. However, on April 21st, 22nd and 23rd the highs of each of these days had improved, which made him enter the values 187, 112 and 75

George Wollsten, the Expert Grain Trader

for those days. He used points instead of eights to make figuring easier.

The next addition computation included April 21st, 22nd, 23rd and 25th. He had dropped the value that was produced on April 20th. For the 24th he had no value. It was a Sunday. The new value was 450, composed of 187, 112, 75 and once more 75. This 450 he placed on the line of April 25th. To obtain the next value he used April 22nd, 23rd, 25th and 26th, which showed 112, 75, 75 and 0 because on April 26th there was no advance. He had to omit the number 187 of April 21st, else he would have used 5 units instead of four. The new value was 262 which he placed on the line of April 26th next column to the 0. This way he carried out the series carefully.

For the second row marked "3 Units," he now began to make the totals that originated out of the column marked "4 Units," the same way as he had done before, but used 3 units only and not 4 units. Thus, for April 26th he had an entry in the "3" Column amounting to 1087 which was produced as follows: It contained first all the values that were produced since April 20th and that had been carried in units of fours into the first column as 375, 450 and 262. The three had then been added also and carried as a unit into the second column as 1087. On April 27th he had to enter number 862 into the 2nd column, being the addition of 450, 262 and 150 of column marked "4 Units."

This was done for all the months. The same way he proceeded with the declines of the advancing side. At present he produced a snake line that had to do only with the highs of each trading day. The lows of each day had been ignored just then, but later he used the same rules to make one for the lows.

In case wheat had made higher one day compared to the previous day he had to mark 0 in the column because in such case there had been no decline. The pattern for the decline

George Wollsten Goes to New York to Trade Stocks and Grains

Column looked as follows:

	Declines	
April 20	137	declined 1 3/8 points
21	0	no decline
22	0	no decline
23	0	no decline
25	0	no decline
26	63	declined 5/8 points
27	225	declined 2 1/4 points

For the operation of the declining side he used combinations of 3 units for the first column and 2 units for the second column. The pattern looked then as follows:

Date	Declines	3 Units	2 Units
April 20	137		
21	0		
22	0	137	
23	0	0	137
25	0	0	0
26	63	63	63
27	225	225	288

The advancing side was then combined with the declining side and the daily difference calculated by taking for each day the final value. For example on April 26th his number for plotting was 1025 which represented the difference of:

$$\begin{array}{r}
 3 \text{ units value of advances} \quad 1087 \\
 \text{less } 2 \text{ units value of declined} \quad 63 \\
 \hline
 1024
 \end{array}$$

Since quarters do not end in 24 nor halves in 49 or 51, he had to call the value 1025.

George Wollsten, the Expert Grain Trader

It was tedious, painstaking work to compute 5 months of figures that had to be exact and not approximate.

The line improved with the new method. It had not quite as many kinks as were found in the original line, yet it was fooling in places.

In that week he tried some other combinations that promised still better results.

In the meantime grains had drifted still somewhat lower and stopped. Prices idled around until the middle of June.

George had laid his 6-inch ellipse in such a way that its axis ran over the 71° angle downwards. The upper end of the ellipse had been placed into the top of May 9th. He had noticed the lower end of the ellipse fell on June 30th. This was the day when Mercury would reach 0° .

He saw much more.

He noticed that the 78° angle in connection with the ellipse thus laid touched the periphery of the ellipse on June 7th, 1910 and to his astonishment it was there when the "rally top" was made which had begun on June 4th. Not only was this very important to him, but, "Grete! Look!"—she happened to be in the house sewing. She had to look at the high of June 7th; she had to imagine that on June 4th was the hinge of the open door of her chicken coop that was closed every night.

"Now watch," said George. "This uptrend from June 4th to June 7th is your chicken coop door. There is the hinge," he said, pointing to June 4th. "Do you see the way the ellipse lies? This chicken coop door was supposed to be closed so that weasels cannot enter, but someone opened it. Had it been closed, it would have just touched the intersection of the 78° angle as well as the periphery of the ellipse.

The rally was $3\frac{1}{4}$ points and the intersection of the ellipse with the 78° angle is exactly $3\frac{1}{4}$ points below the

George Wollsten Goes to New York to Trade Stocks and Grains

hinge's place of June 4th. Some weasel will get away with the chickens, because it is open! Understand that, Grete?" he asked her. "Perfectly, perfectly, don't I open and close that chicken coop every day. You are not trying to teach me anything about opening and closing my chicken coop"? George had not even heard what she had said, else he might have come back with some of his nasty retributions. "The real low was on June 7th in spite of the fact that the chart shows a low on the 4th and another low on the 13th. That is what fools traders. What time is it Grete?" "We will eat in ten minutes, call Jim. He is in the barn," she answered. "Must be near seven," he muttered as he walked over to call Jim. "Wow, that's a find. I will call Mayer tomorrow to buy at the Market instead of waiting for the 71° angle to be crossed. That angle will be crossed when the weasels come," he said.

George worked once more on his 43-32 combination. He had noticed that the line had worked itself deeply down into the minus side, way below the zero centre line, but on June 10th it had turned around for the first time. "That's another confirmation that the trend is due to change.' It just tells you to buy. I will call at ten. No, I better go down myself and take the first train in the morning. I have several other things to attend to besides," he said.

PLANS TO BUILD AND HIRE HELP ON FARM

At the dinner table he informed Jim and Grete of his intentions to go back to New York, saying that he was not good for anything on the farm as it was. He told them he would send a man to help around, for Grete's sake. Jim really needed help. Grete had to reduce her activities. The chicks were growing into chickens by the hour. It took time to feed the flock, to keep everything in clean condition. Jim could see the point and was just about ready to debate on this subject with

George Wollsten, the Expert Grain Trader

George. George suggested yet that he remove a few apple trees near Schafer's line that had not done so well last year and again this year they were full of leaves but lacked fruit. They had noticed rosin came out of these trees just above the ground. "Build a little house in their place so that the helper will have sleeping quarters. Order lumber tomorrow and get carpenters from the mill. Let them build. I will send you \$1000 as soon as I am back in town to start it. Many people want work. I may be able to find a suitable man for you. I will send up a new dress or two for you, Grete, that will again make you a perfect 36." "You seem to know too much about married life, where did you grow all that knowledge," retorted Grete. "In those Washington books, I presume. You haven't reduced yourself while up here! Look at the front window," she added.

George had noticed himself that the fresh country air, the substantial food, the twelve hours daily at his work table had increased his waistline considerably during the four weeks he now had been on the farm. He thought he would work it off in town in a short time. "I will leave on the first train tomorrow; don't forget to call me," he told them before they retired for the night.

GEORGE BACK IN NEW YORK BUYS WHEAT AT 90 $\frac{1}{4}$

"Back again, Mr. Wollsten," said Mr. Mayer when George had come to the broker at 10:15. "Glad to see you back in the saddle. Your September wheat has not gone up to 94 as yet, so you still are on the side lines," he said. "Cancel that order and make it read 'at Market' ", he said. Peeper had come down from the stocks to greet him, asking where he had kept himself during this hot spell. "I was up State but it was pretty hot there too. Where could a fellow go during the summer to be cooler;" he asked him. "90 $\frac{1}{4}$ bought," called Mayer to

George Wollsten Goes to New York to Trade Stocks and Grains

interrupt the conversation. Such "cutting-in" was natural at the broker, since every one who had orders to be filled was anxious to learn the price obtained. George was satisfied with the price and felt that the week had started nicely. The interruption suited Mr. Peeper well. It gave him a chance to think about a cooler place to answer George's question. "Have you ever been at Atlantic City? They have cool breezes there and a broker's office, too, else, without a broker go up in the Maine woods, around Bangor. There are places out West, but, that's too far away. It would take a week to get there." Where would that be?" asked George. "Somewhere near San Francisco, in California, I heard it was nice and cool during the summer all along the Coast, a little windy, also foggy at times, they say. I never had been there. Eardley told me only a few days ago. He used to live there for many years," he replied. "You mean where they had the big fire a few years ago?" said George. "Yes, Eardley was right in that city then; that's why he left. He is from California, but I have forgotten the place. You know him, don't you? the fellow that plays those puts and calls," said Peeper. "What do you mean by 'Puts and Calls'?" George asked. "Stop kidding," said Peeper, "you as market operator would not know what they are!" "You have shown me a few things on the market already, why do you doubt me when I say I don't know? Is it to my advantage to pretend to know when in fact I know very little and admit it? We can't all be born professors else there would be no pupils to be fed knowledge to," he added. Peeper did not know exactly himself what they were, but he knew that much: they were dangerous. They gave the buyer certain rights to buy or sell stocks within a certain time limit. Points were involved too. An authority on technical parts of markets, Mr. Mayer had to be consulted by both. "Wollsten would like to know what 'Puts and Calls' are," said Peeper. To keep both in the dark and in suspense he told them "that's the very same thing

George Wollsten, the Expert Grain Trader

as 'bids and offers in grains.' "Thanks, professor," said George jokingly, "now explain them to us at the same time, since we are ignorant of them too." "You will pardon me for a while," said Mayer a little nervous, "I will be back as soon as I can, but right now I have to watch several margin calls that expire by eleven . . . (he whispered in George's ear) and aloud "if you really are in earnest." George really had never heard of any of these four things, whatever they might be or mean. Peeper became engulfed again in the tape's action while George thought "there is plenty to learn about trading yet, about simple matters that need no Almanacs nor charts . . ."

PUTS AND CALLS: BIDS AND OFFERS

Mayer was now ready to come back to explain, but George came to him saying, "you had booklets of Stock abbreviations, don't you have any about those new things?" Mayer said he had one somewhere. He began to remove from his lower left drawer papers, charts, newspaper clippings, a tooth brush, two pipes and many other things. It gave him a chance to dispose of these things in the waste basket. "Put and Call Brokers publish those booklets which explain all about trading in them," he muttered a few times, but I can't find the one I have." Suddenly he had a bright idea. He called a Put and Call Broker saying, "send a boy with two booklets, I have a customer for Puts and Calls." Inside of ten minutes he had not only the booklet for Puts and Calls, but also one about Bids and Offers, since George told Mayer right there and then to call a Bid and Offer Broker to send booklets also. Each of the booklets was accompanied by extra sheets, which contained quotations for the week. The Put and Call sheet listed about 20 stocks. The first stock on the list was Baltimore and Ohio. It said: 10 points up for Calls, 8 points down for Puts, 30 days.

George Wollsten Goes to New York to Trade Stocks and Grains

This meant "During a period of 30 days beginning with today the buyer obtains the right to call 100 shares provided the stock would advance during the 30 days 10 points or more. It had to advance nearly 12 points, however, to come out even because there was a cost of \$137.50 per 100 shares, besides the broker's commission for buying them in the open market.

For the declining side the matter was just in reverse. The market for B & O would have to decline at least 10 points before any profit would come forth for the taker of a Put. In normal markets they are difficult to profit by. If one knew however when a big rise was due or a big drop, then a 30 days Call or Put, as the case might be, could produce very big profits. They also had "straddles" quoted, which operated on both sides. They did cost a little more but gave the buyer a chance for up or down in one paper.

Bids and offers operated similarly, but they were used for grains only. They had 1 day bids or offers, 1 week's or 1 month's. In Puts and Calls they had 7 days, 30 days, 60 days and even 90 days time limits with different charges and different point quotations for each unit.

Mayer explained to George that in case he would want any momentary quotes on a certain stock for a Put or a Call he would call his friend, W. P. Price who specializes in Puts and Calls. "He might even shave off a point," he said, "because what he wants and what we bid is different. One has to bargain with them things the same way as in regular trading. And, we might have him use the next sale to write his paper, the one that comes after the deal is agreed." "No, thanks, I want to go to a cool place and asked Peeper about one. What brought us to speak about Puts and Calls I don't remember anymore."

A look on the Board showed that WU had advanced half a point by that time. George thought it a good omen. During

George Wollsten, the Expert Grain Trader

April he had been nipped a few times for a point or two, but had noticed that as soon as he had made a commitment and the market went immediately against him—that was bad. On the other hand, he had noticed that as soon as the first few sales went with his commitment, he was able to close the deal with a profit.

The booklets on Puts and Calls, and on Bids and Offers he took home for his file, marked "Future Reference."

GEORGE BUYS A STAMP COLLECTION

On the way home George walked for once through Nassau Street to explore lower Manhattan. On the way he gradually became "stamp conscious" again. It happened that in this old narrow street were dozens of postage stamp stores who sold stamps to collectors. Force of habit to investigate made him look in the windows at displays, gradually a spirit got hold of him that turned him into a store. He merely wanted to "look," possibly buy a few to just play around with his old hobby for recreation's sake. As it happened, he walked out with a collection containing some 6000 various stamps and a catalogue, that showed the prices. Besides he had bought hinges, tweezers and a magnifying glass to scrutinize those little labels. A watermark detector and perforation gauge he did not forget. He also had bought a shoe box full of mixed stamps, which some office boy had brought in. For the box he paid but three dollars. Of its contents he expected to have more fun than even of the collection. He used to collect stamps as a youngster. With them he travelled all over the globe. He had the Liberian Elephant, the Australian Ostrich, the Venezuelan Columbus stamp among his treasures.

Four days he was gone to the world. Only hunger made him leave the stamps for a while. Even wheat was neglected; He did not care whether it went down or up. But, to find in the shoe box a penny stamp that was not as yet in his

George Wollsten Goes to New York to Trade Stocks and Grains

collection, that was important! Mayer had to call him twice a day to give him at least some prices.

A few minutes ago he had called him excitedly stating that wheat was up to 97 already for September option, and adding that July option was even stronger. "OK with me, keep pushing, thanks just the same," said George. He stopped for a while to get back his senses, because, he said "am I a stamp fiend or a grain trader?"

Like one who comes out of a daze, he remembered that he had to watch Mercury when it was due to cross the 0° point. He was even behind with his chart entries. He had to catch up figuring his 43-32 line whose entries had stopped the day he had left Upper Red Hook. He had not written to the folks either. "They know weeds keep growing," he said, "but I better write." This is what he wrote: "Dear Grete & Jim: "Am collecting stamps now; will write later; also will look for the boy soon. Sincerely, George."

"There he goes" said Grete, he starts with some other foolish thing now, collecting postage stamps. Who ever heard of that? And here he adds 'Save all the stamps of the envelopes that come but leave the teeth on them.' "Many people collect stamps, others collect coins, minerals, match boxes, the same way as we collect eggs and apples pretty soon," said Jim.

The letter made George think about the farm hand. During the evening he spoke to Mr. Holten about finding a suitable man. A few days later Holten introduced a couple to him, Robert and Paula whom he thought would be able to fill the place. George explained them their duties, told them they would receive \$40.00 a month and found. Robert was to help the brother, Paula was to assist in the kitchen and tend to the flock of chickens. "If after a while you can find something better go to it," said George. Overjoyed at finding a job the newly landed couple agreed to accept. Robert told

George Wollsten, the Expert Grain Trader

George that they had brought along their own bedding, also a commode that was in the family for nearly two hundred years and came across filled with useful things.

"We can go up right now together," said George. To-morrow is Sunday. We can catch the 4:20 if we hurry. Holten was happy that he had given some one a start again.

No doubt, other representatives of that philanthropic Society acted in a similar way with Dutchmen, Poles, Russians or Greeks, working up connections with business men, farmers, etc., who were willing to take a chance with immigrants to give them a start. They had to become absorbed somehow and somewhere of which the general public never knew anything of.

In the hurry to catch the train George even forgot to lock the door, but told Holten in the lobby to take care of that. They took a cab and caught their train just on time. About 9 o'clock in the evening they reached their destination. Grete and Jim were just about ready to turn in. It was getting dark when the trio walked up to the house. "Do you see what I see?" asked Grete as she looked out of the window to have a last look if everything was in order outside. "One of those squirrels again knocking off our apples?" he said. "No, guess again!" By this time he saw George. "That's him all over" he said to Grete as he walked to the door. "It's a couple for us" said Grete.

Somehow it was arranged that all could find sleeping accommodations as the lights went out near midnight.

The next day, after church, George went thoroughly into details about the way Jim should proceed with his farm. He felt that his own work was getting crowded. He told him to train the couple carefully so that they would have assistants

George Wollsten Goes to New York to Trade Stocks and Grains

for a long time. He spoke about the new house that he should make it larger and more comfortable and use it for themselves, and leave the new couple in the old house. "About farming that's your business. I tried to steer you in the right commercial way of conducting it. From now on I won't butt into your affairs anymore. Only if you should need money for expansion, tell me. If I have it, it's yours," he added.

After a pleasant afternoon he left again for New York, wishing the new people a good beginning.

Back in New York that night, he again went at his stamps, pasted and transferred until daylight. He had not thought of sleep. Those labels had such magnetic forces in them that he just could not keep away. Each stamp that was pasted was checked off in the catalogue so that he would know just what he had. Some stamps were printed on watermarked paper, the same kind might be without a watermark. There were stamps on wove paper, ribbed, thin, granite, laid paper, etc. Some stamps with certain perforations commanded much higher prices than with other perforations. Color differentials were important. "There is a lot to learn about stamps," he said, "but I have to stop for a day." It was five o'clock.

About eleven Mr. Mayer called "Mr. Wollsten, wheat just crossed the buck, now an eighth, a quarter." George rubbed his eyes as he listened. "Say that again, I didn't hear right" he said. "Your September wheat is right now at 1.00 1/4" came Mayer. "Sell all of mine at the market" said George. "Okey-doke" retorted Mayer and hung up.

After George got dressed to resume his stamp session Mr. Mayer was back on the phone. "Sold 15M at 1.00 1/8, Mr. Wollsten" he said. "Alright, I shall see you to-morrow" was George's answer.

George Wollsten, the Expert Grain Trader

"That's about \$1,500.—in two weeks" George figured in his mind." "Those Swedes used to have nice stamps when they first issued them," he continued admiring them in his album. He jumped from Sweden to Zanzibar, but had no stamps thereof, so retraced and landed in India of which he had a large assortment, mostly with the head of Queen Victoria.

We must note that George was of a type that could jump from one subject to another without much difficulty. While he pasted stamps or tested watermarks and perforations he thought up ideas how to straighten the line into better shape so that it would kick over a day before the change of trend would come, both at a low as well as at a high. He knew the combination which he used was not quite right. He had not counted how many hours were spent to straighten the line so far, but it had become straighter. The original crude line of Mr. Peeper was not even recognizable anymore. He did not even remember how his first notes read. George had another ability. He could forget quickly anything that was unimportant or burdensome. Rotolo's ideas he had never put to test as yet, because it would require his presence at the Board to keep tab of each fluctuation. He felt he could make money faster especially if he would apply ellipses with such plottings, but, he said "no use getting rich too fast. If I would use the 71° angle and the 78° angle also with such a sale to sale charts, I may get things down too fine and might mistake a few grass blades for a church steeple. I would be jumping around like a chicken without a head. I better leave well enough alone, for right now" he added.

*George Wollsten Goes to New York to Trade Stocks and Grains***SURVEY OF SITUATION**

The 30th of June had been uppermost in his mind. It was the main reason why he sold out. He had made \$3,000 in such a short time that he felt it was time to survey the situation to see what he had achieved before looking for additional profits.

His first major discovery was Jupiter, Saturn and Mercury. Of next importance he considered the ellipses in combination with the planets' crossing by fitting their setting into such crossings. He could not do without the 71° and 78° angle. The next important help was in the jiggle line of advances and declines in combination.

"All these things can be used also for stocks," he said, "in case I would want to trade stocks for a change, or cotton or some other commodity."

Rotolo's idea did not leave him. He thought it needed some sort of a change, the same as was the case with Peeper's.

THE 10 KOPEC STAMP—DISCOVERY OF "POLISH ELLIPSE"

George was just about ready to paste the 10 kopec stamp of Poland into his collection. It was the only stamp that country ever had issued. "A page with just one stamp! probably they did not write very much," he said—and—kept thinking of Rotolo.

"I think, I will go the other way. Instead of plotting sale by sale, I will plot the bigger swings, four points or more in extent, but plot them in time proportions on a very small scale. I shall use one point for each little line on my chart and as to time I shall call one square across one month. This he did.

The pattern produced is shown as an insert on the wheat chart of 1910-1911.

George Wollsten, the Expert Grain Trader

In 10 minutes he had the picture in miniature properly proportioned and usable. The ellipse could not be used. However, he soon invented something new that would be useful. He put on his thinking cap, and just for fun began to measure with his 6" ellipse the size of the 10 kopec stamp for height and width. He did so with the center of the ellipse. He found that the height of the Polish 10 Kopec was as wide as $1/2$ of the $1/2$ of his axis, while the width measured exactly $3/4$ of that $1/2$. Why did they decide to make that lonely stamp just $1/2$ as tall as $1/2$ of my minor axis and why $3/4$ as wide as this half of the $1/2$ of the minor axis?

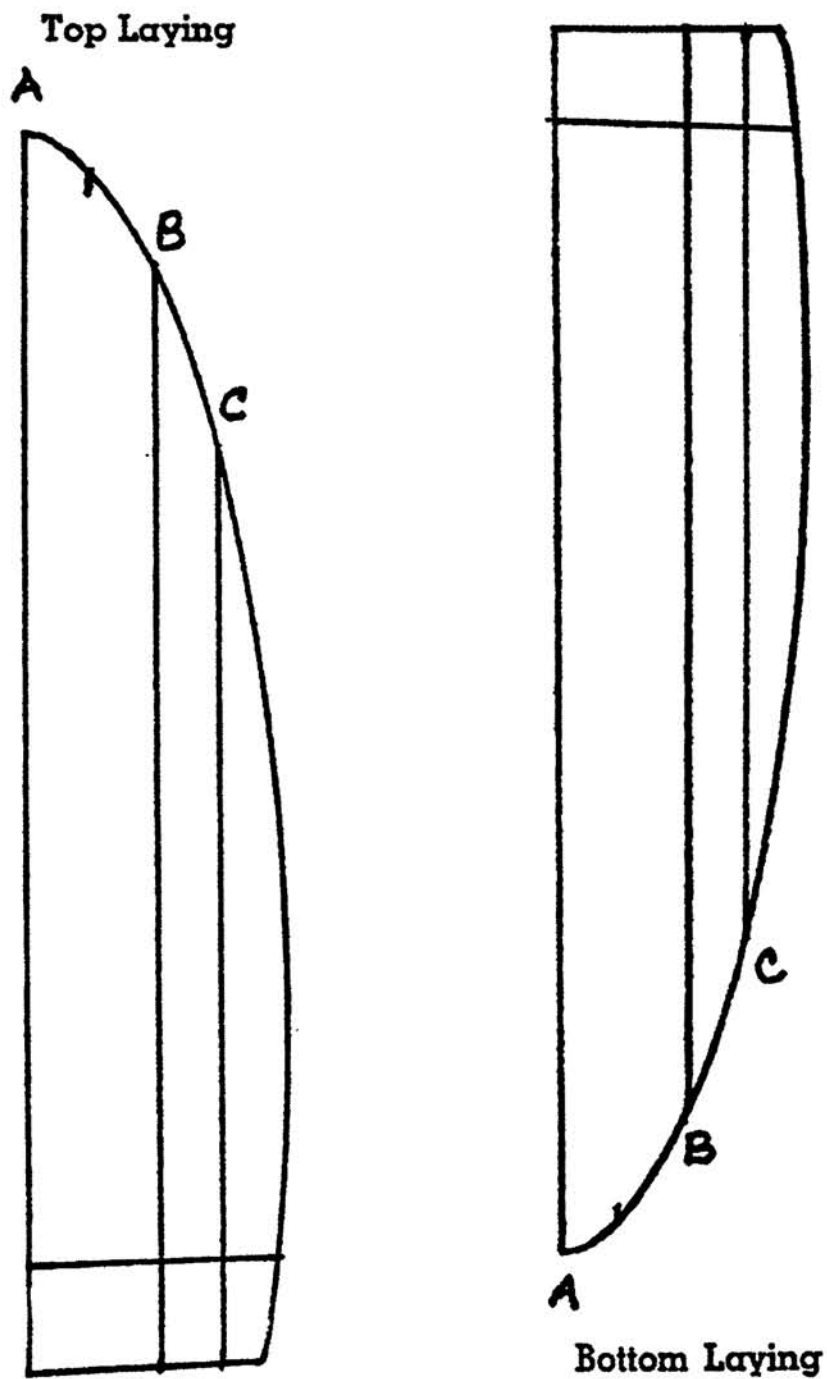
This is what he did then: He divided the half minor axis of the 6" ellipse into four parts and drew lines through the points. He drew them parallel to the major axis, but omitted the first quarter line next to the centre axis for certain reasons. He merely made a small mark where its beginning should be.

The exact size and construction of this small gadget is shown on page 191. (The Polish Ellipse).

This was the rule he formulated for himself: At a major low set low point (marked A) of this "Quarter Ellipse" at the low point straight up, curve to the right. As we move up, watch for reactions amounting to 4 points or more. If and when one such reaction occurs, then move the gadget away from the low and set it into the reaction low place with the middle line, marked B straight up. On the following reaction of 4 points or over shift the gadget again and set the $3/4$ line to the new location low. This point is marked C. Set it always straight up, never sidewise or at an angle. Now: whenever the ellipse is broken by the performance of wheat, then the trend changes completely.

George Wollsten Goes to New York to Trade Stocks and Grains

The "Polish Ellipse"



*George Wollsten, the Expert Grain Trader***APPLICATION OF "POLISH ELLIPSE"**

As soon as the trend did change, Alladin changed his lamp. In Thousand and One Nights the story says that Alladin's palace had been moved from China to Africa. In this case the Polish Ellipse is now set on top, pointing downwards and the performance repeated the down way, shifting it whenever a 4 point move or more happens in form of a rally, until the width of the ellipse is completely passed through.

Checking past performances he noticed that extreme moves within one such "Quarter Ellipses" could amount to as much as the length of it. He had noticed this situation particularly during the Phillippines War of 1899.

He demonstrated for himself the action and setting of this new invention for the period of April to the present time.

George set the low point of the "Polish Ellipse" into his minature chart on April 20th when it had made 1.03, after the reaction from April 25th to 29th he had to shift it so that point B was the guide. The next shift had to happen when a 5 point reaction set in on May 9th. This time the "Polish Ellipse" was set to the new of May 11th with point marked C at this low.

He had noticed how the price had crept up inside of the ellipse curve to near the old top of May 9th, but then it fell out of the narrow space. "So that," he said, "I should have sold more as we declined and nothing would have had to be feared, since a brand new move had begun that belonged to a new "Polish Ellipse." Here I have to set the ellipse downward and consider the May 9th top as the first place, the May 13th top as the second place to shift that is point B whose line goes to that top. Point C will have to be set into the May 25th top, even though wheat rallied but 3 3/4 points, but I have to use my judgment too and not just cold inflexible rules... This procedure would have made

George Wollsten Goes to New York to Trade Stocks and Grains

me cover and buy wheat around 93 in June, as soon as the line of the "Polish Ellipse was broken upwards.

(The same way he would have proceeded with his operations in the subsequent upswing which if he had followed that rule to the dot, would have taken him out of long positions and caused him to go short around 1.07 by July 21st or 22nd, 1910.)

"Now, into the album with you, you good for nothing" he said, "you are damaged, two perforations are missing on you, and besides, at the catalogue cost price of \$5.00 you should look better."

"When Mercury comes to 0° I shall leave for San Francisco to see something of the West. I don't even know where they grow wheat—before they take the harvest home" he continued, switching into an entirely different line of thought all of sudden. After I see once the Pit at Chicago, I shall continue until the train stops on the Pacific Coast.

George withdrew some money from the broker's account. Mr. Mayer had told him he should use either direct or give-up orders through another broker. "Any broker will execute your order if you state that your account is with us," said Mayer.

A day or two went by to purchase the necessary equipment for the trip. One of the new-fangled ward robe trunks had long been on his "want list." It was the first article he bought. Two summer suits, linen, fancy shoes, hiking boots and even a swimming suit together with other articles he purchased. He had to call Sepp Muller to cancel the fishing trip that had been arranged for the 4th of July. His stamp collection including the shoe box with stamps, the catalogue and other paraphernalia went into the ward robe trunk, which he had shipped on the ticket. All that he carried was a suit case and an overnight bag. He said good-bye to Mr. Holten who was greatly surprised to see him leave so suddenly for the other side of the country.

*George Wollsten, the Expert Grain Trader***OFF TO THE PIT AT CHICAGO**

The 4:20 carried him off towards Chicago. The train did not stop at Upper Red Hook, since it was but a small place. He used a sleeper this time, a novelty which he enjoyed greatly. The seats were more comfortable, small tables had been supplied which allowed him to enter his charts. Quotations he had from the "Evening Mail" of which he was able to obtain a copy before his departure. He began to read the newspaper to pass the time, looking once in a while at the scenery that passed. He had dinner. When he came back he found his bed all made ready by a porter. George retired early; he needed some extra sleep. The stamps and the "Polish Ellipse" had upset him a little, not speaking of the trip into the unknown.

At dawn he raised the shades to peep and survey the whereabouts of his train. Pastures, fences, a few trees here and there, also several farm houses passed in quick succession. A large station, marked "South Bend" was reached. It was a quiet city with some factories that just awoke from its last night in June. He had an early breakfast on the train and by eight o'clock sharp La Salle Street Station was reached. He had no idea of Chicago. All he knew was that it had the "Wheat Pit."

George soon found a suitable hotel. A clerk gave him directions how to find the Grain Pit, how he had to go about to be allowed to see it in person.

At 9:30 he witnessed the opening of grains from an open balcony high above the actual trading floor. He saw three rings, some six feet in diameter of shiny iron structure. Brokers were standing around them, awaiting patiently the signal to begin trades. The customers for whom they bought or sold grains were located all over the world. They, too, were waiting at brokers' offices with their eyes glued to a small wheel to see what would happen.

Bang, bang, sounded a bell! In a split second loud voices,

George Wollsten Goes to New York to Trade Stocks and Grains

hand waving, fingers flew into the air that belonged to the floor traders assembled around the rings.

The first day of July was really a wild day, as wild as they can make them in the Pit. George could not make out prices whatsoever. Once in a while he thought he heard someone cry "a quarter," then "three eighths." To the left he noticed a giant Board on which boys began to mark prices. They had some contraptions hanging around their heads. Giant letters showed sections for wheat, corn, oats, rye and barley. Smaller letters indicated by K, N, U, Z, marked the months of the options. Underneath he could now see the quotations marked with chalk, that is the actual sales that had just occurred.

He saw his September wheat had opened at 97 $\frac{3}{8}$ to 97 $\frac{1}{4}$ on what is termed a "split-opening." Such situations occur when too much is offered (in a declining market just then). First all that is taken at 97 $\frac{3}{8}$ would be absorbed, however, some of the opening orders might not have been filled. They will be taken up one eighth lower and yet are considered as part of the opening.

The price reacted quickly to 97 $\frac{1}{8}$, but right now the price was 97 $\frac{3}{8}$. Some visitor of the gallery had pointed to the rye pit. Less people were assembled around its ring. A little further beyond was the Oats pit. "There does not seem to be much trading in them just at this time" said the stranger. "They don't plant much of it anyhow, of late," he continued. "Wheat is our main crop isn't it?" he asked George to keep up the conversation.

But George was watching wheat. "Yesterday it had touched 97 $\frac{1}{4}$ and to-day with all the transactions it would not go lower, besides, there are several holidays coming and, what about Mercury at 0°? . . . "George walked off. He was looking for a broker. He had seen the Pit. He decided to buy wheat right now, because, he said "the trend has changed

George Wollsten, the Expert Grain Trader

over night. Wheat may come back even as far as the 1.16 level of the old May option" (which was equal to the 1.14 level of the September option).

He found soon a broker on the ground floor, went in and placed an order to buy 20M bushels "at the market," giving him the name of his broker at New York. He had waited a while, when the clerk came and handed him a slip which showed that he had bought 10M September wheat at 97 1/2 but for the other two he had to pay 97 5/8.

He soon left the place, took a walk through the "Loop," the business Centre of the City. "Just about as much turmoil, running and racing to get places as there is in New York," he remarked. When he came back, his suit case and trunk were at his room. It was hot in Chicago. 101° it was yesterday, so the paper said. "But I had left New York for cooler places. Of this heat I've had enough in New York. Such hot weather should help ripen grains as well as give the farmers a chance to harvest. One would think such favorable weather would drop grain prices! But I have it, that they are bound to rise, weather or no weather. Two weeks ago they said that the first car of this year's crop had arrived at Chicago on June 11th from Oklahoma. It found takers immediately, because of its quality. "I don't blame them," thought George, "while it could be had at 90 cents."

He had spied a big fan in his room which made his stay quite comfortable. He began to work with his stamps for a while, but had to give up the idea on account of the fan. Disk throwers of Greece would mix with whales of New Foundland, Victorias became mixed with the Chinese dragons. He just packed everything back into his trunk, took a walk with the set purpose to make reservation for a berth next morning to continue his journey.

CHAPTER VII

GEORGE WOLLSTEN CONTINUES TRADING IN THE WEST

GEORGE REACHES SAN FRANCISCO



FEW DAYS LATER—the holidays were over—we find George emerging from the Ferry Building at San Francisco. He looked like a "Greenhorn" at the maze of trolleys that circled around in front of him. He was greatly surprised that within four years a large city had again been built over the damage done by the destructive fire of April 18, 1906. Building still was going on at many places. The temperature was much cooler here, but through the mountains it had been very hot. Breathing was easier. He engaged a room at a hotel, but soon made a decision to look for a more permanent place, possibly with some family.

On the 5th Saturn had been crossed by Mercury; that was at the time while he had crossed the great salt beds of Utah. "Since Jupiter had turned the trend downwards last May, I have to expect Saturn will turn the trend upwards now," he said.

He bought a paper at Kearny and Third and saw that wheat had made a gap upwards to run an additional two and a quarter cents. It had closed on Saturday at 98 5/8.

"My results should turn out favorable all over," he remarked. I left New York with Mercury at freezing, I mean 0°, now Saturn being passed by Mercury wheat runs up fast, at the same time I am at a new place which I intend to make my

George Wollsten, the Expert Grain Trader

home. I see things run pretty much my way, provided I do not overstep or take too many chances . . . I will have to follow what I have learned and mastered. I will have to take one wrung of the ladder after the other."

At the hotel desk they informed him that a broker's office was in the building. They just were ready to close for the day, but allowed him to have a glance at the Board. The quotations of the newspaper had been correct. The next few hours he used to walk through the City's streets, had an evening meal at some restaurant which was followed by a good night's rest after the long journey.

George was out bright and early the next morning. He went to the broker. Grains had opened there at 7:30, against 10:30 at New York. He found markets opened strong, receded a little, then made new highs. "That's all I wanted to see" he said. "I am going to look for a place to get settled down." Equipped with a newspaper he boarded a trolley. After a while he decided to get off. It said "Lyon Street." "That name sounds good to me; grains may be only bullish, but they can be leonic at times, as when they come up from 90 for example, cross 100 and keep going. He walked slowly into a street that led up hill. The houses appeared of the two family type whose apartments extended from the street deeply into the lots. Many of them has six or seven rooms. He noticed signs "Rooms for rent, furnished or unfurnished." "I'll try one to find out. He who don't try, can't find out." He rang the bell of the third house. A lady, about 40 years of age answered the door bell. "I see you have a room for rent. Can I look at it?" He walked into a nicely laid out apartment, moderately but neatly furnished. Everything was clean. The way led through a spacious front room with a piano, followed by the dining room that opened into a long hall. One of the side doors led to the kitchen. Beyond were several bedrooms. He was shown to the last room that contained just

George Wollsten Continues Trading in the West

what he wanted: a big table and built-in book shelves and, a view that made him gasp. "You have a beautiful view over the sand dunes from here or what are these hills?" "These are real sand dunes. The ocean is beyond. You can see the Cliff House in the distance too," said the lady. "I am a stranger around here, just arrived from New York. I work at home quite a bit, usually rather late nights to do some research, but I make no noise whatever. Have you a telephone? I need one," said George. "You may have one put in in a few days" answered the lady. "Is there a chance to have meals with you? I am fed up eating out three times a day. I am satisfied with any good home cooked food. Just say yes, I like this room, you appear to be an excellent cook. I can get my baggage from down town immediately and get settled down. There is a lot of work awaiting me." Mrs. Nancy Branche was delighted to have a chance to rent her room. For months she had been trying to rent, but nobody even looked at it. Her husband, an Alsatian had bought the house about a year ago. The payments on it had been a little high for their income. They had quite some expense fitting it up. The spare room had been intended as a study for their only daughter, Gusty, who just was graduated from Junior College. Last Winter illness kept Mr. Branche at home. He used to sell imported delicacies for an Importing House. His trade would first send orders directly, but other salesmen were elbowing in to take away orders here and there. In short, the little family was pretty hard up, the reason for attempting to rent out a room.

Madame Branche had sized up George. He had appeared to her a desirable roomer, but, about meals of that she would not approve. Their table had been very meager. At times they would have but toast and milk for supper, leaving an odd lamb chop for father. Besides, she had no idea what to charge for such service. George could readily see how anxious she was to have the room rented and yet, something was wrong of

George Wollsten, the Expert Grain Trader

which he did not think. In order to give her a chance to think matters over he went to the window to admire the scenery. "Is it always as clear as to-day?" he asked, to change the subject. "We have more fog mornings than we had over in the Mission district," she said, "but by eleven it's usually gone." She never thought that fog might prevent the man from taking the room. Since no other answer was forthcoming, George said to her "I am going to rent the room anyhow, whether you give me something to eat or not. I'll simply eat out. How much is it?" "Four dollars a week, too much?, Mr.?" she asked inquiringly, "or three-fifty" she added quickly. "Wollsten is my name, George Wollsten" he said. "I will pay you five dollars a week with an option to get meals later on, after you know me a little. I want a home life, if I can get one," he added. "You know, my sister-in-law up State, I mean in New York State has spoiled me. I lived there with my brother and sister-in-law for a while, but the town was a small place of only 2,000 people. I was too far away from business. Here are \$22.00 to cover one month's rent in advance for the room. By that time you can tell me about the meals."

George marked down the street and number. "Mrs. Branche, isn't it?" he said. He had seen the name at the doorbell.

An hour later George was installed in his new place, "the Castle" as he called it, from which he could see the open spaces and work at the same time. Now he was away from heat. While down town he ordered a telephone installed.

Tickers had not reached as far as San Francisco at that time. Everything was done by telegraph. Board boys, equipped with ear phones dragged wires along with them so that they could listen to the ticks of the telegraph that was in a corner through which quotations came from the East. Price quotations would come in batches. For a while there were all rail prices, then grains, followed by prices for industrials, then cotton and so on.

*George Wollsten Continues Trading in the West***THE FAMILY BRANCHE**

In the evening Mrs. Branche knocked at George's door, telling him that she would like to introduce her family members. George came with her to the dining room. There was father Branche, a man of about 45 and Gusty, their daughter sitting at the dinner table. Probably the situation about the new roomer had been fully discussed, also about his desire to have meals with the family. Gusty made a little curtsy, then resumed her place, while the father, a man grown up in the selling game asked him to join them with a cup of coffee, because they just had finished dinner. In less than an hour George knew the whole list of specialties sold by Jacques Branche, where they came from, their brands and labels. He learned of Edam Cheese, of Lingue di Passero, of Kieler Sprotten as well as of Pate de Foie gras as much as he needed.

"Your various Antipasti have created an enormous appetite in me, that you have to excuse me for an hour. I am going to eat something somewhere," said George. The long conversation had given him an opportunity to size up the girl. Whenever he had the chance he would attempt to get her into the conversation to get acquainted with her. Gusty was a pleasant happy sort of a girl.

Suddenly George brought up his nerve and simply asked the parents whether they would allow Gusty to come with him to find a suitable place to eat, since "I am a complete stranger in this town." I haven't had anything to eat since 2 o'clock except two cookies which I found in my suit case. I surely will bring her back safely within an hour."

After the speech George did not dare to even glance at Gusty to see what her reactions would be. Father Branche consented, of course, saying, he never thought of that and to Gusty "bring Mr. Wollsten down to Tait's. They have good food." Gusty quickly disappeared to get ready, while mother Branche was happy.

George Wollsten, the Expert Grain Trader

She had come from Luxembourg. The people of the little country which is squeezed between France, Belgium and Germany speak a German slang that nobody can understand except themselves. Only in the southernmost part around the Capital City of Luxembourg do they speak French. She had taught Gusty that language while father Branche had taught her quite a bit of French that helped in school.

Within five minutes Gusty was ready. George had gone to his room to fetch his hat. Mother Branche said laughingly as they left "be sure, don't lose each other, else you might not find back in the dark."

DINNER AT TAIT'S

The young couple walked spryly down towards the trolley station. "Miss Gusty," said George, "you do me a great favor to take me some place to eat. I am starved. When I found the room this morning I never dreamed that your mother had such lovely daughter." She had not said a word. "How could I guess it?" he continued, "May be this is the reason why she did not want to let me have meals at your house." They boarded a Geary car that brought them down town. The conversation had drifted to his trip from New York across the country. Gusty had never been there. "Did you not like New York?" she said. "One way I liked it, the other way I did not. I could make money there, but I never had an opportunity to get acquainted with a charming young lady, such as . . . Miss Gusty," he answered. "This is Van Ness Ave," said Gusty, "one of the big cross streets, just a few blocks further we get off. You watch; when you see Jones Street then one block further." "I will do as you want me to, Miss Gusty and report as soon as I see the sign. You know, New York was an awful place compared to San Francisco! I can see that now, at least with me it was so. There were too many people in New York. Here, I have now a little "Castle," that's what I said to

George Wollsten Continues Trading in the West

myself to-day at your home without knowing that a sweet little lady lived there too," said George. "Here we are now" said Gusty. "Let's get off before we have to walk back. They walked down to Tait's, an old, well known place. It was worth the extra twenty minutes ride. Without making inquiry of Miss Gusty, George ordered everything for two. He had a feeling as if she might say "no, thanks." That was out, as far as he was concerned.

Gusty had never been out alone with anyone except with some girls. She had immediately taken a liking to George as soon as he had spoken a few words at the table. Intuition, so natural for boys and girls assisted her. Besides, Saturn was favorably inclined at that time, unknown to her, of course.

SATURN—STOCK MOVEMENTS

"Even the scythe man can smile at times" thought George. "But he smiles usually at Grain traders, whereas Stock traders do not seem to have too much luck with him," he added. As it was, grains had risen sharply since mid-June, while stocks rallied only for 10 days and declined again after July 4th contrary to the movements of grains. Saturn was against stocks at this time.

George had noticed this as he checked previous years that every time when stocks did not follow grains, especially in secondary movements, after an important top had been made and the secondary rise would occur such as the June rise of 1910. If, instead of continuing with grains upwards, stocks quiet down, drift sidewise or slightly lower, then something is wrong. After all, grains are but a part of the general economic structure, whereas stocks represent the complete economy, that is all the factors of our economic life.

We may have a bumper grain crop, while the boll weevil may eat up the cotton down south. The one commodity would decline, the other would rise on that account. Anyone can un-

George Wollsten, the Expert Grain Trader

derstand this whether he knows something about Jupiter and Saturn or not.

These thoughts ran swiftly through his brains while he enjoyed the grand meal and the company of a pleasant girl. Gusty felt herself in grand state. After a while they returned home. The parents still were sitting at the table. He thanked all three for the favor and retired to his room.

WHEAT MOVEMENT MAY-JULY 1910

He had work to do. The charts had to be entered, the Jiggle line had to be brought up to date.

He was just sizing up the situation:

From the high of May 9th, 1910, which was at 1.16 1/4 wheat had dropped to 88 3/8 or 27 7/8 points in a little more than one month. If I consider the flop-over from June 4th to 7th, it had actually dropped 30 3/8 points. I remember having seen at other periods such 30 3/8 points movements. They seem to represent one unit of a decline or of a rise, in case they occur upwards. Therefore, this low of 88 1/2 should form an important resistance level for quite some time. We can come back to it, of course, after this present rise is over.

In the top area we had been in the 1.10-1.14 range nearly all Spring with two sharp peaks at 1.16. I doubt, if we will get much above 1.10 this time.

On the way down from May 9th two gaps had been made, one at 1.07 1/2, the other at 1.05. Near the end we had the necessary downward "Exhaustion Gap" over Decoration Day between 94 and 93 1/4.

Such gaps of a major decline are usually closed when the trend reverses like nature covers everything with growth again after the ploughman had cut his furrows in his fields. The furrows should represent the declines.

"One of those gaps has been closed to-day, the one at 1.05. I will wait for the last gap to be closed, the one at 1.07 1/2

George Wollsten Continues Trading in the West

and sell when it is closed. The strength at the time of closing such a gap should last for a couple of days anyhow, because traders are prone to begin buying at those places."

The descent had been on the 71° angle. "I see that the present rise is also running pretty well along that same angle, only upwards, but the whole structure looks somewhat weaker here compared to the picture that had been produced on the declining side last May."

"We have nearly passed through half of the 6" ellipse when I set it into the low of $88 \frac{3}{8}$ and let the major axis run through the 71° angle. The centre of the 6" ellipse will be reached on July 9th at 1.05. The next crossing of Jupiter is due on August 6th." "Ah," he said, "that is where the end of the ellipse comes which is set in the low of $88 \frac{3}{8}$ and which has been set into the 71° upwards! So, we could rise until August 6th to make top when Jupiter crosses, but—that would produce new highs, which is not well possible from other indications that I use."

If I only could improve that "jiggle line" just a little bit! That thing kicks over sometimes too soon, sometimes too late. It tries to fool me, yet, there is something to that line. Nobody can talk me out of that!"

FINAL ADJUSTMENT OF "JIGGLE LINE" TO 54-33

He got busy trying another combination of adding those numbers. This time he used for the advances 5 units and in the second column 4 units. On the declining side he left things as they had been: for the first column 3 units, for the second 2 units. It was 3 A. M. before he had reworked the line from January to the present day.

"Still kinks," he said next afternoon when he continued his work. That minus side may need a raise of one notch, because, whenever we have two days of decline in succession followed by a sidewise movement of a few days that line kicks

George Wollsten, the Expert Grain Trader

over for want of weight. The numbers disappear too fast." He raised the declining side from the 3-2 units up to 3-3 units, so that each column of the minus side had three units.

By midnight the line was refigured and plotted on the chart, as shown for the period of early April to July 1910 in an insert of the big wheat chart of 1910-1911.

He looked at and compared the wheat movements above. The line had kicked over on May 8-9 when its value was very high. It had kicked over on June 2-3, when its value was way down in the minus side. True, there was a kick up for two or three days in the middle of May, but from checking past periods during the next few days he noticed that if they do happen, they usually are important top days on which or during which additional commitments should be made.

It even did happen in past cycles that the line would rush straight up with price advancing rapidly, then the line would turn down, but the price itself would hold firm around top levels and even begin a new rise, provided the line did fall precipitiously. When the "jiggle line" was just about ready to turn up for a last short kick, grain prices would rise very sharply yet to new highs and then make top. The reason for such action he found was hidden in the values that dropped out each day.

PHENOMENA FOUND IN THE "JIGGLE LINE"

He soon found out that he even could figure a day ahead already how the line would have to look the next following day.

He knew the closing price of the day and assumed this price to be the high of the next day, as if the market would have just one sale. Then he figured the imaginary advance as well as decline to that closing number on a strip of extra paper. That way he could judge direction for each successive day in a rough and ready way.

George Wollsten Continues Trading in the West

George further noticed that each segment of the "jiggle line" had different sizes, beginning with small on either end, increasing up to the middle and decreasing gradually again until it would turn around. From such mechanical, normal increase and decrease and from figuring every day the estimated value point for the next day, based on the closing price, much advantage was gained. He could have made some quick short commitments of a day or two, had he wanted to. But, he said, "I rather trade for church steeples than blades of grass."

His "Polish Ellipse" had to be set into the line Marked C for the low of July 1st. While it had but a very narrow margin left to crawl up in, he decided to hold his commitments until his "Polish Ellipse" would be broken. It had become one of his most valuable indicators.

The new 54-33 series were now developed back over a period of 10 years to see how the patterns repeated and where flaws or trouble had developed, if any.

Several weeks had now passed since the job was completed. He discovered that even the "jiggle line" ran inside of ellipses. He found that the length of the jiggle line up or down, was quite often of the same length as the actual wheat performance, in spite of the fact that they had no relation to each other, since the one was based on price, the other merely on the differentials of advances and declines, not only that, but its construction had rather complicated proportions.

About all this George was not too much surprised. Ellipses and planets, jiggle lines and "Polish Ellipse" had become his flesh and blood. What did he care whether it rained or snowed, whether the crop reports were bullish or bearish, whether they shipped the first car of wheat on June 11th or by the end of August . . . "Those things may be used by others if they care to. I use that what gives results!" he said.

*George Wollsten, the Expert Grain Trader***PERSONAL APPLICATIONS OF RULES**

"Since everything moves in ellipses, grain trends and "Jiggle lines," planets or what have we, I myself, must also be moving upwards at the 71° angle. Each next thing turns out better than the previous," he continued.

"My low had been made the day I landed in New York. The first rise occurred at Upper Red Hook. The next rise happened when I began to trade grains, followed by a gap up when I decided to go to San Francisco. There is still another gap due to come before I reach a top in my personal ellipse, whose length of course is different from that of markets. I need a wife, that's going to be the next gap up! I think Gusty would be my ideal, if I can win her. That would crown my success" he mused.

It gradually became a habit with the young folks. Gusty had to bring George for dinner from now on. Various places had been chosen by her. They became more and more friendly. In a short time she would take care of the "Jiggle chart." They would admire his stamps and have Saturday afternoon outings.

Such close friendship developed which brought them to a point where they discovered, at least George did, that life does not consist only trading grains and gathering profits, but that a companion was necessary who would share his success.

REASONS FOR SELLING ON JULY 21ST 1910

George sold his wheat on July 21st and went short at the same time for these reasons:

- (1) The jiggle line had bent over.
- (2) The "Polish Ellipse" had been crossed which had been set into the low of July 1st with its line marked C.
- (3) Wheat had made three gaps upwards: on June 20th, over the holidays and on July 15th, a fourth gap made had been closed.

George Wollsten Continues Trading in the West

- (4) Whereas from June 13th to July 1st the movement had trailed up on the left side of the 71° angle, but after the holidays it had run up below that angle and the distance from the low of June 13th to July 1st was just one half of the entire distance up to July 17th.
- (5) July 21st the 9" ellipse when set into the low of June 13th along the 71° had just reached its centre place.
- (6) The Mercury line connecting Saturn and Jupiter was on that day just exactly at half, a place which had often caused a change of trend.
- (7) Wheat prices had reached the area from last January to May 9th from which level the big decline had started.
- (8) A 20 cents advance in a little more than one month with but one reaction amounting to four cents or over put the market technically in a weak condition.

George had pointed out to Gusty these details one after the other, concluding with "That's why it's time to make hay while the Sun shines"—and, taking her around the waist, he pressed a long sweet kiss to her lips. "I love you, dear," he told her as she looked with bewilderment in his eyes, but had responded to it subconsciously. She herself had quietly a flame glowing for a few weeks or longer. She had noticed George's occasionally "planned movements" to reach for a pencil, to help her put dots in the charts, in fact, many other things she had noticed that went slightly beyond strict etiquette.

Mother Branche would bring milk or coffee around ten o'clock telling Gusty that it was time for her to retire. Even Pa Branche had to peep once in a while through the door to find out how the charts were progressing. They all had long begun to like George.

PLANS OF MARRIAGE FOR NOVEMBER 5, 1910

Time kept marching on. George had seen that on November 5th of that year Jupiter would again be crossed by Mercury.

George Wollsten, the Expert Grain Trader

"That's the day, when we will get married" he told Gusty one day during late September. "Let's go and ask the folks their permission! They can't say no more than "no." This plan had been decided upon as they sat at dinner in a restaurant down town.

When they came home that evening, George, without taking off his coat said to Mrs. Branche: "I am sorry," he began, "I don't think I can use the room very much longer." Mrs. Branche turned pale. Like thunder and lightening thoughts went through the poor woman's body. "That brat, I knew something would happen; it must have happened. Why else would George move? Everything was alright when they left. That is why she disappeared so fast to her room," she thought. Her hopes to ease matters, to be able to hold the house, the possibility of a match,—everything she felt was exploded. Pa Branche sitting at the table looked also rather amazed at the sudden turn of events. "What happened, Mr. Wollsten?" he asked. "Why would you want to leave us and move when it took three months to make you feel at home? "I am getting lonesome back in my "Castle," said George. I have decided to get married on November 5th" said George. "That's news, at least good news for you" answered Pa Branche. "Who is the lucky girl who inveigled you to take such a step?" They could only think that some Eastern belle of whom they had no knowledge had sufficiently made up her mind to cause him to leave. They knew he made a lot of money since he had come here. Why should he bother any longer with them?

Mr Branche imagined Gusty weeping and crying in her room with all hopes shattered that she might become Mrs. Wollsten. How could Wollsten,—but that was all over now.

"When do you intend to leave," said Mrs. Branche, swallowing a few times to be able to withhold her tears. "As soon as I shall have your permission and that of Mr. Branche"

George Wollsten Continues Trading in the West

said George with a hard face. (Grete would have said: "That's him all over").

"Now we know you are kidding," said Mrs. Branche, as his face turned into a broad smile, "you just wanted to scare us. You just can't leave us like that. Gusty would faint, please don't say such things anymore." "She knows all about it and is as happy about it as myself. With your permission we would want to become engaged and get married, that's why I can't use your room any longer..." Gusty came running from her room to George to embrace him while the parents gave their blessing.

"So that's what you two have been planning during your dinner trips, instead of eating your meals and coming back to the charts. You have been plotting other things aside of grain prices," said Pa Branche.

"Do you recall Ma how we had planned years ago and nobody knew of it?" "But 25 years ago is not to-day interrupted Ma. "Pa," said George, you better take lessons from us to learn all about "repeating Cycles" before it is too late." Gusty had to withstand several hearty kisses, Ma Branche received a few even Pa was not overlooked. He had his pasted to the cheeks in "French fashion."

"Let's have a little party at some Night Club to celebrate" said George. "I'll treat you at the Portola to coffee and cake." "Go away, I had of that just a while ago," answered Pa. You must do better than that; you can't fool us a second time with your serious face."

GEORGE AND GUSTY GET MARRIED

November 5th was the big Day. Mr. and Mrs. George Wollsten had just been married. Pa and Ma saw them off at the train on their honeymoon.

They had intended to see the country at the same time. First they stopped for a week at old Monterey, then at Santa

George Wollsten, the Expert Grain Trader

Barbara and continued their trip leasurably through the south. By Christmas Eve they had reached Upper Red Hook. Grete and Jim had been informed, of course of George's marriage to a girl from San Francisco. They had received a few post cards, but for five weeks or more the mail had stopped.

Their baby, Jim Jr., had arrived early in September, just about the time George and Gusty had made plans to become engaged.

Grete and Jim were very happy. Their couple, had quickly become accustomed to the place. The new house was finished just a week ago and furnished with new furniture. The old abode was taken over by the help. It had received a coat of paint inside and out. The new house had even a spare room all neatly furnished, just in case "His Grace" would arrive unannounced.

CHRISTMAS EVE AT UPPER RED HOOK

The reunion on Christmas Eve was a happy one. Gusty was delighted to get acquainted with her in-laws. Quite some time was consumed to admire the nephew in his crib. "You two are next," said Grete.

Jim was on edge to show George around before it grew dark. "You two girls keep on entertaining Junior, while we go out to make the round before it gets dark," said George. "The apples are all in the barn; it is packed full this time. They keep very nicely. I had two men besides the couple to pick them and assort them. Paul worked the grading machine. When shall I sell them?" said Jim on the way. "I would say to offer them early in March," said George because they are not very late varieties. The chicken yard and coops had to be gone over. The chicks had become chickens. Many had been laying since September already small eggs. While they were walking around George told Jim to exercise his purchase option by Lincoln's Birth Day. I will give you \$3,000.—to

George Wollsten Continues Trading in the West

pay off the biggest slice so that in a year or two the place will be clear and another headache off my mind" said George. "Your mind? what about mine, don't you think I made no money this past year? I had figured to do the very same thing." "But," said George, "I made you take the option, so I will also see that you exercise it. Then one of us is settled. "How do you find my little wife?" "She is a little beauty," said Jim. "Where did you discover her?" "She is my Western Queen" said George. "How is yours, I mean your Western Queen. How much honey did her swarm produce?" and so they kept on talking, both happy to be together again. The two girls felt the same way. They chatted as if they had known each other for many years. Gusty had to inspect the little shoes, panties and other things of baby's. When the men came back all three were sitting on the floor amid baby clothes and diapers. They had been so engulfed in conversation that they had not even missed them.

Happy holidays were had by them. George and Gusty had brought gifts for all, even a case of wine had been ordered from Dingle's before they came down. The couple had not been forgotten. They also participated in the celebrations.

ANALYSIS ON AUGUST 2ND 1910 OF WHEAT

How did George fare with his trading after he had shorted wheat on July 21st 1910?

His special attention focused on August 6th, the day when Saturn was crossed by Mercury to see how it responded. He had noticed that just a few days prior, that was on August 2nd, that the 6" ellipse had been abandoned which contained the upmove that had started on the 13th of June. The C line of the "Polish Ellipse" was also abandoned at the 1.06-1.07 level. All this was bearish in itself. He had already laid a 6" ellipse downward from the actual top of July 17th 1910. Wheat had sagged ever since. No rally of 4 cents or more had

George Wollsten, the Expert Grain Trader

developed. He had laid the 6" ellipse down into the 71° angle and had noticed that on August 2nd the price walked away from this angle, besides, the "Jiggle line" had reached into minus by that time and had started to kick up on the 30th of July.

This was his analysis of that period:

Indications for decline

- (a) "Polish Ellipse" uptrend of July 4th had been abandoned.
- (b) 6" Ellipse set upwards into June 13th had been abandoned.
- (c) Spring 1910 area had been well penetrated but rapid retreat had then resulted.
- (d) The pattern in the "Jiggle line" showed that this turn-up corresponded to the short line up made May 13th to 16th.

The corresponding points of the Jiggle line were:

CORRESPONDING POINTS OF "JIGGLE LINE"

April 12	June 24
April 18	July 7
April 26	July 11
April 29	July 15
May 9	July 20
May 13	July 30
May 16	August 6* (due)

From these four indications I can see positively that the crossing of Mercury over Jupiter will have to become bearish.

THE 123° ANGLE WITHIN THE ELLIPSE

While he played around with his 6" ellipse the evening of August 4th he made again a discovery that proved important. He had found that if he laid the ellipse as is shown in the illustration through the top of July 9th and through

George Wollsten Continues Trading in the West

the top of July 17th, an angle of 123° was formed inside of the ellipse, that passed through the top of July 17th and through the low of August 2nd.

That way the end of the ellipse would fall to November 5th 1910.

George immediately scratched the lines of this 123° into the 6" ellipse, so important it appeared to him.

"Ahain" he said, "that trend leads back to the low of June! We'll go down for 90 days."

GENERAL RULES ON BULL AND BEAR MOVEMENTS

Another deduction he was able to make right there and then, in spite of the fact that the pattern had not even developed yet: There are bull moves, slow and wearisome which never seem to come to an end, such as the ones from August 25th 1909 to May 9th. When they end, a regular burst follows.

There are bull moves, fast and furious such as the one from June 13th to July 17th. These bring about a slow but steady sag of prices until finally after several months a low is made.

"Of course," he said "these latter deductions cannot be used for practical trading purposes but I just keep them in mind, that I do not get impatient when such long wearisome moves develop."

SWITCHING WHEAT OPTIONS

He had switched the options on August 2nd 1910 on his chart from September into May. The September price of 1.00 he now had marked as 1.10. The ten cents was the difference in both options on August 2nd.

As soon as an option had been pretty well run through and approached the time to become "Cash Wheat," he switched prices of the chart into a later option. From September option he switched to May, then again into September. The rye he had plotted in July and December options, plotting July op-

George Wollsten, the Expert Grain Trader

tion again early in November. However, there was no particular reason why he plotted rye in those options. Any one option might have been used, as long as the switches were made right.

George could not allow any "unnatural" holes in his charts. For example, it would have hurt his analysis if he would have raised his price level on August 2nd 1910 from the September option's price of \$1.00 up to \$1.10 just because he now used the May option. It would have given him an unnatural gap. The May \$1.10 price had to be plotted at the \$1.00 price with the chart re-numbered.

May wheat indicated therefore 96 by November 5th. He now ignored September wheat completely. As far as he was concerned, May wheat was the only option traded on the Board, until by the next March he would switch into September option again and forget the May option.

AUGUST 5TH 1910 MORE WHEAT SHORTED

On August 5th he shorted some more wheat at 1.13 1/4 which put him short 5 contracts all told.

It was top. As prices gradually moved away from this level, George took it easy since another "star" had entered his life, that needed attention.

On November 1st 1910 the 6" ellipse with its 123° angle had been completed. There were still 4 days to go to the day of the change expected on November 5th. Since on his wedding day his mind was occupied with other matters, he covered his shorts and bought long on the 4th. He had obtained 94 1/4, making close to \$4,000.—on the decline.

It had been a decline without any excitements.

George had another ellipse laid into the high of July 17th 1910 for a long time, the 9" ellipse which pointed to late December, when Mercury was due at 0° and shortly thereafter was to cross Saturn again on December 29th 1910.

During their honeymoon they kept charts faithfully. Gusty

George Wollsten Continues Trading in the West

had become his right hand and chart keeper as well, of which she was very proud.

VISIT TO NEW YORK DECEMBER 29, 1910

After the holidays they paid a visit to New York to visit Mr. Holten. They also went to see Mr. Mayer who still was old Mr. Mayer who kept watching from his "Judge's dais the goings on in markets. He was still a sort of a shepherd to the traders who ate the prices as they came forth from under the wheel like sheep eat blades of grass. So much depended on the very next number that tried to emerge! That next number might stop one out; it might put one in. It was an "eagle's watch."

Grains did not look any to good just then. It was the 29th of December. The 22nd had been a top with Mercury at 0° and wheat had declined ever since, until Saturn would kick it up again. Lopez whispered to George "they are liable to fall out of bed here." "Yes, they have all the earmarks of falling out of bed, haven't they?" said George, but within he thought "the same old gang; they never will learn that when things look real bad an upmove is without,—with-out them."

ON HEDGING

"I might take a hedge to protect myself," said Lopez. "What do you mean, 'a hedge'?" asked George. Lopez explained:

"If I have a long position in wheat and the trend runs against my commitment, but am not too sure of the situation, then I take a hedge, that is a commitment in some other month for the opposite side, (if I am long I go short in another option) and release it as soon as I notice things appear to go my way again. Big traders do that quite often, especially when a wicked move occurs beyond all expectations against what they thought would be the trend. No use letting a house get afire and just look and see what happens. Another way would be to just

George Wollsten, the Expert Grain Trader

jump out of the position, but that would upset a trader too much."

"Thanks, Lopez," said Jim, "that's a new one to consider."

AT NAPLES, FLA.

George and Gusty decided in the afternoon to take a short vacation down to Naples, Fla.

On the way George sized up the "Hedge-idea" and concluded that it is a swell idea in case something does go sour with his commitments once. "Supposing," he said to Gusty, our planets act stubborn, but our commitments had been made, then in such a case we take on a commitment just contrary to what we have in another option. It actually puts us into neutral, until we can see clear in which way the trend continues. As soon as we recognize the trend we drop either one of the commitments and are then again on one side." "It surely is a protection," said Gusty, "because when the unexpected happens we must not lose our head, but simply get into neutral with a hedge. No use hoping, waiting, asking, rechecking, but use a hedge. The cost is just one commission."

They had reached the little village on New Year's Eve. The nearest broker's office at Fort Myers was some 40 miles north.

HALY-WAY POINTS BETWEEN SATURN AND JUPITER

Aside of his specific rules he had noticed that the first week or ten days of January with the very few exceptions were strong with advancing prices. He told Gusty of that, who retorted that it might be due to the various New Year's resolutions made by the public to begin the year bullish and end it the other way. George had shown Gusty how to figure half-way points saying "don't count like a school girl from December 29th to February 2nd: 3 days in December, 31 in January and 2 in February, gives 36, divide by two is 18. Add 18 to December 29th gives January 15th, but say Mer-

George Wollsten Goes to New York to Trade Stocks and Grains

cury crosses Saturn at 35° and Jupiter at 213° . The difference is 178° . Divide by 2 is 89° . Add this value to Saturn's crossing at 35° is 124° . Look in the Almanac when Mercury passes 124° . On that day is the half distance. Gusty followed instructions and found the point to be between January 12th and 13th 1911.

By mid-January, the day of the half-way point between Saturn and Jupiter wheat had risen 7 points.

The 6" ellipse set into the low of November had just reached half its length. The price actually reached the centre of the ellipse on January 12th.

"We will sell out and short at the close of January 12th and see what happens" suggested Gusty. "Right." I shall order the first medal for you this evening" he said jokingly, in the form of a Potato Pancake which you shall have for dinner.

CHAPTER VIII

ADVANCED TRADING OF GRAINS AND STOCKS



IMAGINE THAT MERCURY represents the Sun. It runs always forward in a nearly straight line. It acts like the Sun, too, that old hole in the sky of which Descartes speaks in his *Discours sur la Methode*." "What do you mean by 'hole in the sky?' Isn't the Sun a fiery ball as we are taught in schools which is watched so eagerly by astronomers when it makes eclipses? They travel half way around the globe to observe the fiery flares protruding from its mass? This fiery ball they say gives us life and heat and all that, doesn't it?" said Gusty. "From work I have done for more than a year I have quite different ideas about actions in the Universe," replied George.

"See here," taking a magnifying glass "give me your hand, I will show how I think the Sun works." They went towards the window to stand in the hot Florida Sun. "All the active forces of the Universe, planets, fixed stars, the Milky Way seem to me to be just small little balls like our earth. They are carried through space in well defined order. Scientists have found that they are subject often to small irregularities. They all move around a focus. He held the magnifying glass at a distance over her hand. A small whitish yellow spot appeared. "That's the way we did when kids, to light a piece of newspaper without a match" said George. "Auw, auw, cried Gusty,

Advanced Trading of Grains and Stocks

jerked her hand away, "you are purposely hurting me, dear. Is that all the love you have left for me after eight weeks of happiness?"

"Let's go to the beach," she said. "You keep your hole in the sky. Tell me of it in the evening when that hole does not shine."

They went to gather a bag full of sea shells of all colors and sizes. "We will send them to baby Jim to play with" said Gusty. They took in a swim and returned in good time to have their dinner including some potato pancakes which George had not forgotten.

In the evening they concentrated once more on that January 12th date. They calculated once more the half-way point to be sure. They laid the ellipse carefully and found the centre hit automatically on January 12th 1911 and the price was to become $1.02\frac{1}{2}$.

Now I tell you, dear what we shall do" said George. "After the top is made on January 12th we can decline once more to the lows of June and November of last year. He drew a dotted 'trend line' from the June low 1910 via the November low 1910, extending it into Spring of 1911. Let us now assume that $1.02\frac{1}{2}$ will be made and if I lay the 71° angle downwards, it hits this dotted trend line by February 2nd. The price would then be about $90\frac{1}{2}$. We know that on February 2nd Mercury reaches Jupiter! However, we have to consider something else that is of importance.

THE HORSE-WHIP

Major declines always develop in a form that looks like a horse whip. "Note," he said "the word consists of two parts: first comes the horse, then the whip. The whip sort of waves down until the thin end fades out into a narrow string. George showed her various past patterns. "I am certain that we are in such a whip ever since early February of 1910. He pointed

George Wollsten, the Expert Grain Trader

at the odd windings made by wheat's movement thus far. That calls for a quiet market after a while, one that will have calm and narrow waves. With our three planets alone it is impossible to see the horse whip. This horse and its whip is part of a much bigger cycle which we shall try to locate in due time. Hidden within the horse and the whip are the smaller swings caused by our three planets."

SQUARING THE CIRCLE

While he searched around in his suit case for some notations made on this subject, he came across an envelope marked: "Squaring the circle." "I don't think I ever showed you how to square the Circle?" he said. "Don't get silly now" said Gusty, "all mathematic books say it is impossible to square the circle. I have learned that much in school." "Oh yea" retorted George. "Many things are known to a few people. You read some books on markets published for the benefit of traders and find out what they dish up. If a book writer does not know certain things, that does not mean somebody else is in the same boat. Just read what good old Searle's had to say in the foreword of his Koran translation of which I have a copy dated 1796, that those heathens had to be gradually taught and converted over to a better religion. Read what commentators say about old man Paracelsus! They call him a drunkard, an idiot who just by luck was able to cure diseases which doctors of his age pronounced incurable. He had cured kings and princes and people of the lowest class, provided their actual predestined span of life had not been exhausted. The same thing is true with squaring the circle. I came on it some time ago. I have to go over the situation quickly, else I won't be able to explain it to you, doubting Thomas."

"Notes about how to square the Circle, found on January 22, 1910 while searching for effect of Sun's movement through

Advanced Trading of Grains and Stocks

Zodiac upon price fluctuations of Wheat," was the heading of his papers.

He handed Gusty the drawing the way he had produced it. "How and what actually caused me to get to it I do not remember," he said. "Instead of running degrees in a straight line I put them around in a circle. This inner circle was the beginning. The Sun proper I imagined to be in the centre. At the same time I was trying to practice with zodiacal sign, such as Aries, Taurus etc, and used for each 30° one of those signs in their proper sequence. I was searching for divisions that would show changes of trend in smaller cycles with the help of the Sun only.

I figured: In one certain year the inner circle would give changes of trend. The next year the middle circle would supply such changes and the third year the outer circle would supply them. You can see that the values which I marked there, are proper divisions of anyone circle, but they are grouped differently in each of their circles. Some show 30° , other $22^\circ 30'$, others 18° of the various signs. But all that may be too deep for you at present. Suffice to say that one of the side of those squares you see drawn in this picture is the square root of its circle, through which it runs. And, it's the outer with the outer! if . . . you allow for a . . ." "For what?" asked Gusty. "Mathematicians don't allow for anything. Just look at logarithmic Tables and note how they give the logs in 7 decimals with proportional parts to boot and supply those values from $0^\circ 0' 1''$ clear up to $89^\circ 59' 59''$ plus $1''$ for sin. cos, tang and ctg." "We do our things in a rough and ready way. You see how rough our ellipses are. When we lay the 71° angle: we might draw the line at a whole degree off. Not even Mercury works accurate himself. I told you that he missed at times a whole day or even two when he gets to 0° . Wheat is not any too accurate with its prices. Look at November 4th last year!

George Wollsten, the Expert Grain Trader

It went two full points beyond the ellipse then. The bath tub had sprung a leak there . . ."

"But in this case I shall try to show you a little more accuracy than usual, because "this is scientific" and not just a commitment in grains. And, furthermore I am not explaining this for any 's-eye-end-ist's nor for any echo-numb-ist's* who don't seem to be able to hit market movements so very well either, but, that's another horse, just like this squaring of the circle is one of ours."

"Let's finish now that "if-stuff" on which you have asked for an allowance, before we forget it. You broaden out too far. What or how much shall I allow you so that the outer line's length shall be the root of this outermost circle?" "You allow me to use a couple of focii, half a degree each, not more. Too much asked?"

"A circle has but one focus, which is in the centre," said Gusty, unless you want to put two dots into one hole. You only have two focii in an ellipse, that is if you put equal pressure on both sides of a circle . . . "How many sides has a circle?" asked George to keep her in confusion.

"All we have to do," said George seriously, "is to lower the line $1/2$ degree so that instead of passing through 18° Aries and through 12° Gemini (he pointed at those two places on the drawing), we have to draw the line through $17^\circ 30'$ Aries and through $12^\circ 30'$ Gemini. Then the length of this line, that is the side of this square is exactly the square root of the same circle." Gusty had to try it immediately.

PRACTICAL RULES ON TRADING FOUND THEREFROM

"That reminds me," continued George, "I had found something else of importance in case we decide some time to trade stocks. These stocks like to make swings whose length is $17 \frac{1}{2}$ points, also double that much that is 35 points. The smaller swings extend just half of that or $8 \frac{3}{4}$ points and the very

* The purpose of spelling the words "scientists" and "economists" as above is to show underlying relationship of meaning such as was done with the word "if" on page 141.

Advanced Trading of Grains and Stocks

small swings amount to $4 \frac{3}{8}$ points. The horse whip idea can be incorporated in those movements also," he added. "In bull markets such moves may amount to as much as 70 points. that is 4 times those $17\frac{1}{2}$. Not only that, but when we have a little more time I shall show you that stocks themselves like to use these numbers to make tops or bottoms there, such as at $17\frac{1}{2}$, at $52 \frac{1}{2}$, at 70 etc. But to judge right one has to have complete daily charts over a period of several years to see whether they use the full unit of $17\frac{1}{2}$ or whether they prefer its fractions, that is $21 \frac{7}{8}$, $26\frac{1}{4}$, $30 \frac{5}{8}$ and the multiples thereof."

"I always thought it takes a lot of money to make more, but I can see now that instead of a wad of bills it takes something else besides . . . I think you know enough now to make money," she added. "Who me?" said George. "I am just beginning with my research. The things I found so far are just roughly mined stones from a quarry. We shall soon begin to delve into Ovid, Cicero, into Paracelsus—that drunkard, into Swedenborg, too."

"Just remember for the present that AB is the root of circle Occc in this drawing."

Gusty found that AB measured 4.8". The radius of the outer circle was 2.7".

Area of a circle is $r^2\pi$.

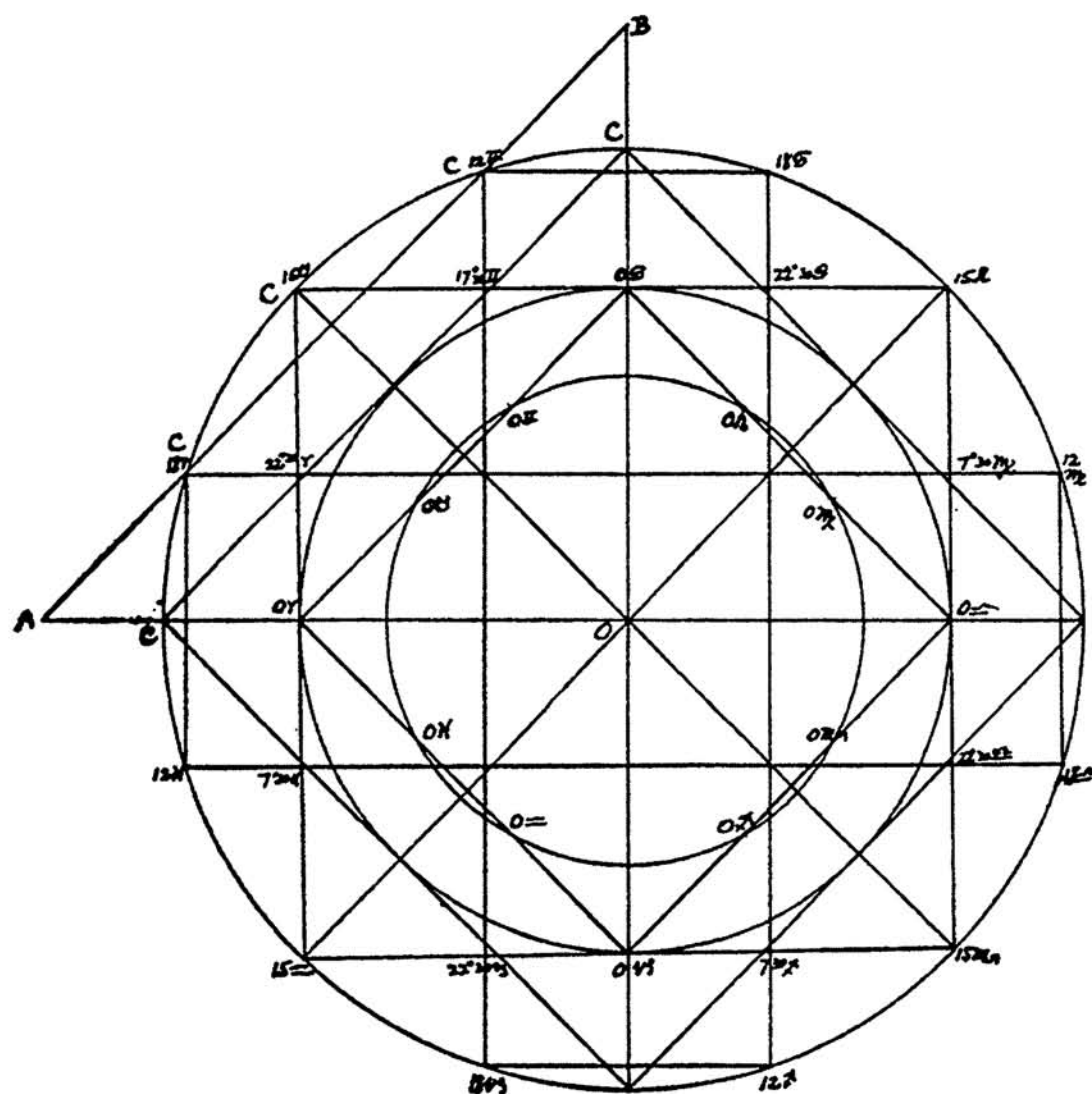
$$2.7 \times 2.7 \times 3.14 = 22.84.$$

Log. 22.84. Get the log Tables! "They found one in the old Geometry book. Log. $22.84 = 1.358696$; $\frac{1}{2}$ of it is 0.679348 or 4.78.

While Gusty did the figuring George made another drawing for her which demonstrated the squaring of the circle in a simple way. We note on the picture produced that he simply drew inside of a right angle that was set with its angle into a circle two new angles that were drawn $17^\circ 30'$ inward.

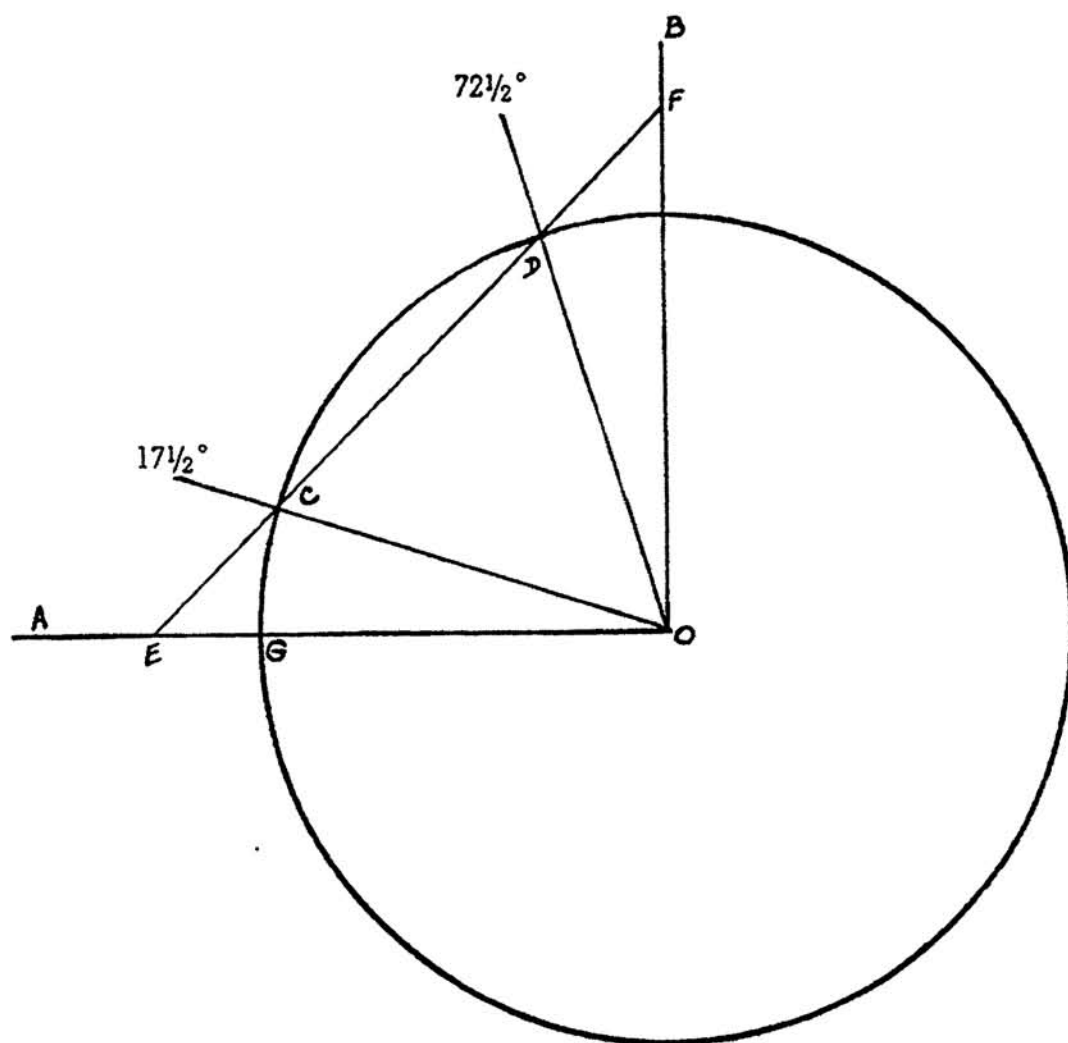
Therefore angle GOC was $17^\circ 30'$, so was angle FOD. He

George Wollsten, the Expert Grain Trader



Original pattern used to discover
The Squaring of the Circle

Advanced Trading of Grains and Stocks



Short and Quick

Construction to Square the Circle

Length of EF is Square Root of Circle with Radius OG

George Wollsten, the Expert Grain Trader

connected point C with point D and extended the line on both ends, which gave him point E on AO and point F on FO.

The distance EF was the root of the square whose contents or area was the same as that of the circle whose radius was GO or CO. So the shifting of which he had spoken referred to $17^{\circ} 30'$ being used instead of 18° .

The proof he made by construction:

Area of Circle $r^2\pi$

Given: $r=2.5''$

$\log r=0.3979400$

then area is $\log 0.3979400$

0.3979400

$\log \pi 0.4971498$

$1.2930298:2=0.645149$

$=4.431$

He measured the distance between E and F and found it to be $4.43''$.

"Why did you not continue to use this idea further to develop cycles? There had been many other similar discoveries I ran across which had tried to put me off the track, away from Jupiter and Saturn that would have led me into caves which contain nothing but dragons, behomots and poisonous asps. They give false and misleading omens and auguries. To tease they may work for a while, but would land in a dead-end road. Virgil and Xenophon have spoke of them, how beautiful they look, how they lead to destruction. I had my medicine last March and April when they began to beguile me for a while. That is why I put them together with arsenic and vitriol. Some other day I will tell you the rest about that hole in the sky, he said, about that fiery ball. We pack now. Tomorrow we go back to New York. I have something else planned in my mind. How about spending 2 points of our profit and run over to Europe? The market can decline all by itself after the 12th."

Advanced Trading of Grains and Stocks

As sure as George's rough and ready tools indicated a top at 1.02½ for January 12th, so it came. May wheat hit even 1.02 5/8. They had turned around at 1.02 so as not try for the last eighth and get greedy.

RECOGNIZING ADAM & EVE AND THE BABY IN PATTERNS

While George worked on the wheat chart at the St. Andrews, where they had taken quarters, he noticed that the decline from May 9th to November 4th had amounted to 30 5/8 points.

"Those things can't be seen by people. It has to do with the squaring of the Circle because 30 5/8 is one of those fraction points I had found. How can chartists see that, when they run one option at a time and, when it ends start with another wherever its price might begin? What a farce! Dogmatic. They let each option run singly. They never think of marrying them by binding them together. He could now see his Adam from August 15th 1909 to March 31, 1909 marrying his Eve on June 13th 1909, that is Eve proper started on July 17th, 1909. The result of the happy Union was a baby born to them on November 4th 1909. It was but a tiny, weeny tot, 70 days long, extending to January 12th 1911. He scrutinized the movement from March 31st to April 20th 1910, then up to May 9th and down to June 7th, saying, "what an odd pattern that is . . ."

"That baby has to be kept in the craddle for a while," he mused. It was born on January 12th 1911. No man after he is born walks erect at least not those born of "Mother Nature."

SHIFTING OF ELLIPSES

However, in his present analysis of the wheat pattern he did not like the idea that Mr. Adam as a man was tall and measured 9 inches, whereas little Eve would be but 6 inches in length. That can't be, he said. Normal couples have about the same size. I am just wondering, he continued thinking.

George Wollsten, the Expert Grain Trader

Babies are carried in the womb and not at the toe. Eve may not be finished in the pattern." He had set a long time ago his 9" ellipse into the high of July 17, 1910 and had seen its lower end stick out like a sore toe on January 5th 1911. He glanced across at the place where he had put an arrow and said: "It's the baby's fault. I have to shift the 9" ellipse over to the January 12th place to get my next bottom." He then discovered that this January 12th top was exactly in the centre of the shifted 9" ellipse and the low was shown for early April 1911.

This price was also $17\frac{1}{2}$ points below the January 12th high, the same as the November 4th low was $8\frac{3}{4}$ points below the January 12th high.

They went to Europe for two months and came back as the bottom was made. The pattern from March 1st to April 3, 1911 indicated the foot of Eve including the big toe.

Before children can walk they have to learn first how to creep. Wheat had to learn to do the very same thing for 9" in time. The creeping lasted until October 22, 1911.

"We had to make hay while the Sun shone," said George one day in July. We cannot make any money in this market for a while unless we would begin to chisel and that is out! We just simply have to hold positions until that baby has learned to creep and only then will it start to walk, but," he added cautiously, "it isn't far for a baby to fall, in case it does fall. It is not big enough to fall deep and then it gets up quickly and tries to run . . ."

SEPP MULLER AND HOLTEN AT A PARTY

Sepp Muller had come into his mind again. George asked him to come over for a little party. Holten was not forgotten. After a good dinner Europe was discussed, also California, even the market was touched upon. "You are a lucky boy," said Sepp, a year in the market and knocked out a trip to Europe already, while I am still in the planning stage. You tell me a

Advanced Trading of Grains and Stocks

stock, I shall buy it. What do you say!" "I trade for the present only in wheat, something which Mother Nature produces out of the ground. "I do not trade in dynamite," retorted Muller, "where one can burst in less than a week because it always does that what nobody expects, wheat you mean, you trade in wheat?" "Just that," said George. "No thanks, I won't have any. I want something substantial, something that has a factory standing. A hail storm may knock wheat down 30 cents and laugh at you. Frost can do the same thing the other way. I know what I am talking about. I saw it with my own eyes." Sepp Muller was all steamed up against grains.

Mr. Holten remained the quiet onlooker. He had his moderate salary. He tried to help the immigrants. Yet, he could size up the vast difference between his two friends, the one and the other. As soon as the one made just a step beyond, the "Sword of Demosthenes (the Most Heinous)" was in action with "no trespassing or else." The other also had the same sword hanging over him, but to him it was visible. He was able to go 'with the sword,' that is to watch it. He never did extend his operations beyond a proper margin. Many times he had placed stop loss orders, just in case Demosthenes would try the sword, in case his calculations would not jibe with realities. In that way he never could get bitten by the serpent for 30 points. He was quick to change his mind, if necessary, yet never became excited. He had learned to stay away from the real dynamite.

Shortly thereafter Gusty and George left to return to San Francisco by way of Upper Red Hook. Grete and Jim were to be taken along to visit San Francisco to have their honeymoon somewhat belated. The couple was to take charge of the place until their return. George had laid this plan ahead of time. "Baby Jim must be able to walk by now," added Gusty, "so he won't be too much of a burden, you remember, they wrote us that he was able to creep already quite a while ago . . ."

George Wollsten, the Expert Grain Trader

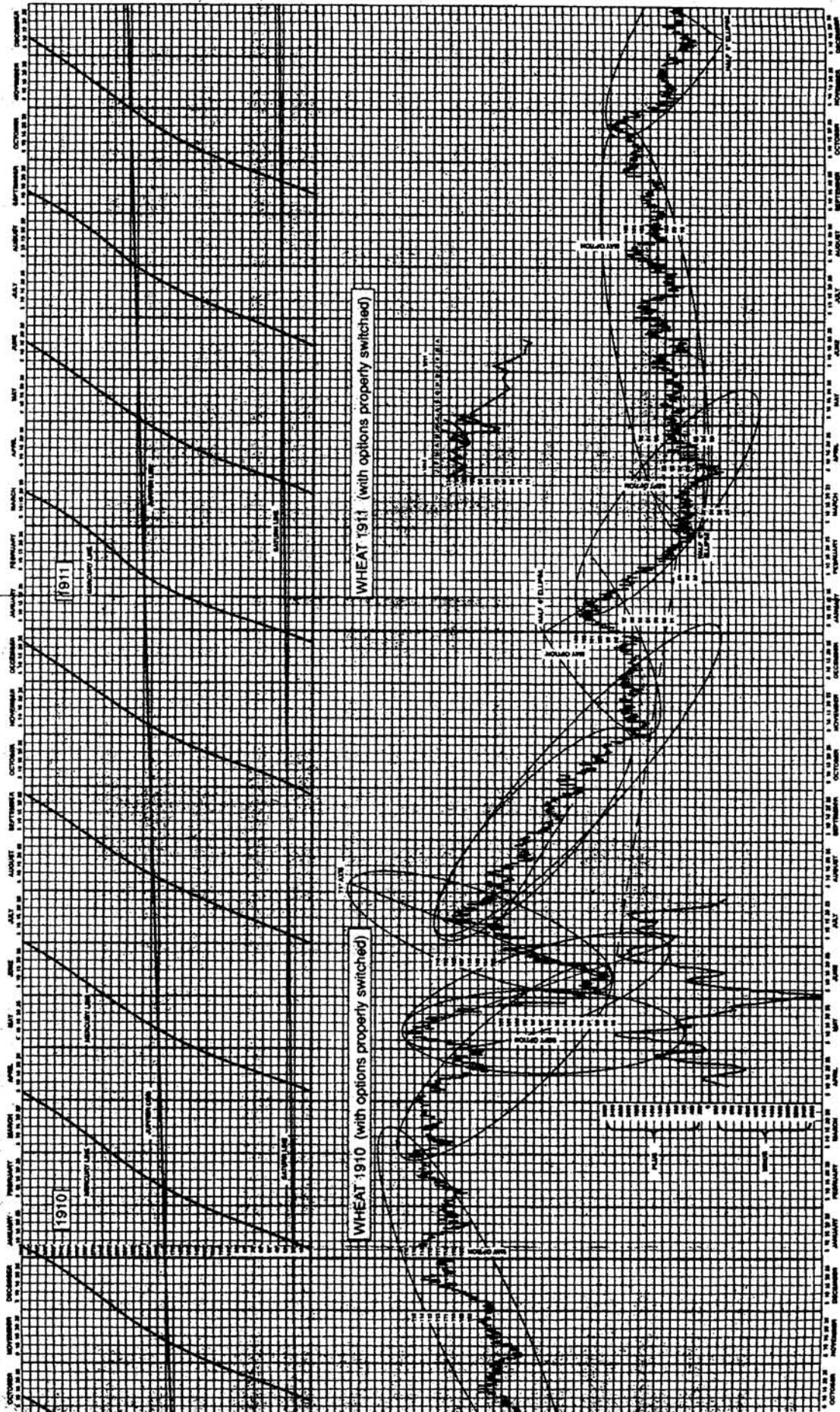
This discussion had occurred on May 3rd 1911 because on the 4th Jupiter was crossed by Mercury and that was the day George had selected to leave. George had worked up a \$2000 profit again, but since he considered wheat was just learning how to crawl, he did not take it.

THE WESTERN BEES STING JIM

They had arrived at Upper Red Hook as planned. While they walked up to the farm they met Grete. "How is everybody, how is baby Jim, how is Jim?" they asked. "Baby is fine, but Jim is in bed," said Grete. "What ails him?" asked George. "His Western Queen with an assistant gave him a sting two days ago, one on the nose, another near the eye. That one is shut and his nose, you have to look at it yourself! What those Western Queens can do to a man!" Grete was excited. "I don't mean you, Gusty dear," she said, "I retract it all." Gusty had no way of knowing anything about the bee hives which Jim had bought, one of them was occupied by that queen supposedly originating from the West. Jim had been changing a frame in one of the hives without using a veil and besides he had opened it without a smoke torch. Apparently they had resented such intrusion. All he knew was that a few began to chase him immediately before he even had been able to lift the lid by more than two inches. He dropped it as fast as it would come loose of his hand and began to run with all his might. They could fly faster. He had three or four stings. Two were not bad, but the others made up for it.

Poor Jim, there he was lying, bandaged all over his face! He had to laugh for shame that something like this should happen to him. That confounded George had to come back just when he thought him to be out in California or somewhere. Gusty, what would she think of her brother-in-law now, a little bee to knock out big Jim. George guessed what went on

Wheat 1909-1911



Advanced Trading of Grains and Stocks

in Jim's mind. To console him he said "those things happen in Wall Street and in the Pit every day."

This accident helped along to get Grete and Jim out to the Coast. "Those critters will be after you for quite a while," said George. "I wouldn't doubt that a minute," answered Jim. "How do they treat Robert and Paula?" said George. "They seem to get along fine with them. It was Robert who changed the frames after they had chased me away," said Jim.

After a week's stay Gusty and George had succeeded to convince them to come along with the baby and leave the couple in charge of the farm. The latter were delighted to be able to show their employers that they were worthy of the trust.

TO SANTA CRUZ, CALIFORNIA

In due course we find the whole family including Ma and Pa Branche in a house rented for the summer in the Santa Cruz mountains, some 50 miles south of San Francisco. They had a wonderful time.

However, George and Gusty did not just merely idle away their time, but began to approach a subject that had been planned for some time, the Stock Market and its intricacies.

THE ASSORTMENT OF STOCKS

This is what went through George's head for some time: "The Stock Market is composed of an assortment of stocks that represented shares of Corporations whose activities spread all over the country. Their interests were various. Iron and Steel manufacture, Leather and Bread, Rubber and Dry Goods, Railroads and Gas Companies aside of many others were behind those stocks. Common sense told him that Iron and Bread were not the same, neither had the gas used for cooking anything to do with a railroad, or with the manufacture of hot water bottles. Consequently, he concluded we have to do with a perfect assortment of vegetables or of flowers which require

George Wollsten, the Expert Grain Trader

different seasons to grow, different soils, and they have different uses. A woolen mill stock cannot possibly run in harmony with the stock of an Electric Company."

"Stocks run in broad swings very nearly alike. To find out the big trend we can use the Dow Jones Averages which I believe are fine for this purpose. But, when it comes to individual stocks, we may have to select them by groups and make an average that way taking 10 or 15 of related stocks. Else, we have to treat one stocks at one time and follow it the way I have done with May-September Wheat."

"First of all we need the past performance of a stock for several years back, the further back the better."

Some time past he had plotted U. S. Steel back to the time it was first traded in March 1901. He found that his ellipses fitted nicely into the patterns. He discovered that the 17½ points movements and its fractional components worked well. The "Jiggle line" as well as the "Polish Ellipse" could be applied with great accuracy. Only the planets, Saturn, Jupiter and Mercury refused to work as safely as they did with wheat.

George then tried to apply his rules on cotton and found that all the mechanical rules could be applied with good results but as far as the three planets were concerned, they could be upside down and cotton would not act on them. "I may have to use other planets for cotton on the same principal though, as I did for wheat, but, not just now," he said. The same applied to hides, cotton seed oil, sugar, cocoa and other commodities as he put them to a test.

He said to Gusty, "what chance has a trader who trades in stocks and in cotton and in wheat all at the same time?" "Isn't one enough?" said Gusty.

Then they went to the beach.

Appendix

Planetary Positions, 1943-1947

It should be remembered that the Mercury curve has always a pattern which is similar to all previous ones. Therefore, when you know the 0° positions (same as 360°), you can readily draw the entire line by transferring the previous on transparent paper. The Saturn and Jupiter lines are nearly straight, always slanting upwards. The scale to plot is 10° for each square.

Here are positions:

Table of Jupiter's movement

January	1, 1943	$109^\circ 21'$	
July	1, 1943	$124^\circ 7'$	
January	1, 1944	$139^\circ 1'$	
July	1, 1944	$153^\circ 0'$	
January	1, 1945	$167^\circ 8'$	(use as a straight line)
July	1, 1945	$180^\circ 53'$	Yearly Advance
January	1, 1946	$194^\circ 47'$	About 28°
July	1, 1946	$208^\circ 28'$	
January	1, 1947	$222^\circ 27'$	

Table of Saturn's movement

January	1, 1943	$70^\circ 9'$	
July	1, 1943	$76^\circ 51'$	
January	1, 1944	$83^\circ 43'$	
July	1, 1944	$90^\circ 28'$	
January	1, 1945	$97^\circ 25'$	(use as a straight line)
July	1, 1945	$104^\circ 10'$	Yearly Advance
January	1, 1946	$110^\circ 59'$	About $13\frac{1}{2}^\circ$
July	1, 1946	$117^\circ 42'$	
January	1, 1947	$124^\circ 30'$	

Mercury at 0°

January 4,	1943
April 2,	1943
June 28-29,	1943
September 24-25,	1943
December 21-22,	1943
March 18-19,	1944
June 14-15,	1944
September 10-11,	1944
December 7-8,	1944
March 5-6,	1945
June 1-2,	1945
August 28,	1945
November 24-25,	1945
February 20,	1946
May 19,	1946
August 15,	1946
November 11,	1946

Mercury at 180°

February 5-6,	1943
May 4-5,	1943
July 31-Aug. 1,	1943
October 27-28,	1943
January 23-24,	1944
April 20-21,	1944
July 17-18,	1944
October 13-14,	1944
January 9,	1945
April 7,	1945
July 4,	1945
September 30,	1945
December 27,	1945
March 25,	1946
June 21,	1946
September 17,	1946
December 14,	1946

Plot in curve of pattern given in Wheat Chart. The crossings will appear immediately, also the halfway points must be figured.

The Crossing of the Critical Points:

1944	1945	1946
Saturn Jan. 5-6	Jupiter Jan. 6	Mercury 0° Feb. 20
Jupiter Jan. 17	Mercury Mar. 6	Saturn Mar. 11-12
Mercury 0° Mar. 18	Saturn Mar. 23	Jupiter Mar. 31
Saturn April 3	Jupiter April 5	Mercury 0° May 19
Jupiter April 13	Mercury 0° June 1	Saturn June 8
Mercury 0° June 14	Saturn June 19	Jupiter June 29
Saturn June 29-30	Jupiter July 3	Mercury 0° Aug. 15
Jupiter July 12	Mercury 0° Aug. 28	Saturn Sept. 9
Mercury 0° Sept. 10	Saturn Sept. 16	Jupiter Sept. 27
Saturn Sept. 26	Jupiter Oct. 2	Mercury 0° Nov. 11
Jupiter Oct. 9	Mercury 0° Nov. 24	Saturn Dec. 2
Mercury 0° Dec. 7-8	Saturn Dec. 12-13	Jupiter Dec. 26
	Jupiter Dec. 31	

Sample of The 5-4:3-3 Computation

Table of the 5-4:3-3 Computations used by George Wollsten for the test period of April 8, to August 1, 1910 (see chart of wheat) using the HIGH of each trading day:

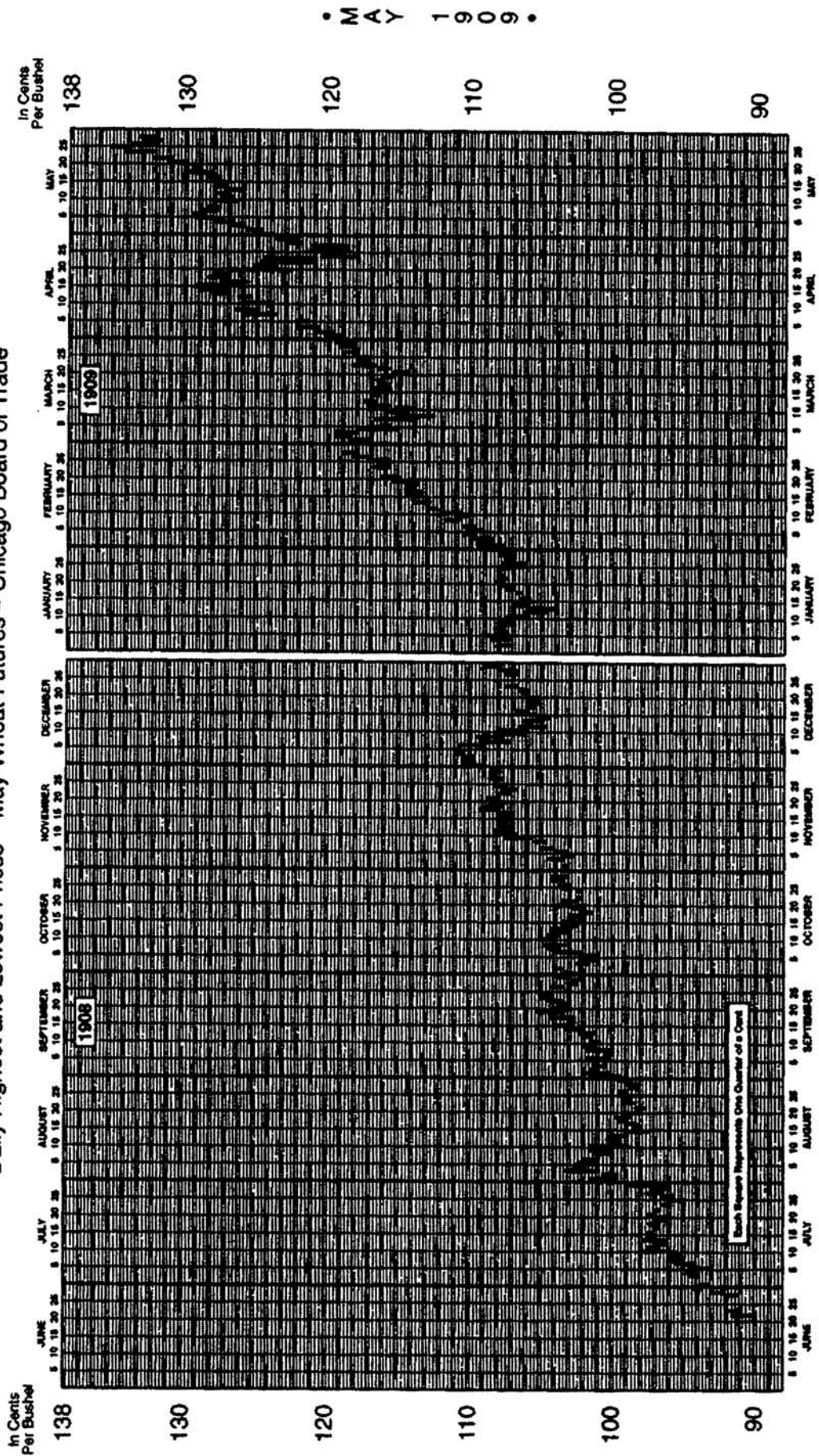
	Price	advance	5	4	decline	3	(to plot) 3 difference of 4 & last 3	
April								
1	1.15,2	0			0			
2	1.14,6	0			50			
3	1.14,6	0	50		0	50		
6	1.13,1	0	75		162	212		
7	1.12,3	0	0		75	237	500	
8	1.13,1	75	75	200	0	237	675	— 475
9	1.14,0	87	162	312	0	75	550	— 237
11	1.12,5	0	162	400	137	137	450	— 50
12	1.12,4	0	163	562	12	150	362	+ 200
13	1.12,2	0	162	650	25	175	462	+ 187
14	1.10,5	0	87	575	163	200	525	+ 50
15	1.09,3	0	0	412	125	313	687	— 275
16	1.09,0	0	0	250	37	325	837	— 587
18	1.07,3	0	0	87	162	325	963	— 887
19	1.08,1	75	75	75	0	200	850	— 775
20	1.06,7	0	75	150	125	287	812	— 662
21	1.08,0	112	187	337	0	125	612	— 275
22	1.09,1	113	325	662	0	125	537	+ 137
23	1.09,7	75	400	987	0	0	250	+ 737
25	1.10,5	62	387	1300	0	0	125	+ 1175
26	1.09,7	0	387	1500	75	75	75	+ 1425
27	1.07,5	0	250	1425	225	300	375	+ 1050
28	1.08,0	37	175	1200	0	300	675	+ 525
29	1.08,1	13	113	925	0	225	825	+ 100
30	1.08,5	50	100	638	0	0	525	+ 112
May								
2	1.08,2	0	100	487	37	37	262	+ 225
3	1.11,0	275	375	687	0	37	75	+ 612
4	1.11,3	37	375	950	0	37	112	+ 837
5	1.13,2	187	550	1400	0	0	75	+ 1325
6	1.13,5	37	537	1637	0	0	37	+ 1600
7	1.15,2	163	700	2162	0	0	0	+ 2162
9	1.16,2	100	575	2362	0	0	0	+ 2362
14	1.15,4	0	487	2300	75	75	75	+ 2225
11	1.12,2	0	300	2062	325	400	475	+ 1587
12	1.13,5	137	400	1762	0	400	875	+ 887
13	1.15,1	150	387	1575	0	325	1125	+ 450
14	1.14,0	0	287	1375	112	112	837	+ 538
16	1.14,4	50	337	1412	0	112	550	+ 862
17	1.13,0	0	337	1350	150	262	487	+ 863
18	1.13,4	50	250	1212	0	150	525	+ 687
19	1.13,4	0	100	1025	0	150	562	+ 463
20	1.11,5	0	100	787	187	187	487	+ 300
21	1.11,2	0	50	500	37	225	562	— 62

24	1.09,4	0	0	200	25	212	812	— 612
25	1.10,2	75	75	175	0	175	762	— 587
26	1.07,0	0	75	200	325	350	737	— 537
27	1.04,4	0	75	225	250	575	1100	— 875
28	1.02,4	0	75	300	200	775	1700	—1400
Switch option; the old 1.02 equals now 1.00								
31	93,2	0	75	300	725	1175	2525	—2225
June								
1	92,3	0	0	225	87	1012	2962	—2737
2	93,1	75	75	225	0	812	3000	—2775
3	91,3	0	75	225	175	262	2087	—1862
4	90,4	0	75	225	87	262	1337	—1112
6	92,0	150	225	450	0	262	687	— 237
7	92,3	37	262	637	0	87	612	+ 25
8	91,6	0	187	750	62	62	412	+ 337
9	91,6	0	187	862	0	62	212	+ 650
10	91,7	12	200	837	0	62	187	+ 650
12	90,6	0	50	625	112	112	237	+ 388
13	89,7	0	12	450	87	200	375	+ 75
14	89,7	0	12	275	0	200	512	— 237
15	90,2	37	50	125	0	87	487	— 362
16	91,2	100	137	212	0	0	287	— 75
17	92,0	75	212	412	0	0	87	+ 325
18	92,6	75	287	687	0	0	0	+ 687
20	94,4	175	462	1100	0	0	0	+1100
21	97,2	275	700	1662	0	0	0	+1662
22	97,0	0	600	2050	25	25	25	+2025
23	96,6	0	525	2287	20	50	75	+2212
24	99,1	237	687	2512	0	50	125	+2387
25	98,6	0	512	2325	37	62	162	+2163
27	1.00,4	175	412	2137	0	37	150	+1987
28	1.02,2	175	587	2200	0	37	137	+2063
29	1.01,6	0	587	2100	50	50	125	+1975
30	99,4	0	350	1937	225	275	362	+1575
July								
1	98,5	0	350	1875	87	312	637	+1237
6	1.01,7	337	512	1800	0	312	900	+ 900
7	1.02,0	12	350	1562	0	87	712	+ 850
8	1.02,2	25	375	1587	0	0	400	+1187
9	1.05,0	275	650	1887	0	0	87	+1800
11	1.03,4	0	650	2025	150	150	150	+1875
12	1.03,1	0	312	1987	37	187	337	+1650
13	1.03,6	63	363	1975	0	187	525	+1450
14	1.04,6	100	438	1762	0	37	412	+1350
15	1.07,6	300	462	1575	0	0	225	+1350
16	1.09,1	137	600	1863	0	0	37	+1837
17	1.10,0	87	687	2188	0	0	0	+2188
19	1.09,0	0	625	2375	100	100	100	+2275
20	1.07,4	0	525	2437	150	250	350	+2087
21	1.08,1	62	287	2125	0	250	600	+1520
22	1.07,3	0	150	1587	75	225	725	+ 86
23	1.06,0	0	62	1025	137	212	687	+ 33

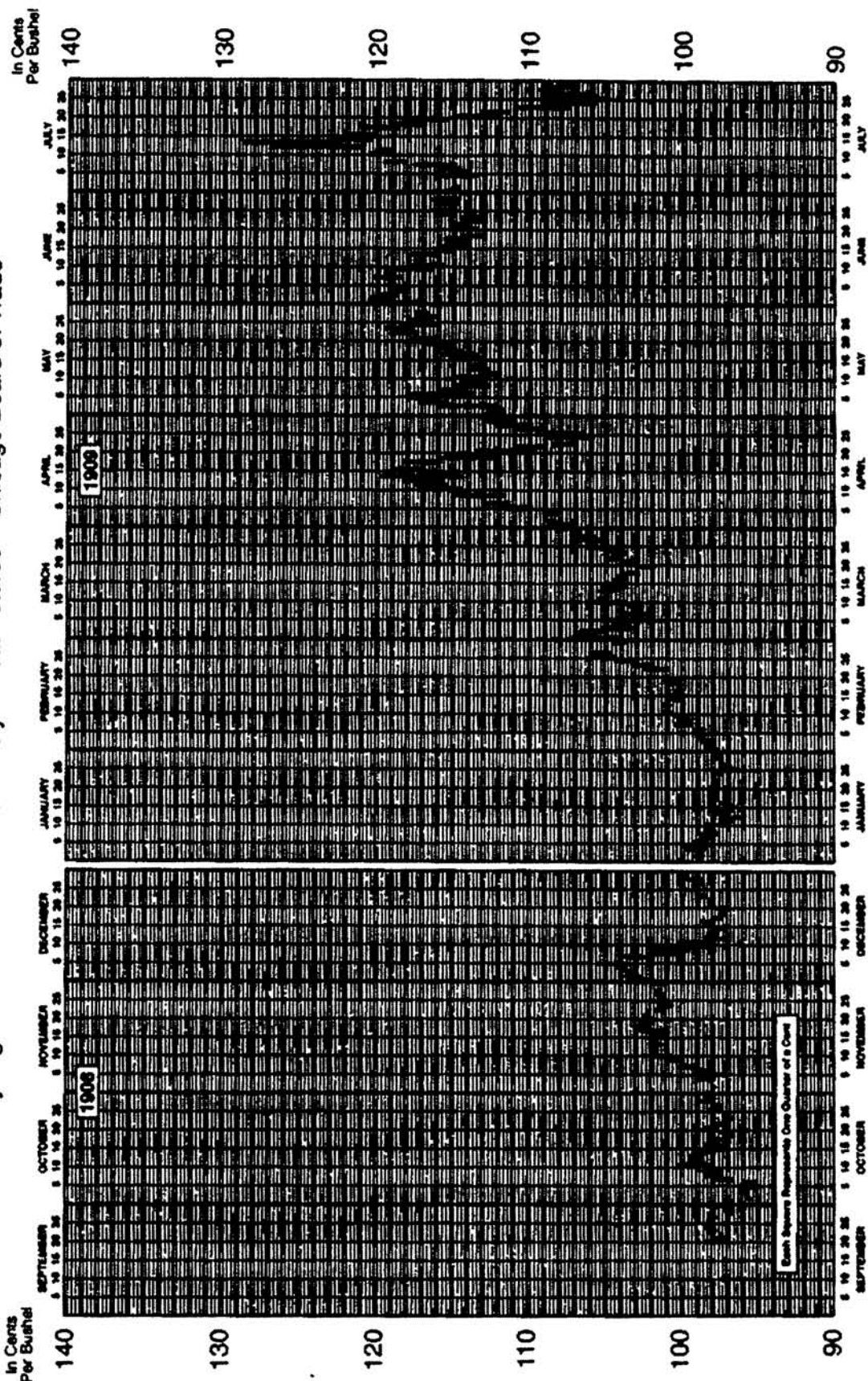
24	1.06,6	75	137	637	0	212	650	—	12
26	1.06,3	0	137	487	37	175	600	—	112
27	1.04,7	0	75	412	150	187	575	—	162
28	1.04,5	0	75	425	25	212	575	—	150
29	1.04,4	0	75	262	12	187	587	—	325
30	1.04,0	0	0	225	50	87	487	—	262
August									
1	1.03,6	0	0	150	25	87	362	—	212

Wheat, Daily High and Low Range Charted for 1908-1911

Daily Highest and Lowest Prices - May Wheat Futures - Chicago Board of Trade

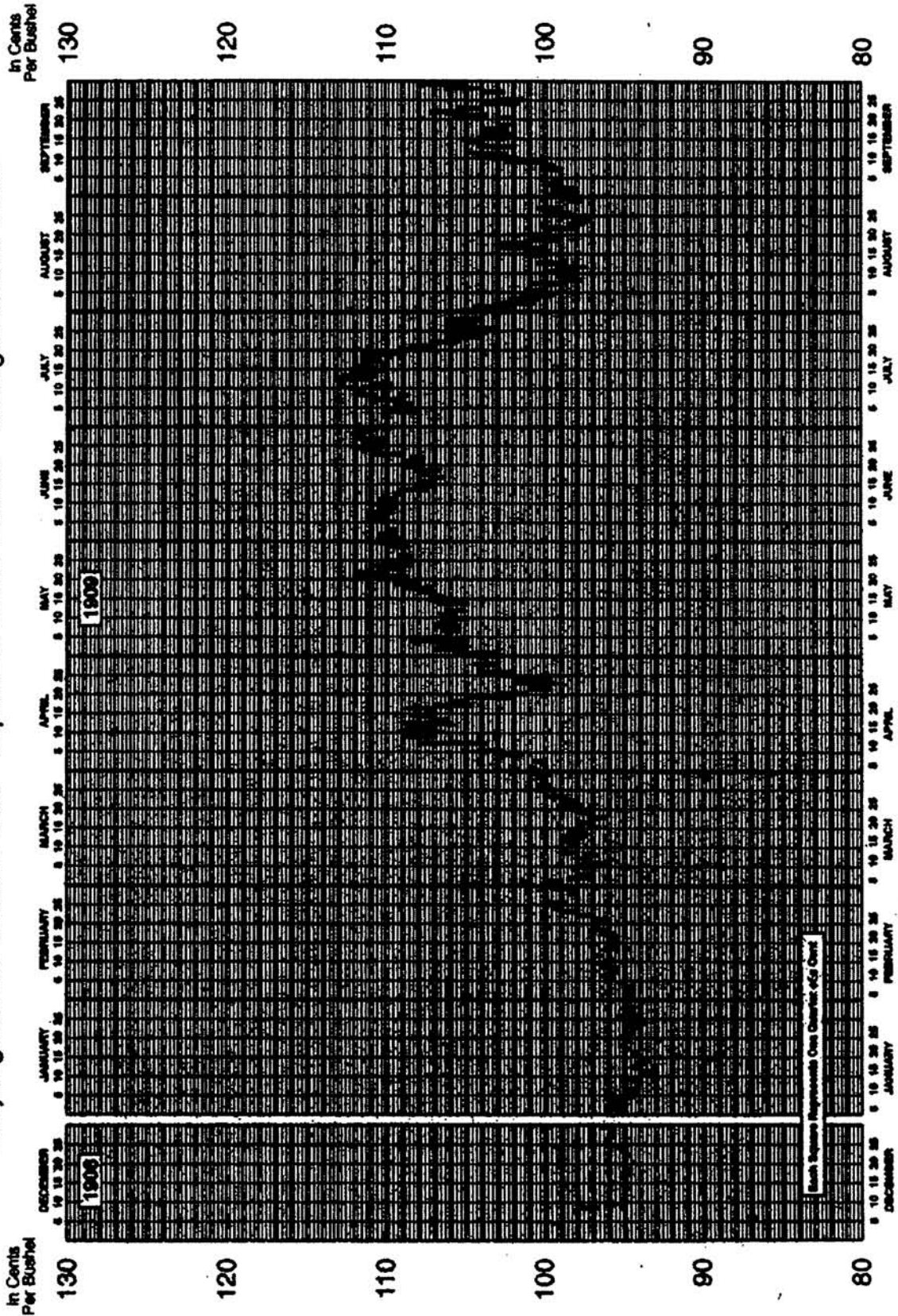


Daily Highest and Lowest Prices – July Wheat Futures – Chicago Board of Trade



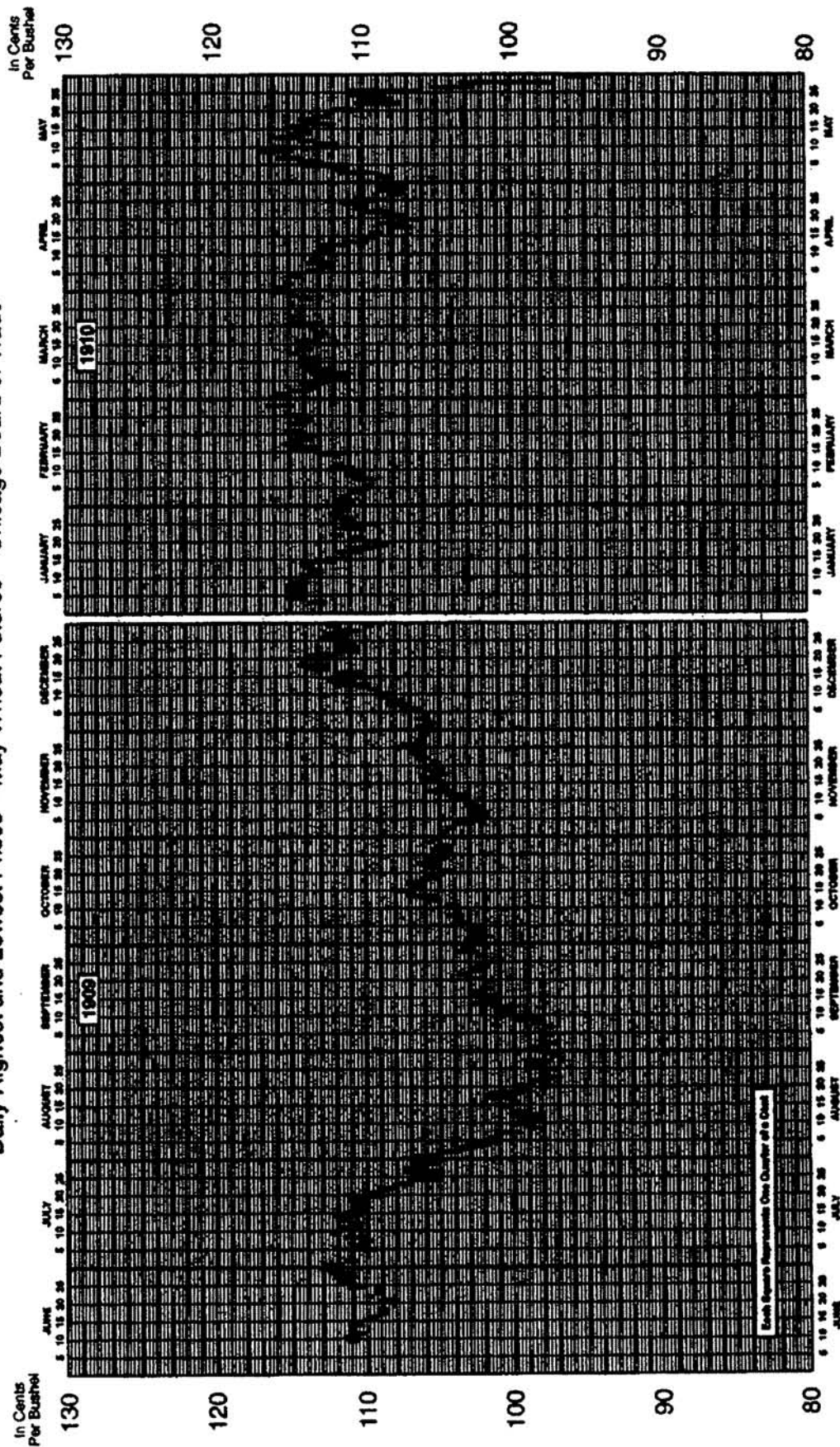
• SEPTEMBER 1909 •

Daily Highest and Lowest Prices – September Wheat Futures – Chicago Board of Trade



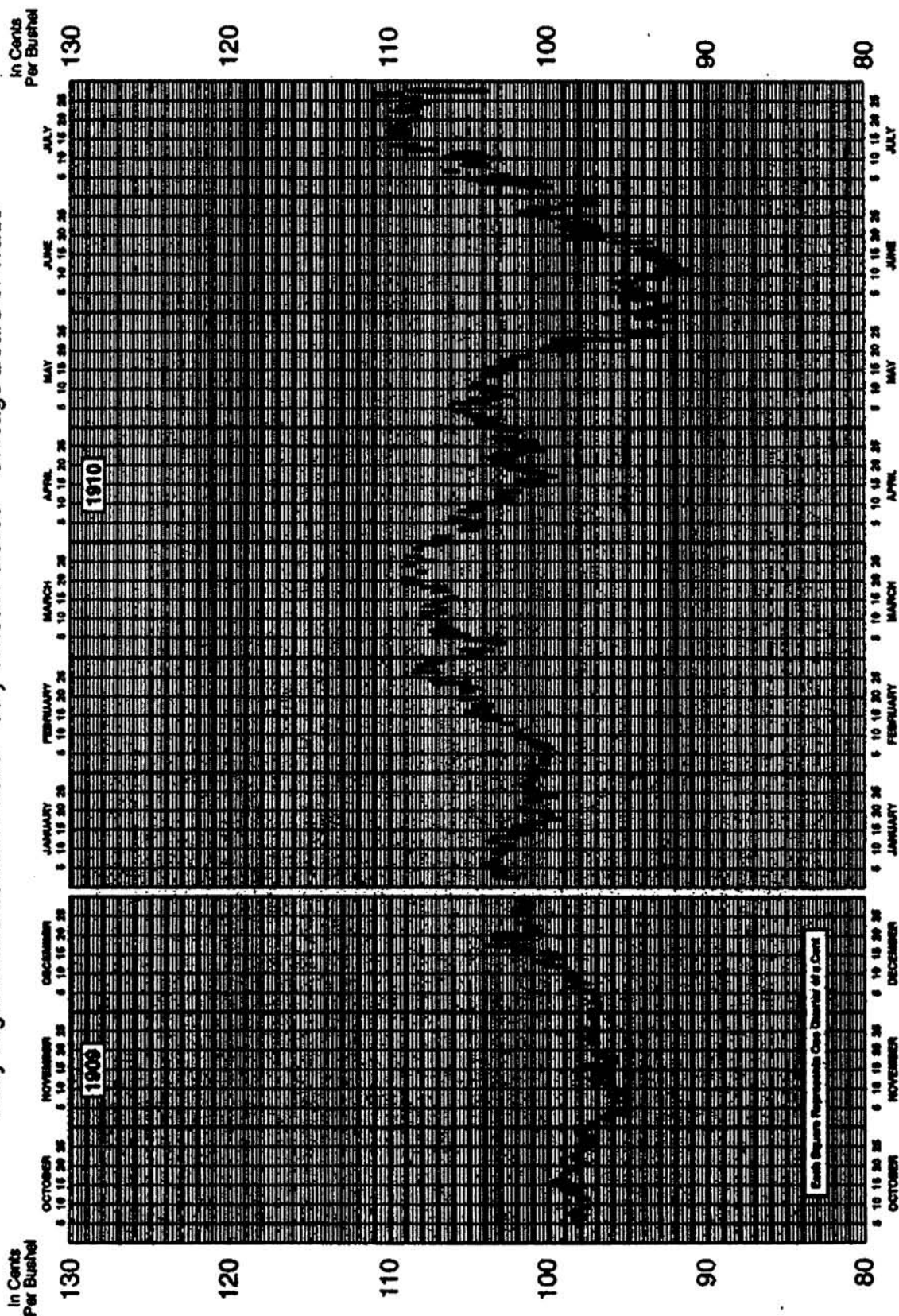
• MAY 1970 •

Daily Highest and Lowest Prices -- May Wheat Futures -- Chicago Board of Trade



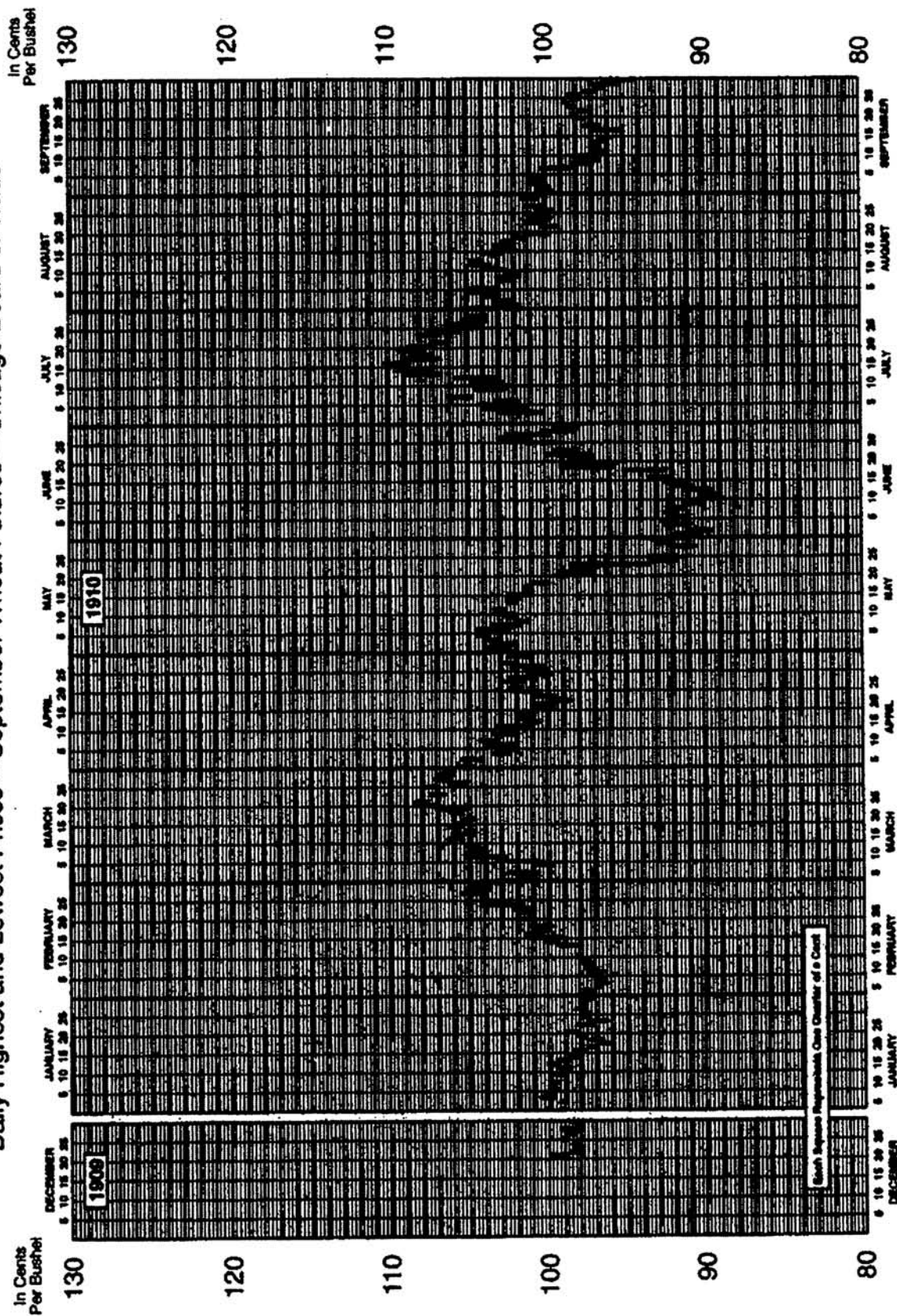
• JULY 1910 •

Daily Highest and Lowest Prices – July Wheat Futures – Chicago Board of Trade



• SEPTEMBER 1910 •

Daily Highest and Lowest Prices – September Wheat Futures – Chicago Board of Trade

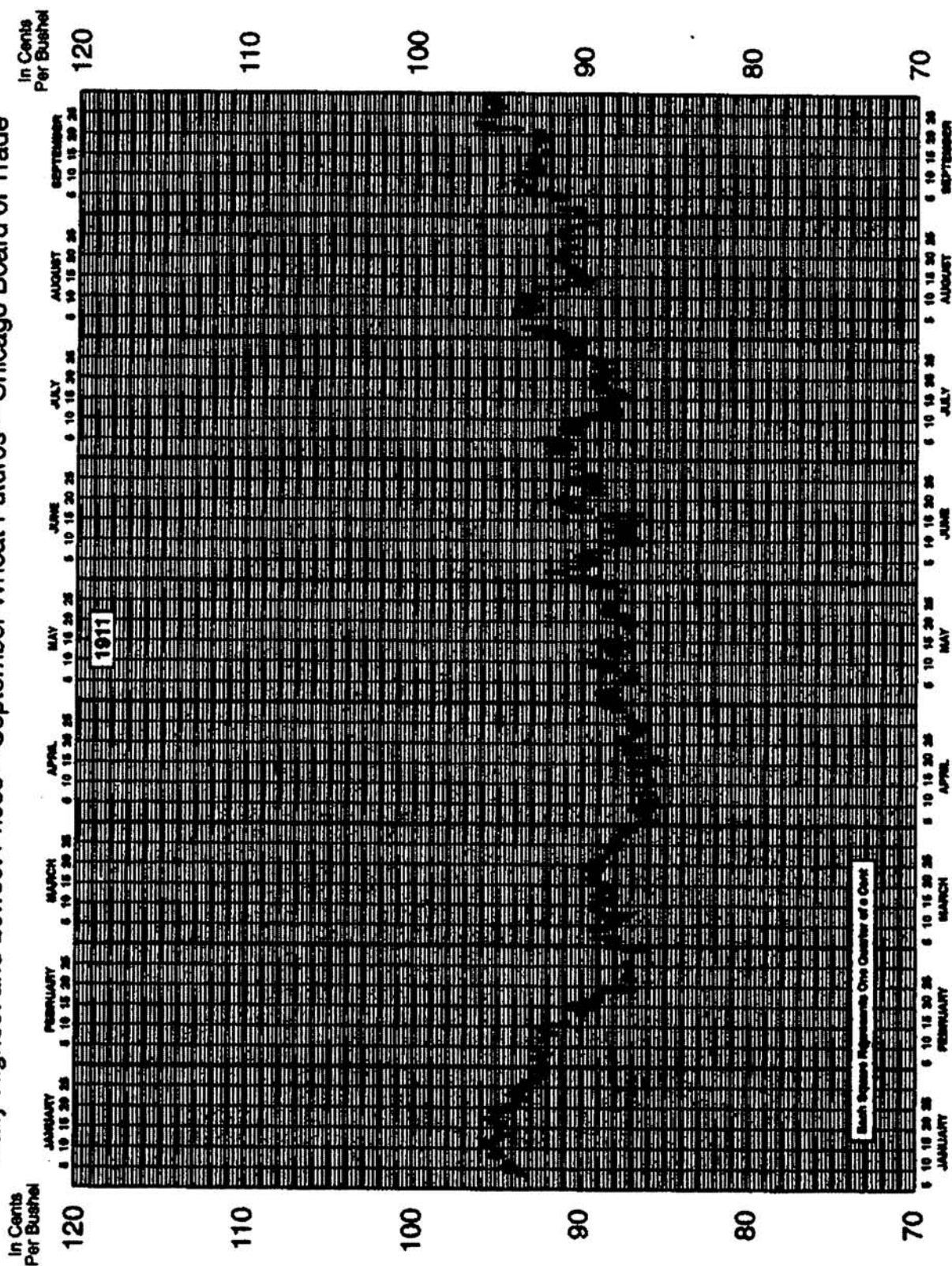


• MAY 1911 •

Daily Highest and Lowest Prices – May Wheat Futures – Chicago Board of Trade

In Cents Per Bushel		In Cents Per Bushel	
120		120	
110		110	
100		100	
90		90	
80		80	
70		70	
JUNE		JUNE	
6 10 15 20 25	6 10 15 20 25	6 10 15 20 25	6 10 15 20 25
JULY		JULY	
6 10 15 20 25	6 10 15 20 25	6 10 15 20 25	6 10 15 20 25
AUGUST		AUGUST	
6 10 15 20 25	6 10 15 20 25	6 10 15 20 25	6 10 15 20 25
SEPTEMBER		SEPTEMBER	
6 10 15 20 25	6 10 15 20 25	6 10 15 20 25	6 10 15 20 25
OCTOBER		OCTOBER	
6 10 15 20 25	6 10 15 20 25	6 10 15 20 25	6 10 15 20 25
NOVEMBER		NOVEMBER	
6 10 15 20 25	6 10 15 20 25	6 10 15 20 25	6 10 15 20 25
DECEMBER		DECEMBER	
6 10 15 20 25	6 10 15 20 25	6 10 15 20 25	6 10 15 20 25
JANUARY		JANUARY	
6 10 15 20 25	6 10 15 20 25	6 10 15 20 25	6 10 15 20 25
FEBRUARY		FEBRUARY	
6 10 15 20 25	6 10 15 20 25	6 10 15 20 25	6 10 15 20 25
MARCH		MARCH	
6 10 15 20 25	6 10 15 20 25	6 10 15 20 25	6 10 15 20 25
APRIL		APRIL	
6 10 15 20 25	6 10 15 20 25	6 10 15 20 25	6 10 15 20 25
MAY		MAY	
6 10 15 20 25	6 10 15 20 25	6 10 15 20 25	6 10 15 20 25
1910		1911	
Each Square Represents One Quarter of a Cent			

Daily Highest and Lowest Prices – September Wheat Futures – Chicago Board of Trade



STOCK and COMMODITY TRADERS'
H A N D - B O O K
of TREND DETERMINATION



Secrets of
Forecasting Values

Especially Commodities
including Stocks

by

GEORGE BAYER

Box 1142

CARMEL, CALIFORNIA



SACRED SCIENCE INSTITUTE

WWW.SACREDSCIENCE.COM

Table of Contents

Foreword	5	Mars in Geocentric Longitude Plus 330°, Rule No. 6	15
PART I	6-13	Mars-Mercury Speed Differential of 59 Minutes Geocentric Rule No. 2	13
The Foundation upon which we build our Rules of Forecasting Movements of Com- modities and Stocks	6	Mars, Geocentric passing in Longitude 16°55'46" Cancer, Rule No. 33	38
Additional Fundamentals	8	Mars Right Ascension Differential of 19h 20m, Rule No. 7A	48
What the Ancients knew	8	Mars' Right Ascension Differential of 11h20m, Rule No. 8A	48
Charts	10	Mars' Right Ascension at Full Hours, Rule No. 9A	48
Trading in Commodities	10	Mars' Right Ascension plus Daily Variation of Venus Heliocentric extreme Longitude (1°37'32"), Rule No. 10A	49
Astronomy for Traders	12	Mercury Conjunctions to Saturn and Jupiter 80 years ago, Rule No. 3A	47
PART II	13	Mercury Daily Speed in Geocentric Longitude, Rule No. 41	42
48 Rules for trading in Wheat	13-46	Mercury Geocentric at 15 Aquarius and 15 Leo, and the Passage of all others over these Points, Rule No. 17	27
PART III		Mercury, Geocentric Longitude 126°30' after the Sun, Rule No. 32	37
Hides and Stocks	46-50	Mercury, Half-Way Retrograde Place, Rule No. 44	43
11 Rules for trading in Hides or Stocks	46-50	Mercury Half-way Retrograde (for Hides and Stocks), Rule No. 5A	47
PART IV		Mercury Heliocentric Declination 19°51'0", Rule No. 6A	47
Rules for Cotton, Lard and Stocks	50-51	Mercury Latitude Heliocentric, Rule No. 38	41
Addresses for Supplies	51	Mercury-Mars Longitudinal Difference of 161°32'18" Rule No. 3	14
		Mercury-Mars Speed Differential of 59 Minutes Geocentric Rule No. 2	13
		Mercury Passing 19°36' Scorpio, Rule No. 9	18
		Mercury Passing 19°36' Sagittarius, Rule No. 9	18
		Mercury Passing 24°14' Capricorn, Rule No. 9	18
		Mercury Passing 17°18'27" Cancer Geocentric, Rule No. 20	30
		Mercury, Reduction to Orbit of previous Year using Extreme Value of 12°52", Rule No. 47	45
		Mercury Retrograde of one Year and its Effect a Year later when Mercury reaches the same Position Rule No. 5	15
		Mercury Retrograde Passes over the Sun, Rule No. 22	30
		Mercury, Retrograde with special Values (for Lard), Rule No. 1C	50
		Mercury, Speed in Geocentric Longitude, Rule No. 1	13
		Mercury Retrograde of One Year and its Effect the Year after, using Calendar Date, Rule No. 4	14
		Mercury Speed in Longitude Geocentric 59' and 1°58', Rule No. 27	35
		Mercury-Sun Conjunctions Plus 60° in Geocentric Positions, Rule No. 36	40
		Mercury, Venus and Mars Longitude one Year prior, Rule No. 1B	50
		Mercury 80 Years ago, Rule No. 4A	47
		Neptune and its True Distance from Earth, Rule No. 13	21
		Number 35 and its Parts, 4 3/8, 8 3/4 and 17 1/2, Rule No. 25	33
		Options, Changing on Charts	34
		Orders, Market and Stop-Loss	11
		Parallax	8
		Perihelium	16
		Planets	11-12
		Prices for Wheat, how to find Levels, Rule No. 45	44
		Retrograde Motion of Planets	13

INDEX

Addresses to buy Supplies	51
Angle of 123°, Rule No. 12	21
Aphelium	17
Books required	51
Charts	10
Charts, Changing Future Prices	34
Charts for Hides, 1936 to 1940—In pocket of back cover.	
Charts for Wheat 1904-1905—in pocket of back cover.	
Charts for Wheat, 1935 to 1940—In pocket of back cover.	
Commodity Trading in General	10
Cottonseed Oil	10
Cotton	50
Declination, Heliocentric	7
Direct Motion of Planets	13
Earth, True Distance from	7
Eighty Years Cycle, Rule No. 16	26
Ellipse, 6 inches, Illustration No. 3	20
Ellipse, 6 inches, Rule No. 11	19
Gaps, Rule No. 26	33
Hide Charts, 1936 to 1940—In pocket of back cover.	
Hides, About Trading in Futures	46
Jupiter Right Ascension, Differential of 1h 21m 45s, Rule No. 48	45
Lard	50
Latitude Heliocentric	8
Longitude Geocentric	12
Longitude Heliocentric	8
Margins	11
Market Orders	11
Mars, Effect of its Perihelium, Rule No. 7	16-17

Retrograde movement of a Planet, Illustration No. 2	13	Venus, Heliocentric Declination reaching an Extreme beyond 23°26'51", Rule No. 31	37
Right Ascension	6	Venus Heliocentric, Latitude at Extreme and least Speeds, Rule No. 15	25
Rubber (Commodity)	10	Venus Heliocentric Latitudes 0°, 2°16', 3°6' and 3°23' Rule No. 43	43
Saturn, Heliocentric Latitude Units of 1'21", Rule No. 10	18	Venus, Heliocentric Latitude divided into Parts, Rule No. 40	42
Saturn Helio Latitude 1/5 Second Differentials, Rule No. 23	31	Venus in Its Extreme Speed in Daily Variation of Heliocentric Longitude, Rule No. 35	39
Saturn's Heliocentric Latitude, Unit 5'46".15, Rule No. 28	35	Venus in Retrograde Motion Making Conjunction with Mercury, Rule No. 21	30
Saturn, Heliocentric Longitude, Unit of 34'36".9, Rule No. 29	36	Venus Latitude Heliocentric 4°38' Differences, Rule No. 2A	46
Signs of the Zodiac, Illustration No. 1	12	Venus R. A. plus 4 Units of 1°37'32" Variation in Venus daily Longitude Speed, Rule No. 11A	49
Signs of Zodiac	12	Venus, Reduction to Orbit, Value +2°42', Rule No. 42	42
Stocks	50	Venus, Reduction to Orbit, Values 0°, 1°50' and 3°1' Rule No. 46	44
Stop Loss Orders	11	Venus-Sun Conjunction plus 60°, Rule No. 37	40
Trading Commodities	10	Venus, Variation per Day of the Heliocentric Logarithm of its Radius Vector, Rule No. 39	41
Trading Rules in general	51	War of 1904-1905	32
Trees, 14	24	Wheat Charts, 1904, 5, 1935 to 1910—In pocket of back cover.	
True Distance from Earth	7	Wheat Prices, how to find, Rule No. 39	44
Venus at 15 Aquarius, using the Ellipse, Rule No. 18	28	Wheat Versus Man, Rule No. 24	31
Venus, Daily Variation in Heliocentric Longitude, Plus or Minus 7 Minutes, Rule No. 34	39	Zodiac	12
Venus, Daily Variation of Logarithm Radius Vector, Rule No. 1A	46	Zodiacal Signs, Illustration No. 1	12
Venus, Effect of its Perihelium, Rules Nos. 7-8	16-17		
Venus, Geocentric Longitude, Units 1°9'13", Rule No. 14	23		
Venus, Geocentric Longitude Speed	24		
Venus Geocentric Passing Conjunction Sun Geocentric, Rule No. 19	29		
Venus, Heliocentric Declination passing Sun's Declination of 23°26'51", Rule No. 30	36		

PART II

THE INDIVIDUAL RULES

RULE NO. 1

SPEED OF MERCURY IN GEOCENTRIC LONGITUDE

We take Raphael's geocentric Ephemeris for this purpose, looking up page 26-28. The value we have to use is given in the second last column on these pages. This speed changes from day to day. Periodically the speed comes to a stand-still. At such times the planet moves from a direct motion into a retrograde motion or from a retrograde to a direct motion, see Ill. No. 2. The extreme speed of Mercury is $2^{\circ}12'$, however at times this extreme speed is reached at $2^{\circ}4'$.

It is advisable to plot this Mercury speed on K & E paper through an entire year and note the effect of such changes. We obtain tops or bottoms.

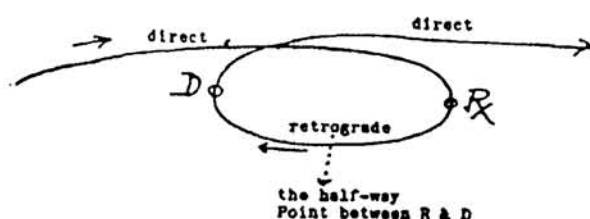


Illustration No. 2

The Direct and Retrograde Movement of a Planet (Geocentric)

Examples: July 26th 1939 low was reached when Mercury was at 0.

September 15, 1939 peak was at the extreme speed of $1^{\circ}54'$. On May 21-22 1940 we have an extreme Mercury speed of $2^{\circ}12'$, heralding a change of trend.

Rule: It is advisable to follow the market in the direction the day Mercury changes its speed. Usually the trend begun at such time is good for from 4 days to a week.

Using 1940 as a check, we have the following dates as change of speed: February 9-10. It was a top and we went down until February 14th. The movement was a minor reaction of two cents.

March 5th, 1940: Mercury at 0. Sharp upmove for three days, extending nearly 4 cents.

March 15th 1940: Mercury $57'$ speed changing to downward again. It was a low from which an upmove of 6c came forth.

March 28th, 1940: Mercury at 0. This case did not give a clear cut movement, in fact considering we had declined two days previous already, we would be inclined to expect an upmove on that change. But we sold off slightly. Would call it a failure.

May 21st 1940: Mercury at $2:12$. Moving downward from the 20th also the 21st, called for a reversal upward for several days we did get. It extended about 4c.

The next date is coming between July 7th and 8th.

There were five commitments made according to this rule up to date lasting 3 to 5 days. Profits were in four, in one a loss of about 2c. Let us figure we did not get exact tops or bottoms I would judge that at least a net profit of 8-10c should have been produced. This in 6 months of operation.

It is not a law that gets one rich quick, but one in which several contracts can be taken and held a few days. When the previous movement is down, wheat must be bought on weakness of the day; if the market moves upward prior to change of Mercury's speed, short positions must be taken on strength during the day Mercury changes its speed.

RULE NO. 2

MARS-MERCURY SPEED DIFFERENTIAL OF 59 MINUTES

We use the geocentric longitudinal speed of Mars and Mercury given on page 26 to 28 of Raphael's Ephemerides. Each time Mars reaches a point that is 59 minutes apart from the Mercury speed we are due for a down trend of about three days duration. It does not matter whether we have been going upward in the trend before. We might have been going downward and, upon reaching this differential, we are heading for further down.

Examples: January 25, 1940, Mars has a speed of 41 minutes, while Mercury has a speed in geocentric longitude of 1.40. They are then 59 minutes apart in their speeds. Wheat had declined before $3\frac{1}{2}$ points. From this date (January 25, 1940) we declined the same amount once more until February 1, 1940, or $3\frac{1}{2}$ points. On April 30, 1940, Mars' speed is 39 minutes, that of Mercury 1.38 minutes. The difference is 59 minutes. The market had declined from April 22

four points. From April 30, 1940 on, we dropped another four points.

June 10, 1940: The speed differential between Mars and Mercury geocentric was 59 minutes. On that day, we opened low and ran up wildly $4\frac{1}{2}c$. After further slight strength for two days, which brought the price up an extra cent above the extreme high of June 10, we dropped according to this rule and made new lows.

In a six months' period, we have therefore three cases where the Mercury-Mars differential speed of 59 minutes occurred. Each time a decline was noted. Each time the amount of the decline was about $4c$. If you check previous years, you will note that there is only once a case, on June 3, 1938, when the rule failed, and even then we reacted two points during the next three days.

RULE NO. 3

MARS-MERCURY LONGITUDINAL DIFFERENCE OF $161^{\circ}32'18''$.

While we are at differentials of Mars and Mercury, I shall give you a rule that has to do with a geocentric differential of these two planets. Each time these two planets are in geocentric longitude $161^{\circ}32'18''$ apart, big solid upmoves begin. (This has nothing to do with speed!)

Example: April 6, 1935, Mars was at 16° Libra retrograde (moving backward) while Mercury was then at 27° Pisces, or 161° apart. A sharp upward move followed.

On April 17, 1937, Mars was at $5^{\circ}29'$ Sagittarius retrograde while Mercury was at $16^{\circ}39'$ Taurus, or 161° apart. A sharp run-up of two days occurred. June 20, 1937, Mars at $19^{\circ}50'$ Scorpio and Mercury at $10^{\circ}50'$ Gemini, 161° apart. The market started a big upmove at that time.

August 21, 1939, Mars at $23^{\circ}58'$ Capricorn, and Mercury at $12^{\circ}11'$ Leo, started the big upmove before the War began.

We note that a distance of 161° between the planets Mars and Mercury can only occur every two years at a time when Mars is retrograde. It takes Mars two years to get around the Zodiac. The moves that do come off are very strong.

The positions of these planets belonging to the last case can be found in Raphael's Ephemeris for 1939 on page 17 under date of August 21.

RULE NO. 4

MERCURY RETROGRADE POSITION OF ONE YEAR AND ITS EFFECT A YEAR LATER ON THE SAME DATE

We use Mercury's position at the moment it turns retrograde. This is only possible when we look at it from the earth. Therefore, we have to use the geocentric positions as given in Raphael's Ephemeris. Rules of the kind I give now are very hard to explain in words. We have to look into our wheat charts and point out the positions since the picture actually talks and shows the effect.

On January 23, 1936, Mercury turns retrograde at $17^{\circ}35'$ Aquarius. When this point is reached the year after, on January 23, 1937, we find that a three days rally came in.

On January 5, 1937, Mercury becomes retrograde at $1^{\circ}31'$ Aquarius. The next year, i.e. on January 5, 1938 in spite of the rise previous to that date, the market rallied further from this day on for three days. Thus, we had an upmove from January 5, 1938 on.

On December 20, 1937 Mercury retrograded at $15^{\circ}36'$ Capricorn which therefore called for a rally on the very same day a year later i.e. on December 20, 1938: actually we made a low on that date. We were right to expect an upmove.

On December 5, 1938, Mercury retrograded at $29^{\circ}46'$ Sagittarius. The effect of this retrogradation was to be felt on December 5, 1939. We made a gap upwards on that day, rather, to be more specific, between December 5 and December 6, 1939. It was a wild movement of nearly $18c$ before the effect wore off.

On November 18, 1939 Mercury went retrograde at $13^{\circ}58'$ Sagittarius. Its effect will be felt on November 18, 1940. The wheat market from this day on is due for a rally of at least three days according to the rules given.

We note that the dates given are gradually moving backwards in the calendar. The difference amounts to about 16-18 days from one year to the next. Let us check this: January 23, 1936 to January 5, 1937 are 18 days backwards. January 5, 1937 to December 20, 1937 are 16 days backwards; December 20, 1937 to December 5, 1938 we have 15 days backwards, from December 5, 1938 to November 18, 1939, we have 17 days backwards. So that, it is easy to see that the retrograde points of Mercury from year to year are retrograding themselves, using a rate of about 17 days.

RULE NO. 5

MERCURY'S RETROGRADE POSITION AND ITS
ZODIACAL VALUE AT THAT TIME COM-
PARED TO THE SAME MERCURY
POSITION A YEAR AGO

We use the same positions as given in rule No. 4 each time planet Mercury turns retrograde. Instead of using the date in the calendar, we now use the longitudinal position of Mercury, which necessarily must differ as you soon will see.

We follow the longitude of the planet Mercury until it reaches the very same degree and minute in the Zodiac at which place it turned retrograde the cycle previous.

January 23, 1936 (see above) shows the retrograde position of Mercury 17°35' Aquarius. This very same place is passed by Mercury again on February 26, 1937. This was an important low from which a sharp upward move began.

January 5, 1937 Mercury retrogrades at 1°31'. The year following we run across this place on February 9, 1938. It was the very top of the year for wheat.

The December 20, 1937 retrograde place of Mercury find its "echo" on January 23, 1939. We have a three days upward move from then on.

December 5, 1938 the retrograde place of Mercury gives us 29°46' Sagittarius on January 5-6 1940. We made the second important top for wheat two days before and, on that specific day we made a gap downward and, a gap, whatever its direction, up or down, means the trend is in the direction of that gap and never against it.

I have not said much about gaps as yet. Bear in mind that they are important and must not be slighted. A gap upward (meaning a space is left open between the trading of one day compared to the trading area of the next day) indicates strength upward. A gap down means weakness. Gaps are not always left open; strength or weakness may be but for a few days. However, when a gap is left open such place must be watched on the charts for later use. Invariably at some time such "left-open" gaps will be closed. We had a gap open on December 12, 1939 which was closed during the January decline 1940. The gaps left open on October 9, 1939 was covered during the May drop of 1940.

Ellipses oftentimes have to be laid through gaps to produce perfect settings. Sometimes also a movement jumps out of an ellipse with a gap, moves on for a few days, reacts and jumps back into the ellipse once more and finishes its run within the ellipse to its end.

November 18, 1939 finds Mercury at the retrograde place 13°58' of Sagittarius. We reach this place again between December 18 and 19, 1940.

This rule No. 5 is not quite as good as rule No. 4 for practical use

RULE NO. 6

MARS IN GEOCENTRIC LONGITUDE PLUS 330°.

Here is a rule that does not occur very often. Whenever it can be used, grand results are obtained. We use the position of Mars in geocentric longitude and the value to be used is 16°35'. The signs which we have to use change from year to year backwards. In simpler words, we add to a value once established 330°. As stated above the Laws of Nature are very intricate and hard to explain, but when looked up on charts and in the ephemerides you can grasp what I mean.

We look up the Raphael's Ephemeris of 1931.

Look at Mars on July 9-10, 1931. The value there shows 16°35' in the sign of Virgo. The year following at exactly that date we had the enormous bear market low of stocks within a day. Note, that the sign of Virgo was used and no other sign gives results, at least not for the year 1932.

On July 9-10, 1932 you could buy your head off and make monstrous profits.

I said above that you had to add to the July 9-10, 1931 position exactly 330° to arrive at the next important point from which to measure. Thus we say: 16°35' Virgo for Mars, the start on July 9-10, 1931 plus 30° gives 16°35' Libra; plus 30° gives 16°35' Scorpio, plus another 30° gives 16°35' Sagittarius; plus 30° brings us into Capricorn; plus 30° gives Aquarius, plus again 30° gives Pisces; plus 30° more brings us to Aries; plus another 30° gives Taurus; plus 30° gives Gemini, plus 30° more gives Cancer and once more 30° gives us 16°35' in Leo. All told we moved the position of Mars 330° further up. Then we look in the ephemeris for the date on which this happens. We find it was on October 18-19, 1932. A year later we had a big low.

As I said we cannot use this day but we have to use exactly a year later and find we are again at a monstrous low although we were just one day late to get the extreme lowest point. An 18c rise followed immediately.

In fairness to my work, going back once more to the July 10, 1932 date I wish to say that stocks kept on rising as we all recall, but wheat did not rise immediately, although we may term these few days of early July 1932 the B E A R - M A R K E T lows. In fact, wheat declined down to July 17th, 1932 and then got the vast rise. The decline of these extra days amounted to 3c which is nothing to worry about, provided one knows that a 10c rise follows right thereafter. Anyhow, wheat went from 50c down to 47c yet. The rise was 10c right thereafter.

The next date must necessarily be 330° further in Mars' motion. To the newly found value we have to add yet one full year. Thus we use: October 18-19, 1932, Mars at 16°35' Leo plus 330° gives us: 16°35' Cancer. This value was reached by Mars on August 9, 1934. Add one full year to it, gives us August 9, 1935. What happened at that time? We were in the midst of a minor reaction that began August 1st 1935. We reacted until August 19th 1935 the amount of the reaction being 3c just like it happened back in 1932. However, we rose after the 3c reaction had taken its course precisely 21c. From the place we bought, according to this law, we rose 18c.

Going backwards from Cancer 30° is the same as if we go forward from Cancer 330°. So that for the next point we have to take Gemini as sign and the same 16°35' therein. This occurred on June 7th 1936. On that day Mars runs through 16°35' Gemini. A year later, June 7, 1937 as per rule, we find ourselves at the major bottom for wheat, and even then, although it was the bottom, we hung around with sharp ups and downs until June 20th. This happened in Chicago wheat. In Winnipeg wheat we made the low on June 7-8 and began to move upward without approaching the low levels again. Such conditions are occurring quite often between Chicago and Winnipeg. They should be ignored for practical purposes. As said before, we are not trying for the last eighth but we try for swings. He who bought on June 7, 1937 in either market had the bottom.

The next crucial point lies 330° ahead and it is 16°35' Taurus which was due on April 4,

1938. Add one year to this value and get April 4, 1939. It was the very bottom from which wheat took a two months run upward to June 1st 1939.

After this our next date is due when we go 330° further from 16°35' Taurus. This is 16°35' Aries. This value is crossed again on January 28, 1940. Adding to it one full year, we obtain January 28, 1941 and you can bet your boots that anyone who buys on this day some wheat will run into big profits according to this rule.

All we have to do to get these points and project from each crucial point, 330° and add one year; easy, isn't it, if you know of this as you now do.

In this type of work we have to do with points in the Zodiac that have been established a year prior. Nothing is there on the actual day to make you see the change of trend, and just the same it is there, invisible, though active. This is the big secret of the ancients which they reproduced in Code form. It reminds me quite often of the old Vaudeville show when a fellow pulled out of his shirt sleeves a lot of rabbits or doves. We could not see them, but they were there just the same.

It is suggested that you go over this procedure very carefully and note how I have done it. You may have to work a week on it if you have no experience in projecting degrees and signs, but you better learn these rudiments of astronomy until you dream about them since, the further we go into the subject now, the more we will have to count and measure and bring forth "invisible" points and make the commitments right.

As you note, in this rule we have had no miss whatever. It worked each year from 1932 up and it did so further back too, only I do not want to bring too many examples. Once understood, you do further checking backwards yourself and gain experience. Remember though, when you go back you have to deduct and not add! To get the 1930 or 1931 date you will have to use the signs of Libra, Scorpio, Sagittarius etc. in the 16°35' position for Mars.

This law can also be used for trading in stocks.

RULE NO. 7

THE EFFECT OF PERIHELION OF MARS AND VENUS

We look at page XIX of the Nautical Almanac of any year and find a paragraph starting with

"Elements of the planetary Orbits". Use the lower list in whose middle you find a heading: Mean Longitude of the Perihelium. This is what we need. Perihelium means the point where a plane is nearest to the Sun; Aphelium means the point that is furthest away from the Sun. These points lie opposite each other, in astronomical expression they are 180° apart. This necessitates on your part that you learn by heart the various signs that are opposing: Aries opposes Libra, Taurus opposes Scorpio, Gemini opposes Sagittarius; Cancer opposes Capricorn; Leo opposes Aquarius; Virgo opposes Pisces. We only quote one half, since the other side is just turned around. (See Illustration No. 1).

The Perihelium for Venus is given as: 130°-42'46".0

The Perihelium of Mars is given as: 334°56'9".9

This equals in sign to: Venus 10°42' Leo
Mars 4°56' Pisces

The opposite points or the Aphelium points of Venus and Mars are at:

Venus 310°42'46".0 or 10°42' Aquarius

Mars 154°56'9".9 or 4°56' Virgo

I have discovered that whenever one of these two planets pass its Perihelium in geocentric longitude (also over the Aphelium), we get changes in wheat of a few days duration. It means that Venus or Mars must pass over its own perihelium.

The passage over the Perihelium happens once a year with Venus, unless the planet becomes retrograde shortly after this point has been passed. In that case the planet will turn backwards and cross the point backwards, then, when it becomes direct in motion once more and naturally has to pass the point a second time. Mars passes its perihelium only once every two years. The exception, a treble passage, occurs very seldom.

Venus passing over its Perihelium (10°42' Leo)

Year	Date	Effect
1935	June 17	at an important low
1936	July 26	at a good low with strong upmove following
1937	June 17	at a good low; strong upmove develops here
1938	June 17	in a downward move. however, after dropping 3c more the market rallied back to this level as prevailing on this day by June 21st, even exceeded the level by two cents.

1939 — August 11 — at important low levels just preceding the war rise.

1940 — Sept. 18-19 — the effect should be a low level.

Mars passes its Perihelium (4°56' Pisces geocentric)

Year	Date	Effect
1932	March 2	in an important top area; the range of the day is within a point from the actual top. A substantial drop follows.
1934	Feb. 10	in a top area; we are 2½c from the peak. After a few days sideways movement a substantial drop follows.
1936	Jan. 20	in a sideways movement; we are 3c from the peak and a substantial drop follows.
1937	Dec. 28	the market had moved upward previously and is developing a sharp run upward, which amounts to 11c.
1939	Nov. 27	the market had moved sideways previously and starts a sharp run upward, which amounts to 22c.

How do we recognize in this case whether an upmove or a bad downmove is coming? Answer: —The high which had been made just previously, if passed, tells definitely it is an upmove. Therefore, when commitments are made on this rule on the downside we have to carry a reverse stop a half point above the previous high.

We have now examined the perihelium of Venus and Mars. Mercury's effect is not substantial enough to warrant its use. Venus, however shows that its passage over the perihelium gives important lows on which to buy. Mars produces its own passage over its own perihelium sharp moves either up or down, as we have seen.

RULE NO. 8

THE EFFECT OF PERIHELUM BY USING HELIOCENTRIC POSITIONS

We use Venus as example. In rule No. 7 we had to use the positions given in Raphael's Ephemeris. In the present case, we use the positions as given in the Nautical Almanac; i.e., the heliocentric positions, 130°42' instead of 10°42' Leo.

Year	Date	Effect
1937	March 3	we are in a strong upmove; the next day the price drops a ½c below the March 3 price, then we run up 20c.

- 1937 — Oct. 12 — a low followed by sharp ups and downs within a 6c range for three weeks.
- 1938 — May 25 — a gap downward, followed by an 8c drop.
- 1939 — Jan. 5 — a top (Venus at 130°42').
- 1939 — Aug. 17 — at this place we reach a high point made July 31 previous, run through it the next day for a 7c upmove.
- 1940 — March 29 — a low followed by a 9c upmove. The low level of March 29 was broken by 1/2c on April 3, 1940.
- 1940 — Nov. 9 — is date of next event.

The examples show that Venus heliocentric passing its perihelium place produces strong moves. However, we also see that they may be either up or down and, therefore, whenever we do use this method we absolutely have to work with reverse stops. We have better rules to come,

RULE NO. 9

MERCURY GEOCENTRIC PASSING OVER 19°36' SCORPIO AND SAGITTARIUS, ALSO OVER 24°14' CAPRICORN PRODUCES BIG CHANGES

Whatever the cause may be, why there are changes produced when Mercury passes certain geocentric degrees we do not know. The rule gives results

The values are 19°36' Scorpio and Sagittarius, also 24°14' in Capricorn. Example :

We use now the value 19°36' Scorpio.

- | Year | Date | Effect |
|------|---------|--|
| 1935 | Nov. 22 | a top, followed by a 6c drop. |
| 1936 | Nov. 14 | an important low from which a major upmove starts. |
| 1937 | Nov. 7 | a major low for Wheat. |
| 1938 | Oct. 30 | a top, followed by a 3c drop; we are in a bottom area, and the 3c drop brought the low three days later. |
| 1939 | Oct. 24 | we are at that time in an upward movement and the price level of this day is at a small reaction low, which is broken by 1/2c three days later; and then we moved up strongly. |

We now use the value of 19°36' Sagittarius.

- | Year | Date | Effect |
|------|---------|--|
| 1935 | Dec. 11 | a low followed by an immense gap of 3-1/2c and a top the day after. |
| 1936 | Dec. 3 | in an upmove of major proportions. |
| 1937 | Nov. 26 | a major low. |
| 1938 | Nov. 21 | an important low, followed by a 3-1/2c upward move. The price range at that time was narrow. |
| 1939 | Jan. 3 | a top. |
| 1939 | Dec. 30 | a top. |

We now use the value of 24°14' Capricorn.

- | Year | Date | Effect |
|------|---------|---|
| 1935 | Jan. 8 | a top - major. |
| 1936 | Dec. 27 | a major top. |
| 1938 | Feb. 4 | in a top area, less than 2c from the top. |
| 1939 | Jan. 29 | a top, followed by a decline. |
| 1940 | Jan. 21 | in a top formation followed by a 6c drop. |

While the first two values bring forth important changes of trend, the last value brings forth all tops in the five years' period tested, which is quite encouraging to make commitments upon.

The opposing places bring also changes: 19°36' Taurus, 19°16' Gemini and 24°14' Cancer.

RULE NO. 10

HELIOCENTRIC LATITUDE OF SATURN UNITS OF 1°21'.2

I have found the value of 1°21'.2; where I have it from I do not recall any more. This value produced in 1937 the extreme tops and bottoms, and if you recall the Wheat movements of 1937, you know that it was a question of 40c to 50c from a bottom to a top, or from a top to a bottom. Unfortunately, I have not used that rule any farther since I found it on June 6, 1938, as my date of entry shows. We shall find soon by adding the value mentioned above through these years up to date and see whether or not it still gives these extreme tops and bottoms.

We take the Nautical Almanac of 1937 and open page 201. In the middle of the page, we find a column marked "Heliocentric Latitude of Saturn", given every 8 days. In an adjoining column, we have the variation of the movement per day. This enables us by adding this variation

two times to March 29, 1937, to arrive at the proper Latitude for March 31, 1937, which was the top for Wheat.

March 29, shows that the Heliocentric Latitude at Midnight on that day in Greenwich was $2^{\circ}12'29''.0$, that the variation per day was $2''.39$. This latter value we add twice and we obtain:

$$\begin{array}{r} 2^{\circ}12'29''.0 \\ 2''.39 \\ 2''.39 \\ \hline 2^{\circ}12'33''.78 \end{array}$$

To make the work easy, we shall call this value $2^{\circ}12'34''$.

We also shall add a straight $1'20''$ instead of the very exact value of $1'21''.2$ to facilitate the work. However, as you will note, in nine months' time we are off a few seconds in Saturn's latitudinal motion.

March 31 1937

$2^{\circ}12'34''$	top for Wheat in 1937.
add: $2'40''$	
$2^{\circ}15'14''$	bottom June 7, 1937
add: $1'20''$	
$2^{\circ}16'34''$	major top July 16, 1937
add: $2'40''$	
$2^{\circ}19'14''$	major bottom October 7, '37
add: $1'20''$	
$2^{\circ}20'34''$	major bottom Nov. 24, '37

At this place, we are off six times $1''.2$, or $7''.2$ all told. Therefore, the value should be $2^{\circ}20'41''.2$. To this we add $1'21''.2$ which gives us $2^{\circ}22'2''.4$. The date is January 5, 1938, which was a top. Adding again $1'21''.2$ brings us to $2^{\circ}23'23''.6$, or to February 25, 1938, which was an important top.

If we would continue with these values we get the following dates: April 28, July 5, September 27, in 1938.

In 1939, you will note that between June 7 and June 15 the direct motion in Saturn's Latitude changes direction at $2^{\circ}29'15''.2$. It starts to go backward. The motion per day is very slow and only by February 27, 1940 do we find one of these points crossed. The next value backward, by deducting from the February 27, 1940 value, we find May 18, 1940.

However, in order to get the in-between movements which were very important we have to divide our value $1'21''.2$ into half, and use the value of $40''.6$.

This we begin to apply from February 25, 1938, on. Therefore, adding $40''.6$ to the value of $2^{\circ}23'23''.6$, which is equal to February 25, 1938, we obtain $2^{\circ}24'4''.2$, which belongs to March 28, 1938, an important bottom.

There seems to be continuity in this cycle which is of great value.

RULE NO. 11

THE 6 INCH ELLIPSE AND ITS USE

In "Time Factors" I already had put special stress on the use of the ellipse. The idea about measuring movements with ellipses on the charts came to me when I considered that planets also move around the Sun in ellipses.

The size of the ellipse which we have to use is reproduced here correctly. Be sure to reproduce it on Celluloid of medium thickness by going over the contour with a pin point to get its picture on to the celluloid. Stores that carry drawing materials also carry such celluloid sheets.

However, when you have completed the ellipse do not be in a hurry to separate the ellipse or cut it out with scissors, since the 123° angle of which I shall treat later must be drawn into the ellipse picture as shown in Illustration No. 3.

The two axis also have to be drawn into the ellipse; they form often time and price resistance.

This ellipse was designed for K & E paper and does not give results on any other.

When you have a chart before you such as the wheat chart of 1939 we make some trial tests. We set the end of the ellipse which I shall mark point X on the important lows or highs as they were made. July 25, 1939 is such a day; so is October 8, 1939. Set it there, look forward and note how nicely the movement did run within this ellipse, until it was abandoned as time progressed. The corner of August 30, 1939 becomes an important point for the position of the next top which was made on September 7th, 1939. The action of the trend may be compared to a ball that runs across a roulette wheel, bouncing from one side to another in rather weird movements. When the "wall" of the roulette bowl is reached, which we shall call the "periphery" of the ellipse in our case, a movement to the opposite side begins the angle of rebound being different each time.

It is suggested that you retain the idea of the movement of a small ball in an oval roulette bowl, whereby the ball's movement represents the trend taken of the article "wheat, cotton" or

whatever we follow. Remember constantly, that the wall of the roulette bowl makes the ball bounce back, unless, that wall is hit with such tremendous force that the ball "jumps" over the wall. This very same condition happens in extremely wild markets. We call such jumps "gaps". They overthrow temporarily all calculations—actually a new cycle begins right at this

point and new measures must be taken from that point on.

Once in a while the "jumping" over the ellipse is followed by a top right there such as it happened end of December 1939 in wheat. While it is important to know when such jumps occur, they just simply cannot be found by setting the ellipse. They must be found via our astronomical rules and a guess, whether it jumps or whether it does not jump over an ellipse does not help us.

The ellipse is more or less a helper that locates the exact price level at which changes are due on a certain day and nothing else. We will find when checking through a few years that in narrow movements ellipses are not of much help, although they should be used just the same.

This is the way ellipses should be used when markets are narrow: set the point X to a low, watch the secondary reaction and put the periphery into the low point of this secondary reaction. The trend would be upward as long as the price structure remains inside of the periphery. As soon as it peeps beyond, consider the trend as changed.

When the trend is downward, we reverse simply the picture as well as the ellipse and using the illustration above we set the ellipse into a top first, watch for the secondary comeback and lead the periphery of the ellipse through this peak of the secondary comeback. As we decline from the secondary top we must not cross beyond the ellipse but strictly stay inside of it; if we do, the trend changes to an uptrend.

For the setting at point X of the 6 inch ellipse we use the low points of a move. However, the possibility then exists that we can lay any number of ellipses through a given point. We have to restrict their number by laying the ellipse through previous highs or through gaps in case gaps were made. These highs or the gaps must not be too far away otherwise they are useless.

Here is an example which shows what I mean: Take the low of October 8th 1939 and the previous peak of October 6th 1939. Set the ellipse point X at the low of October 8th and let the left side of the ellipse run through October 6th 1939 and you will have the perfect lay of the ellipse, giving you what I call the "corner" in wheat November 24th to 27th 1939.

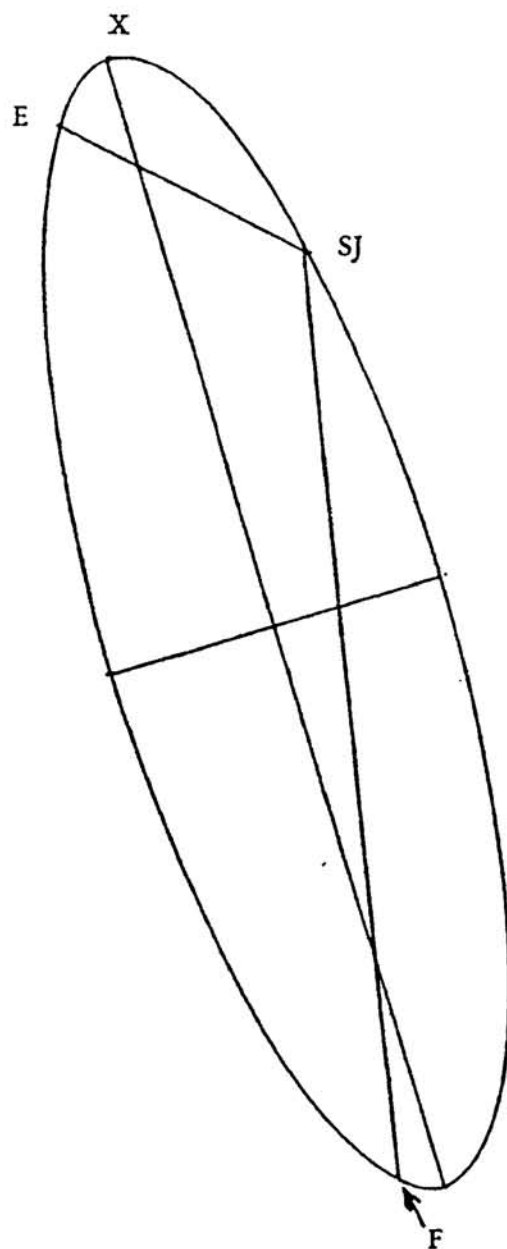


Illustration No. 3

Actual Size of 6 Inch Ellipse with Angle of 123°

RULE NO. 12
THE ANGLE OF ONE HUNDRED AND TWENTY-THREE DEGREES INSIDE
THE ELLIPSE

Whenever you read a book note that the following pages are of the greatest importance: page 40-42, page 70-72, page 80-82, page 123 and page 144. The gist of the story is lying in these pages. This I have found out from the study of dozens of ancient works. I also discovered that exactly one hundred pages later from an important page you will find ideas explained that are very similar to what was said a hundred pages previously. This statement I have to make since in the works of Confucius and Buddha it was so pronounced that, to get better explanations of certain pages, I merely went 100 pages further and obtained much clarification of the page one hundred pages before.

I have never seen any of the writings of Confucius or Buddha in original texts, not even pictures of it. But, the printers whose job it was to print translations, assembled their type in such a way that what I am stating above is brought about. Nature does that, of course, and the printer is but the innocent tool of Nature.

Why and how I struck on the idea to build a 123° angle into the ellipse I do not recall anymore. I believe it was due to the fact that the cycles of the Saturn-Jupiter conjunctions geocentric (Herschel Text Book on Astronomy explains about that very nicely) contain 369° and one third of this is 123°. At any rate, I set this angle into the ellipse as shown in the illustration No. 3. In order not to disturb that picture by marking 123°, I shall put outside of the angle, away from the picture the initials SJ, meaning Saturn-Jupiter angle. The ends of this angle will be marked E and F.

The settings of this angle inside the ellipse gives very fine results to locate tops, bottoms, gaps or what have we. Use point E at an extreme low or at an extreme high so that the line leading to SJ comes upright into a date line such as October 8th, 1939. You will note that first of all the November 24-27 lows of 1939 are coming to the periphery, also that the SJ-F line is jumped over with a gap upward in the middle of the ellipse on December 12, 1939. When we have very severe movements such as was the case in May 1940 in wheat we have to lay the ellipse in such a way that line F-SJ is set into the

coordinate instead of line E-SJ. This way we have to lay the ellipse together with the 123° angle the long way.

Lay line SJ-E through high of April 22, 1940 and May 10, 1940. This brings the low of May 16, 1940 into the coordinate of that day and the end point X of the ellipse also fits into this day. The real low of 74 $\frac{7}{8}$ in Sept. wheat is from the high of May 10, 1939 just one ellipse diameter down.

Another example of laying the ellipse: Wheat 1940, set ellipse at low of February 1st. Note how the movement runs in the ellipse upward, with a one day exception on April 10th, when it moved out beyond by $\frac{1}{2}c$, but jumped into it again the day after with a gap upward. Only by end of April 1940 does the price abandon the upward trend and then, to help the trader, the price remained steady for fully four days and only then dropped.

Experiment around with this 123° angle and use in normal markets only the "E" setting as explained above.

Note: In abnormal markets or at very high levels, set ellipse at tops or bottoms at point F instead of point E. see Ill. No. 3.

RULE NO. 13
NEPTUNE AND ITS TRUE DISTANCE
FROM THE EARTH

There is a feeling among the public that No. 13 is a dangerous number. Hotels usually have no number 13 for their rooms; they jump from 12 to 14 since the guests do not want to use rooms with such a number.

I have not selected this number specially for Neptune, but as I am taking the data supplied here from a pile of cards upon which the various rules had been jotted down, Nature desired that I just now would take the special card that deals with planet Neptune in relation to the movements of wheat.

The rule to be explained uses Neptune and its logarithm of the "True Distance from the Earth", as will be found in the Nautical Almanac on page 221 up. We do not use the big number, 1.476 etc., but the daily differential or increment found in small numbers next to it.

When we check 1939 with 1940 for the same dates, we find that there is a slight progression from one year to the next in those numbers. January 1st 1939 shows minus 2411, while January 1st 1940 shows minus 2437. This idea is worth

while retaining since it also shows in other places under different conditions again.

But, let me concentrate on the law that I shall bring forth, how we shall use Mr. Neptune to locate tops and bottoms in wheat.

Here it is: Expect changes when Neptune's daily motion in its logarithm of the True Distance of the Earth (Nautical Almanac page 231 up) reaches the following numbers:

0, 900, 1800, 2340, 2412 and its extreme speed, which latter point varies.

Note, that the greatest speed in this particular motion of Neptune develops at the time it changes its sign from plus to minus or from minus to plus as was the case on March 14, 1939. The motion comes to a standstill when its extreme is reached as was the case on June 10, 1939.

The values supplied above produce mostly major changes. They act while moving upward as well as while moving downward.

Here is what happened when Neptune crossed the values given from January 1939 till now (June 22, 1940).

- 2412—January 2, 1939—
top occurred on January 4, when value was at 2373.
- 2340—January 7, 1939—same as above.
- 1800—January 29, 1939—
in top range (market was narrow).
- 900—February 22, 1939—top.
- 0—March 14, 1939—bottom.
- 900—April 4-5, 1939—bottom.
- 1800—April 29-30, 1939—
a top from which a sidewise movement began.
- 2340—May 26, 1939—top of great importance.
- 2412—June 4, 1939—
we fall out of upward trend.
- 2425—June 10, 1939—
the gap left open between May 24-25 is closed on this day.
- 2412—June 17, 1939—
the April 29-30, 1939 level is pierced.
- 2340—June 26, 1939—
a low, followed by a three days rally.
- 1800—July 25, 1939—a major low.
- 900—August 24, 1939—the sharp pointed top.
- 0—September 15, 1939—
the important top (2nd top).

- 900—October 8, 1939—
the important low from which we shot up 30c.
- 1800—November 5, 1939—the in-between peak.
- 2340—November 29, 1939—
the low of the reaction.
- 2412—December 5, 1939—
the strong gap upwards.
- 2495—December 18, 1940—
the extreme high of the year 1939.
- 2412—January 3, 1940—the secondary peak.
- 2340—January 9-10, 1940—in a downtrend.
- 1800—January 31, 1940—
the low of the reaction.
- 900—February 24, 1940—the high of February.
- 0—March 15—the low.
- 900—April 5, 1940—
getting ready for the strong April rise.
- 1800—April 30, 1940—
we fall out of upward trend just as we did on June 4, 1939.
- 2340—May 27, 1940—
the rally peak after the sheer drop in May.
- 2412—June 6, 1940—a low.
- 2424—June 12, 1940—a top.
- 2412—June 17, 1940—a low.
- 2340—June 27, 1940—in downtrend.
- 1800—July 26-27, 1940—
- 900—August 25, 1940—

Do not think that this Neptune motion is about equal to our Sun motion, with only a small shift each year! This would be a big mistake.

For example, checking the zero value which is listed above in the years 1939 and 1940 on March 14, shifts back in 1938 to March 11-12, in 1937 this 0 value is between March 8-9, in 1936 we find it on March 6-7. The Sun has not such motions. While we do get important changes when the values above quoted are passed; once in a while we have to be careful when using this method. We get approximately 20 changes through this method each year. Four or even five of them are not important, they even lead us wrong unless we get out fast; all the others, however, give wonderful tops and bottoms, even the most outstanding ones. From the July low of 1939 each and every value following produced a major important change. It did not work well during the June de-

cline of 1939 unless we consider resistance points which are given in the prior May movement.

RULE NO. 14.

VENUS MOVEMENTS IN GEOCENTRIC LONGITUDE USING A UNIT OF $1^{\circ}9'13''$.

This rule was found by measuring from the high of March 31, 1937 in wheat. It is rather complicated for practical use, since exact measurements must be made with degrees, minutes and seconds. If you have difficulties to measure backwards with the signs such as Aries, Taurus etc., I suggest to turn the signs into the regular 360 degrees of the circle calling 0 Aries 0, and 0 Taurus 30° , 0 Gemini 60° , and so on up. After the addition of the units are made, respectively the deductions if any, turn them back into the regular signs so that you can read in the ephemeris when the point is reached.

We use the single unit $1^{\circ}9'13''$, also five times this unit or $6^{\circ}55'18''$ and also five times this $6^{\circ}55'18''$ unit or what amounts to the same, 25 times the original $1^{\circ}9'13''$ unit which value is $34^{\circ}36'30''$.

All the measurements are to be used for geocentric longitude only. How I arrived at this $1^{\circ}9'13''$ value I do not recall. When I make tests, I might work two or three days on one movement, such as the movement from March 31, 1937 to June 8, 1937. Systematically all planets are gone through in longitude, declination, latitude, geocentric as well as heliocentric. The complete length from (example:) March 31 to June 8, 1937 is divided in all possible manner and units formed such as the one we use now: $1^{\circ}9'13''$. I have found a couple more such units besides this one that are useful and when I come across them on my notes will also demonstrate their use.

For this rule we just use this value and see what we get.

In the beginning of the period which we test now, Venus is moving backwards. This retrograde movement began on March 28, 1937. We find this point by looking up Raphael's Ephemeris for 1937 on page 7 in the second last column (Venus column longitude) near the bottom of the page. The value on March 28, 1937 shows 5R49 in the sign of Taurus, R is an abbreviation which means: moving retrograde. Further on we find a letter D (see page 11 under date of May 9th, 1937 in the Venus column in Raphael's Eph-

emeris). This D means: from now on the motion of Venus is again forward, i.e. direct.

During the period a planet moves retrograde we have to DEDUCT our increment, i.e. the values we use. When the motion of the planet is forward we have to ADD them. Be sure not to fail on this else no results can be expected.

It is unfortunate that I have to start with a retrograde movement of a planet instead of with a direct movement, since it is much more difficult to get the idea in your mind that way, but there is no other good example just now before me. If it is hard to get the thoughts clear first, it will be easier afterwards. An hour or so used to understand the backward movements of a planet in the sky gets you a long way.

(See Illustration No. 2).

Note, that during a retrograde movement the planet moves very slowly, only a few minutes each day. Therefore, to move $1^{\circ}9'13''$ takes several days.

A word of explanation is necessary before we go on with our analysis concerning the high point of end of March and early April 1937. There was one top in wheat on March 29, 1937; in hides and many other commodities the actual top was on March 31, 1937. A secondary top was made on April 5, 1937. The important question arises for us: from which of the tops shall we measure with our astronomical values? I mostly use March 31, 1937. The April 5th day has not given good results. Of course, we might use March 29, 1937 since it was the top day for wheat. But, since we have used the March 31st date before already, we shall use the values $1.9'$ and $6.55'$ ALTERNATELY from this date.

March 31, 1937 Top—Venus at $5^{\circ}46'$ Taurus R.
— $6^{\circ}55'23''$

gives $28^{\circ}38'$ Taurus or

April 16, 1937, the sharp low from which we rebounded.

$28^{\circ}38'$ Taurus

— $1^{\circ}9'$

gives $27^{\circ}29'$ Taurus;

this was on

April 18, 1937, on which day there was a holiday, however, April 19th, 1937, the wheat price range was $6\frac{1}{2}c$ above the April 16th, 1937 range. This tells us that, if we would not have had a holiday on April 16th trading would have been at rather high levels.

$$\begin{array}{r}
 27^{\circ}29' \text{ Taurus} \\
 - \quad 6^{\circ}55' \\
 \hline
 \text{gives } 20^{\circ}33' \text{ Taurus} \\
 \text{or on}
 \end{array}$$

May 2nd, 1937, on which day we also had a top. (Note, that the previous important low was just exactly $1^{\circ}9'$ before!)

$$\begin{array}{r}
 20^{\circ}33' \text{ Taurus} \\
 - \quad 1^{\circ}9' \\
 \hline
 \text{gives } 19^{\circ}24' \text{ Taurus}
 \end{array}$$

Venus does not retrograde that far, but stops short three minutes before that place. Had we taken into consideration the actual point when Venus went retrograde on March 27, 1937 at 5.50 Taurus and measured down to the place where it turned again direct on May 8-9, 1937, we would have obtained an exact division into 14 parts whereby one part would have amounted to $1^{\circ}9'13''$.

In the ancient books we find at several places reference to 14 trees (see "The Secrets of Enoch" in Pseudepigrapha, Oxford 1913).

At any rate, each of the changes that occurred from March 31st to May 9th, 1937 (Venus goes direct on this day), was registered. May 9, 1937 was a low.

We now go forward in Venus' motion by adding the values. Of course, right at this point I must bring forth the idea that this law gives us intermediate movements whereas the planetary conditions that produce major movements must never be forgotten. When we do count up from the direct position of Venus at $19^{\circ}27'$ Aries on May 9th, 1937, our unit of $1^{\circ}9'13''$, we obtain $20^{\circ}35'$ Aries. This occurred on May 17th, 1937. This place was unsatisfactory in that another shoot followed for an extra $1^{\circ}9'13''$ which would have brought us to the top day, May 20, 1937. In rule No. 15 I shall bring a law for Venus which tells us about major trends and these major trends must be always considered first.

In order to make you conscious of the way the speed of Venus geocentric increases and decreases in time, look on pages 26-28 of Raphael's Ephemerides where the speed of Venus is given for each day. During April and May 1937 its speed is very slow and for our work we have to use the small increments of $1^{\circ}9'$ or $6^{\circ}55'$ whereas when we get into the month of June or even into July 1937, the speed of Venus is so

fast that the small increments are even passed in one single day. Therefore, instead of using one or 5 units we have to use 25 such units or $34^{\circ}36'55''$ from important tops or bottoms in order to find a change of trend. Thus, from the extreme low in wheat made on June 8, 1937 we add $34^{\circ}55'$ and we find ourselves right on the top, $5^{\circ}50'$ Taurus and measured down to the place

$$\begin{array}{r}
 \text{June 8, 1937, Venus at } 3^{\circ}8' \text{ Taurus} \\
 + 34^{\circ}37'
 \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{r}
 \text{July 15, 1937, Venus at } 7^{\circ}45' \text{ Gemini}
 \end{array}$$

On the surface it may appear here that I am trying to circumnavigate the period of May 9, 1937 to June 8, 1937. Actually I am trying to demonstrate the change that must be made from the time Venus starts to move direct up to a certain time when its direct speed is strong and fast enough to work itself away from producing changes at the single unit or at the five-fold units ($6^{\circ}55'$). This is a secret which I have not been able to solve as yet.

We see, however, that the May 20, 1937 top, the first top made after Venus moves direct was made when we add two single units: Venus direct place is at $19^{\circ}27'$ Aries; add twice $1^{\circ}9'$ or $2^{\circ}18'$ and we get $21^{\circ}45'$ Aries as the place of change which was very good. But, after that, according to this method, we are unable to find the low of June 8, 1937 never mind how we try to combine the units. Yes, we can find the low of June 12, 1937 which was also a good low of the move, in fact we can call this June 12, 1937 low the secondary low of the major downmove that started on March 31, 1937. But, I am not too keen to use secondary lows or secondary tops. They remind too much on betting "place" in races. We only bet for 1st place in all our work. But, we find this June 8th, 1937 low from several other methods that are explained here.

Continuing the projection of the value $34^{\circ}36'55''$ which we shall call $34^{\circ}37'$ for easier work as we have done before. we say:

$$\begin{array}{r}
 3^{\circ}8' \text{ Taurus June 8, 1937} \\
 + 34^{\circ}37' \\
 \hline
 7^{\circ}45' \text{ Gemini top on July 15, 1937} \\
 + 34^{\circ}37' \\
 \hline
 12^{\circ}22'
 \end{array}$$

Cancer Aug. 15, 1937: we fall out of the uptrend that started on August 9, 1937.

+34°37'	
16°59'	Leo September 14, 1937: at a low.
+34°37'	
21°36'	Virgo October 12, 1937: at a low.
+34°37'	
26°13'	Libra November 9, 1937 a day after the major low made in wheat that year; gap upwards was made.

We can see that over a period of many months when using this method, we can get some mighty fine moves, all of which amount to from 6 to 10c within a few days. As I look just now at the chart of wheat for 1937, especially at the points of change brought out through this method, I believe we could use a division of this 34°37' in crement of three parts. One part would then amount to 11°32'10". This is mentioned in case you like to delve into this rule further.

RULE NO. 15 VENUS HELIOCENTRIC LATITUDE AT EXTREME AND LEAST SPEEDS FOR MAJOR MOVES

The rule given here is mighty important and useful. Wheat acts on this law wonderfully. Every time Venus in heliocentric movement of the Latitude reaches its extreme speed of 3°23' and a few seconds (the seconds vary a little) or else when it reaches its 0 point, markets get unusually active, and traders worry a lot of where the market is heading to.

I found that a change of trend the other way i.e. contrary to the previous movement is due right there and then.

Examples: (Nautical Almanac 1937 page 167)

YEAR 1937

January 27, Venus Lat. at 0	a fine low
March 23, Venus Lat. at 3°23'	a few days later major top; market is boiling wildly
May 19, Venus Lat. at 0	top; (see remark page 24, 1st column, 12th line from bottom.
July 15, Venus Lat. at 3°23'	major top
September 8, Venus Lat. at 0	a peak similar to the one of May 19-20, 1937
November 4-5, Venus Lat. at 3°23'	at major low

Venus passes the same points during 1940 as follows:

YEAR 1940

January 1, Venus Lat. at 3°23'	an important peak
February 24, Venus Lat. at 0°	an important peak
April 20, Venus at Lat. 3°23'	an extreme peak
June 15, Venus at 0 Latitude, center of low levels	should become low
August 10-11, Venus at 3°23' Latitude	should become a low
October 6, Venus at 0 Latitude	should become a low
November 30, Venus at 3°23' Latitude,	should become a low

This rule alone, without flattering myself, should enable you to make four trades a year whereby each trade should net you not less than 10c I have not brought other years for comparison since we do not want to use up pages when the rule given produces definitely major changes at such points. It does happen that we are a day or two too soon and the market runs against us by as much as four or even five cents such as it did March 23, 1937, but, never worry about these few points. You will pick them up 5 fold a short while later. It is a reversal of the previous move that mostly comes forth. In 1940 it happened, however, that one top at 0 gave at the extreme another top. Therefore, "something was operating between the two extremes of January 1st and February 24th 1940 that caused a switch. However, let us say that you shorted wheat the first few days of January 1940, saw it decline to February 1st, 1940 and then up again to the old high of January 3rd, 1940, as it happened on February 24, 1940, you could only assume that there was not a gap coming upward on February 24th but that we have to decline from that place.

On the other hand, many of the rules showed us already the low point of February 1st, 1940, pointing thus that February 24th, 1940 had to be a top and not a "jump-off" place with a gap up. Furthermore, should you not want to risk a few cents, you might even wait a few days to see whether or not the market changes as expected and then still make the commitments since, as you will see from the charts, the movement is always a strong move.

From what I have said so far and explained on hand of the ephemerides and charts, we can

see that tops and bottoms are made at rather variable times which changes depend upon the speed or position of the planets.

It gets me at times when traders with their "private" special methods try to tell me that stocks or commodities in their movements have to be counted in days, such as 22 days one way, 88 days some other way, 35 days this way and 60 days another. It is too silly for words. Admitted, in my work "Time Factors" I had a chapter dealing with this sort of stuff. It was actually foolish to put this into the setting. The rules do work once in awhile, but it is always the question: when. It also remains the question which value to use.

You can now visualize that, since the speed of the various items which we do use change constantly, from fast to slow and from slow to fast, so that, when we count days, we never consider the increase or decrease of that speed—and on speed alone I have built all the laws given herein. Sometimes a planet takes a month to cover 6 degrees, at other times it takes 3 days to do the very same motion.

Some readers will have the difficulty to get into their mind that for example in rule No. 15 above the passing of Latitude by Venus of the degrees mentioned produces once a top, then at bottom, at some other time two bottoms in succession. I do not know the reason for it myself, but one thing is sure that if it would not have such different effects, the public would long be wise to the law of regular repetition, but since the effect changes irregularly, they walk right over these laws and watch news reports that invites them to do just the opposite of what they should do . . .

RULE NO. 16 THE EIGHTY YEARS CYCLE

As you have found out by now, I have left no stone unturned in the attempt to find laws that would tell in a safe way when tops and bottoms are due to be made in the wheat price or in the price structure of other commodities as well as in stocks. I always was working as a sort of "lone wolf", hunting on grounds which others left untouched. Astrologers, with all their angles and aspects have to consider so many of them, and so often, of whose effects they

know little or nothing except what they find in text books. Not knowing any other approach since "versatility" is mainly lacking and everything has to go as per rules laid down in these text books, they are absolutely helpless. One asks the other: what do you think of this aspect, what of the other one? While I do not claim that all the rules brought forth here can be used by you or that you now can sit in the easy chair and get each movement, a lot of study—and constant study is necessary to gain experience for the practical application. Some of the laws given are a cinch, nothing less. For example the Venus Lat. law should turn out for you to be one of them. It will take time until you get used to the terms I use until you can quickly work with signs, degrees, minutes and seconds. It will take time to distinguish between geocentric and heliocentric, between Longitude, Latitude and Declination and the other items which we have to use. But, it is never too late to learn these things, especially if I can show you that you will greatly profit by wearing out a few pants to learn it thoroughly.

Having lightened my heart a bit, I come back to the stones which I turned over. So here goes rule 16.

I found that, if we can secure old prices for wheat or for any other commodity or stocks that date back exactly 80 years, and plot them on charts, we do find a great relationship in the movements compared to the present dates. After finding this some years ago, I spent a long time in the NY Library going back over the old "Financial Chronicles" found there and copied prices of what was available. I plotted them on charts and may say that some years the major tops and bottoms as well as the trend came forth very nicely. I am not saying that you will get the market right by just going there and copying the values of 80 years before but you will get at least a lot of good out of them for checking into present conditions. This is specially true when one is interested in commodities for which I have not given any rules or for which I have only given a few rules.

Therefore, the movement of wheat during the year 1860 should be similar to the wheat movement of 1940, that of 1861 from day to day in the calendar should be similar to that of 1941 etc.

RULE NO. 17

MERCURY GEOCENTRIC AT 15 AQUARIUS AND
15 LEO AND THE PASSAGE OF ALL
OTHERS OVER THESE POINTS

Here is a rule that should not be slighted. It entails a little more work than others since we have to consult constantly Raphael's Ephemeris and use Mercury in its geocentric position.

We look in the Raphael Ephemeris of the year and pick out Mercury at the moment it crosses 15°0' of Aquarius and 15°0' Leo. Both positions are exactly opposite each other in the Zodiac. Take this last remark only as a reminder; it has nothing to do with what I am going to explain.

You will note that very seldom does it happen that Mercury at the time given in Raphael's Ephemeris is exactly at 15°0' of the signs we have to use. Therefore, we have to estimate approximately when Mercury is passing exactly, since Raphael's positions are given for noon at London.

We note down the values for all the other planets as they were at this very moment in the Zodiac. Each one of these planets also has its own speed and they require therefore first an adjustment to bring them even with the place at the time Mercury passes exactly 15°0' Aquarius (or 15°0' Leo.)

An example will explain the matter:

Take Raphael's Ephemerides for 1939, page 17. Look at Mercury which started moving direct a few days prior to its reaching 15°0' Leo on August 27, 1939. The value given is for noon London on this day as 15°6' Leo. In this case, considering that the daily motion of Mercury on this day is 56' (figure it out or else look back on page 27 in the Ephemeris), a six minute excess position does not matter and we can leave it as is listed.

We take all the other planets on that day as they are and get:

Sun at 3°18' Virgo (given on page 16, second column)

Neptune at 22°20' Virgo

Uranus at 21°58' Taurus

Saturn at 1°7' Taurus

Jupiter at 7°29' Aries

Mars at 24°0' Capricorn

Venus at 0°46' Virgo

Here is the rule now: As Mercury keeps on going through the Zodiac and passes the places of the other planets given above, we get changes of trend.

The first place Mercury crosses is the Venus place of 0°46' Virgo which was on September 7, 1939 and was that a top!

The next place Mercury meets is Neptune's place of 22°20' Virgo which as we can see from the ephemeris occurred on October 19, 1939. We had gone down before that day for five days as may be seen when consulting the wheat chart. The immediate effect was one day run-up of 5½ points!

The next place is hit by Mercury on January 20, 1940 which was a Sunday. It passed the old place of Mars, 24°0' Capricorn. The 19th i.e. the Saturday was the top.

Watch, what else we get! The next place that was passed is Jupiter's place of 7°29' Aries. Mercury runs over this point on the very peak day of the year 1940 i.e. on April 22nd.

Watch this next one! Saturn's place of 1°7' was passed by Mercury at 1°7' Taurus on May 7, 1940 a low with the last small shoot to May 10th 1940. The last planet that still is active from the important date of August 27, 1939 is Uranus. Its place is passed on May 18, 1940 while Mercury passes 21°58' of Taurus. This was the big wash-out low in May 1940.

Note that the effect runs pretty nearly 8 months due to the gradual passage of Mercury over all points. There was no planet that missed to produce a change, and, if I may say so, each point was a major change not just a quarter point move followed

I overlooked to quote the Sun. Its place was 3°18' Virgo and Mercury passed it on September 9th 1939 which gave the bottom for the run-up to the 15th of September 1939.

Isn't it funny and strange how well Mercury remembered to change the market's trend whenever it came to these points. It did not forget about those places in the new year 1940, but kept right on giving changes. And there are people in this world who are so influenced that they think "they" down in the pit or in Wall Street make price movements! Reader, take it once and for all: planets rule us and make all the moves for us; they not only make the moves for us, but they even force us to do so. This was one of the reasons why I have decided to release this work to you. It will never reach the fellow for whom it is not destined. He shall keep on working in the

darkness where he evidently belongs. At some future time it may be decided by the planets to let him have it, then he will want it all by himself and if he should not want it and it be destined to him to have it, some force will make him take it and swallow it. This hard word is intended for a few personal friends of mine who have taken my service for many years, but are just the same believing things of the type spoken of above to remind them, should they ever study this work, that they once belonged to the public whose opinion is far from right.

Enough of this. We now go back and take a case where we have to make an adjustment. We use 15°0' Aquarius which was passed by Mercury between February 10-11, 1939. On the 10th of February 1939 at noon the Mercury position in Raphael's Ephemeris is shown as 14°25' Aquarius and on the 11th of February 1939 Mercury's position was 16°7' Aquarius. Since we need 15°0' exactly, we have to figure at which time this passage occurs. I do not think it is essential to go through all the calculations with the proportional logarithms that are given on the last page of each Raphael's Ephemeris, unless you want to do it, in order to find the exact moment when this occurs and adjust all the other planets the very same way, but we just say: it is about one half of the distance to each side. If we assume this as being exact enough for our purpose, we also have to do the same way with the other planets. Then planet Venus at the moment of Mercury's passage over the 15°0' point of Aquarius is not 4°22' Capricorn, nor 5°27' Capricorn, but in the middle of the two values, or: since the difference from 4°22' to 5°27' is 1°5'; one half is then 31 or 32 minutes. So that we add this value to the February 10th, 1939 position for Venus and get as the momentary position for Venus at the time Mercury passes over 15°0'. We get: 4°22' Capricorn plus 31' equals 4°53' Capricorn as the place which has to be watched when Mercury crosses it. This happens on . . . this value cannot be used since it is behind us, since Mercury is already over in Aquarius. We eliminate this value altogether.

Therefore, we start with the next planet, Mars, which also does not give us any help since Mercury has passed its place in December 1938 already. Next to try for is Jupiter. It is on February 10, 1939 at 9°17' Pisces and on the 11th at

9°31' Pisces. The difference of the two is 14'; one half of it is 7', calling for an adjustment of 7 minutes for that planet's place and we get as place to watch 9°24' Pisces. With the slow moving planets the adjustment is really not in place since Mercury moves very fast, but if we once make a rule to do something, we keep on doing it so that we get accustomed to it and not forget to do it with a fast moving planet which would be very bad work.

This Jupiter place is passed by Mercury on February 24, 1939. It was a top in wheat. The movement at that time was very narrow, but we just the same can clearly recognize this top.

Uranus was on the critical day of February 9-10, 1939 at 14°3' Taurus. Projected over to Mercury, i.e. the day when Mercury passed over this degree and minute we are on May 22-23, 1939. We darted out upward in Chicago wheat on this day for the final of 4c to make top on May 26-27, 1939.

RULE NO. 18

VENUS AT 15 AQUARIUS GEOCENTRIC USING ELLIPSE

Certain rules I have to bring which are pertaining to the laying of the ellipse. The previous rules which I gave about laying the ellipse used extreme lows and point X on the ellipse, another rule used the 123 degree angle laying same at bottoms or tops.

This rule here sets the 123° angle over the high made in the wheat price on the day Venus passes by geocentric motion 15°0' Aquarius. This setting over the *high* of the day is done when the trend happens to be downward; if the trend should be upward, then the setting is into the low point of the daily range of that day.

We have a perfect case on January 6, 1940, when Venus passes this degree. The high of that day in the May option was 1.04¼. Set point E of the angle at this point downward into the coordinate of this day. You then will find that the high of February 9th and February 13th are inside of this ellipse yet, and only on February 15th do we leave it with a wild run that brings forth a 7c movement by February 23, 1940.

The moment it (the price) moves outside the ellipse a new setting is necessary to follow the ensuing uptrend, but how?

Here I shall explain the new setting, actually a brand new rule which I could not touch on be-

fore, since had I given this rule immediately after the two main rules, you would have become mixed up. However, assumed that you did some testing and setting of the ellipse on the first two rules already, you now can understand this setting much better and do it right.

You take the day we broke out of the down ellipse that we started on January 6, 1940. This day is February 16, 1940. The low of that day in May option was $99\frac{1}{4}$, the high was $1.04\frac{1}{2}$. You use the short line E-SJ of the 123 angle which is inscribed in the ellipse and which is $8\frac{1}{4}$ points long (using here the chart and calling one square of it to be one point) and set this line in such a way that 2 points of this angle line stick out above and 2 points below the day's range of February 16, 1940. It is not quite 2 points but nearly so, since as stated, the day's movement was $5\frac{1}{4}$ c. However, let an equal amount stick out on either side (vertically). This setting, if done right gives you automatically the low level of March 18, 1940, the low level of April 8, 1940, the lows of April 29 and April 30th 1940. It finally gives you the touch-off point of May 10th 1940, the last eighth of that day touches the ellipse from the outside, coming up once more to it, after it had broken out on May 1st, 1940.

It also gives you on the upper periphery the high of February 20, 1940.

Actually, the entire movement after February 16, 1940 is defined in the ellipse up to May 10, 1940.

Yes, it is of course, much easier to set an ellipse when all is over, that is, after a move is completed, but look here:

The ellipse was abandoned on May 1st 1940. From this day on we had to look for a new way of setting it.

Use this very May 1st 1940 and lay the ellipse now downward, since we abandoned the upward trend by falling out of the upward lying ellipse. Set it so that the middle of the day's trading of May 1st 1940 comes exactly in the middle of the small line that is part of the 123 degree angle, similarly as we did on February 16, 1940. If done right, the May 10, 1940 top eighth is exactly on the upper periphery of this ellipse.

At the same time we also had the regular lay of the ellipse in operation by laying the small line of the 123° angle over the highs of April 22nd and May 10th which vividly showed what the market intended to do.

We may also use the 15th degree of Leo the same way as explained with the 15th degree of Aquarius, by applying the same rule there.

RULE NO. 19

VENUS IN GEOCENTRIC POSITION PASSING THE CONJUNCTION OF THE SUN GEOCENTRIC

A conjunction means a crossing of two planets over the same degree, minute and second in the Zodiac. In other words, they meet each other when we look from the earth towards them.

Since Nature makes everything in such a way that people won't notice planets are guiding their ways, little or nothing happens to markets on the very day when we get a conjunction of Sun and Venus. Astronomers record such conjunctions very carefully but that is all that happens. To us, we are trying to see what is the effect of such a conjunction upon the trader who buys and sells wheat. Is his mind getting affected by it towards the buying side or towards the selling side?

I say and prove the following:

Such conjunctions do bring changes and they most always bring important tops, not at the very moment the conjunction occurs but like a pinochle player in whose hand falls a double Black Jack, it takes him a little while to realize that he has them and who wants to make doubly sure it is so, it takes the traders exactly $1^{\circ}43'50''$ in the motion of Venus to knock him out. You look up Raphael's Ephemerides on page 29 where Phenomena are quoted, among whom you will find nearly each year the superior conjunction resp. inferior conjunction to the Sun. Then go over to the ephemeris, month and day when it occurs and measure Venus from this conjunction adding to it $1^{\circ}43'50''$ and you will find that most always this is a top in wheat.

Such dates are: July 1, 1935 top

July 5, 1936 top

none in 1937

February 9, 1938 top

September 7, 1939 (wow!!)
top

June 26, 1940—we declined

In 1934, when the conjunction occurred in Sagittarius it had produced no change. I give this to show that exceptions are possible. A much more important factor might have been active at that time.

RULE NO. 20

MERCURY PASSING 17°18'27" CANCER
GEOCENTRIC

This is a small rule; the event occurs but once a year unless the planet Mercury happens to be retrograding over it.

It is worth about 2 points a year as you can check quickly when going over the charts.

Here is the law: When Mercury geocentric passes over 17°18'27" Cancer, we move downwards for two days due to such passing. This is meant when the planet is direct.

Sometimes it happens that Mercury after passing it turns retrograde and runs backwards over this point. In such retrograde movement sharp upmoves occur the moment it passes. An example can be seen on July 13, 1934.

There are also upmoves occurring when Mercury passes over it by direct motion the third time. This point can be anywhere between D & R in forward motion. This can only happen if it has gone backwards over this point first and does not apply to the usual yearly passage over that place.

Let us for a moment touch a different field, that of human beings. The astrological magazines make prognostications of human beings by using the Sun which rotates regularly around. We have not used the Sun and will not use it except once or twice.

A person who happens to be born at or shortly after Mercury passes the above named position in Cancer will most likely be affected the same way, i.e. with a downmove, meaning that his life will not be a bed of roses, at least not the first few years of his life. Now such persons can be born in any year, and on any day during June, July or August since the passage is not depending upon a Sun movement of exact regular repetition on the calendar such as July 9th of each year when the Sun is passing this degree in the Zodiac. The date is fixed by the irregular movement of Mercury whenever it pleases Mercury to reach this degree.

This year Mercury passed the critical degree on June 15, 1940 and promptly, the market responded with a drop of 5c before anyone knew what happened.

Even during periods when the market has moved downward already, such as it happened

in 1938, we get a continuation of the downmove. We passed the degree of 17°18'27" Cancer in that year on June 30-July 1st and a gap downward came forth.

RULE NO. 21

VENUS IN RETROGRADE MOTION MAKING A
CONJUNCTION WITH MERCURY

This conjunction occurs very seldom, but it does occur. We want to know everything about movements and thus we register this rule as well as the following one which occurs somewhat oftener.

The result of this conjunction is a strong move either up or down, depending upon the formation. Consult the ellipse with this rule.

When we look for this conjunction be sure to look first whether planet Venus is retrograde. Venus does not like to run backwards as often as Mercury, but it does so every 1½ years. If Venus retrogrades in the Spring of one year, it will retrograde late in the Fall of the year after.

I shall give you three years of such conjunctions:

April 8, 1937, a sharp drop followed, lasting 8 days.

November 7-8, 1938 an upmove began lasting 8 days.

June 12, 1940 a drop began lasting 5 days.

There was no conjunction in 1939.

We note that the trend which ensues due to such a conjunction lasts from 5 to 8 days as the three consecutive cases reveal. In order to make sure to catch the right trend, we might wait a day or even part of the second day before we make the commitment when we use this rule and then follow the trend that by that time shows sufficiently the direction. Of course, other rules will help to find the trend even when it starts.

NOTE: No rule is given in this case when Venus in retrograde motion passes Mercury retrograde. I only mean passage of Mercury direct over Venus retrograde.

RULE NO. 22

MERCURY RETROGRADE PASSES
OVER THE SUN

This case occurs frequently. The effect is a change in trend. The planet must be retrograde and not direct in order to give the effect. An example is March 15, 1940. Hundreds of others

can be located by you through any years. This rule works practically all the time. These conjunctions occur four times a year. When they are due to occur can be found under Phenomena on page 29 in Raphael's Ephemeris. They are called Inferior conjunction. They have nothing to do with superior conjunctions which occur at the time Mercury is direct in motion. The next one is on July 22nd 1940. Another example when the resulting movement produced a 20c rise happened on November 28, 1939! Check others yourself and note the results so as to gain experience.

RULE NO. 23

ONE-FIFTH OF A SECOND DIFFERENTIAL IN MOTION OF SATURN HELIOCENTRIC LATITUDE PRODUCES TOPS AND BOTTOMS OF IMPORTANCE

What is a fifth part of a second to you? To the average man such value means nothing whatever. It is not even as big as the twinkle of the eye-lid. Probably you never heard before in your life that measurements of such type could have any effect, not to speak of, that exact days can be found by adding or deducting such a fifth of a second and, what is of great interest to all traders, bottoms and tops are coming forth with great exactness. This is another of the rules which, when explained to laymen, who are from Missouri, as to the effect of these little "Lights" in the heavens upon the human brains would make them sit up and take notice. As it is, Nature wants them to walk around without "Lights."

We use page 221 of the Nautical Almanac; in the center of the page we find: heliocentric Latitude of Saturn. Next to it is the small differential column: variation per day given in second and decimal parts of a second. 0.20 second is equal to one-fifth of a second.

Unfortunately, the values are given but every 8 days as the date column to the left will show. But this is sufficient for us since we can't do any better.

We shall start our examples with the top of March 31, 1937. Note that the daily variation is negative, working downward and only between June 7 and 15, 1939 does it change into a positive value. The value marked on March 31, 1937 is: 2".39 and this was the top for wheat. We now deduct each time 0.20", deduct, because the value is running downward.

March 31, 1937	2".39	top in wheat
June 17, 1937	2".19	low in wheat
August 28, 1937	1".99	low in wheat
November 8, 1937	1".79	big low in wheat
January 18, 1938	1".59	top in wheat
April 1, 1938	1".39	low in wheat
June 4, 1938	1".19	low in wheat
August 7, 1938	0".99	we break through the June low of the year
October 10, 1938	0".79	near the low
December 13, 1938	0".59	at the high
February 10, 1939	0".39	at the low point
April 12, 1939	0".19	at the low
June 10, 1939	0".00	we break out of up-trend definitely

On the way up we do not make an adjustment on the one-hundredth point, but hold on to the same decimal points with which we came down; it may come into your mind that since we move 0.20 right along, we would have to get on the upside now 0.18, 0.38 etc. which is not right. We keep the same scale as testing has revealed we must do.

Thus:

August 6, 1939	0".19	(plus) low in wheat
October 5, 1939	0".39	low in wheat

You don't have to be surprised that we get mostly lows in wheat when using this rule; know, that it is Mr. Saturn, the Destroyer who brings prices down to his level and then lets them run up again.

Nov. 30-Dec. 2, 1939	0".59	low for big rise
January 30, 1940	0".79	low of importance a low from which the last run-up came a high although at low levels
March 29, 1940	0".99	
May 26-27, 1940	1".19	
July 21-22, 1940	1".39	
September 19, 1940	1".59	
November 16, 1940	1".79	

RULE NO. 24

WHEAT VERSUS MAN

You may bring up the question by now: Why so many rules? Why is it not enough to have just one or two rules? Let us state once and for all that wheat, cotton, stocks or any commodity as far as that goes is as complicated a structure as the human being. In fact, for our purpose each one of them should be considered a living being with a will of its own. Under *will* I mean here

that "something" which makes it go up and down in price. It is caused by planets' movements. Certain planetary conditions will at one and the same time cause wheat to rise and rubber or cocoa to decline. It may be compared to two traders at a time when one buys wheat and the other sells wheat. One is to lose, the other is to profit by such a transaction. One has good planetary condition for his own body while the other has unfavorable conditions at that time.

For illustration's sake we may consider the individual rules given here as being rules for each part of the body, called in this case "wheat". The functions of each part of the body are definite towards producing a certain motion.

We can show the idea best with an illustration.

Let us say a person gets up in the morning. First, he will open his eyes, raise his head towards the clock nearby, looks at the time and lays down once more for a last minute rest before actually jumping out of bed. Once the "jump" is made a brand new situation arises. He is up and ready to get dressed, ready to go to work for the day. He will not go to bed anymore until he has completed his day's work.

Let me turn this situation into wheat movements. Wheat, let us say, had a long decline; it slept. One nice day it stops declining, peeps up a little, goes back once more but not quite as far as the main low level. After a few days it suddenly rushes up (look up the movement of wheat from August 12, 1939, via August 24, 1939, Sept. 1st, 1939 and Sept. 7, 1939.). Wheat thus took a last minute "nap" before jumping, between August 24 to September 1st 1939. Then it jumped out of bed to go to work for the bull movement or the day's work which lasted until April 22, 1940. However, the big run from September 1st to 7th 1939 was enough to make anybody notice it. We may even say that between Sept. 7, 1939 and November 28, 1939 the person or living being called "wheat" had its breakfast; it was sitting at a long table, moving sidewise. Then, from November 28, 1939 on it got up from the table and ran like mad to the office with a 20c run to do work there.

Once we incorporate life into wheat we also can look for the cause that gives this life to "wheat" which are the planets.

Now, during certain movements of a person the feet, the hands, the head or other parts of

the body are more active compared to others. During the time of dressing we use our hands to operate with; during the passage from home to office we use our feet; during office time we use our head to obtain results. At all times, however, all parts of the body are present, only one or the other is actually active while the rest is so to say in a semi-dormant state, inactive or only partially active. The individual rules which I bring here may be considered as parts of the being "wheat". We may, for example, call the rule that treats with the Mercury's speed as being the rule that explains the activity of "the arm" in a man; some other motion of a certain planet may be said to represent the movements of the feet of a person etc. This motion is quite independent of the motions of the arms, at the same time both must operate and move in harmony. Both are constantly present and operating in "their own cycles" and once in awhile the arms make motions as well as the feet, which may be termed a period of great activity within the human body, or, in our case in wheat.

Since we are not able with our methods to construct a law that tells us at any given moment the activity of each and every member of the body "wheat", we must follow the individual members of the body called "wheat or cotton" and say: member No. 5 is coming to a rest on this day as per rule 7; member No. 3 gets active on such a day, and in this fashion produce combinations of rules which then will produce for us a frame or a forecast within which the "body-wheat" is forming itself.

Several years ago I produced a chart for wheat covering the Russo-Japanese war in 1904-1905. After running in narrow range for a long time before this war began, we suddenly ran upward strongly some 35c in the wheat price structure—this was made when the war started. I call this portion of the wheat movement "the arm". For the duration of the war we held steady at very high levels for many months; we actually formed in the wheat structure "the body" of the person "wheat". If you examine this particular chart, you will even notice the breast formation, the place of the "belly bottom", and even the "rear end" was formed. After that we formed "the legs" just at a time when this war ended and we came down to the level where we had started. The man was completed, the man "wheat". This idea was discovered from Egyptian writings.

During the Spring of 1940 I mentioned several times that the present war makes the same picture. The arm started on September 1st 1939. The hand with its fingers was not even forgotten. You can see them from August 12th 1939 up to Sept. 1st 1939. In 7 days the entire long arm was fashioned. September 7th being the high of the move, some 25 points above the low a week before. After this we formed the body of "wheat". This body formation lasted until April 22, 1940. The ups and downs during this period represent the outline of the important part just as they are arranged in an actual human body. The rear-end was not missing either. It was the period from May 1st to May 10th 1940. Then we ran into the "foot" and what a straight foot it turned out to be! The successes of the Axis in Belgium ended the mess. So there is your repetition of cycles: war—war 1904-1905 against 1939-1940. Both pictures are so alike that if I would set both above each and omit the dates you or anyone else would not be able to distinguish which is which. See wheat chart 1904-1905.

This picture of a person is not only formed in major cycles such as war cycles, but we find it often in small cycles of a month's or two duration, we even find it in charts that plot sale to sale prices, in fact it is always present. It distinguishes the beginning of a move, the run-up, the side-wise movement at high levels and the decline which follows. The picture may be termed: an open square. Three lines, upline, top line and down line form the picture, while the calendar line across the sheet forms the fourth line to the square.

The line which, according to our explanation, forms the "foot line" is not always down; it also can be upward so as to bring forth bull formations in which case the line runs up sharply with a gap, as a rule, and this "footline" will become then automatically the "arm-line" of the adjoining cycle or square as we called it.

Using what has been explained in these few lines, we approach now the essence of our work. In all our rules we are trying to find the "joints" wherein arm and foot are set. These points are the tops and the bottoms for actual swings or for ensuing sidewise movements. As you have seen so far, we have rules that tell us only: at this point we have to expect a "change of trend", meaning in terms of the present explanation: here is a joint of the arm or of the leg; watch,

which way the joint's lever is going to run, i.e. the attached arm or leg! Since arm and leg have a certain length, it is not always necessary to buy or sell right within the joint, but we may wait a day or two and make sure the lever runs in the intended direction and then make the commitments.

We have other rules, which from testing show the direction of the trend quite definitely. Oftentimes we even know the approximate extent of the movement in cents, not to speak of that from other rules or even from the very same rules we know when such a movement is due to end again.

RULE NO. 25

THE RULE OF $4\frac{3}{8}$, $8\frac{3}{4}$, $17\frac{1}{2}$ and 35

This rule has been carefully explained in my work "Time Factors" but for those who have not studied it I shall make a rough outline of it here once more.

Many years ago I noticed that stocks like to run in medium sized moves $8\frac{3}{4}$ points, in stronger moves $17\frac{1}{2}$ points and in very strong movements they cover as much as 35 points straight through. Low priced stocks use $4\frac{3}{8}$ points before turning around again. When stocks make a gap up or down, the count is started all over. Whereas we always take the count from an important top or an important low, a gap made during such a run abrogates the law, requiring a new counting from the gap. The count is to be made from the high price of the day BEFORE the gap was made and not from the low of the day of the actual gap upward. In down trend use the low point of day before the gap is made to count from.

Wheat has a peculiar habit. It moves in the above given rhythm too, except that 35c moves are very rare, but $30\frac{3}{8}$ points movements wind up the cycle.

The rule applies for upmoves as well as for downmoves.

RULE NO. 26

GAPS

Several times I have referred to gaps. A gap is a space left open between the trading of one day and the trading of the next. Let us assume wheat traded yesterday between $79\frac{1}{2}$ and $80\frac{3}{4}$. Today it trades between 81 and $82\frac{7}{8}$ which would mean there is a gap of $\frac{1}{4}$ point open, i.e. the space of $80\frac{3}{4}$ and 81.

Sometimes we get gaps in wheat of as much as four or five cents. During the May drop of 1940 we had 8 and 9c gaps downward, all of

which, except the one of May 15th were closed during the same day again. The gap left open on May 15, 1940 will be later on of great importance, since it will be closed and after it is closed wheat prices should recede from there and not run up to the 1.10 level prevailing on May 10, 1940.

In a major movement we usually can distinguish 3 important gaps: The gap which abandons the down swing (or the previous up-swing)

The middle gap located about halfway of the entire movement, (see gap at 95c, May 15, 1940).

The end gap, a day or two before the end of the major move.

A gap may occur also at other places; they are not very important since most of them will be closed and never appear on the charts as such. We may open one day with a half cent gap, however, during trading hours the market price will cover up such a left-open space.

At any rate, be the gap covered or left open, it is always an indication that the market is trying its best to run in the direction of the gap and not the other way. A gap up is therefore bullish and NOT bearish. A gap down is BEARISH and not bullish.

Whenever a gap is made I set my ellipse into this gap together with the 123° angle to see how the picture could develop from such a gap. I usually find resistance levels from such a gap when, if we set into the gap our ellipse, the periphery of the ellipse is reached. This means I set the 123° angle into the coordinate of that day with the $8\frac{1}{4}$ length so that its lower point is falling on the high of the day BEFORE the gap was made, the angle line running through the day line. I hope you understand that in upmoves the ellipse must always be facing upward and in downmoves we reverse this and let the ellipse run downward.

In order to not overlook any gap which is left open I always draw a circle around it that later on it still "sticks out" in the chart picture. Let me illustrate the reason for such markings. Suppose we get into a big bull movement. On the way upwards several gaps are made. We are riding high upon the top waves for a year or two. Then the market turns into a bear cycle. The points to look for resistance are those "left-open" gaps of a year or even two years previous. When they get closed, (many times exactly to

the last eighth!), then we have to expect reversals of sizable proportion from such places. This is also a reason why our charts must be kept perfect and not an eighth missed when making the entries.

CHANGING FUTURE PRICES ON CHARTS

While we are discussing this subject a word about switching futures or options from one month to some other on our charts must be said. When we plot September futures of wheat or some other commodity, we know that trading ends in September of that year. Since we need a continuous flow of prices and not, like I have seen brokers' clerks produce one option, then leave a monster space and plot the next option to it. This space is due to the price variation of one option compared to another. On a certain day May wheat may be selling 1.03 to 1.06, while September may be selling at 99 to 1.02. Supposing I am plotting just now May wheat whose price is given above for illustration's sake is 1.03 to 1.06 and I want to switch over into September wheat so as to get my continuous flow, I simply call the 1.03 price from now on 99c and make a new scale which is to be used from that time on. September wheat is plotted, May wheat is eliminated completely and forgotten. This is done with other commodities the same way. Once in a while it is a little hard to shift from one option to another due to the price ranges. Let us say, in the above example that May wheat is selling on a certain day in the range mentioned, but that September wheat sells that day between $98\frac{1}{2}$ and $1.01\frac{1}{4}$. If we would switch and call the old 1.03 from this day on $98\frac{1}{2}$, we would get fractions on our full number line (the chart squares) which is not good. In such a case I suggest to wait until the options have adjusted themselves to a better figure on which to switch. It may be but a day or two and suddenly one option has strengthened or weakened in comparison with the other. Then you make your switch.

Do not wait until the last few days of the life of an option for the switching. The last two weeks of an option that expires do not give the true movements of the cycle, since millers and others who have use for actual wheat come into the picture and buy or sell, which interference, so to say, causes unusual sharp advances and drops during that time, while options that are for later dates are not affected. Therefore, options should

be switched about a month to six weeks before the expiration date.

The same applies to practical trading in options. Never trade in options that are about to run out or expire. Use only options either three or six months away. This applies to all commodities.

RULE NO. 27

MERCURY'S SPEED IN LONGITUDE GEOCENTRIC OF 59' and 1°38'

Enough has been said now about technical matters. They are very important to insure proper application of the astronomical rules.

The present law deals again with our favorite Mercury.

It is hard to realize for anyone of "modern education" that the Ancients knew all about the movements of Mercury, about its effect upon the human brains. It is too bad that scientists and students of ancient writings in their notes and particularly in their introductions stress the fact that these ancients were heathens, dumbbells, ignorants etc. Why, in the first place do they then scrutinize so anxiously these heathen works? Why don't they throw out these works and forget about them instead of bringing bulky introductions expressing their own opinions about things they know nothing about?

Take it, the Ancients knew Mercury's movement without spy-glasses. If they would assume that these Ancients knew much more than they themselves will ever know, these old writings would begin to talk to them. As it is now they are but Pyramids and Sphinxes to them.

Although I have treated about this idea in a special chapter, each time I think of it, I just get burning mad about these people and have to blur out with a view that possibly they would wake up.

So let us take Raphael's Ephemeris again, look at page 26-28 and follow the movements of Mercury from day to day in its longitude. Its speed ranges from 0 to 2.12. In another rule I told you already that 0 and 2.12 in Mercury's speed bring changes of trend. Now we use Mercury's speed when it is the same as the mean daily motion of the Sun in Longitude or double this amount. The daily motion of the Sun is 59', double this amount is 1°58'. Each time Mercury passes these values we can expect changes of trend and, mind you, often times they give big

tops and big major bottoms. I do not mean that we take the Sun and watch it when it moves 59'. The Sun moves in its own cycle. We follow Mercury only. Examples of such passage are:

March 16, 1940 bottom in wheat.

May 10, 1940 top in wheat

May 26, 1939 top in wheat

RULE NO. 28

SATURN'S HELIOCENTRIC LATITUDE UNIT 5'46".15

We take the Nautical Almanac again, page 221 in 1939 where we find the column of the Latitude. This time we do not use the increment but the latitude proper and count from a fixed point, a major top or a major bottom by adding each time 5'46".15. Since the values are given only every 8 days, we must interpolate to arrive at the proper days, for this purpose we use the side column which gives the daily movement in the Latitude to facilitate reckoning. When we find that the latitudinal motion decreases during the years 1934-1935 and upwards slowly from a daily motion of 4".43 to as low as 1".64 (a minus sign is set before all) until later on we even reach 0 in this movement; then it turns upward to the plus side once more.

This will explain the fact that in our examples which shall follow below, we obtain many changes during 1934 and but a few changes in 1937. Under changes I mean: changes of trend in wheat.

I shall start with January 25, 1934 which was a bottom:

Saturn Lat.	date	effect
1°3'43".3	1/25/1934	bottom
+ 5'46".15		
1°9'32".9	4/15/1934	bottom

(the figure set down as 1°9'32".9 is the one given in the nautical almanac and used so as to facilitate finding.)

1°9'32".9	April 15, 1934 a bottom in wheat
+ 5'46".15	
1°15'15".9	July 4, 1934 a bottom
+ 5'46".15	
1°21'24".5	Sept. 29, 1934 a bottom

As we now go over the year 1937, using March 29, 1937 the top in wheat, we find that Saturn's latitude on this day was 2°12'29".0 and adding our increment of 5'46".15 to this brings a value of 2°18'15".15. This value corresponds to Sep-

tember 4th 1937. Looking at the chart, we find that the price level for wheat on this day is exactly at the half-way mark from the extreme top made July 17, 1937 or of the one made July 6th 1937. The slowness of the motion in Saturn's latitude this year necessitates to take an entirely new increment which I found to be $2'4''.25$ instead of the one we used in 1934 which amounted to $5'46''.15$.

Let us see what we then get:

$2'12'29''.0$	
$+ 2'4''.25$	
$2'14'33''.25$	May 19, 1937 big top
$+ 2'4''.25$	
$2'16'37''.50$	July 17, 1937 major top of year
$+ 2'4''.25$	
$2'18'41''.75$	September 16, 1937 a low
$+ 2'4''.25$	
$2'20'46''.00$	November 23-24, 1937 at a major low

Such a sudden change of the size of the increment may for the moment confuse you and you might say: which is which? Which shall be used. Of course, myself I am never sure when in this particular rule the increment has to be changed. I will tell you exactly how I use this rule: I use the first increment as long as it brings forth tops or bottoms, at the same time, right along I measure for the smaller changes, such as from March 29, 1937 over to May 19, 1937 and project this value forward at the same time as I throw forward the larger value. The purpose of it all is to produce a concentration of several rules at one and the same point which then represents a major changing point. This May 19th date for example or the July 17, 1937 top day also the November 8-9, 1937 day has been found in nearly all rules. They showed that major changes had to come off on these days. Even if you hesitate a few days before making commitments, as said at some other place already, until it can be clearly recognized which way the cat jumps, you will have a large number of points left for profits, since such movements that result from a concentration of rules, on one and the same day do not end quickly. Ten, fifteen, even thirty cents movements result from it. What if 3 cents are missed!

I have absolutely no scientific cause for the values given above except that they were ob-

tained through tests only. As the value in the latitudinal motion of Saturn recedes still more, we no doubt have to adjust the value again.

RULE NO. 29

MOVEMENTS OF SATURN IN HELIOCENTRIC LONGITUDE OF $34'36''.9$

This method is similar as the previous one, only instead of the Latitude we use the Longitude of Saturn heliocentric. The values are also found on page 201 of the Nautical Almanac.

The results of projecting an increment of $34'36''.9$ from a point such as April 19, 1934 which was a major bottom, followed by a 30c upward movement, are gaps. Looking at the chart of 1934 for wheat, you will find that two gaps upward were made, then two gaps downward and finally a top.

4/19/1934	$321^{\circ} 0' 0''$	major low
	$+ 34'36''.9$	
5/ 8/1934	$321^{\circ}34'36''.9$	gap upwards
	$+ 34'36''.9$	
5/26/1934	$322^{\circ} 9'12''$	gap upwards
	$+ 34'36''.9$	
6/13/1934	$322^{\circ}43'48''$	gap downwards
	$+ 34'36''.9$	
7/ 2/1934	$323^{\circ}18'24''$	gap downwards
	$+ 34'36''.9$	
7/20/1934	$323^{\circ}53'$	a top

We note that the June 1st top of 1934 did not show at all. It is up to you to make a few other projections the same way as this one was made, using among others a projection from the top of April 22nd, 1940, also one from the August low of 1939 so as to reach the gaps for the present and coming period.

RULE NO. 30

VENUS IN HELIOCENTRIC DECLINATION PASSING THE EXTREME DECLINATION OF THE SUN $23^{\circ}26'51''$

In this rule we use the heliocentric Declination of Venus as it passes over the extreme declination of the Sun which is $23^{\circ}26'51''$. The value can be found in two places in Raphael's Ephemeris for verification. On page 12 we find in the lower part of the page a column of the Sun's declination from day to day given in degrees and minutes only. On June 21 and June 22 the value for it is $23^{\circ}27'$ North. The value had been rising previous to it; from then on the value declines. It also shows this on December 21st and

22nd of any year, however, on these days the declination of the Sun is South. The more exact value we find on the first page of Raphael's Ephemerides as the Mean Obliquity of the Ecliptic, value $23^{\circ}26'50''.93$ (as of 1937).

When you check through the various planets in the Nautical Almanac in their declinations, you will find that all of them exceed this value by several degrees.

The rule is this: When the heliocentric declination of Venus passes the Sun's extreme Declination, we get a change of trend

Examples:

January 7-8, 1938	top
May 12, 1938	see explanation below
June 12, 1938	in top range
October 4, 1938	an extreme low
November 17, 1938	a high
November 20, 1939	a low area from which we ran up fast
April 7, 1940	a low followed by a fast move up
June 12, 1940	a top
next crossing occurs in 1941	

Note: May 12, 1938 ~~caused no change in the~~ movement; however, let us look closely at this picture. We can see that we had a fast run-up of $3\frac{3}{4}$ cents from May 6th to 8th 1938, followed by a sagging movement which brought us by May 12 back to the level where the upmove had begun on May 6, 1938. In that the change, according to this law, was due not on May 6th but on May 12th, the prelude, if you may call the rally of May 6-8, 1938 such, told us: here is a rally for you, so don't expect any on May 12th, 1938! At that time we also had just lost one half of the entire movement that was to wind off from April 19, 1938 to June 1st, 1938. With this rule we learn another little trick: Even though we do not always know the extent of the movement planetary crossings of such kind as treated in this law indicate, often the halfway mark of the complete move. I showed you in some other law such condition already. The moment you did see that Venus did not bother to produce a run-up or, let us call it a reversal of the previous movement, you had fully three days time to take back the old short position with not more than half a cent's loss.

RULE NO. 31

VENUS HELIOCENTRIC DECLINATION REACHING AN EXTREME BEYOND $23^{\circ}26'51''$

We look over the changes that are made when the Venus Declination heliocentric reaches extreme turning points. They can occur anywhere, since, when you plot Venus Declination on a chart (call one degree one square on the chart), you will see that the curve produced is a winding up and down affair, a regular snake.

However, testing of tops and bottoms of this curve will reveal that little or nothing happens at turning points unless the turn occurs above the Sun's declination, i.e. above $23^{\circ}26'51''$

Let us see what happens when Venus turns above this value. Use the Nautical Almanac again, page 180 and up, second column. This column is also used for the previous rule.

$23^{\circ}34'22''$ January 3, 1938 (extreme) sharp rise
 $24^{\circ}51'6''$ May 27, 1938 (extreme) major bottom (made from May 28 - June 1, 1938)
 $27^{\circ}0'27''$ October 28, 1938 (extreme) a small top but in bottom range

February 15, 1939 cannot be used since Venus turns there below the Sun's declination.

$24^{\circ}36'36''$ December 4, 1939 (extreme) gap upward with strong move to follow

$27^{\circ}19'39''$ May 7, 1940 (extreme) two days final rise followed by the burst

There are no more extremes during 1940.

Each test shows up trend of at least a few days

RULE NO. 32

MERCURY'S GEOCENTRIC LONGITUDE $126^{\circ}30'$ AFTER THE SUN

This rule is one of the strangest I have been able to find. It is very simple, although it entails work to project correctly. We use the geocentric longitude of Sun at any important top or bottom. To this longitude we add each time the value $126^{\circ}30'$. When the addition has been made and the exact place located in the Zodiac, i.e. the degrees and minutes and the right sign belonging to them, we look when Mercury is going to pass this point. Hold fast that day! The movement that developed previously at the Sun's place will come off in the same direction at the Mercury place. Thus, Mercury imitates the Sun effect.

A few examples will reveal how this works. It is one of the best rules. It was originally found on November 17, 1938, laid aside and completely forgotten until just now, when I checked and re-checked the effects and find them just grand. Absolutely safe commitments can be made so far as I have found. Of course, the duration of the move i.e. how long it lasts is something else. I am not referring to duration. But, we can say that a movement which is incepted will last for a week or ten days anyhow, enough to make it worth while. Then, when it appears from the chart or from some other indications that the market acts a sort of tired going in that direction, step out and wait for another opportunity. I can see at a glance that about 8 worth-while moves could have been obtained in 1938, by just using the 8 important tops and bottoms of that year and projecting them 126°30' forward.

Examples:

1938	Sun Position Reached by Mercury on	
April 19,	28°46' Aries	
	+ 126°30'	
	155°16' or 5°16' Virgo	= Oct. 10,
June 1st	10°19' Gemini	
	+ 126°30'	
	196°49' or 16°49' Libra	= Oct 21
June 21	29°26' Gemini	
	+ 126°30'	
	215°56' or 15°56' Scorpio	= Aug. 1.

This law I dug out of the Hebrew Talmud.

Thus: What the Sun does, Mercury does the same 126°30' later. We only apply this rule from extreme tops and extreme bottoms. The effect is felt only several months later and not a few weeks later. The April 19th top in 1938 was followed by a long decline. So it also happened when Mercury moved over the zodiacal point lying 126°30' further over. This was August 1st, 1938. See what a swell decline developed from there!

Coming now over to the present time, we measure once from the big top of December 18, 1939. Sun position was on this day at 25°40' Sagittarius. Adding 126°30', we get 2°10' in Taurus. We look in Raphael's Ephemeris of 1940 and find this day is May 8, 1940. The top was on May 10, 1940 and not on May 8th, 1940. We had a Sunday on the 9th of the month and on Monday, May 10th, 1940, we shoved up four full cents

yet. I cannot explain away this extra day, although I try very hard as you may see. However, the rule says what the Sun does before, Mercury does after. The Sun caused a top on December 18, 1938 and a decline it was to be from May 8th on in 1940. The "false move" which made that extra one day run belongs more into my rule of "the Man who completes his frame and should be considered as such. Anyhow, he who did use the rule as given here and sold on May 8th, 1940 was not sorry. 30c is a good profit to pocket.

There is a small matter to discuss yet, at least to draw your attention to. We know that Mercury moves at times retrograde. Should the measurement coming from the Sun reach Mercury at the time it moves retrograde, we have first a place over which it does move direct and only after that does Mercury retrograde and pass over the same Sun projection of 126°30' and again after it turns direct it must pass the same spot again. I never have had occasion to test the effect back years. The results ought to be interesting.

RULE NO. 33

MARS IN GEOCENTRIC LONGITUDE PASSING 16°55'46" CANCER

This rule can be seldom used, since it deals with Mars whose movement around the Zodiac takes nearly two years. However, each time Mars passes 16°55' in Cancer a movement begins that is worth following. The effect over several years was thus:

August 10, 1934 a major top

July 20, 1936 an important low

July 2, 1938 a gap downward and much lower

June 13, 1940 a top and down sharp

It would be helpful if you would keep a calendar book using one page for each day of the year, wherein you note all projections and places at which changes of trend have been figured for into the future. Use one rule after the other, figure their next points of change and their effect if available and enter each one found or located into the proper date of the calendar. Add to it the number of the rule it was taken from since otherwise you can do no re-checking at the proper time. Each day consult this diary.

RULE NO. 34
VENUS, DAILY VARIATION OF HELIO-
CENTRIC LONGITUDE PLUS OR
MINUS 7 SECONDS

Here is a rule which brings fine results, although it is hinged on a movement whose differential is but a mere seven seconds.

I would like to give some sort of an illustration in practical life to demonstrate the value of seconds, especially that of seven seconds, but as much as I think, I can't find any relationship. In practical life such small units do not count.

We shall take the Nautical Almanac on page 187, first column. In this column the movement of the heliocentric longitude is listed every two days. In the adjoining column we find the variation of this longitude from one day to the next. This value we have to use for this rule.

The values all run in very narrow range from $1^{\circ}34'50''$ to $1^{\circ}37'32''$. It is a constant swing up and down, up and down within the limits given above. What can anyone get out of these small numbers? How can we find tops and bottoms with it? In wheat especially, when newspapers tell use each day that it is the "export demand" and the hedge-selling of millers . . . One of the two parties is wrong.

The rule as formulated says.

At each side, seven seconds from the extremes of the values of the heliocentric longitudinal daily motion of Venus are changes of trend to be found.

Since the extreme points are changing slightly by a second or so each time a round is completed we have to measure each time again to make sure of the exact value. However, roughly, the values are:

$1^{\circ}34'50''+7''$ or $1^{\circ}34'57''$

$1^{\circ}37'32''-7''$ or $1^{\circ}37'25''$

There are two possibilities, one while approaching the extreme values and one while receding from it.

Examples:

- $1^{\circ}37'$ { August 11, 1939 a major low $1^{\circ}37'25''$
September 6, 1939 end gap up for the
windup peak Sept. 7, 1939
 $1^{\circ}34'$ { April 4, 1939 major low from which strong
move developed
May 4, 1939 top from which strong sidewise
move of a week came forth

- $1^{\circ}34'$ { November 14, 1939 low level ready for
sharp rise
December 14, 1939 day before a gap up-
ward, in fact, it was the end gap in
that move, similarly to the Sept. 6th,
1939 gap. Previous gaps were: gap of
October 9-10, 1939, begin of move.
Middle gap of December 4-5, 1939.
See remarks page 33 (gaps).
 $1^{\circ}37'$ { March 23, 1940 minor top area
April 18, 1940 major top within $\frac{7}{8}$ points;
may also be considered as end gap.
 $1^{\circ}34'$ { June 26, 1940 to be reached here
July 26, 1940
 $1^{\circ}37'$ { November 2, 1940
November 28, 1940

RULE NO. 35
VENUS IN ITS EXTREME SPEEDS IN DAILY
VARIATION OF HELIOCENTRIC
LONGITUDE

This rule might be included in rule No. 34. However, I purposely separated it, since the rule does not work in combination, meaning a low at $1^{\circ}34'57''$ does not imply that the extreme explained here MUST produce a high or a high at $1^{\circ}34'57''$ MUST bring a low.

The wheat market is in for a change of trend when Venus reaches in its heliocentric Longitude's daily motion the extreme and least speed

It is remarkable and absolutely unknown to most people that a motion of a planet which is actually always forward and never retrograde could contain within such a forward motion a rhythmic acceleration and retardation. It may be termed a "hidden motion."

The places to be watched are $1^{\circ}34'50''$ with a decimal attached and $1^{\circ}37'32''$ with a decimal attached

Examples:

- ($1^{\circ}37'$) January 12, 1939 small top (we move in narrow range just then)
($1^{\circ}34'$) April 18, 1939 the last low before the upswing
($1^{\circ}37'$) August 24, 1939 the sharp peak day
($1^{\circ}34'$) November 28, 1939 begin of major advance to December 18, 1939
($1^{\circ}34'$) July 11, 1940 to be reached here; expect this to become a drop down day.

RULE NO. 36

SUN-MERCURY CONJUNCTIONS PLUS 60° IN
GEOCENTRIC POSITIONS

In this rule we attempt to make a combination of a "foot-arm-head" movement as explained in the rule about "Man".

The low of May 18, 1940 for example was hit on the dot; so was the low of November 8, 1937 among many others.

Conjunctions of the interior planets, Mercury and Venus are of two kinds: the superior conjunction, when the planet is direct moving as it crosses the Sun and the inferior conjunction at which time the planet is retrograding over the Sun.

We take a conjunction of Sun with Mercury whether direct or retrograde. The positions are found in Raphaels Ephemeris under the heading Phenomena, page 29. However, after we have located the day of the conjunction, we have to look up the degree and minute when the conjunction occurs, such as the one of March 15, 1940, which, after we first locate it on page 29 of Raphael, we go back to page 7 and find under date March 15, 1940 that this conjunction occurred a little beyond 24°46' in the sign of Pisces.

However, we are not interested in this case what happens at the moment of the conjunction. This is treated in another rule. We add to this place or position of Mercury (not of the Sun) an additional 60 degrees and get thus 24°46' Taurus.

We look up when Mercury passes this place. It happened exactly at the low point May 18, 1940. Thursday, March 15, 1940 gives May 18, 1940.

In my notes I have the following statement: Conjunction plus 60°.

The superior conjunctions of Mercury with Sun, i.e. when Mercury crosses the Sun while direct in motion produce mostly tops.

Whereas inferior conjunctions plus the added 60° gives major turning points also gaps.

But this is not all yet! The notes say further:

From the place which is 60 degrees from a Mercury conjunction such as May 18, 1940 you transfer your attention to the planet Venus and see where it is located just then. We find that Venus is on that day at 7°53' Cancer which value necessarily has to be adjusted to correspond to the adjusted 24°46' Taurus of Mercury. The noon position has not this value. It shows 23°19' Taurus.

With Mercury we are about 1°27' shy at noon May 18, 1940. The speed of Mercury on this day is 2°7'. We have to add two-thirds of this motion so as to arrive at the exact conjunction projection of March 15—acting on May 18, 1940. We have to proceed the same way with Venus, since we intend to project from here the movement of Venus 60 degrees further.

Venus moves from May 18 to May 19, 1940 from 7°53' to 8°26' in Cancer or 34 minutes. Two-thirds of this amount (as we adjusted with Mercury) is 22 minutes. Therefore, adding 22 minutes to the noon position in the ephemeris gives us the correct position for Venus at the moment Mercury is exactly 60 degrees from the previous position of Mercury conjunction Sun on March 15, 1940.

To this value 7°53' Cancer plus 22 minutes or 8°15' Cancer we add also 60 degrees which brings us to 8°15' Virgo which equals October 9, 1940. When Venus reaches this place, a change of trend is due in wheat.

However, the original conjunction of Sun-Mercury has not ended its usefulness at this place. My notes say that we have to add to this latter place of Venus another 12°. When Venus arrives at this place +12°, we are due for the final changes of trend which was caused by the conjunction Sun-Mercury of March 15, 1940. The day is October 24, 1940. The position of Venus on this day is 20°15' Virgo or 8°15' Virgo +12°0' = 20°15' Virgo.

This rule is rather difficult to follow through right. Remember that 4 separate steps are made.

- 1) locate the conjunction of Sun-Mercury
- 2) project Mercury 60° beyond this conjunction
- 3) use Venus from the latter place and project also 60°
- 4) continue with Venus by projecting it an extra 12°

RULE NO. 37

SUN-VENUS CONJUNCTIONS PLUS 60°

This rule is on the same basis as rule No. 36, only we use the conjunction of Sun to Venus direct as well as when retrograde.

Step No. 1 Locate the conjunction Sun Venus.

Step No. 2 add 60° of Venus' motion to this conjunction point and expect a change of trend in wheat.

Step No. 3 Look for Mercury where it is on this specific day and run it 60° further from this place and expect again a change of trend

Step No. 4—From this point let Mercury run an extra 12° and get the last change of trend that is caused by the Sun Venus conjunction.

Conjunctions of Mercury to Sun occur rather often, while Sun Venus conjunctions are rare. We can easily see that when using this method and the previous one together, we get numerous date changes during a year, which are overlapping. The Sun-Mercury conjunction of March 15, 1940 ends its effect only by October 24, 1940. Other conjunctions had begun in the meantime.

Special Note. From the time of Sun conjunction Mercury on March 15, 1940 to the very end of its effect, October 24, 1940 Mercury moved exactly 240° forward in the Zodiac and is found at the same degree and minute but in another sign (Scorpio).

We omitted projecting Mercury after the first 60° projection and used Venus instead by projecting it first 60° and then 12° all told 72°.

This is not a mere coincident. It may be said that it constitutes the action of the feet and of the arms of a man, when the feet are moving and the arms inactive, they are carried along, since they are attached to the body.

Have we so far said a word about mildew, wheat rust, about crop reports, dust storms? Don't worry, we won't say anything about them in this work!

In order to show the rule once more on another example, I shall use the Sun Mercury conjunction of March 25, 1937 and go step by step, denoting the effects at the same time:

Sun-Mercury conjunction March 25, 1937 at 4:45' Aries. Add 60° in Mercury gives 4:45' Gemini, top June 16, 1937. From here on use Venus which on June 16, 1937 is at about 10°20' Taurus.

2) add in Venus movement 60° gives 10°20' Cancer: top August 13th, 1937

3) add an extra 12° in Venus movement gives the low of August 24, 1937.

When you do project a few such conjunctions the procedure gets quite mechanical, but, to explain the steps was hard and, what was still harder, how I found these steps originally. This was first found on August 2nd, 1938, from "Legends of the Jews", vol. II, page 27.

RULE NO. 38

MERCURY LATITUDE HELIOCENTRIC

In the present rule we shall use the heliocentric Latitude of Mercury

We find it on page 171 in the Nautical almanac. On the surface it seems as if nothing much could be done with this Latitude since it moves from 0 up to 7°0' and down to 0 again. However, I have left no stone unturned in the attempt to put everything possible and impossible to practical trading use. So did I with this Latitude.

There are four values in this line which bring forth changes of trend: These values are:

0, 3°21', 6°42' and 7°0'. The inside values are effective on either side, on the way up also on the way down

Some mighty fine tops and bottoms are produced when Mercury in this motion passes the above mentioned degrees. Check them on past or recent performance and you will say yes, it is so.

Just look at the January high 1940 and at the February 2-3 low in 1940. Some times the effect is not very pronounced but it is present just the same. During 1938, especially during the first half of the year practically all the changes registered on this one rule alone.

RULE NO. 39

VENUS, VARIATION PER DAY OF THE HELIOCENTRIC LOGARITHM OF ITS RADIUS VECTOR

We use the Nautical Almanac of 1937 on page 169 and find a column which bears this heading. However, instead of using the actual logarithm, we use the daily variation of same as found in the adjoining column in very small values.

In Nautical Almanac of 1940 the values are found on page 187.

The rule is:

Wheat makes bottoms or occasionally tops when the values of this daily variation reach their extremes

Examples: using the wheat performance in 1937

March 1, 1937 log -13	a low
April 26, 1937 log 828	a low
June 22, 1937 log 0	the big rise began
August 18, 1937 log 832	top
October 13, 1937 log 0	a low
December 6, 1937 log 832	a high

When using this law you must not think that you have to figure with logarithm Tables from now on. Everything has been figured for you. All we apply are the numbers as shown in the book. In fact, by now you will have recognized that it

does not matter to us whether or not we know what is a logarithm, a declination, or a latitude etc. as long as we know specific numbers under certain headings must be used. This is the reason why I have not bothered much giving explanations about the meaning of the expressions. True, we must not be completely ignorant on the subject, although at times "Ignorance is Bliss". We see this when we consider the many astronomers who can figure all the numbers given in the Nautical Almanac but don't know what to do with them in practical application to markets.

RULE NO. 40
VENUS HELIOCENTRIC LATITUDE
DIVIDED INTO PARTS

This rule is intended to make you find the very small moves in wheat lasting only a few days. However, since we nearly always have to do with bottoms, tops and gaps—either one—and the changes explained here come one after the other, we must be in a position to watch the actual performance of wheat at very close distance.

We turn to page 167 and up in the Nautical Almanac of the year 1937 or to page 187 in the year 1940. In the center of the page we have our column: Heliocentric Latitude of Venus.

We note the values vibrate between $3^{\circ}23'$ and 0° , going from plus to minus to both extremes. 0° is the center of the vibration.

I have discovered that the following values within this vibration give changes, on the plus side as well as on the minus side. They miss occasionally one of the values, but, as said, we must be at the board to watch the sales and prices. My notes say: There are 17 values in the entire cycle movement, 8 on each side of the zero point. In my tests I found that one miss occurs (i.e. nothing happens) in one entire cycle.

Here is the rule:

Changes of trend for minor moves occur at the following Latitude points of Venus when Venus passes over it:

$0^{\circ} 0'$	$2^{\circ}30'$
$0^{\circ}13'$	$3^{\circ}00'$
$1^{\circ}50'$	$3^{\circ}17'$
$2^{\circ}17'$	$3^{\circ}23'$

If you should decide to use this rule, remember that the values in the Almanac are given for Venus Latitude only every two days which requires interpolation with the aid of the adjoining

column (variation per day) so as to get the exact time the values quoted above are passed.

RULE NO. 41
MERCURY'S DAILY SPEED IN GEO-
CENTRIC LONGITUDE

We have treated this subject already. However, I just now come across a notation which must be registered and known. It deals with Mercury's daily speed in geocentric motion, covering the time its speed is more than the Sun's mean motion, i.e. when Mercury's speed is more than $59'$ per day.

It also deals with that phase when Mercury in its motion is less than the Sun's daily mean motion of $59'$.

This is what my notes say:

When Mercury's speed has reached the extreme $2^{\circ}4'-2^{\circ}12'$ it has to turn downward trying to get to zero.

Once in a while it does not do so immediately but stops somewhere in-between $2^{\circ}12'$ and $0'$ and accelerates again. It is satisfactory if this occurs below the Sun's mean motion of $59'$, but it is very bad for wheat if such a change of speed occurs while the Mercury speed is still above $59'$.

For example, Mercury hits the extreme speed in the daily geocentric movement ($2^{\circ}12'$) and comes downward in this speed to $47'$ or $50'$, then turns up say to $1^{\circ}20'$ speed per day. This would be perfectly right. But, should it come down from the extreme say to $1^{\circ}40'$ and reverse upward, it would be ruinous. In this case it would have stayed above the Sun's mean motion and ran back up again.

A condition as important as the previous one is this:

As Mercury in its daily speed comes up from zero, crosses the Sun's mean motion of $59'$ and continues for awhile, but then, instead of making for the extreme $2^{\circ}12'$ it turns down: this would be ruinous again. Compare Mercury's movement August to October 1937.

Once, the Sun's mean speed is passed, Mercury just simply has to go to its extreme speed, $2^{\circ}12'$ or $0'$; if not, watch out.

RULE NO. 42
VENUS REDUCTION TO ORBIT.
VALUE + $2^{\circ}42'$

When we go out fishing, at times we are satisfied with very little ones! That is, if we can't get big ones . . .

Here is a "small" rule which does not have to be used often since it is not happening often. However, if it does happen you can buy wheat for at least two days. The crossing of Venus in the "Reduction to Orbit, value + 2°42' is the critical point. This implies that the direction of market just prior to this crossing might be downward or it might be upward. On this day you can buy the market. The value of the Reduction to Orbit (see column 2 in Nautical Almanac of 1940 page 187) must be *increasing* in speed, i.e. the value must be heading towards the extreme and not downward.

Examples:

February 16, 1937 we rushed up for two days
Sept. 28, 1937 we rushed to a top
January 18, 1938 we rushed to a top
May 11, 1938 a sharp two day run-up

As I am writing this and check the charts at the same time to make sure of the effects, I note a very important law.

This value +2°42', whenever it occurs, comes just at a moment when traders are asking themselves: is this the beginning of a serious upmove? Actually, as I look at the charts I can see that traders, if they are short previous to this point, run all to cover right after the point is passed; they get scared and the market runs fast and furious upward for two days. After this time is over, they are left high and dry, since a reaction ensues after those two days. It is suggested that you dig up several other such points and mark for future use any such places in your diary so that you do not act like the masses who think: here comes a rise, whereas only a sharp two day move develops, followed by a similar type of reaction. I consider this rule very good, and it is a pity it does not occur more often.

In 1940 we find the first crossing of this value on March 15th, the next one on July 5th and the following on August 31st.

RULE NO. 43

VENUS HELIOCENTRIC LATITUDES 0°, 2°16', and 3°23'

In this rule we use the heliocentric Latitude of Venus once more. We distinguish however, between the signs of plus and minus that precede the figures. The effect varies.

During the year 1938 the following sequence was noted:

February 9	3°6' minus while value is descending	top
February 25	extreme 3°23'38" minus	top
March 25	2°16' minus descending	bottom
April 19	extreme 0	top
May 31	3°6' plus ascending	bottom
June 15	extreme 3°23'38" plus	top
July 17	2°16' plus descending	bottom
August 11	extreme 0	top

We use two odd values aside of the two extreme values. They are 3°6' and 2°16'. These values we change alternately, that is: we skip one each time. On the way down between Feb. 25 and March 25, 1938 we skip 3°6'. On the way up, between April 19 and May 31, 1938 we skip 2°16' and keep on alternating that way.

RULE NO. 44

MERCURY HALF-WAY RETROGRADE PLACE (See Ill. No. 2)

Mercury can only be retrograde in geocentric longitude and never in heliocentric longitude.

The amount of retrogradation of Mercury varies considerably as you can see by checking periods during which it is moving retrograde.

The rule here concerns only the retrograde movement and centers specifically on the half-way point from the moment Mercury turns retrograde to the place where it moves again direct. We figure the difference of these two places in the Zodiac, divide by two and look in the Ephemeris (Raphael's) for the date when this half-way point is reached.

My check covers the following places

May 11, 1937	a bottom
Sept. 13, 1937	a bottom
Dec. 30, 1937	a bottom
April 22, 1938	was a miss in that nothing occurred.

Example of how the figuring is done. We use March, 1940. Mercury turns retrograde on March 6, 1940 at 0 Aries 15'. It becomes direct on March 29, 1940 at 16 Pisces 51'. Therefore, the difference between these two values is 13°9' (30° Pisces equals 0° Aries, less, 16°51' Pisces) plus 0°15' or 13°24'. One half of this value is 6°42'. This value is then either deducted from the place Mercury begins to move retrograde or else we can add it to the other side (to the value of March 28, 1940:) 16°51' Pisces.

Both ways we obtain 16°51' Pisces plus 6°42' equals 23°33' Pisces which was passed by Mercury on March 16, 1940 and we see from the chart that it was the important low.

RULE NO. 45

PRICE LEVELS OF WHEAT ESTABLISHED WITH
LOGARITHM OF THE PLANETS TRUE
DISTANCE FROM THE EARTH

For the first time, we have a rule that throws some light upon prices. So far, everything that was produced ignored price levels altogether. All we obtained was days of change of trend. In terms of mathematics we had exercises in pure Algebra, whereas in this rule we use Arithmetic. The former allows substitutions of any price, while the latter works with actual prices.

Rule: When any one of the planets, from Mercury over to Neptune (each one individually of course) changes its logarithm of the True distance from the Earth (see Nautical Almanac at the proper headings for each planet), we are just mid-way of a movement

I shall illustrate three cases and supply the prices for them. The examples are taken from the Winnipeg wheat chart, but Chicago will act in the same proportions, since we have to do here with a universal law.

Example No. 1 Mercury (Naut. Almanac 1938 page 144)

On March 30, 1938 the True distance from the Earth of Mercury (the daily variation of same is used) shows a value of 26695, its extreme speed. We only use extreme speed in this case. We consult our Winnipeg wheat chart and find that the low of this day was 1.22½. The movement had come from 1.15½ on March 22nd, 1938 thus, we already had a rise of 7c.

The high that was reached ultimately on April 8, 1938 was 128¾ or in other words, we rose exactly the same amount once more (¼ point excess). The value or rather the day when the planet reached its extreme speed in the daily variation of the True distance from the earth (March 30, 1938) was the mid-way point of the swing.

On March 30, 1938 the extreme speed in True Distance from Earth of Saturn was 0. We have to call a zero speed also an extreme. Both planets, Mercury and Saturn were active during this time.

On May 5, 1938 Uranus comes to such a critical point, to a 0 daily variation speed. (Naut.

Alm. 1938 page 204). This day happened to be a holiday and no exact price can be had. We can judge, however, from the performance of wheat around that day, that its price must have been in the October option around 88c. The previous top had been made on April 19, 1938 at 1.01 and thus we had passed 13c up to this day on the downside. As I said above, the rule is that the changes of speed are made when price levels reach the half-way point of a movement, we have to expect that from this specific day or we are to decline another 13c, the date of such a low does not interest us in this rule but only the price level.

The low for October Winnipeg was made at 74 end of May 1938. The 88c price less 13c would have given us 75c and this was within one cent of the low.

June 24, 1938 Mercury is at 0 (459 plus against 935 minus). The price of October Winnipeg is 85c. We came down from 89¾c. We had covered a distance in price of 4¾c, therefore, the price should recede to 80¾c, which it did. It went lower after holding this level for about 10 days.

RULE NO. 46

VENUS REDUCTION TO ORBIT; 0°, 1°50' and 3°1'

We use the Nautical Almanac pp. 167.

Use the following positions in regular rotation and project repeatedly and constantly forward.

-1°50'	} in Reduction to Orbit of Venus
0°	
+1°50'	
3°1' extreme	
-1°50'	
0°	
+1°50'	
3°1' extreme	

At the extreme of 3°1' of this reduction to Orbit value we are occasionally a day or even two days too soon. However, the actual price differentials of the succeeding days are not too much.

Special Note: Between -1°50' and -2°58' we get sharp drops and between -2°58' and -3°1' we get sharp reversals very often.

Examples:

April 4, 1937 to April 17, 1937
 April 17, 1937 to April 20, 1937

May 30, 1937 to June 13, 1937
 June 13, 1937 to June 15, 1937

July 26, 1937 to August 9, 1937
 August 9, 1937 to August 12, 1937

November 14, 1937 to November 28, 1937
 November 28, 1937 to November 30, 1937
 (upmove kept on)

March 7, 1938 to March 21, 1938
 March 21, 1938 to March 25, 1938 (upmove
 was small)

June 27, 1938 to July 10, 1938
 July 10, 1938 to July 14, 1938

The first period given above produced downmoves, the second period given above produced upmoves as per the rule. No place where the values had to be considered was "jumped" in order to make the goings easier such as I have seen of dozens of traders who have "pet methods" which, whenever they don't click are just passed over on the sly, so as not to incommode their feelings.

We must realize that the planets work is exact and, if they don't work at certain places, it is due to some more important condition prevailing that nullifies that particular minor one. All those rules given where no flaws occur are of the greatest value and should be separately marked for constant use. After all, we are tackling the hardest problem any human being could try for, measuring movements of commodities ahead of time! Other people, in fact the multitude of people call trading in commodities an outright speculation whereby the end is usually a "strip dance" which with one lasts longer, with another shorter.

Our "speculation" is basically sound, and, even if we have to take losses once in awhile, the profit side i.e. the right commitments outweigh by far the short comings. We are surely not fooling ourselves when we decide to eliminate everything that is gossiped in the "Street", everything that newspapers have to say, everything that the public craves for.

RULE NO. 47

MERCURY REDUCTION TO ORBIT OF PREVIOUS YEAR USING EXTREME VALUE OF 12'52"

This rule has only to do with the actual extreme value in the Reduction to Orbit of Mercury which value is 12'52" or close to it (slightly variable). We merely look them up in the Nautical Almanac of the year previous and make a list of them. Then we use the dates on which they occur the year LATER.

Examples:

January 10, 1936	July 19, 1936
January 25, 1936	August 6, 1936
February 12, 1936	September 5, 1936
March 13, 1936	September 30, 1936
April 7, 1936	October 15, 1936
April 22, 1936	November 2, 1936
May 10, 1936	December 1, 1936
June 9, 1936	December 27, 1936
July 4, 1936	

On all dates given extreme positions are found.

Look up the very corresponding dates a year later, i.e. in this case in 1937 and pick out your tops and bottoms; we have 17 positions according to this rule and not less than 14 of them brought MAJOR CHANGES the next year.

RULE NO. 48

JUPITER IN RIGHT ASCENSION, DIFFERENTIAL OF 1h 21m 45s

This is a rather curious rule. Due to the fact that the motion in Right Ascension is also retrograde, we have periods when nothing is due for a long time. The example given below, starts at an important peak. We may also begin with some other major top or bottom that was formed within some other cycle and not belonging to the one examined. Thus, we can start from such days as June 1st, 1938, April 22nd 1940 etc.

Example:

Top, December 28, 1936 Jupiter R. A. at 18h 25m25s we add constantly the same increment of 1h21m45s and get this way the following dates and changes.

April 5, 1937 19h47m10s top second peak of major top
 November 25, 1937 same value: 19h47m10s major low
 February 22, 1938 top in wheat major
 January 25, 1939 a top in wheat

April 4, 1940 a low in wheat

July 11, 1940 is the next date belonging to this series.

We end herewith the rules to measure movements of wheat. There are still a few notes left which, however, are either so complicated in their construction, or their value is doubtful. Several times I struck on rules which in the first instant looked wonderful and did give tops and bottoms for awhile like a clock strikes twelve. When projected into other years on the same principles they just simply faded out. None of these have been used, in fact as I carefully scanned each card on which the notes had been registered, I tore up all those that looked doubtful, cleaning house at the same time.

PART III RULES FOR HIDES

THE COMMODITY HIDES ALSO APPLICABLE TO STOCK MARKET.

One point movement in Hides represent \$4.00.

Trading in hides is very profitable. Hides move their own way and have nothing whatever to do with wheat. Hides may be bullish and run up a hundred or two hundred points, while wheat moves during such period sideways in a narrow of two cents range. It may take nose-dives. It might follow hides part of the way and then end back where it had begun, while hides keep on moving up. (Stock traders please substitute the word "stocks" whenever the word hides is mentioned).

We don't have to be so careful anymore to clarify the reasons for such conditions. It is simply planetary movements that make them move differently. What we use as rules for wheat do not come into question for hides at all, except, one or two of the rules have a tinge of showing some tops or bottoms for hides.

Of course, for forecasting hide prices, we can't use anything else but the same planets, the same longitude, declination or latitude as we did for wheat. However, we have other proportions of values as shall be amply demonstrated.

There are not as many rules for hides and much less still for other commodities, since I have devoted most of my time towards finding wheat laws. However, all rules that are given for other commodities have been worked and tested just as carefully as the wheat rules. Some give striking results and hit major tops and bottoms uncannily.

RULE NO. 1A

VENUS, DAILY VARIATION OF LOGARITHM RADIUS VECTOR

The least and extreme speed of the logarithm of Venus Radius Vector (Naut. Alm. page 169) bring major changes in Hides. The extreme value is about 828 to 832.

Examples:

January 5-6, 1937	825 Bottom in Hides
March 1, 1937	0 Bottom in Hides
April 30, 1937	826 Bottom in Hides
June 23, 1937	0 Bottom in Hides
August 19, 1937	832 Bottom in Hides

February 2, 1938	0 Bottom in Hides
March 31, 1938	830 Bottom in Hides
May 25, 1938	0 Bottom in Hides
July 20, 1938	top
September 14, 1938	Bottom in Hides
November 9-10, 1938	top

When the price movements just prior to Venus reaching the extremes of the log. of the Radius Vector have been on the way down, you can buy hides on the day the extreme is reached.

Note: The value of 488 of this Radius Vector gives also good results for minor moves.

RULE NO. 2A

VENUS LATITUDE HELIOCENTRIC 4°58' (4°52') DIFFERENCES

Measure from important tops or bottoms by using Venus in heliocentric position. Project from such tops or bottoms the value of 4°58'. During certain periods I found that 4°52' would be more advantageous, but the difference is so small it is not important.

Examples: Adding to the low of December 30, 1937 which was -0°4'52" and figuring via the extreme of 3°23' on 2/24/1938 our value of 4°58' in Venus Latitude we reach March 31, 1938 the low.

From the March 31, 1938 low to May 31, 1938 low are again 4°58'. It is suggested that you project the value from each top and bottom of importance.

The difficulty which you might encounter with this method is that you have to do your figuring upward first to the 3°23' place and then measure the amount that the planet has to go yet so as to make ultimately 4°48'. The remaining differential must be deducted from this 3°23' extreme speed. The same applies when the movement of

the planet in Latitude is downward, at which period we deduct first the amount to get us to 0 and then take this value off the 4°58'. The difference found this way is then applied and added to the 0°. A little effort, going over the two examples above will clear the situation. Besides, similar calculations have been used in other rules already.

RULE NO. 3A

MERCURY CONJUNCTIONS TO SATURN AND JUPITER OF 80 YEARS AGO

This rule does not only cover Hides, but applies equally to other commodities, also to stocks.

We have to obtain back Ephemerides for those years of Raphael, else we might use the Max Heindl Ephemeris for this purpose which can be had in stores that sell astrological tools. The Macoy Publishing Co. at 35 West 32nd Street, New York, N. Y., has them. Their price is 25c each plus postage of 3c. Their arrangement and layout is a little different compared to Raphael's Ephemerides. However, I doubt if Macoy has enough old Raphael's to go around. There is another possibility which you might consider. I have a set of German Ephemerides, 3 volumes, covering a full 100 years from 1850 to 1950. The price on thin paper is about \$17.50. You might want to get those and use them for any period.

Here are a few "Highlights" of this 80 year cycle to show what can be had by searching.

We concentrate on the Mercury conjunctions to the various planets.

July 18, 1857 Mercury conjunction Saturn gave top July 18, 1937.

April 23, 1858 Mercury conjunction Jupiter gave top of April 23, 1938.

May 23, 1856 Mercury conjunction Saturn gave a top to Hides and a major low for wheat from which big movements resulted.

The first two conjunctions quoted when they returned in 1939 gave minor bottoms from which rallies of four days duration came forth.

The dates are: June 24, 1939 for Jupiter and July 14, 1939 for Saturn. We must remember that during this period, especially in wheat we were in a major downtrend and, this downtrend was only interrupted at these two places and nowhere else as you can readily see when consulting the chart.

RULE NO. 4A

MERCURY 80 YEARS AGO

We use the geocentric ephemeris, concentrate

only on Mercury as it passes through the Zodiac. We mark each day when this planet enters a new sign 80 years ago, i.e. when it arrives at 0 degrees. We also mark those days in which Mercury turns retrograde or direct. Note, that a planet changing signs and going direct, respectively retrograde are two entirely different things, but for our work they fit together. Here is a list of these places together with the dates when they happened back in 1857. These dates are to be carried over to the year 1937, exactly 80 years further according to the Sun's motion and not according to Mercury's motion.

All quotations are for Mercury only. In this example the years 1857 & 1858 were used.

1857—equals 1937	1858—equals 1938
3/31 0 Aries	1/6 retrograde
5/20 retrograde	1/26 direct
6/17 direct	2/13 0 Aquarius
7/23 0 Leo	3/6-7 0 Pisces
10/10 direct	3/23 0 Aries
11/22 0 Sagittarius	4/6 0 Taurus

Each and every one of these positions gave 80 years later tops and bottoms not of a few points but of from 50 to 200 points in hides.

Look up the dates on the hide charts.

Note: The very same calendar days are used 80 years later.

RULE NO. 5A

MERCURY HALF-WAY POSITION BETWEEN RETROGRADE AND DIRECT

This rule we have used already for wheat. It also can be applied to hides and stocks. (see rule 4A).

RULE NO. 6A

MARS DECLINATION HELIOCENTRIC, 19°51'

From the Nautical Almanac, page 191 up we find the apparent Declination of Mars. We use in this only the value 19°51'. We locate these days ahead of time and expect tops and bottoms to appear there.

Example:

March 28, 1937	bottom
June 17, 1937	bottom
November 22, 1937	top
February 2, 1939	bottom
October 20, 1939	top
March 25-26, 1940	bottom area
July 13, 1940	next change

These cases happen twice or three times a year.

RULE NO. 7A

MARS RIGHT ASCENSION 19h20m
DIFFERENTIAL

In this rule we use the Right Ascension of Mars and project from a previous major top or a bottom 19 hours 20 minutes. The results are fine. We can commence to do this also the other way around by measuring backwards and see what has happened, expecting it to happen again. I have a good reason to say this specially, since I have found the cycles even in small daily jiggles repeat if I trace backwards.

There is apparently one flaw to this rule. What shall we do when either side of the points traced is moving backwards, i.e. retrograding?

This statement may not mean anything to you so far, but what was said is important. With an example we will find quickly what I mean.

The picture prevailing 19h20m prior to a date measured in Mars Right Ascension should repeat in continuation.

The picture lies about one and one half years behind.

Example:

January 3, 1940 equals May 10, 1938 since:

Mars R. A. January 3, 1940 is	38h58m a top
	—19h20m
Mars R. A. May 10, 1938	4h38m a low
Mars R. A. May 3, 1938 was	4h17m a low
	+19h20m
Mars R. A. Dec. 26, 1939	23h37m a low

It does happen that we obtain a low when the previous point was a high or visa-versa, but seldom. He who uses this rule will watch the movement from one day to the next and thus he will quickly notice a change of behavior as the paralleling cycles move on.

However, there is a time, as stated above, when Mars goes backward for a period in Right Ascension as it happened between June 24, 1939 and August 25, 1939. During this time we may try to retrace backwards the effect, but it won't work right. The best for us to do is to pass up such a period without getting us into troubles. (see Nautical Almanac for 1939 page 194 and 196).

This rule has yet proven to be the best of the lot.

RULE NO. 8A

MARS RIGHT ASCENSION 11h20m
DIFFERENTIAL

This is another rule based upon the same principle as the rule No. 7. We use again Mars' Right Ascension, but go back to look for a cycle of 19 hours 20 minutes. January 27, 1940 is equal to December 5, 1938, both of which were lows. December 18, 1939 is equal to October 24, 1938; both were big tops.

The way this rule works can be best demonstrated when we take our two hands, put them in front of us, a foot apart and a foot away from the face. Hold each steady; then begin at one and the same time to trace wavy curves up and down, proceeding towards the right side. The left hand movement represents the movement of Hides that are plotted in the previous cycle which is back either 19h20m or 11h20m in Mars' Right Ascension motion and the right hand represents the present, which retraces the past movement. The rule does not give price levels nor does it register the size of the movement except approximately.

The scare of which I wrote at the bottom of rule No. 7A is herewith removed, since, when Mars in the 19h20m movement bucks, i.e. moves retrograde, we simply use the cycle of 11h20m.

RULE NO. 9A

MARS' RIGHT ASCENSION AT FULL HOURS

This rule misses occasionally an hour, but at whichever hours it shows a response, the effect is real strong. Let us say when Mars reaches in R. A. at full hours such as 2h0m, 5h0m and a GAP is made within a few days thereafter in either direction up or down, jump in right away making commitments in the direction of the gap since a big move develops here right away.

First, I shall bring the dates when Mars in R. A. passed the full hours during 1938, the year we shall use as example.

- 0 hour R. A. Mars January 30, 1938
- 1 hour R. A. Mars February 21-22, 1938
- 2 hour R. A. Mars March 15-16, 1938
- 3 hour R. A. Mars April 6, 1938
- 4 hour R. A. Mars April 27, 1938
- 5 hour R. A. Mars May 18, 1938
- 6 hour R. A. Mars June 7, 1938
- 7 hour R. A. Mars June 28, 1938
- 8 hour R. A. Mars July 19-20, 1938
- 9 hour R. A. Mars August 11, 1938

- 10 hour R. A. Mars September 4, 1938
- 11 hour R. A. Mars September 29, 1938
- 12 hour R. A. Mars October 24, 1938
- 13 hour R. A. Mars November 20, 1938
- 14 hour R. A. Mars December 15, 1938

Here is the effect that happened when these hours were passed on the dates given:

At 0 hour was a low area; a sharp 2 day move developed but was lost again, even an extra 50 points, yet we ran into good profits by mid-February anyhow.

- 1 hour: we made a gap down between February 23 and 24.
- 2 hours: we dropped sharply further.
- 3 hours: brought the low and A GAP UP 2 days later with a sharp run upwards of nearly 200 points.
- 4 hours: we just had passed the top.
- 5 hours: a very tiny top, but we find a gap the next day and it was downward, so down we went until the end of May.
- 6 hours: a day after the minor peak of June 6th, 1938.
- 7 hours: we just pass the peaks of April and May previous
- 8 hours: the very top of the movement.
- 9 hours: in the downtrend with a GAP DOWN the next day; we went lower.
- 10 hours: range very narrow, nothing visible.
- 11 hours: day before we had the low; we open with a gap upwards and what a sizzling move we began!
- 12 hours: the very peak day.
- 13 hours: in the move, but the day after came A GAP DOWN and lower we went for two weeks.
- 14 hours: in the move nothing much visible.

Take your time to check over the situation and digest this important rule which should prove very profitable to you, if you but wait for the gaps which I emphasized as the cue to direction. The moves last for quite awhile, sometimes one full hour in Mars' R. A. motion.

RULE NO. 10A

MARS R. A. PLUS DAILY VARIATION OF VENUS HELIOCENTRIC EXTREME LONGITUDE (1°37'32")

The title of this rule sounds rather queer: add a piece of Venus on to Mars. It works and this is what we look for. Nature's combinations are queer and so is this.

We know that the extreme speed of the daily variation of Venus is 1°37'32". This value we use with a reservation. We cannot very well add degrees to hours, but we can add hours to hours, so we shall call the value 1h37m32s. and add that.

A few examples are only necessary to show how the rule is applied. We use 1938 again and get great surprises!

Top January 10, 1938

$$\begin{array}{r} \text{when Mars' R. A. is} \quad 23\text{h } 4\text{m } 20\text{s} \\ + \quad 1\text{h } 37\text{m } 32\text{s} \\ \hline 24\text{h } 41\text{m } 52\text{s} = 0\text{h } 41\text{m } 52\text{s} \end{array}$$

Note: 0 hours is the same as 24 hours.

This was February 14-15, 1938, the real low point.

Top February 23, 1938

$$\begin{array}{r} \text{Mars R. A. at} \quad + 1\text{h } 37\text{m } 32\text{s} \\ \hline 2\text{h } 41\text{m } 47\text{s} \end{array}$$

This was the Mars R. A. place of March 31st, 1938, the very extreme low day!

Good things are not cooked too well, so please continue the work to gain experience . . . and profits.

RULE NO. 11A

VENUS R. A. PLUS 4 TIMES THE DAILY EX- TREMELY VARIATION OF VENUS LONGITUDE (1°37'32")

This rule is exactly on the same principle as rule No. 10A, with the exception that instead of using Mars R. A. we shall use Venus Right Ascension. And, instead of adding one Unit of the daily heliocentric variation in extreme speed of Venus which is 1°37'32", we shall use four such Units or 6°30'8".

Like in rule No. 10A we turn the degrees of this value into hours and minutes by just changing the name. We then get 6h30m8s.

To an extreme top or bottom we begin to add this increment and we shall obtain very fine results.

I shall bring one single example which will show the rule and which will show at the same time the intimate relationship between Venus and Mars when the proper proportions are used.

We will use January 10, 1938, the major top in hides as a starting point. Venus was in R. A. that day at

$$\begin{array}{r} 18\text{h } 56\text{m } 59\text{s} \\ \text{we add to this} \\ \text{value our 4 units } 6\text{h } 30\text{m } 8\text{s} \end{array}$$

$$25\text{h } 27\text{m } 7\text{s} \text{ or } 1\text{h } 27\text{m } 7\text{s}$$

This brings us to the major low of March 31, 1938. We arrive at the same place by using Mars' R. A. in rule No. 10A.

Finds like these give one satisfaction that something was achieved and mind you, I know this rule for years, carried it in my notes and in my mind without telling anyone about it. Such laws are so colossal that I am not quite sure whether you are able to size up what you have here . . . You may be able to do so in a month or two.

This concludes the rules for Hide movements.

PART IV THE COMMODITY COTTON

RULE NO. 1B

MERCURY, VENUS AND MARS GEO- CENTRIC ONE YEAR PRIOR

For cotton we have to use the geocentric passage of Mercury, Venus and Mars over 0 degrees of a sign to obtain changes in trend; however, not the current year's motion of these planets is to be used, but the ones of the year before. Thus, you use the ephemeris (Raphael) of 1939 to find the changes in 1940.

The places where these planets turn retrograde or direct in the previous year give also good results for the year following.

THE COMMODITY LARD

RULE NO. 1C

We take the Mercury positions where the planet turns retrograde. From this place we have to figure backwards (not forward) to locate changes of trend. We have to go backwards in five steps as follows:

Example: We shall use the year 1938 and begin with April 11, 1938, on which day Mercury turns retrograde at 5°36' Taurus.

step No. 1 go back 6°55'23" from this retrograde place of Mercury this gives us March 31, 1938 bottom

step No. 2 go back from the same place (April 11, 1938 Mercury retrograde place of 5°36' Taurus) 41°32'18" this gives us the gap downwards on 3/11/38.

step No. 3 go back from the retrograde Mercury place 69°13'50". This gives us the top of February 23, 1938.

step No. 4 go back from the 4/11/38 which is the 5°36' Taurus place 103°50'46". This gives us the bottom of February 3, 1939. and finally, the previous place of Mercury direct or January 10, 1938 was the top.

Here is another setting using the same degrees as above from another retrograde place: We use August 13, 1938 to start backwards: position of Mercury retrograde is

August 13, 1938	12°19'	Virgo
	— 6°55'	
August 1, 1938	5°24'	Virgo
	—41°32'18"	
July 7, 1938	0°47'	Leo
	—69°13'50"	
June 23, 1938	3° 5'	Cancer
	—103°50'46"	
June 7, 1938	28°28'	Taurus

The units used in this method are from certain cycles which I have developed.

Similar to the rules which were set down in this work you may produce rules for any other commodity.

However, the old story remains true: stick to one single commodity, use and exploit it. After a time you get to know it as well as yourself. Do not trade in several unless you keep plenty of extra cash to take care of the losses that are due to result. Reasons for this statement are amply enlarged in this work.

Now you know what planetary motions do bring about. I hope you benefited from the studies you have made. Mark down the day you have acquired (ordered) this work. After you have studied it for a few months, try to forecast on hand of that date via planetary positions the good and bad periods concerning your own trading. Interesting and valuable rules can be formulated by keeping tab of the days when trades are started and closed.

STOCKS

On hand of the many rules supplied to forecast the movements of wheat, hides, cotton and lard, I must not overlook to say a few words about stocks.

It is strange that the public is thoroughly stock minded but very little "commodity-minded". Stocks can be bought for investments and put

away in strong boxes. They take little room. Commodities need warehouses. Commodities are made for sale and not for "keeps".

Our rules and laws do not treat investments. We are solely interested in swings of short or normal duration, usually of not more than six to eight months.

Any stock operator or trader who is interested in trading for the periods mentioned can take the rules given for Hides and use them. This does not mean that he should follow Hides literally. I know very well that hides move 80% to 90% in sympathy with stocks. They have astronomical sympathies to each other. But, it does happen that

hides follow occasionally for a month or so their own peculiar trend, at which time you would be wrong when you use the Hide pattern.

Therefore let us say: The changes in stocks occur on the very same days as those of Hides but we must follow the direction each one takes.

Use ellipses and charts the same way as shown for commodities. Select one active stock that sells between 25 and 75 dollars. Stick to this one; learn to know this stock well and the rule or rules it likes to follow. The stock you select should be listed on the Exchange for many years. It then has history behind which can be put down on chart paper. Leave new stocks to the public.

A M E N



ADDRESSES WHERE TO PROCURE NECESSARY BOOKS AND OTHER MATERIALS TO OPERATE

The "American Ephemeris & Nautical Almanac" can be obtained from "The Superintendent of Documents", Washington, D. C.
The current copy sells for \$2.50.
The two previous years sell each for \$2.00
All others sell for \$1.00.

Raphael's Ephemerides can be obtained from Macoy Publishing Co., 35 West 32nd Street, New York, N. Y., for 50c per year.

Chart Paper, Keuffel & Esser's No. 358-143L in green can be obtained from Keuffel & Esser Co., Fulton Street, New York, N. Y., or through their Branch Offices throughout the country. Drawing Material Firms can also get the paper for you. Price \$5.00 per 100 sheets; lesser amounts in proportion.

PREVIOUS WORKS BY THE AUTHOR

"Time Factors", 1932, price \$10.00
Full of fundamental Laws and Rules.

"Preview of Markets", 12 vol., 144 pages.
It covers the period of June 1939 to May 1940.

Aside of the monthly forecasts for the period, it contains important discussions on our subject. Connecting links are established between the Hebrew Alphabet, the Latin Language, the stories of Thousands and One Nights, Dante, Boccaccio, Atheneaeus, Cicero and others. Besides special articles are contained giving valuable trading rules.

Price of set \$5.00.

Celluloid Ellipse 6 inches. If too much difficulty is found to make the ellipse yourself, I offer the same type and thickness as my own with the necessary lines drawn into it for \$1.00 each.

" M O N E Y "

Investing in Stocks

Trading in Commodities

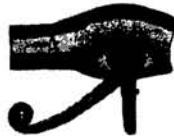
or

The Time Factors in the Stock Market

by

George Bayer

copyright 1937
by George Bayer
3216 Crescent Street,
Long Island City, N.Y.



SACRED SCIENCE INSTITUTE

WWW.SACREDSCIENCE.COM

Theism places God extramundane, as being outside the realm of the World.

The following laws can only be fully understood when using pantheistic world conception:

- 1) The Universe is infinite, unlimited; it is completely filled with substance throughout.
- 2) Time of the Universe is infinite, unlimited. Time has no beginning and no end.
- 3) Its substance is everywhere, at all times in uninterrupted motion and uninterrupted change. The infinite quantity of matter remains as fixed as the eternally changing energy.
- 4) The universal motion of substance in the Universe is an eternal circular motion with periodically repeating eras.
- 5) These eras consist of periodic changes of the aggregate condition whereby a primary separation of matter and ether occurs, the ergonomy of ponderable and imponderable matter.
- 6) This separation has its cause in the progressively densifying process of matter, in the formation of uncountable small density centers.
- 7) In one part of the Universe, heavenly bodies are formed through the pycnotic process, first small, then larger and the ether between them obtains a greater tension; in other parts of the Universe, the exact opposite process occurs, namely the destruction of heavenly bodies through collisions.
- 8) The immense quantities of heat released by these mechanical collisions of rotating heavenly bodies, represent new energies and new live forces, which effect the motion of the forming cosmic dust masses and the reformation of rotating balls. So the eternal process repeats indefinitely.

The earth, which started from parts of our rotating Sun system millions of years ago, will in the course of further millions of years become rigid when its path around the Sun has become much smaller, finally dropping into the Sun.

To get a clearer vision of universal cosmic development, the modern idea of periodic changes, of destruction and creation of heavenly bodies, is especially important. We can ascribe to it, the great strides made in physics and astronomy, in connection with the law of substance. In this idea, the earth shrinks to a tiny pinch of dust and becomes one of the innumerable millions which pass throughout the infinite Universe in the form of heavenly bodies. Thus mankind, itself, which in its anthropological fancy, glorifies itself as the image or replica of God, sinks to the size of the smallest bacillus. People are only ephemeral, developing forms of eternal substance-- individual forms of matter and energy. Their nullity and voidness we can only understand when we try to locate ourselves in the infinity of space and in the eternity of Time.

Religion is mainly theistic. It asserts itself as an invisible influence, ever present, ever active, in the thoughts and actions of people. It teaches them to think in the direction prescribed by it, and in no other way. Whoever does deviate in his thoughts from the trodden path, can expect little support. This truth applies to the stock market, as will be amply illustrated later.

Another great influence is produced through the laws of Nations. These laws, made by man, influenced by their theistic religions, are in perfect harmony with the religious laws, at least, they will not be in sharp contrast. It is a well known fact that in the Middle Ages, when the Pope was ruler of our so-called civilized world, knowledge, science and invention were restrained, so as not to endanger the safety of the Church.

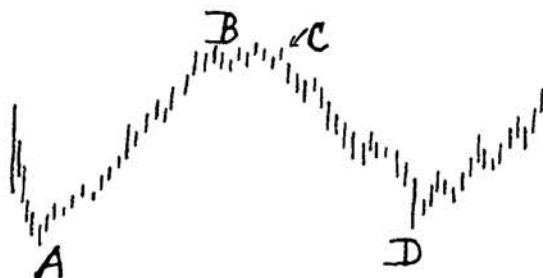
Copernicus, a famous astrologer and astronomer, announced that the earth rotated around the Sun instead of the previous view, that the Sun

rotated around the earth. This "seemingly" was contrary to the Book of Genesis and was suppressed by the Church, but in vain.

MOTIONS IN THE UNIVERSE

As was stated previously, each body or object in motion has the tendency to remain in such motion at the same rate of speed until interference forces a change. Years ago, men thought of building a machine which, once set in motion, would continue this motion indefinitely. They overlooked the fact that each motion is subject to retardation, unless an additional force is given to the object in motion, that is able to overcome the retarding forces. A swinging pendulum would swing eternally with the same speed as it started, if the resistance of the air and the friction caused at the point of suspension did not gradually nullify this live mechanical force. It constantly needs additional mechanical force, new power. Therefore, it is humanly impossible to construct a machine that could produce excess energy which would enable it to stay continuously in motion. All experiments to build such a machine, a perpetuum mobile, had to fail; the law of Substance proved the truth.

When we plot the daily or weekly motion of a single stock, we quickly recognize that similar laws are in force. The picture below shows a sketch of a daily high and low chart of a stock. At A some impetus caused an upward motion in the price of the stock. The motion gradually diminished in force, causing at B a stagnation -- traders are awaiting a new movement whose direction is unknown to them. At C a new movement begins causing a decline in prices and this decline kept up until at D "some things" made the stock turn upward again. It must be understood, that the price of a stock is caused by the desire of some person, somewhere, to want that specific stock at that specific price. It may be termed the free will decision of man. The decision originates in his mind. During sharp declines all around, a large number of people originate in their individual minds the desire to sell stocks. When the turn arrives for the upside, these same people or others want stocks



again and they buy them at their "free will" at a price others are willing to part from them. In whatever direction the "free will" of the majority moves, in that direction will the price of the stock move. However, it cannot be denied that at A, B, C and D some outside force and not the free will brings about the change in the mental attitude of the public, although invisible and insensible to them. We ultimately have to ascribe the movements of stocks to well known motions in the Universe that control the "free will" of man. Later on we will get acquainted with them and we will find means to measure them.

It is different, however, when we consider the infinite Universe being in eternal motion. The infinite matter which objectively fills the Universe, we call: space; the eternal motion of the same: time.

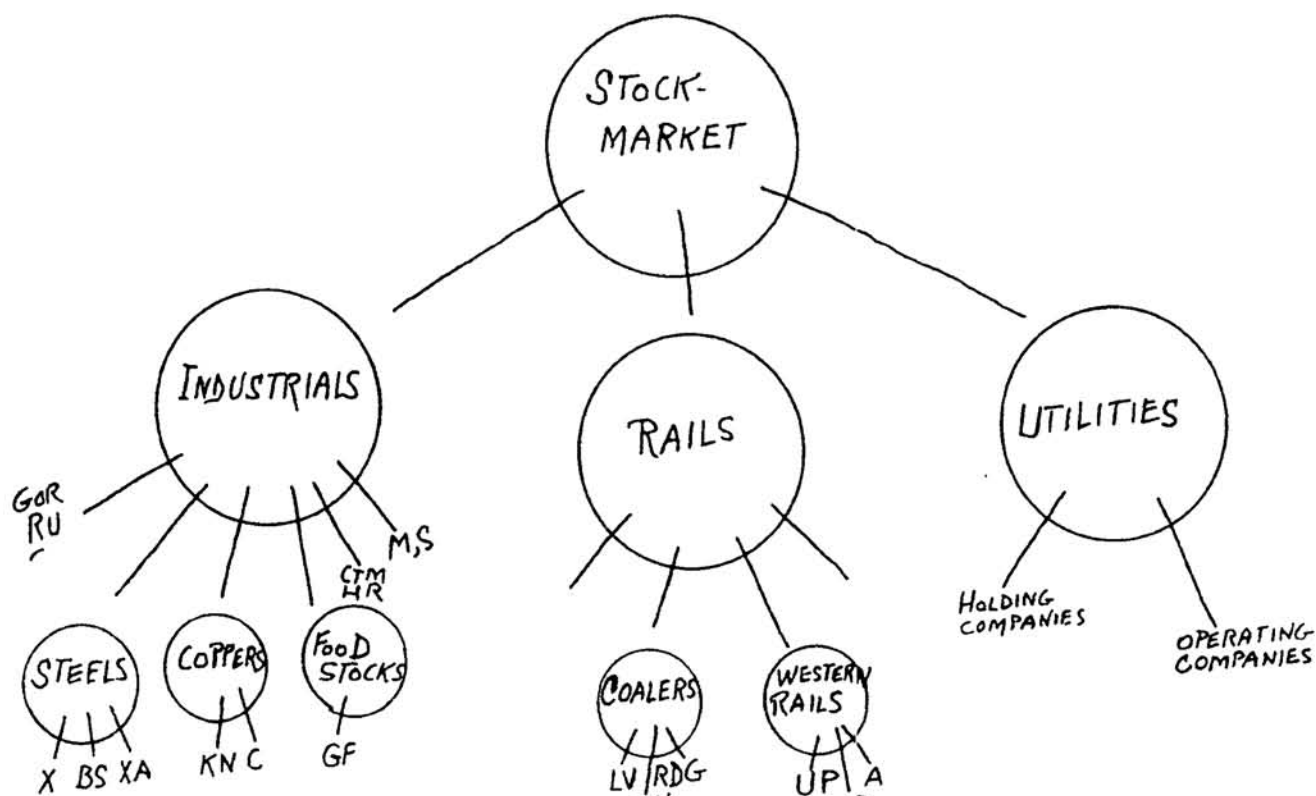
These two forms convince us of the infinity and eternity of the Universe. This includes, without further explanation, the fact that the Universe is a perpetuum mobile. This big machine feeds itself with eternal, uninterrupted motion. Each obstacle is removed by an equivalent energy, since the sum of the actual and potential energy remains eternally the same. The perpetuum mobile is only possible for the whole and not for any part of the Universe.

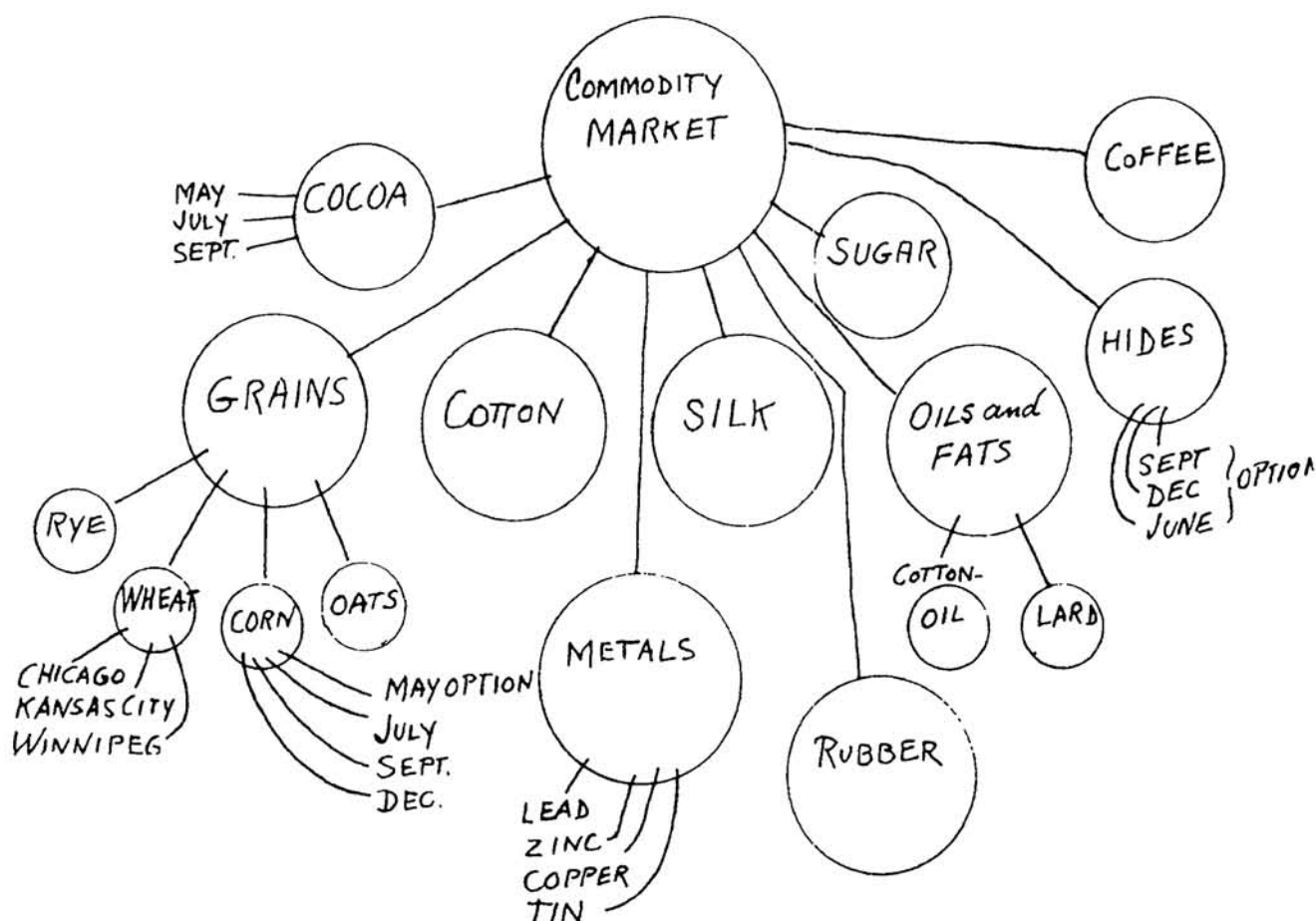
The Universe is a well arranged cosmos and all the objects therein have a purpose and a reason for their being. The causal law, together with the law of Substance prove that each being has its mechanical cause. Therefore, there is no accident in the Universe. Everything is, because it has to be.

Let us observe the heavenly bodies. We notice the circular motion or rather elliptical motions of all of them. Satellites move around planets, planets move around suns and suns move around still greater suns. An extension of the analogical chain renders it extremely probable, not to say certain, that all the secondary bodies in universal space, revolve in common around one great center, the primitive center or source of Attraction. If this is the case, then whatever particular movements the secondary bodies may have assumed from the development of forms of internal forces peculiar to themselves, are subordinated to the great central source of movement, and the forces by which they occur are only reproductions in specific and modified forms of the forces which primarily pertain to them.

The forces producing these primitive rotary and orbital motions in the Universe are the final source of all these diversified ramifications of circular or elliptical movements, which are manifested by subordinate systems, suns and planets. So the orbital and rotary motions of the planets are the more immediate parents and dependencies of still more diversified and minute systems of circular development, which include stock movements, wheat-movements, cotton movements in price as well as in volume of transactions.

Considering the stock market as a whole to represent our central sun, the three main groups, the common subdivision, Industrials, Rails and Utilities, to represent smaller suns; we finally find the individual stocks belonging to each group, such as Steels, Stores, Coppers, to represent the planets belonging to the specific sun system. The illustration below should show the relationship. It partly should also explain why during one day of trading some stocks are up others down, individually as well as in groups: they have only distant relationship to each other.





From the orbital motion of the earth, there is a continually repeated circle of thermal changes, which mark the various seasons of the year. These changes give rise to the various annual series of crops and other developments such as sickness, etc. Coincident with the changes of seasons are the periodic awakening of certain animal instincts. We also can distinguish seasonal movements in stocks as well as in commodities. The changes occurring as they do, in regular succession and always returning to the point of beginning, also typify a circle.

So, from the alternation of day and night, with their successive hours and minutes marking a diurnal circle, still more minute circles of changes ensue in the condition of organic and anorganic beings. These are the circles of wakefulness and sleep, of activity and repose, of organic replenishment and disposal of waste, with all their immediate and transitional stages, whether we apply the remark to the animal, vegetable or mineral creation, or to stocks and commodities. It may be said that each metamorphosis, that is the passage from one degree to the other, in the progress of any complete circle of unfolding, involves a circle or a system of minuter kind, until we reach the physiological function of the organism of an ephemeron, to the circuit of blood and organic deposits in the system of an anamalcule, or to the orbital and axial revolution of an atom.

The progression from origin to dissolution of any system, or to its change into another form, involves a circle. As we have seen in the previous chapter, it is equally true of the Universe, of its stellar and solar systems and individual worlds, and of the further ramifications of Creation, constituting the mineral, vegetable, and animal kingdoms, together with

their various genera, species and individual forms, respectively.

The minutest of these circles of movement and development are, in some sense, dependent upon greater circles and those, in like manner, included and dependent upon still greater circles, thus forming circles within circles, or wheels within wheels. All are included in the Great Circle which comprehends all movements and developments in the Universe, from its periphery to its center, from the whole imaginable vortex or being to a single atom of matter and from the origin to the very end of all material things. Since it has been shown that there is no beginning and no end to the Universe, merely eternal revolution, then by speaking of beginning and end, is meant a comprehensive circle.

The close of each comprehensive circle marks an era, not only in its own history, but also in the history of its included circles which are to some extent dependent upon its state for their own specific states.

As an illustration, the earth, in completing an orbital revolution, makes three hundred and sixty-five revolutions on its own axis, occasioning repetitions of the phenomenon day-night. These days and nights or circles of diurnal change, vary as to their lengths, temperature, etc., with the different stages of progress attained in the annual circle of revolution.

As another illustration, stocks or commodities move from bull markets into bear markets and from bear markets into bull markets. Within them we find the intermediate swings and again within those the minor swings, lasting from one to three weeks. We even can distinguish still smaller movements, the so-called "jiggles" encompassed in the minor swings, lasting from one hour or two to a few days.

The whole Solar System, including our earth, is swept around a great common center, which is so distant, that a single orbital revolution cannot be achieved in a period less than eighteen million years. Such a revolution would constitute a Great Year or a great Circle of our own Solar System. It is extremely probable that the progress of this revolution will be marked with changes of organic creation. The gradual alteration of the position of the Solar System in the sidereal spaces and the elemental changes consequent thereon, may of themselves be sufficient in the course of time to change the entire character of organic life upon our globe. Far greater changes and still longer periods of time may be wrought in the whole aspect of creation, physical and mental, by those inconceivably stupendous revolutions to which all of these are subordinated. It is by the combined influences of all other circles of movement and creation that each particular circle is precisely what it is; and when ever there is any change in the functional operations of any portion of the system or of any of its sub-systems, then, according to the law of sympathy, there is necessarily some co-ordinated or co-related change in all the circles of operation, included in this system, however incomprehensible to human conception that change might be.

Nature, from its most comprehensive outlines as a whole, down to its infinitesimal parts, is one compact system of co-related systems, which function harmoniously as the various, but mutually dependent parts of a most sublime and magnificent machine.. the perpetuum mobile.

Some Fundamentals of Astronomy

The most conspicuous of the celestial phenomena is a continual motion common to all heavenly bodies, by which they are carried around the earth in regular succession. The daily rotation of Sun and Moon about the earth is a fact admitted by everyone. If the heavens are attentively watched on any clear evening, it will soon be seen that the stars have a motion precisely similar to that of Sun and Moon. To describe this phenomenon in detail as witnessed at night is difficult, but we see the stars, while they retain the same position with respect to each other, undergo a continual change of position with respect to the earth. Some will be seen to ascend from a quarter called the East, being replaced by others that come into view, or rise; still others descend toward the opposite quarter, the West and are lost to sight. If our observation should be continued during the night, with the East on our left and the West on our right, the stars which rise in the East will be seen to move in parallel circles, ascending during the first half of their course and descending during the remaining half. The greatest heights of the stars will differ, but will be attained towards that part of the heaven which lies directly in front, called the South. If we turn our back to the South and direct our attention to the opposite quarter, the North, new phenomena will present themselves. Some stars will appear as before, ascending, reaching their greatest heights and descending; but other stars will be seen further to the North, that never set, and which appear to revolve in circles, from East to West, about a certain star that seems to be stationary. This seemingly stationary star is called the Pole star and the stars that revolve about it and never seem to set are termed circumpolar stars. It should be noted, however, that the Polar star, when accurately observed by means of instruments, is found not to be strictly stationary, but describe a small circle around a point a little distance from it as a fixed center. This point is called the North Pole. It is in reality about the North Pole just defined, and not the polar star that the apparent revolutions of the stars at the North are performed. At the corresponding hours of the following night, the aspect of the heaven will be the same; thus it appears that the stars return to the same position every twenty-four hours. It would seem, then, that the stars all appear to move from East to West, exactly as if attached to the concave surface of a hollow sphere, which rotates in this direction about an axis passing through the station of the observer and the North pole of the heavens in a space of time nearly equal to twenty-four hours. For the sake of simplicity, this conception is generally adopted. This motion common to all heavenly bodies is called their diurnal motion. It is ascertained by accurate methods of observation and computation that the diurnal motion of the stars is strictly uniform and circular.

Most stars constantly observe the same relative positions and are called Fixed Stars. But there are also many stars which perpetually change their places in the heaven. These are called planets or wandering stars. Each planet has received a distinctive name, as have all the fixed stars. For convenience of designation the planets are divided into two classes, Planets and Platenoids or minor planets. The former, in which we will be exclusively interested later on, when we analyse stock movements, comprise: Mercury, Venus, Mars, Jupiter, Saturn, Uranus, Neptune, Sun and Moon. The first five, including Sun and Moon are visible with the naked eye, the others, including the platenoids can only be seen with the aid of the telescope. The platenoids number over one hundred.

The apparent motion of each of the planets is generally directed towards the East; but occasionally they are seen moving towards the West. As their easterly motion prevails over the westerly, in the process of time,

they all accomplish a revolution around the earth. The periods of revolution are different for each planet. These periods, however, have no influence upon movements of stocks, except indirectly, as will be shown later.

Sun and Moon continually change their places among the stars. The Moon completes one revolution around the earth in about twenty-seven days. The revolution of the Sun around the earth consumes three hundred and sixty-five days. The path of the sun during one revolution is not directly to the East. It has a motion at the same time from South to North and from North to South, bringing about the seasonal changes of Summer and Winter. When the place of the sun is measured from day to day, it appears that its path is a circle, inclined about twenty-three degrees and fifty minutes to a circle running due East and West.

The motions of Sun, Moon and Planets are for the most part confined to a certain zone of about 18° in breadth, extending around the heavens obliquely, from West to East, which has received the name ecliptic. The ecliptic is divided into twelve imaginary parts, each one measuring thirty degrees, giving a total of three hundred sixty degrees for the whole circle. Each part has a name, called a sign of the Zodiac. The count begins at the fixed star gamma in the sign of Aries, which point is called 0° Aries. The permanent sequence of the signs of the Zodiac is as follows: Aries γ , Taurus τ , Gemini II , Cancer ♋ , Leo ♌ , Virgo ♍ , Libra ♎ , Scorpio ♏ , Sagittarius ♐ , Capricorn ♑ , Aquarius ♒ , Pisces ♓ .

There is another class of bodies called Comets or hairy stars that have a motion among the fixed stars. They appear occasionally in the heavens and continue visible for only a few weeks or months. They shine with a diffuse light and are commonly accompanied by a fainter divergent stream of similar light, called the tail. The motion of the Comets is not restricted to the Zodiac. These bodies are seen in all parts of the heavens and move in every direction.

Telescopic inspection of the Planets brings forth the fact that some are constantly attended by a greater or lesser number of small stars, whose positions vary constantly. These attendant stars are called satellites. Jupiter, Saturn, Uranus and Neptune have such satellites. Planets attended in this manner are called Primary Planets.

Sun, Moon, Planets including their satellites and the Comets compose our solar system.

From consideration of the apparent motions and other phenomena of the solar system, several theories have been found in relation to the arrangement and actual motion in space of the bodies that compose it. The theory or system now universally accepted is that which is known as the Copernican system. It is as follows: The Sun occupies a fixed center about which the planets, including the earth, revolve from West to East in planes that are slightly inclined towards each other, in the following order. Mercury, Venus, Earth, Mars, the Planets, Jupiter, Saturn, Uranus, Neptune, Pluto. The Moon revolves from West to East around the earth as center. without the Solar System, and at immense distances from it, are the Fixed Stars.

Extension of astronomic laws

The planets, being the nearest heavenly bodies to our earth, have consequently the greatest influence upon the beings of this earth. This influence comprises the sequence and events of their lives, their individual and composite actions. The science which deals with this subject is called astrology, the oldest science in the world.

Unfortunately, the "moderns" taboo this science as such. They claim it to be filled with superstition, to be mere charlatanism; they give it any kind of name just to discredit it. If these blind millions would only know that the most read book in this world, printed in any kind of language, found in any home, the Bible or Scriptures, is just merely an old astrological book! The authors of the Bible clothed the interpretations of the planets' motions into stories that could be believed by anyone, King or pauper, learned professors and little colored boys of the South. They believe it to be true, but they don't understand it, neither one of them. These "wise men" are even supplied with printed maps of the Countries mentioned in the Bible for their deep study. If they would, instead construe these places as being parts of the division of the Zodiac around us, they would get to understand what is meant in the Bible, of which, every word is true.

Practically all the laws and methods brought later are exclusively based on the astrological laws as shown in the Bible and applied to our special analysis of calculating stock and commodity movements.

As the planets move in ellipses, closely resembling a circle, which of course, is also an ellipse, we may assume that human beings are also planets of infinitesimal small size, even though restricted in their movements to the earth. Therefore they also move in ellipses as their lives roll off, influenced in their motions by planets. It is a well known fact that planets also are disturbed in their motions by others, called perturbations or inequalities. Astrological studies actually show that lives of human beings, of animals, of business undertakings, the prices of stocks, bonds, wheat, cotton etc. all move in ellipses.

We will dwell at length on this subject in one of the methods which teaches how to measure price movements with the aid of fixed ellipses.

The Stock Market, One of the minute wheels of the Universe

Progress is the main thought with all of us. Hard work will produce results. Persistent work will increase the percentage remarkably. Most businesses are started in a small way and expanded, at times with great speed, into nationally known concerns. A good example is Henry Ford's enterprise. The answer to such occasional rapid advance, i.e. the cause, is to be sought in timely opportunity and knowledge. Opportunity represents the time factor of the enterprise, more or less. It is the subconscious feeling that urges a start at the right time. A straw hat sale for Christmas in Brooklyn would not be the right time to produce results. But to start a business whose products are actually going to be in big demand, without the realisation of other people until too late, is grasping an opportunity. Knowledge, of course, is a great asset in any business. It helps you to buy the right kind of merchandise, it regulates the amount that can be sold within a fixed time, and it produces a fair selling price. A baker would rarely succeed, if he opened a drugstore. His knowledge would not be applicable in this field of endeavor. Success would be lacking, no matter how hard he worked because his theoretical and practical knowledge of that specific business would be at fault.

Knowledge as we wish to express it, is the art of knowing when to buy and what to buy, when to sell that which was bought at a profit.

To buy correctly you must first acquire a knowledge of values. The knowledge of buying is much harder than the knowledge of selling. "Caveat emptor", let the buyer beware, said the Romans. It is entirely upon you to judge value. The one who sells, undoubtedly brings forth all the good points of the merchandise. You are inveiled through empty talk to buy a pig in the

Your own knowledge about market movements is for specific reasons not reliable nor safe, at least up to now, you will sadly admit. Therefore, until the time you have mastered the methods to measure movements, do not rely on it, do not rely on your hunches, on your feeling as far as the market is concerned!

Last, but not least, do not listen to tips, inside information, gossip. They are either of no value whatever, or they are given to you so as to confuse.

The only way to make money in stocks or commodities rests upon cold calculations of planetary movements which cause people to like them or not to like them, determining that "TIME".

You probably have friends of whom you are very fond. Nevertheless, there will be times when they get "on your nerve", when you rather wish them to be on the Moon. They may shower you with caresses, do anything in the world for you.. just at that time, however, your heart is not set for such favors. Irritation may cause you to be rude to them. Should you try to get rid of this strange feeling, it may not be possible. Such conditions are simply temporary cross vibrations between two tiny, weeny planets, yourself and the other party. The man who knows that laws exist to make you behave that way, will simply leave you alone, until this condition has remedied itself in the course of time. The great German poet Goethe expressed this idea in the following verse:

"Wie an dem Tag, der Dich der Welt verliehen,
Die Sonne stand zum Grusse der Planeten,
Bist alsobald und fort gediehen
Nach dem Gesetz, wonach du angetreten.
So musst du sein, dir kannst du nicht entfliehen,
So sagten schon Sybillen, so Propheten;
Und keine Zeit und keine macht zerstueckelt
Gepraegte Form, die lebend sich entwickelt."

Wolfgang von Goethe

Translated into English this means: As the Sun was placed in the sky greeting her planets, the day that brought you into this world, you began to grow and thrive according to the laws which caused your life to start. That way you must be; you cannot escape yourself. Sybils and prophets revealed this long ago. And no time and no power is able to destroy such engraved form which develops while living.

Depending upon the positions of the Sun and of the various planets each life makes the start; men, animals, stocks, commodities, corporations, ideas, everything "under the Sun" is governed by this law.

If the position of Sun and planets is favorable, the entire life in question will be a string of successes with very few interruptions. The few "lucky" traders, who need no charts, no calculations, belong to this group. Such favorable conditions rarely occur and we are compelled to ignore them and consider others. All living beings have their ups and downs constantly, luck and misfortune, health and sickness, some more pronounced than others, but changing from day to day, from week to week and month to month.

When we read chapter 3 of Ecclesiastes we find the same idea brought forth: Ecclesiastes, chapter 3

verse 1: To every thing there is a season, and a time for every purpose under the heaven:

verse 2: A time to be born, and a time to die; a time to plant, and a time to pluck up that which is planted;

verse 3: A time to kill and a time to heal; a time to break down, and a time to build up;

verse 4: A time to weep, and a time to laugh; a time to mourn and a time to dance;

- verse 5: A time to cast away stones, and a time to gather stones together; a time to embrace, and a time to refrain from embracing;
 verse 6: A time to GET and a time to LOSE; a time to KEEP, and a time to cast away;
 verse 7: A time to rend and a time to sew; a time to keep silence, and a time to speak;
 verse 8: A time to love, and a time to hate; a time of war and a time of peace.

Counting these various times as given in this chapter we find them to be just twenty-eight different times. There is a definite cause of distinguishing 28 times and not 26 or 21 times. But this belongs into another field and must be passed over.

Among the "every thing", we must include all the stocks traded on the Exchange, all the various commodities, such as hides, silk, cotton, foreign exchange, rubber, rye, flax-seed, wheat, etc. In fact they represent the very best picture of such ups and downs, of such time cycles, which we may call vibrations. You can see the big major changes, health and sickness, called bull and bear markets; you can see the smaller swings advances and reactions within these major periods; you can see the very small moves of eighths and quarters joining one another, causing occasional irritations and happiness. These produce cycles within cycles. The same conditions actually occur in all things, including human beings, the ones we are most interested in. These vibrations are the inner voice which causes the buying and selling of stocks. It may be compared to falling in love with a stock, or taking the other extreme, of hating it. This inner force simply pushes a certain number of people into such sensations, enough to bring the stock to the intended price level.

Many a man picks a mate that never would have been your choice. You simply cannot understand how such a nice, good looking... etc., normal and sensible man could do it. Nothing is easier to understand than this. The vibrations of these two people (the infinitesimal small planets), were at that time moment in complete harmony with each other. Psychological or physiological conditions, financial conditions, standing in society or any such minor differences between them, do not change the vibrations at all. Divorces and separations, also murders are caused by those opposite vibrations, the disharmonic forces, whereby love will gradually, sometimes suddenly turn to hate.

Human beings, looking for causes and reasons, are short sighted; they delve into things nearest and closest to their minds, while the real cause is so great and so vast that its very size makes it actually invisible.

Some people will understand these teachings; many will not. Their vibrations cross. Therefore they will understand this line of thought as little as they can grasp the idea of a handsome man marrying a homely maid. In the market, they will continue trading just as they always did. They will lose their money the same way as they have lost it. Their vibrations will cross the vibrations of the market for ever and they will not try to rectify or adjust or follow the market's vibrations partially by eliminating their own. They are to stay in the 18th vibration of Ecclesiastes.

The one who will benefit will be the one who realises that he is not one of the "lucky" men, whose vibrations are similar to that of the market. He knows from experience that his vibrations cross those of the market more or less. He knows or begins to understand that he was born that way and therefore cannot escape this condition. To circumvent this difficulty, he will try to measure the market's vibrations in a scientific way and eliminate his own vibrations as much as possible, i.e. his opinions. Such measurement is possible and can be done. Once these vibrations are calculated and plotted, the only thing that remains to be done is to

buy stocks when the market's vibrations indicate a positive action and sell stocks when they indicate a negative action. This sounds very easy, provided you have a point of beginning.

We have established the fact that stocks are subject to vibrations brought about through planetary motions, which are calculable; therefore the time of events when due can be ascertained before-hand and the Scriptures corroborate this fact. They even tell you of repeating cycles of long duration: Ecclesiastes, chapter I, verse 10 says: "Is there anything whereof it may be said, See, this is new? it hath been already of old time, which was before us".

Doubtless you will now grasp that the "They" constantly met with are a myth and that pools have no influence upon markets. When pools or groups of men strike the market right you hear all about it. You never hear about those that lose.

Do you know how radio waves pass from New York to Chicago? You cannot feel these waves or vibrations. They travel unnoticed. Similar vibrations come to us from distant planets and it is those vibrations that influence everything on this earth.

Tests concerning the development of the Universe show seemingly, that there exists no aim, no special purpose in the sense of human reasoning. There is one possibility: everything seems to be left to chance. One group though, maintains according to their teleological conception that the entire Universe is an orderly cosmos and everything has its aim and purpose; therefore, there is no accident. Still another group, according to their mechanical conception says: The development of the Universe is a simple, mechanical process, in which we discover neither aim nor purpose; what we call organic life is caused by biological conditions. Herein, everything is accident.

Applying these ideas to the market, the generalisation includes all the gamblers and most of the board room traders. They take a chance. There is no aim or special purpose in the market according to their way of reasoning; the market is simply a place to buy raffles.

The group holding to the mechanical conception presents the public as a whole. They feel as if the market was more or less a mechanical gambling device, with or without merit, a regular maze of abbreviations and numbers, where, once in the machine can never be escaped without loss. This idea is held before them so long and so convincingly, that sooner or later, they take a chance; finally they try it and get hooked, swallowing hook, line and sinker.

The group using the teleological conception are the students of market movements, the big traders and successful operators. They know, even if they do not have the actual key to the movements, that the market moves with a specific aim and for a specific purpose; that after a rise, there must be a reaction; that time is the most important factor in the movements; that laws unknown to them are the underlying cause resulting in moves and fluctuations, volume, tops and bottoms. They know it is not due to accident or chance.

Teleological conception is the right conception and it can be proven by checking the one hundred and forty-four years of stock movements. According to science, it is evidently neither an organic, nor an anorganic body. To me, it is the most perfect organic body; it is subject to health and sickness, happiness and sorrow. The movements of the market, can be traced in its emotions so much better and its response to planetary influences during the one hundred and forty-four years record of the palpitations of its heart is uncanny.

This is impossible with human beings. First of all their span of life is short. Secondly, to individuals, life does not seem to be important enough to keep a daily record, and only big events are recalled by

them, uncertain enough as to the date of the event, so as to be without value for exact work. I have asked hundreds of people the question: when were you born? A few do not even know the exact day of this event, most of them do not even know ever having heard about the time of their arrival, whether it was morning, noon or night, not to mention the exact hour, minute or second. A few seem to be able to give the hour, but the slightest cross examination as to the source of that information makes them shaky, so that it could have been morning or evening, a small matter of twelve hours. With stocks it is different! Great care is taken to note their admission to the big board. The day of the event is published and the time is ten o'clock sharp. Whether they were traded at ten sharp is immaterial; they could have been traded from ten o'clock on, if the planetary constellations required their trading at such a time.

Stocks are traded fully twenty-four hours a day. This includes Sundays and holidays, even though actual transactions only can occur between the hours ten and three on week days. Gaps in the market prove this contention. After the market closes one day a bad aspect between two planets may appear.** This aspect operates all night and by ten o'clock the next morning, the market opens with a gap downward, leaving a space between the trading of the previous day and the opening the day following. If such bad aspect takes place during trading hours, it is called a sharp sell-off. The same, of course, applies to the other side, when a good aspect arrives in the picture.

Let us see now for a moment what is necessary to be a competent doctor of medicine? A thorough study of the normal, healthy body and the study of the normal functions of the parts that constitute this body. This is one part of the requirements. The other necessitates the study of the human body in a sick condition, concentrating especially on those parts which are affected by the disease. A doctor has many advantages in diagnosing symptoms. A healthy person seldom will come to him. As for the sick, they will relate their pains to him, usually pointing to the very center of the ailment. They will supply him with all sorts of information, the time when such ailment started and the kind of pain felt. After carefully analysing the various symptoms, he recalls similar cases and finally concludes what the sickness is. He will prescribe known chemical compounds, herbs or pills, which have proven beneficial for the body in their proper proportions to remedy the situation.

Let us proceed to investigate the method the doctor of the stock market has to pursue, the careful trader and operator. The patient "market" does not talk; he does not give any hints that something ails him or, if so, what ails him. He shows no symptoms; on the contrary, he is the picture of health just before a sinking spell occurs, and is dead-ly sick, just at the time he is ready for a big rise. Data or hints cannot be had. Profits can only be made in the market anticipating its sickness and its health quite some time before their inception.

With the methods to be explained shortly you should be able to define such periods in a positive way a long time before they happen. Pills or medicines will never cure our patient "market" once it suffers an attack. It will have to cure itself, which only a good aspect from the planets can bring about.

** Aspects in this sense mean certain specific angular positions formed between two planets, using the earth as the center of the angle.

Such procedure may be termed passive resistance. The active resistance is somewhat different. Most of these people are egotistic. They give their advice to show off what they know, at least what they think they know. Haughtiness, vanity and envy are some of their negative virtues. To beat them at their own game, just remember that they only think of themselves. Every words they say is capital I. Every word you say is applied to their own welfare, their ego; the slightest hint is construed to suit them. They look at everything in a subjective way. They cannot look at things objectively, i.e. in an objective way. Therefore, they do not allow opposition to work against their vanity, against their own interests. They are easily hurt and offended, so that you must be careful when you talk about the market, as you see it; you might hurt their tender ego; they might be long of the market, while your calculations point downward. They could even accuse you of causing their losses, as your devilish interference with the market's movement would surely get the blame for it. They do not worry about you. They do not seek true facts, for they may prove damaging.

There are many such creatures around brokers offices. They are friendly; suddenly, one day, for no apparent reason as far as you know, they no longer speak to you; they evade you. You must have inadvertently stepped on their tender ego and they consider you from then on their enemy. Their will is powerful, their brains small; their little spark of intelligence is under the yoke of their will, from which it is unable to detach itself.

Nothing flatters a man more than the thought and belief that he does something of his own free will. It is unbelievable to him that something else pre-destined his actions and that he could not have acted any other way. People believe in man the master, instead of man the mastered.

How else could it be possible to predict market movements correctly? If people could act according to their own will, there would be no market. A few moguls would have driven stock prices to ten and twenty thousand dollars a share, so as to concentrate all the power under their control. In September 1929 I predicted we would return to the 1921 prices; we went much further than that. In an advice written December 12th, 1933 I stated the market would drop til December 21st, a change would take place then and the market would rise until December 30th, 1933 and that prices would return to the present levels, with a few stocks even higher. This prediction was not guess work, but the product of timing planetary movements as they influence the great will power of great men. Actions of large and small traders are zero compared to these unseen rays.

It is very hard for a man, brought up and educated under materialistic ideas to conceive that bodies, such as planets can influence men animals, plants, minerals and the stock market. These materialists cannot believe that unseen forces are at work; they only believe the concrete. It simply means: kindly change your view! We live in a world of rays, and auras.

Everything that exists issues forces. What sort of forces? Sun energy nothing less! It is the energy of the Sun that permeates all space belonging to this system. Every particle within this system is saturated with solar energy. It consist of electricity and magnetism, two opposing forces, power against resistance, attraction against repulsion, creating unbroken motions, swings, vibrations. Since the Sun sends forth energy constantly, attraction and repulsion of every atom must take place. In this way, the Sun is our electro-magnet, our giver of life, without which nothing would be possible.

The faster the vibrations within a body of any description, the warmer this body will be, since its motion or vibration produces heat. Everything is alive; what we call death, equalling definite destruction, cannot

be found in this world. All is change, revolution, return, evolution. Everything moves within a prescribed rythm. The best example is found in the motion of our planets.

We find life in the hardest, seemingly most lifeless bodies. Just take an iron bar. it is hard, cold, seemingly lifeless to the casual materialist. When heated sufficiently, we find there is life in it. The cold, slow vibrations of its atoms and molecules get into faster motion. The opposite energies, attraction and repulsion, expressing themselves, become faster. Life runs quicker. The atoms look for room, expand, the iron bar becomes softer, the more we subject it to heat. We finally get a hot, sizzling, sparkling, drizzling mass, alive all over. As it cools off again, the vibrations become smaller, less heat is radiated, dying away until it takes its normal, Nature's prescribed vibration, the one intended for each substance, but, remember, still vibrating, alive and only dead to the materialist, a cold iron bar.

This very same law is found to be true for any stock or any commodity and we may substitute the stock for iron bar and repeat the story.

Minerals act the same way; plants show it more readily. The leaves fold up to prevent evaporation, the flowers close at night to sleep. They turn their pretty heads with the Sun. With animals, you can observe these vibrations vividly; plant eating animals have slow vibrations, while carnivorous beasts have strong vibrations. Stock vibrations are only too well known for the queer vibrations. At times the market is as gentle as a lamb. The ticker lulls all the board room traders to sleep, while at other times, it acts like a wild, feroceous lion, upsetting not only traders, but the whole country, from SEC to the bootblack. This is Sun energy, my friends, nothing else! Let any one of your statistical specialists tell you it is the favorable dividend action, decided upon by directors of a corporation. What a poor, lapid excuse for the true, wonderful cause...

The energy of the Sun penetrates everything. As each body is different, it will assimilate this solar energy in a different way and in varied degrees according to its inherent ability. Each body in space is subject to a constant attraction and repulsion, which shows that cosmic even atmospheric changes, will also cause changes in these bodies. You can notice it in sensitive people best. The slightest change in cosmos will make them change and the market is the best barometer for such cosmic changes, expressing human reaction.

As each body receives Sun energy, this same body must, according to the law of attraction and repulsion also radiate such energy in turn, only in modified form; the body will mix the received energy with its own radiation and radiate this mixture to its surroundings. This energy has been, so to say, revamped. An excellent example is seen in the scent of flowers, transformed Sun energy. Each flower ejects fine scent that is peculiarly its own, to a limited surrounding. it is called the aura of the flower. Human beings, also exercise such influences, possess such auras and spread them upon their surroundings, sympathetic or antipathetic. In fact, certain people have tremendous influence, good or bad, angelic or demonic.

How much more energy must be allotted to planets, which are permeated with sun energy and how much stronger must they act upon their surroundings! The distance of the planets cause no interference, for these cosmic rays travel with lightening speed. Their activity reaches into infinite space, unites with energies coming from neighboring bodies creating a mixture of force which strikes the earth.

As the planets constantly change their positions in the heaven from moment to moment, these combined cosmic forces will necessarily change the force contents, the mixtures of the rays in the same proportion as they approach or depart from each other, causing changes proportionately. Not all people are equally subject to these cosmic rays, but they are individually influenced according to their own organism. So it is with stocks. Each body will constantly react to cosmic influences in proportion to its physical body's original energy. This energy, in turn, depends upon the moment of birth, the coming to life, because such body must be in absolute agreement with the then present proportions of energies disseminated throughout the Universe.

If a person or a stock is born at the moment when Mars is in square aspect to Jupiter, i.e. they are then 90° apart, then each and every time these two planets obtain a similar position in the heaven, his body will feel this and produce highly increased vibrations. These vibrations will always act and express themselves equally and will be of a nature that is peculiar to Mars and Jupiter in such aspect.

Experiments made during the ascent of Prof. Piccard and others into the stratosphere have definitely proven that cosmic rays, whether coming from planets or from fixed stars, act day and night and are of such intensity, that they are able to penetrate a solid mass of lead, one hundred feet deep, or a mass of water, fifteen hundred feet deep. We have absolutely no protection against them. Every atom is penetrated by these rays, by these vibrations.

The actual operation of these rays in reference to market movements should now be clear. We must bear in mind that the quality of rays differs. At times combination rays are evil in effect, at other times they are beneficial. Supposing an evil ray is acting upon the earth. This same moment everyone upon this earth will be influenced by it. A scare will commence and the public will sell stocks as fast as possible, causing a decline. On the other hand, when a beneficial ray is forthcoming, the public sees everything in a rosy hue; they start buying stocks with price no object. Such conditions produce, if a string of such rays develop, a prolonged bull market.

Fortunately, these rays change from good to evil in fairly equal proportions, which results in normal markets most of the time. Some of these rays are weak, others strong. The weak good rays will cause small rallies, the strong ones sharp advances. The opposite is true of the evil rays. Weak evil rays cause minor declines, while strong ones a break.

Due to the fact that the rays alternate and vary in intensity, there is no definite saying when a major move is over. If we have the sequences correct, we can safely sell all stocks just at the time a bad ray is due and buy them back when a good one makes its appearance.

The price of a stock is not important. It is the time that counts.

end of part I

Part II

Methods, based on planetary motions to forecast stock movements
and those of the various commodities

Method #1

When we get down to actual studies of the Bible and not to mere reading, we notice that we find numbers, such as seven, twelve, forty, seventy repeating so often that their meaning cannot possibly be what we understand to-day as seven, twelve, forty, seventy. My work on this subject has revealed that the meaning is degrees of a circle, so that when Mose remained forty days on the mount Sinai, we have to understand: Jupiter moved forward forty degrees in the heaven. Astronomical calculations show that Jupiter in its path as seen from our planet earth just about requires one year of our time to pass an arc of forty degrees in the Zodiac.

In Revelation as well as in Daniel we find quotations of: Time and times and half a time.

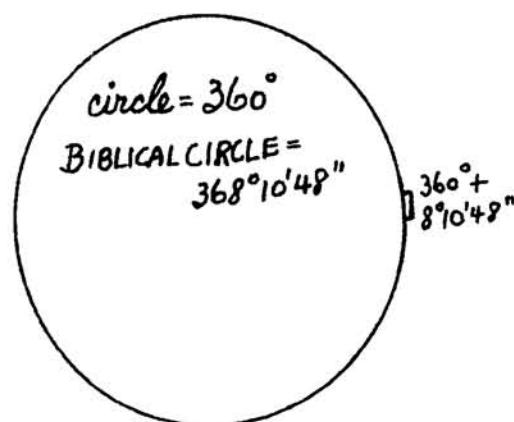
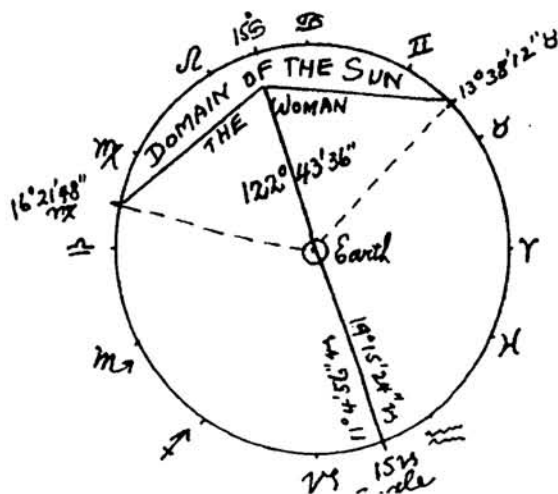
Revelation 12:14: "And the woman were given two wings of a great eagle, that she might fly into the wilderness, into her place where she is nourished for a time, and times, and half a time, from the face of the serpent."

This event tells us that ^{at} the time it was winter. The eagle of the Bible always means the zodiacal sign of Capricorn. The woman in this case represents the Sun, whose home is in the sign of Leo. She flew into the wilderness, her place. The wilderness of the Bible means the sign of Leo. She was nourished in her place for a time and times and half a time, the value of which counts to one hundred and twenty-two and one half. In as much as the biblical circle is not three hundred and sixty degrees in length, but extends to $368^{\circ}10'48''$.0, bringing about an overlap of $8^{\circ}10'48''$.0 per circle, we find that the woman stayed up in the wilderness just one third time of a complete circle. The division of the Sun's domain has 15° Cancer as its center, extending on both sides from that point $61^{\circ}21'48''$.0. Therefore, the actual beginning of its domain is at $13^{\circ}38'12''$ of the sign of Taurus and the end at $16^{\circ}21'48''$ in the sign of Virgo. Jupiter and Saturn dominate the other two portions.

Most of the readers are apt to say: what has this to do with the market? The answer is: Therein, lies the time factor of the price movements for stocks and for wheat and for the other commodities.

Even to those who have studied astrology from text books must be greatly surprised about the above statement, because no text book brings anything about it. The text books use the circle of 360° which is not the one the prophets used when they predicted events.

Analysing further, we find the unit of: Time and two times and half a time, to be 35. 1 time is 35, 2 times is 70 and half a time is $17\frac{1}{2}$. Adding gives us $122\frac{1}{2}$.



37

The accurate figures reveal: $1/3$ of the circle equals $122^{\circ}43'36''$.
 $2\frac{1}{2}$ times representing $122^{\circ}43'36''$ or 1 time equalling $35^{\circ}3'53''$.

Law: The number 35 (actually $35^{\circ}3'53''$), the eighth parts thereof as well as the multiples of same constitute the basis for distance movements in stocks and wheat.

This law applies for the major as well as for the minor movements of individual stocks. Therefore stocks move:

$1/8$ part of 35 points	or $4\frac{3}{8}$ points	(low priced stocks)
$1/4$ part of 35 points	or $8\frac{3}{4}$ points	(medium priced stocks)
$3/8$ parts of 35 pts	or $13\frac{1}{8}$ points	(especially wheat)
$1/2$ part of 35 points	or $17\frac{1}{2}$ points	(medium priced stocks)
$5/8$ part of 35 points	or $21\frac{7}{8}$ points	(usually resistance point)
$3/4$ part of 35 points	or $26\frac{1}{4}$ points	(usually resistance point)
$7/8$ part of 35 points	or $30\frac{5}{8}$ points	(seldom used)
1 time	35 points	or 35 points (high priced stocks)
2 times	35 points	or 70 points (large swings)
$2\frac{1}{2}$ times	35 points	or $122\frac{1}{2}$ points (major resistance)

Selecting the most important distances of this sequence, we find that normal movements of stocks extend $8\frac{3}{8}$ points, $17\frac{1}{2}$ points and 35 points, while for wheat important distances travelled are $13\frac{1}{8}$ and $30\frac{5}{8}$; the latter is seldom used. All other distances, such as $21\frac{7}{8}$ and $26\frac{1}{4}$ represent temporary resistance levels, from which, as a rule, a movement in the opposite direction begins; when such counter move is completed, the original trend is resumed once more, ending at the major resistance point.

This sequence should be used only to figure distance i.e. price or the number of points in dollars a stock travels before a turn is due to come. In other words, the measurement between a top and a bottom or between a bottom and the next important top. This measurement is also used for gaps; in this case you measure from them up or down, just as if there had been a top or a bottom. These values will not show how many days a movement will last in one direction, or the number of days consumed from a bottom to a top or from a top to a bottom.

The following time spaces are of great importance, at the termination of which you can expect a change of trend. The count is done in calendar days and not in trading days:

$3\frac{1}{2}$ days	$3\frac{1}{2}$ weeks	$3\frac{1}{2}$ months	$3\frac{1}{2}$ years
7	7	7	7
29	29	29	29
35			
70			

There are variations possible, but they should be ignored entirely for practical application.

Of these cycles, the 29 days and the $3\frac{1}{2}$ weeks cycles are very close together, while the latter usually brings about stagnation into a movement that began $3\frac{1}{2}$ week prior, the former as a rule produces the actual change of trend.

These two cycles and the seventy days cycle are of the greatest importance.

The point of beginning for major moves is always at the top of a bull movement or at the bottom of a bear movement. The dates which are due to produce changes can be plotted in advance on the charts. The point of beginning for secondary movements is always the day a major reaction ends or a major rally ends. It is not advisable to chart any tertiary cycles, such as $3\frac{1}{2}$ or 7 days movements; they will only confuse the important movements.

should be either $76 \frac{1}{8}$ or $71\frac{1}{2}$. The last price is not very suitable in as much as we arrive at a much higher price when figuring from the previous gap.

There was a fourth gap made between $66\frac{1}{2}$ and $66\frac{3}{4}$; the stock had therefore to make an additional $8\frac{1}{2}$ points from $66\frac{1}{2}$, eliminating definitely the possibility of a further $13 \frac{1}{8}$ points advance. The point $75\frac{1}{2}$ should be the top. The actual price reached by Vanadium was $76\frac{3}{4}$, coming originally from $45 \frac{1}{8}$. It rose nearly thirty-five points. A method explained later showed it exactly took in a full large ellipse ($6''$).

Gaps upward after we had a bear market and gaps downward after we had a bull market, will not be closed for years at times. But it is absolutely necessary to know at what prices these gaps are located, since nature as a whole and stocks or commodities in particular abhor unfilled spaces. Nature grows grass and weeds quickly over a ploughed field. A stock that may sell to-day at a price of 5 or 6 dollars had declined from 175. On its way to lower levels it left a gap open at 144, another at $106\frac{1}{2}$, the latter being two points in length. Now, whenever this stock reaches again the nineties, whether your calculations, time factor, volume or other indices show a top to be due at $102\frac{1}{2}$, nature will ignore these minor laws and use one of its major laws. Nature will force traders to buy this stock clear up to $106\frac{1}{2}$, possibly 107 and you ought to see them like that stock between $102\frac{1}{2}$ and 107. Nothing can be done against that. Such a movement might throw you all out of balance; it might make you bullish right near a top unless you knew of this open gap made four or five years previous. In 1932, UAF and in 1933 CLZ made such gaps on the way upward each one at $16 \frac{7}{8}$. The size of this gap in both cases was very tiny; one eighth of a point, hardly worth while bothering with it. UAF went from that gap upward $17\frac{1}{2}$ points with big bullish sentiment that UAF surely was heading straight for 75 right here. It turned down and closed this tiny opening. CLZ, after making that tiny gap at $16 \frac{7}{8}$ went up to 59 or thereabouts, but immediately after that top was passed I predicted (easy?) that the next bottom would be $16 \frac{1}{2}$ and you just check back and find that it made just that in 1934. This stock has only been able to recover $17\frac{1}{2}$ points and has held in a sidewise movement below that level ever since. When it jumps the $17\frac{1}{2}$ point level once with a gap upward, you can expect "fireworks".

In the case of Vanadium, it might be interesting to note that just at the time the top was made in our example, the corporation issued convertible bonds for a large amount. This gave statisticians and newspapers a good talking point for its dropping $71\frac{1}{2}$ thereafter... in actual points. It went down to 5.

A strong move which most always starts with a gap, is most rapid at its inception. This is the cause for its quick advance in the beginning and not returning to close the gap. Its speed slows down somewhat around the middle of the move, but increases in speed again when it nears the end, which finally causes the exhaustion gap.

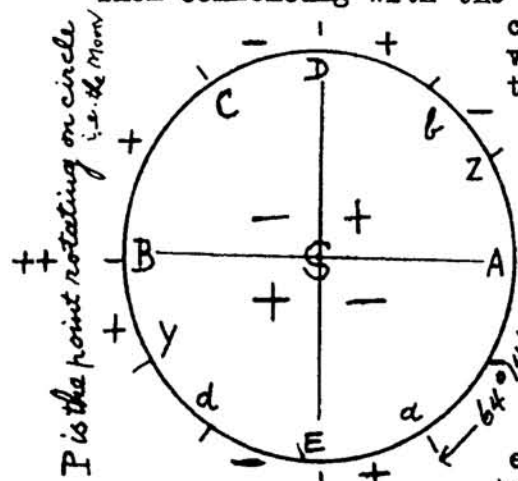
Sir John F.W. Herschel, in his book "Outlines of Astronomy", when explaining the variation of the Moon's eccentricity tells us in articles 688 and 689: Let us proceed to investigate the influence of the disturbing forces so resolved on the eccentricity of the lunar orbit, and the foregoing articles having sufficiently familiarized the reader with our mode of following out the changes in different situations of the orbit, we shall take at once a more general situation, and suppose the line of apses in any position with respect to the Sun, such as ZY, the perigee being at Z, a point between the lower syzygy and the quadrature next following it, the direction of P's motion as all along supposed being ADBE.

Then commencing with the normal force, the momentary change of excentricity will vanish at a,b,c,d, by the vanishing of that force, and at Z and Y be the effect of situation in the orbit annulling its action. In the arcs Zb and Yd therefore the change of excentricity will be small, the acting force nowhere attaining either great magnitude or an advantageous situation within their limits. And the force within these two arcs having the same character as to inward and outward, but being oppositely influential by reason of the approach of P to S in one of them and its recess in the other, it is evident that, so far as these arcs are concerned, a very near compensation of effects will take place, and though the apogee arc Yd will be somewhat more influential, this will tell for little upon the average of a revolution.

The arcs bDe and dEa are each much less than a quadrant in extent, and the force acting inwards throughout them, which at its maximum in D and E is only half the outward force at B,A, degrades very rapidly in intensity towards either syzygy. Hence whether Z be between b or BA, the effects of the force in these arcs will not produce very extensive changes on the excentricity, and the changes which it does produce will be opposed to each other. Although then, the arc ad be further from the perigee than be, and therefore the force in it is greater, yet the predominance of effect here will not be very marked, and will moreover be partially neutralized by the small predominance of an opposite character in Yd over Zb. On the other hand, the arcs aZ, cY are both larger in extent than either of the others, and the seats of action of forces double powerful. Their influence, therefore, will be most important and their preponderance, one over the other, being opposite in their tendencies, will decide the question whether, on an average of the revolution, the excentricity shall increase or diminish. It is clear that the decision must be in favor of cY, the apogee arc, and, since in this the force is outwards and the moon receding from the earth, an increase of the excentricity will arise from its influence. A similar reasoning will, evidently, lead to the same conclusion were the apogee and perigee to change places, for the directions of P's motion as to approach and recess to S will be indeed reversed, but at the same time the dominant forces will have changed sides, and the arc aAZ will now give the character to the result. But when Z lies between A and E, as the reader may easily satisfy himself, the case will be altogether different, and the reverse conclusion will obtain. Hence the changes of excentricity emergent on the average of single revolutions from the action of the normal force will be as represented by the signs ^{plus} and minus as shown in the figure."

Without going into further details, read verse 29 of chapter II of the Book of Revelation, the last book of the Bible. It says there: "He that hath an ear, let him hear what the Spirit saith unto the Churches"....

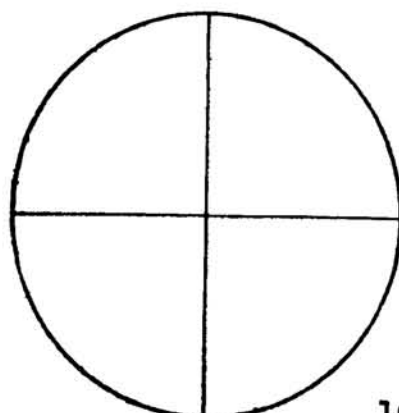
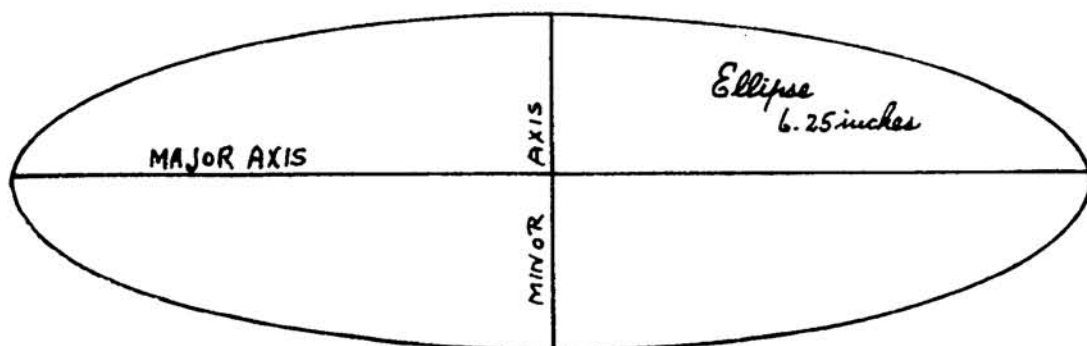
So far, your biggest and insurmountable difficulty to understand movements of stocks or commodities was found in the point of beginning. Once these points are located, the stock will do just what you expect it to do, provided you make no misinterpretation in your calculations. You can rest assured that each stock knows where it has to go and the exact eighth where it has to come to a stop. Stocks require no time



Method #2

The further we proceed the more difficult the work becomes, the more you will find that without proper foundation, i.e. without understanding fully everything that was explained previously, it becomes like the book of Friedrich Nietzsche: "Also sprach Zarathustra", incomprehensible. From here we will drop all the minor expressions and terms used in trading and use technical language only.

The original idea of the present method, called the circle method, was discovered with the aid of planetary movements. We know that the planets rotate through space in paths that form ellipses which, however, closely resemble circles. A circle is also an ellipse, the major and minor axis simply being equal. Therefore, in our present method, we



consider the planets' ellipses as being circles. The circle contains 360° as commonly used. Dividing the circle in four equal parts or quadrants, we find each one must be 90° in length. The first one extends for 0° to 90°, the second one from 90° to 180°, the third one from 180° to 270°, the fourth one from 270° to 360°, a value which again equals 0°.

In our special cycle chart we find each quadrant divided into six equal parts of 15° each. One arc of 15° is taken to be a minor house and the arc adjoining, 30° in length we call a major house. We find these minor and major houses placed alternately around the circle. The zero point, or point of beginning starts the second half of a major house, extending from 0° to 15°, followed by a minor house, extending from 15° to 30°. This is followed by a major house, reaching from 30° to 60°, followed by a minor house, etc.

Each 15° arc is again divided into four equal parts, producing a unit of 3 3/8°. The final and last division cuts each such unit into half, producing the smallest division of the quadrant, 1 7/8°.

Each degree of the circle we call one point or one dollar for our purpose of measuring movements of stock prices.

In each house, whether major or minor, the center or mid-point must be defined. In this manner, the minor house, extending from 60 to 75 has its mid-point or center at 67 1/2; the major house, extending from 75 to 105 has its mid-point or center at 90.

As stocks move in an imaginary way up and down besides the periphery of the circle, they swing back and forth like a pendulum. The pendulum of a hall clock has its center or dead point in the middle of its two extremes. Stocks have their dead point in the middle of the range in which

they trade. In order that we may have a measure where they swing at special moments, we must consider the center of each house as being the dead point of their swinging area. The other important points of the pendulum are the extreme points from whence a forward movement or motion changes into the reverse motion; where an up-tick is followed by a down-tick. Individual stocks possess individual amplitudes, i.e. the distances between the dead point and one side of the tick, respectively the other side of the tick.

There are four main groups of stocks that can be differentiated which possess the same proportional amplitudes, i.e. they swing alike. Let us give each group a color to distinguish them from each other. We call them red, green, blue and black groups. To anticipate, these groups compared to human beings may be classified as: the red groups contain the youngsters, jumping back and forth; the green groups contain mature people, settled, acting with a purpose; black and blue groups contain old folks, going slow, acting slow, but, just the same arriving at their destinations.

Each group of stocks operates according to its color, i.e. the red group and the stocks belonging to its group work on red; the green stocks and all stocks belonging to it operate on green etc. To define each stock and assign it to its group is not hard. Check several major as well as minor swings of a stock, mark down the colors of the field at which it stopped in, at tops and at bottoms. You will quickly notice that these turning points either fall in red nests or in green nests or at some other color. Black and blue stocks have no nests, but just single points around which they stop. If the color of a stock should be green, the stock will always meet resistance within an area designated by G (green), comprising as a rule a nest, $3\frac{1}{2}$ points long. The important points of such a nest are the corners. Looking over the circle chart we see one between $48\frac{1}{2}$ to $52\frac{1}{2}$, marked with G. This nest encompasses all these prices: $48\frac{1}{2}$, $48\frac{7}{8}$, 49 , $49\frac{1}{8}$, $49\frac{1}{2}$... $52\frac{3}{8}$, $52\frac{1}{2}$. The corner values, $48\frac{1}{2}$ and $52\frac{1}{2}$ are most important. Each major house, as well as each minor house, contains two green nests which are resting places for green stocks. The major houses contain also two isolated spots for green stocks, which are stopping places for this group. The major house, extending from 30 to 60 contains a green nest from $37\frac{1}{2}$ to $41\frac{1}{2}$ and another from $48\frac{1}{2}$ to $52\frac{1}{2}$; it has isolated spots at $31\frac{7}{8}$ and at $58\frac{1}{8}$. Keeping the center in mind at all times we find it to be located at 45.

Supposing a stock makes a bottom at $31\frac{7}{8}$ as did Case Threshing CTM in 1933, this stock will find its first resistance in the green nest extending from $37\frac{1}{2}$ to $41\frac{1}{2}$. It most likely will hold there for a while. Going through $41\frac{1}{2}$ on the upside, the stock will have to swing on the other side of the dead point, 45 and enter the nest of $48\frac{1}{2}$ to $52\frac{1}{2}$ (note from method #1: $31\frac{7}{8}$ plus $17\frac{1}{2}$ equals $49\frac{3}{8}$!!). The stock will stay there for a while, possibly react below $48\frac{1}{2}$, calling for a reaction into the nest extending from $37\frac{1}{2}$ to $41\frac{1}{2}$. Turning up once more, the stock should pass through the nest $48\frac{1}{2}$ to $52\frac{1}{2}$ and come to a stop at $58\frac{1}{8}$, the exact distance from the mid-way point as was the point of beginning to the mid-way point. The pendulum of this stock has completed one full tick and is ready for the next. This was one cycle.

The swinging process continues from one house to another, with stations always in a nest or at an isolated spot for major and for most minor moves. If a major move starts with a bottom at $63\frac{1}{2}$, the green corner in the lower part of the minor house, extending from 60 to 75, then the move will assuredly find an important resistance point at $116\frac{1}{2}$, from which point a sharp reaction should set in, even though the stock goes higher afterwards. The center of the swing in this case is 90. Be it

understood, however, that there are numerous swings of minor importance to and from many green nests and green isolated points or combinations of them, possible, until the final price is reached. It represents the goal, the price for a major change.

The major house from 30 to 60 contains the following nests for red stocks: 31 $7/8$ to 35 $5/8$; 43 $1/8$ to 46 $7/8$; 54 $3/8$ to 58 $1/8$. It has isolated spots for red stocks at 39 $3/8$, 50 $5/8$, marked with R. You may have wondered at times why so many stocks stop at 39 $3/8$ and never make 40 and also, why so many cross 50 and then drop.

The same major house contains two points for black stocks: 30 and 60; we have no nests for them proper, but they make their temporary homes in the green nests. The minor houses have no points for black stocks except the temporary resting places, the green nests.

Blue stocks do not have any nests, just isolated spots. These blue isolated spots are located solely in minor houses, 16 $7/8$, 28 $1/8$, 61 $7/8$. They are identified with a small dagger shaped triangle. These blue spots are at the same time isolated spots for red stocks. This is why these points are marked BR (blue and red). Blue stocks also use the green nests as resting places.

The four groups of stocks have their nests and isolated spots placed in equal proportions all around the circle, wherein they hibernate for periods and then switch from an upmove to a downmove or visa-versa.

Of the black and blue stocks it is highly important that you distinguish them from purely green stocks. They gather in green nests just as if they belonged there. You may mistake them for green stocks, causing unexpected losses. A distinction, aside of their making major bottoms and tops at their identifying numbers, such as 16 $7/8$, 28 $1/8$ for blue and 30, 60, 90 for black stocks (occasionally also 15, 45 etc), is their more radical movement, their wider range, compared to normal green stocks.

Stocks exceeding a price of 360 will simply continue their second circle by using the same houses over again, adding the points to 360. Thus a green stock will have its first green nest beyond 360 between 363 $3/4$ and 367 $1/2$, the second nest between 378 $3/4$ and 380 $5/8$.

Most likely the thought will arise in your mind as to how this method fits into method #1.

This method does not consider a time factor in the sense of days, weeks or months. Its time factor is hidden within the swings. The time extends from one swing to the other; this time is measured in amplitude. It does not consider gaps as such, explained in the previous method. This method allows for nests in which stocks can find a suitable eighth to align, preferring corners for roosting, while the other method allowed a leeway of 2 $7/8$ to 3 respectively in addition to their 17 $1/2$ and 8 $3/4$ points movements.

They agree with each other in locating only important tops and bottoms, none of them being reliable for calculating the so-called "jiggles".

An example, showing the operation of both methods combined to give an increased degree of accuracy and safety in operations is typified by Case Threshing CTM during 1933.

The bottom in March 1933 was at 31 $1/4$, or $1/8$ below the isolated green spot 31 $7/8$. The top in July 1933 was at 103, exactly $1/8$ below the isolated green spot 103 $1/8$. The motion was through one complete major house, one minor house and again one major house. The points were the same, each one an isolated green spot, found in the lower part of a major house.

The reaction from this top reached $59\frac{1}{2}$, or $1\frac{1}{8}$ points short of the isolated spot $58\frac{1}{8}$, (compare the same stock how it acted in 1931 when it dropped from $131\frac{1}{2}$ to $59\frac{1}{2}$ as shown in previous example!) The first rally went to 76 (in 1931 it reached 77), where it was short $7\frac{7}{8}$ points from its isolated spot $76\frac{7}{8}$. This shows the pendulum law nicely; short on one side, caused becoming short on the other side! The reaction came to 64 (in the 1931 movement it had reacted to $63\frac{1}{8}$); this belonged to the green area $63\frac{3}{4}$ to $65\frac{5}{8}$. Then came a rally to $83\frac{1}{4}$, located in the green nest $82\frac{1}{2}$ to $86\frac{1}{4}$. This was followed by a strong reaction to $54\frac{1}{2}$, moving from October 16th to 21st, 1933 in a range from $54\frac{1}{2}$ to 63. Taking the average, however, produces the center of this lowest swing to have been about $58\frac{1}{8}$, an isolated spot. This was followed by a rally to $76\frac{1}{4}$, short $5\frac{7}{8}$ points from the isolated green spot $76\frac{7}{8}$. A reaction followed to $63\frac{7}{8}$, the green area, extending from $63\frac{3}{4}$ to $65\frac{5}{8}$. This was followed by a rise to $86\frac{3}{4}$, half point beyond the green area $82\frac{1}{2}$ to $86\frac{1}{4}$.

You cannot find a single change of importance that did not occur in one of the green areas or green isolated spots. The red, black and blue points were passed, ignored completely, non-existing for that stock showing that they do not cause any resistance to its movement whatever.

Going over the same period according to our method #1, we find the bottom at $31\frac{1}{4}$ and the top was 70 points away at 103 (twice 35). First reaction from 103 should have produced resistance $17\frac{1}{2}$ points from the top. The stock went through that point with lightening speed (I watched it myself!), the range that day being $91\frac{7}{8}$ to 78. We had to figure $8\frac{3}{4}$ points further as the next resistance point, providing no gap was made. There was no gap. This brought resistance due at $76\frac{3}{4}$ (a green point is located at $76\frac{7}{8}$!). It made 77 flat. Buying at the price would have made us miss the bottom; we would have to buy at the market as it approached. The next day to our consternation the stock made a gap downward instead of rallying as we figured it would. What was to be done? We knew that $76\frac{3}{4}$ to 77 was critical. Breaking through, simply meant: sell again what you bought, go short once more and take a three point loss; you cannot always be right with your analysis. A gap down meant a big move was due right on top of the other downward. It could not mean less than $17\frac{1}{2}$ points. So why worry about three! The gap was made at 77; 77 less $17\frac{1}{2}$ meant $59\frac{1}{2}$, a figure we constantly meet with ease. The stock made $59\frac{1}{2}$ cheating the calculation by a quarter. There was an isolated spot as a major resistance just below it at $58\frac{1}{8}$. So as to satisfy both methods, the stock stopped between these two points.

It is useless to keep on analyzing individual stocks any further; the movements constantly repeat; enough examples were brought in the first method and this short example of Case, CTM proves that the laws repeat. You may now proceed to test several stocks in various periods yourself, gaining the necessary experience.

Do you still think that weather reports in the newspapers or on the news ticker move Case up and down? If you do, it might be true...

To be positive of the color a stock uses, check back at least one full year for the points at which tops and bottoms were made. I have found that in one comprehensive cycle certain stocks work on green, while in the next one they may work on red. At the present time we find working on green: X, GM, CFG, DD, AC, CTM, WX, CN. On red we find: UN, K, UP, ACD, UGI, PU; on black we have A and IR; on blue: UAF, CLZ & AAC.

One peculiarity must be noted that is found in higher priced stocks; the higher they get, the more they get tempted to operate on green for their major turns and stay on red for the minor. Bear in mind that at 90 we enter a new quadrant!

The Ellipse method (Method #3)

The big progress of ethnology during the past forty years has produced the most interesting phenomena and manifold forms of superstition, as exist to-day among cultured people.

Compared with the proportionate mythological ideas of former times, we find many analogies, often of a common source of origin, and finally a real cause. They are found in the natural causal necessity of reasoning, in the search for explanations of unknown phenomena, by trying to locate causes. It is especially true of mobile phenomena which preclude danger and cause fright, such as thunder, lightening, earthquakes, eclipses, breaks in the stock market. The need of causal explanation for such phenomena is found with the most primitive people; it even exists among the higher mammals.

A dog, barking at the Moon, at a sounding bell or a flag that waves in the wind, not only shows fright of the unknown, but also a subconscious desire to know the cause of the phenomenon.

Movements of stocks and commodities evidently belong to the same group of mobile phenomena. The public as well as the government is thoroughly scared of them, they react like a barking dog, frightened, scared, curious, inquisitive, but unable to grasp the laws which, known to a few are not re-

cognized by the many. To prove this contention, we all know of the investigations by the government of stock exchanges, whereby every possible phase is investigated at terrific cost, except the right, the real cause.

There are thousands of mathematicians and astronomers in our country who know of all the manifold laws of ellipses and its equations, but none of them ever thought of it that each stock is moving in pre-destined, pre-fixed elliptic paths!

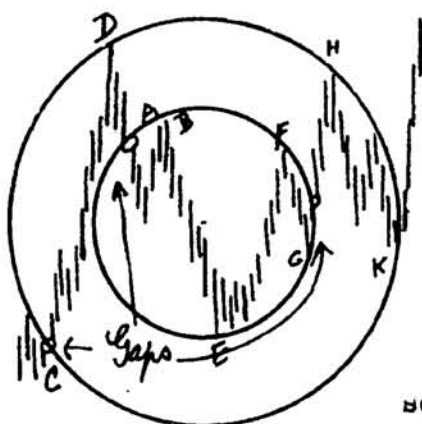
Mathematicians define an ellipse as the locus of a point which moves in a path so that the sum of its distances from two fixed points has a constant value. The two fixed points are called foci.

It has been proven that the planets move in space in ellipses around the Sun which is located in one of the foci.

This law gives the connecting link and is the reason I tried to devise certain forms of ellipses, which could be of practical use in chart reading. I do not claim that the theory developed herein is all that is ultimately to be said by me concerning ellipses. It is far from perfect the way it is presented. It is only given with the idea of pointing out the direction which can solve the problem with which we are confronted in market movements. Therefore this method is to be used in conjunction with methods #1 and #2.

Before touching the actual ellipse method, we examine an easier method first, closely related to it. It has to do with actual circles. Each stock has two radii (see figure above), two circles or spheres of movement, which comprise a major and a minor sphere, a major and a minor radius. When a stock makes a gap, it passes into a new sphere and all its activity will be in this new sphere until it departs, either on the upside or on the downside into a new sphere.

The two radii of each stock are found by simply measuring the distance from a bottom to a top or from an important gap to a top. The main radius never measures more than $9 \frac{7}{8}$ points and not less



than 6 points, at least for stocks selling between 25 and 100. Beyond this range adjustments must be made to proportion the radii to the higher or lower ranges as the case may be. The minor radius contains between $2 \frac{7}{8}$ to $4 \frac{1}{2}$ points.

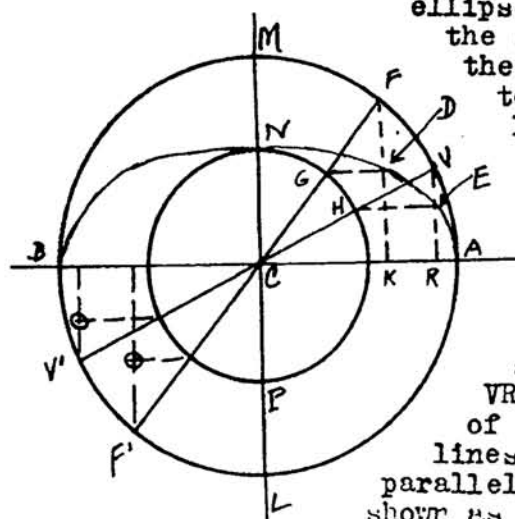
Supposing we have reached a bottom and passed beyond it, indicated by one or two days higher bottom for each day's trading range. In this case, take the compass and draw from the lowest price or bottom your two radii, the large one and the small one, to show the first lines of resistance areas. As the days pass by on the so-called x-axis of your chart, we constantly get closer to the radius drawn in, i.e. to the line of resistance. Finally, the daily fluctuations will reach the line. Then it will either jump this resistance boldly, by making a gap, or it will react to the other line of resistance which lies within the circle and stop there.

The application of the circle law as shown in the figure is somewhat different and can only be used when part of the movement is over. This specific one is good beginning with A or B at the latest. In this case, take the circles which fit your special stock (made on celluloid) and fit the large circle so that it passes through the lower gap at C and the top made at D; the small circle to be fitted into the gap at A and if that should not prove to be sufficient, then use point B for good measure. Automatically will you then have located the following points: E, F, G, H and K, at which point a new cycle begins. This does not imply that points E, F, G, H and K have to form changes of trend just at the point where I drew them to; what is meant by it is: whenever the stock in its movement hits the line of the inner or the outer circle, you can expect a change of trend and act according, when other factors, method #1 or #2 agree. The method explaining critical degrees brought later is a good indicator to be used in conjunction with this method.

From this rather simple method the most important of all methods shown in this book grew up: the ellipse method.

The most painstaking work, exact, without errors, careful plotting of charts is of prime importance. The next is the exact ellipses as to size, made on celluloid so that they are easily handled and last a long time.

The construction of an ellipse with ruler and compass is done as follows: Draw two circles around one common center C. The radius of the first (CA) represents one half the size of the major axis AB of the ellipse to be constructed and the radius of

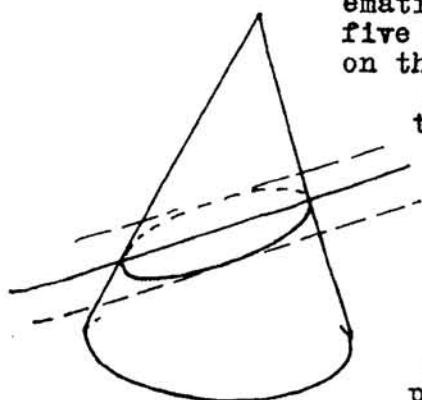


the second circle CN represents one half of the minor axis NP of the ellipse we intend to construct. Both of these axes are known. The line AB will become the major axis; rectangular to it through center C we erect the minor axis, PN(ML).

After that we draw many auxiliary lines through the center C, all of which reach the periphery of the large circle AMBL. From each intersecting point such as F, F', draw a line parallel to the minor axis PN such as FK, VR and a line from each intersecting point of periphery of smaller circle with the lines FF', VV' and others drawn the same way, parallel to the major axis. These lines are shown as GD, HE.

These two lines will intersect a point D or E and others which lie on the ellipse desired. Continue construction of more such lines and intersecting points and draw your ellipse through these points.

For better illustration of the important properties of an ellipse we must know that if you lay a plane through a cone in such a way that this plane forms to the base of the cone an angle that lies outside of the actual body of the cone, the cut produced by this plane through the cone, produces a plane on the cone, whose periphery is an ellipse. If the cone is cut any other way you will obtain similar curves, called hyperbola or parabola, respectively. An ellipse can be constructed mathematically, when five points are given or known. The five points must be either on the periphery proper or on the two axes.

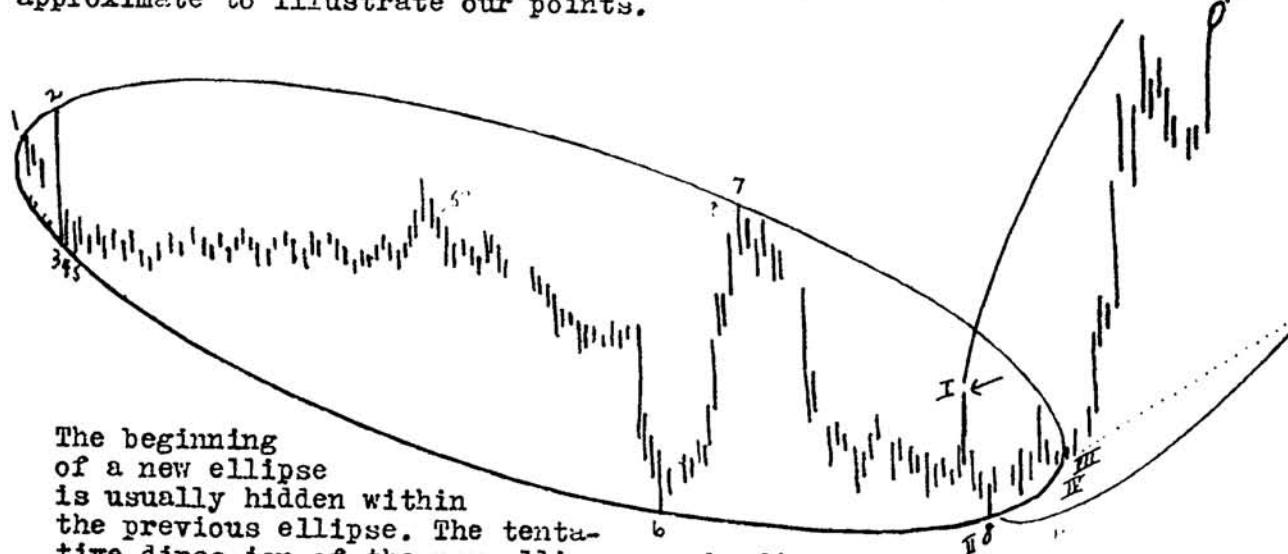


Astronomers find the elliptic path of a planet through accurate observations at various intervals five different positions at least.

By experimenting a long time with this law of elliptic motion, I have been able to construct two ellipses whose size and proportions fit the actual motion of stocks perfectly. These synthetic ellipses can only be used in connection with the special chart paper recommended in the appendix, made by Keuffel & Esser of New York, provided that one square of the chart is used as one point of motion of the price of the stock. By

laying these ellipses in such a way that five points, 5 different bottoms and tops, in this case also minor ones, can be brought to fall on the periphery of this ellipse, then all other resistance points will automatically be found either on the periphery of the ellipse or on its two axes.

A movement in one direction is not over until the stock moves outside this ellipse. We may compare the movement of a stock to that of a gold fish in its bowl. Once in it, there is no way of escape, unless it jumps. Below is a picture of wheat from January to July 1936. It is only approximate to illustrate our points.



The beginning of a new ellipse is usually hidden within the previous ellipse. The tentative direction of the new ellipse can be discovered through fitting the periphery of the new ellipse into two points of the old one, the last important low (8 and II) and the immediately preceding high (I of our figure). On the ellipse that extended from January to June 1936, we had as starting points the following five in January. 1, 2, 3, 4, 5. The bottom #6 of April 3rd met the ellipse on its periphery and caused a "bouncing back" to the other side of the ellipse which was reached April 18th and 22nd, 1936, #7. From this point a decline ensued until the lower periphery was reached once more at #8. Having walked across the entire ellipse, never leaving it, we were now

ready for a big movement. My advice to clients on June 5th said: "A thirty cents movement is coming in wheat on the upside, buy it immediately and sell it at 114 $\frac{1}{2}$ in August and make the date August 5th."

At that time (June 5th) we had point I and point II definitely located. We had the little resistance at III and next day at IV which I define with a permanent line that I put through the ellipse, the cause or reason for it being unknown so far, except that I know it is part of "my" ellipse. This gave me four definite points. The major axis pointed straight up to August 5th and the end of the ellipse showed the price required for that day to be 114 $\frac{1}{2}$, not more and not less. It made 114 $\frac{5}{8}$ on August 6th, 1936, and the calculations were wrong $\frac{3}{8}$ in price and wrong one day in time. Kindly do not ask how many people sold wheat short on June 5th and all the days that followed. It must have been many; the fast movement later on showed that they discovered their mistake and covered, pushing prices up madly so that my predestined price could be on the day it was due. Some readers may, of course, inject and say: Bah, it was the drought out West! My clients, who made with each \$500 invested in wheat during these two months \$1500, some even more with pyramiding and they ascribe it to immutable laws. Irrespective of whether there occurred a drought, or floods or insect pests brought about the event of a 30¢ rise in wheat, Nature found a way to raise the price and it was visible as to date and price on June 5th, 1936, when the public did not want wheat. It proved that they did not want it, because it sold between 84 and 84 $\frac{1}{2}$ ¢ compared to 1.14 $\frac{1}{2}$ two months later.

Coming back to the ellipse and its position when a new movement sets in, it seems as if the focus of the old ellipse compared to the focus of the new ellipse had some relationship with each other. Through one focus you can lay innumerable ellipses, but only one ellipse through 5 points.

In method #1 I made a special note that wheat likes to move in 13 $\frac{1}{8}$ points and in 30 $\frac{7}{8}$ points moves. The last bottom of June 8th, 1936 was 84 $\frac{1}{2}$ for wheat. The first top from which a reaction a 4 $\frac{3}{8}$ points reaction ensued, was at 98 $\frac{1}{2}$ or a trifle above 13 $\frac{1}{8}$ points. The next top was at 110 $\frac{1}{2}$ or 13 $\frac{1}{8}$ (very close) points away from the previous top. And the actual top, 114 $\frac{5}{8}$ was very nearly 30 $\frac{5}{8}$ points away from the low of June 7th-8th, 1936, and when we consider that the actual low for wheat the last low of the old ellipse and the low of the new one was 83 $\frac{1}{8}$, we obtain our full 30 $\frac{5}{8}$ points.

When a stock or wheat makes a gap over the major axis, this point may be used to set the ellipse or adjust it, giving many times the 5th missing point. For wheat I only use the small ellipse, as I do for medium priced stocks. For high priced stocks I use a large ellipse. They are used for daily or for weekly charts. Their sizes are as follows:

large ellipse: major axis 9.75 inches; minor axis: 0.925 inches x 2,
small ellipse: major axis 6.25 inches; minor axis: 0.925 inches x 1.

If you make these ellipses for use, produce them first on paper and then transfer them on to celluloid which must be strong enough to withstand constant use, yet be flexible at the same time. The celluloid is placed over the drawing on paper and the lines scratched in with the pin point of a compass. You require aside of the periphery also the two axes.

Supposing there had been a long upward move. The bottom formation where the move began, gave the basis of how to place the ellipse, by having it fitted to 5 bottoms or tops all located within close vicinity of the end of the previous ellipse. The line of the major axis will show the main trend, the direction of the move. At times, while a movement is on, you will find that a stock moves in the lower half of the ellipse, suddenly it will rush into the upper half of the same ellipse, down to the lower part again, up once more, and so gradually approach the end of the ellipse,

never leaving it while making the ascent or descent. You should buy stocks when the lower periphery is reached and sell stocks short when the upper periphery is touched or nearly so. Near the top, where the ellipse ends, you will note sharp movements up and down from one side of the ellipse to the other as it narrows down and there is no more play-room left until finally emerges at the end of the ellipse or jumps over it, which ends the specific cycle. Right there and then a new ellipse becomes operative, which has its head hidden in this past formation of the previous ellipse, predetermining the direction, the ellipse must be placed to be fully drawn ahead.

While studying the Bible and our friend Noah with his ark, I connected this ark immediately with my ellipse and simply put a man into the ellipse of the 6.25 inch size given to you. Strange, the head of the man shows the top or bottom formation just as explained above; the hand of man gives me important resistance, both the right and left hand; the upper foot of the man is usually the exact top, while the lower foot is the place where the stock leaves the old ellipse and goes into a new one. I suggest for you to make a special ellipse wherein you draw the skeleton of a man in the right proportion, lay it over charts and you will see things that will astonish you. The elbows, the knees, the shoulder blade, all these points give you resistance in stocks or commodities. This is why I suggest to you to just trade in a few stocks or commodities and get to know them! We could start all over here and divide stocks into: elbow stocks, knee stocks etc, those that stop at these points. They do and nothing can be done about it except follow strictly the rules nature laid down for us.

Sometime ago I found a point, situated beyond the ellipse which promises to be one of the 5 points that may be used to fit the ellipse into a new movement. The point is always located on a line which forms the continuation of the preceding major top or bottom line (the day on which the last top or bottom was made. I first lay the ellipse through three points available, minor tops or bottoms that fit the ellipses periphery. Then I place the point formed by the intersection of ellipse and major axis, in a position, so that it falls on a point, which again lies on the continuation of the last major bottom or top day, at the same time not changing the other points obtained by way of the periphery. This is done and continued until the actual bottom or top just being formed shows enough points to safely establish the angle in which the new ellipse lies.

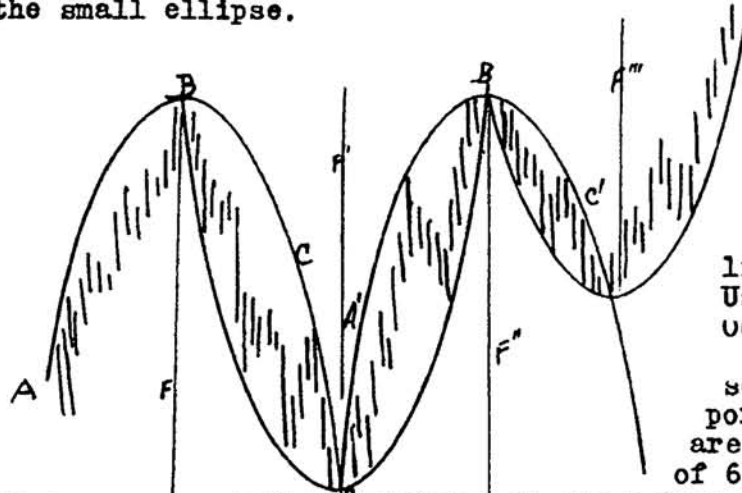
Looking at past performance of the general market when plotted on K&E special paper we find that from the bear market bottom of July 8th, 1932 we moved upward one small ellipse to the September 8th top, 1932. From there we declined one 9-inch ellipse to the bank holiday; we rose one 9-inch ellipse to the July 18th top 1933, declined a 6-inch ellipse to the October 21st bottom 1933, rose a small ellipse to April 20th, 1934 (from Jan. 8th low of 1934) and a 9-inch one measuring from Oct. 21st, 33. We declined a 9-inch ellipse from April 20th 1934 to September 17th 1934, movesidewise one ellipse to March 18th, 1935 bottom, moved up a small ellipse to May 20th top 1935, the reaction down to June 1st that year showed that a new ellipse formed upward and we rose a 9-inch ellipse once more to the December 10th top, 1935. That way it keeps on in the major cycles and all we have to do is use the ellipses.

Some mathematicians may object to my ellipses and say: with what right do you use just these sizes and not others? The answer is: everything I showed you so far, from page one to the very end came from studies of charts and of the Bible plus a little bit of general education. Testing a long time on charts gave me these sizes. However, I recently just found that the large axis of the 6-inch ellipse divided by the small axis

shows its value to be π .

Of course, I also tried to combine the other methods with this ellipse method. Strange facts were found, possibly of great interest to mathematicians. That some relationship would exist between the two methods was evident, though invisible, until by accident I ran across it. I grasped the idea of constructing isosceles right angles triangles, whose equal sides I made 35 points long. Then I attempted to fit the small ellipse into it, whose diameter is 6.25 inches, and, it proved to be exactly the one and only one ellipse that could be inscribed. The reason of stocks moving $17\frac{1}{2}$ points and 35 points I explained you right in the beginning. It is given in Revelation and in Daniel. The ellipses we may call the ark of Noah. I would have several more explanations of other factors, but we leave those alone for some other time, else things would get too "unbelievable"...

There is another way to use the 6-inch ellipse to determine a change of trend in the market. Lay the ellipse at a bottom or at a top in such manner that the major axis lies in line with the daily high and low price of this bottom or top day, so that the intersection of the periphery and the major axis is placed on the low point, if there is a bottom, or at the high point, if a top. You will find that as soon as the stock gets to the periphery of the ellipse as time moves on, it will either react from there or it will jump over it with a gap and begin to work itself into another ellipse. The ellipse must also be laid on gaps i.e. at the top price obtained the day before the gap is made if the move is an upward move and at the low price of the day previous to the gap, if the move is a downward move. The higher priced stocks work best, because their minor swings are of a size befitting the small ellipse.



Extremely interesting and exact operation of this law can be seen in U.S. Smelting and in the old stock of National Distillers, both in 1933. You may copy the high & low prices from your public library newspaper file. Use the months of May to October, 1933.

For this special law a second ellipse, or rather portions of it are used, that are built into the main ellipse of 6.25 inches. In our figure,

ABC to represent the periphery of our 6-inch ellipse and A'B'C' the same only carried over for operation and measuring. Then the curve BD and DB' are simply the "upside-down" of the same ellipse ABC. F, F', F'' represent the major axes of the ellipses. You begin measuring at B, the moment the top is made. The trend is down and the motion of the stock will stay within the two parts, the right periphery of the actual ellipse and the inverted one which has its beginning also at B so long, until it passes out of it, which usually happens where these two curves meet on the low side. The time consumed to pass through is at the most 22 to 23 days. It is therefore used for swings, lasting 3, 7, 10, 13, 22 days or whatever time swings are possible within these limits. When the lower curve is reached, you make commitments for the upper; when the price reaches the upper, sell short for the lower.

This is a method unusually suitable for high priced stocks and for small swings, lasting a few days. Dupont, in 1934, American Can from June 1935 on, when these stocks had a sidewise movement within 8 to 12 points gave turning signals uncannily each time. The picture of Dupont in 1934 beginning with May 1934, repeated our picture about 8 times absolutely correct and only dropped it, when it finally made its big movement upward. The range of Dupont that period was between 78 and 90. Of course, this picture of Dupont for that time was again encompassed in a large ellipse lying sidewise and tops as well as bottoms would have been found by just using the rules of ellipses. However, for small movements such as the combination ellipse is able to indicate, you most likely would have missed two movements out of three.

In trading, we must constantly try to make the best of everything to use everything that is able to bring profits. The method above requires constant attention and checking of all factors and cannot be used by a trader who for several days is unable to follow the stock closely; he might find that in the meantime, the stock has abandoned this type of motion and is already 20 points away from him. Bear in mind, that each time, such movement occurs in any stock, a big move invariably will follow out of it, up or down, depending on factors which we know by now how to discover.

An example is brought herewith of UV (U.S. Smelting): a bottom was made on June 5th, 1933 at $40\frac{3}{4}$. Laying the double ellipse at a right angle to this $40\frac{3}{4}$, with the intersecting point of the periphery and major axis of the ellipse passing through this $40\frac{3}{4}$, brings the line of the major axis in conjunction with the day's high and low price-line of the chart; in this case $40\frac{3}{4}$ - $44\frac{1}{2}$ (high & low). Following the curve of the ellipse, you will find the next bottom made on June 10th to 11th at 43 on the ellipse. After this bottom was made, place your ellipse upon this new bottom, bringing the following bottom once again into the ellipse. At some time, the reaction stops at the narrow ellipse, while at other times it passes into the wider ellipse. When a reaction does not fully meet an ellipse, but holds $\frac{3}{8}$ to $\frac{1}{2}$ point away from the line, then the next day it hesitates again and holds in a narrow range, it invariably indicates the coming of a gap. This gap, however, is not toward the ellipse, or a jump over it, - but away from the ellipse and within the ellipse. This particular fact is very important and should be studied with various cases. June 28th, 1933 illustrates that situation clearly in UV. Lay the ellipse at this day's bottom which was $50\frac{1}{2}$; this ought to give as the next bottom, on July 10th to 11th at the latest, a bottom at $53\frac{1}{8}$ for the first date and $53\frac{3}{4}$ for the second date. On July 10th, the stock, however, only made a low of 54. On the 11th of July it stayed between $54\frac{1}{2}$ and 55, a range of one half point. The next day it opened with a gap upward, having a low of 58 that day.

Operation on the downside is similar; let me add, though, that for some reason or other, unknown as yet, the upward moves operate ideally, in fact almost 100% correctly, but the downward moves do not seem to operate as well. Extreme care should be used in forming conclusions for the downside.

We now have combined three methods into one, all dealing with ellipses and circles.

It must become evident by now that it is much easier to discover the major movements than it is to find the small ones. The average trader is exactly looking for the reverse and always loses. Hundreds of examples could be brought regarding the ellipse laws. Since you have certain stocks in mind that you would like to analyse, try the rules on several

of them, using one method after the other, then combining them. To test the laws yourself will be of more positive help to you than one hundred various examples.

In making charts, a compass and a transparent protractor are necessary. The finer the chart work, the better you can interpret it. You gradually should read charts of stocks or commodities the same way as your morning paper. You must be able to grasp DIRECTION & TIME quickly, so that you can trace in your mind the way ellipses should be placed without even drawing them. The position of a gap on a certain day, should tell you without further investigation at what point the next resistance should be expected.

It has taken me years to shake off concrete facts, the idea that Washington or France move the market, but once discarded, a new foundation had to be built. The Bible was used as foundation and it proved to be a solid one. For those who want further proof that the Bible is nothing but an astrological book and proof that the writers of the Bible knew more about astronomy than we ever will know and especially of the influences of heavenly bodies upon human beings, I bring chapter 720 of Herschel's Outlines of Astronomy, from my copy, dated: Phila., Pa., 1849. "Now, although, it is true that the mean motion of no planets are exactly commensurate, yet cases are not wanting in which there exists an approach to this adjustment. For instance in the case of Jupiter and Saturn, a cycle composed of five periods of Jupiter and two of Saturn, although it does not exactly bring about the same configuration, does so pretty nearly. Five periods of Jupiter are 21663 days (hold this value for later!! GB), and two periods of Saturn, 21519 days. The difference is only 146 days, in which Jupiter describes, on an average, 12° , and Saturn about 5° ; so that after the lapse of the former interval they will only be 7° from a conjunction in the same parts of their orbits as before. If we calculate the time which will exactly bring about, on the average, three conjunctions of the two planets, we shall find it to be 21760 days, their synodic period being 7253,4 days. In this interval Saturn will have described $8^{\circ}6'$ in excess of two sidereal revolutions, and Jupiter the same angle in excess of 5° . Every third conjunction, then, will take place $8^{\circ}6'$ in advance of the preceding, which is near enough to establish, not, it is true, an identity with, but still a great approach to the case in question. The excess action, for several such triple conjunctions (seven or eight) in succession, will lie the same way, and at each of them the elements of P's orbit and its angular motion will be similarly influenced (Note: the author here states clearly that one planet influences the other, two enormously big bodies!!) so as to accumulate the effect upon its longitude; thus giving rise to an irregularity of considerable magnitude and very long period, which is well known to astronomers by the name of the great inequality of Jupiter and Saturn.

The arc $8^{\circ}6'$ is contained $44 \frac{4}{9}$ times in the whole circumference of 360° ; and, accordingly, if we trace round this particular conjunction, we shall find that it will return to the same point of the orbit in so many times 21760 days or in 2648 years. But the conjunction we are about to consider is only one out of three. The other two will happen at points of the orbit about 123° and 246° distant and these points will also advance by the same arc of $8^{\circ}6'$ in 21760 days. Consequently the period of 2468 years will bring them all around, and in the interval each of them will pass through that point of the two orbits from which we commenced; hence a conjunction (one or the other of the three) will happen at that point once in one third of this period, or in 883 years

(hold this vale for later, GB); and this is therefore, the cycle in which the great inequalities would undergo its full compensation, did the elements of the orbits continue all that time invariable."

This is what Herschel has to say. A cycle, or rather the circle has a length of $368^{\circ}6'$; one third of that circle is $122^{\circ}42'$.

To prove astrology in the Bible is very difficult, because of the clever substitutes the writers have used. The maze of statements and stories, the individual meanings of each chapter, and especially the fact that everything that is measured therein in degrees, years or days, is meant to be a part of $368^{\circ}6'$ and not a part of 360° .

We find in the Book of Ezra, Chapter 2, verse 2 up, the people who joined in the first expedition under Zerubbabel (Jupiter), the number of the people of Israel (which again is Jupiter!) verse 2 tells us that Zerubbabel came with 10 other leaders which are called by name, making a total of 11. We therefore use only the first 11 tribes enumerated thereafter. Verses 3 to 13 gives us their names and number:

Children of Parosh	2172	(note astronomer's value of 21760!!!)
--------------------	------	---------------------------------------

Children of Shphatiah	372
Children of Arah	775
Children of Pahathmoab	2812
Children of Elam	1254
Children of Zattu	945
Children of Zaccai	760
Children of Bani	642
Children of Bebai	623
Children of Azgad	1222
Children of Adonikam	666

grand total 12243 or $122^{\circ}43'$

This shows the specific cycle of Jupiter divided in its parts, a value which the astronomer found too.

The balance of the count refers to $37^{\circ}10'$ and $82^{\circ}36'$ cycles, which latter value is shown when adding the tribes as 8196 ($81^{\circ}96' = 82^{\circ}36'$). These cycles have not been discussed in this book at all. However, adding all together gives us $242^{\circ}29'$. Chapter 2, verse 65 of Ezra states that the total number of men in the community were 42360; omit the 0 and you have $42^{\circ}36'$.

In the book of Numbers, chapter 26, verse 7 up, we also find a count of population.

Tribe of Reuben	43730	people
Tribe of Simeon	22200	
Tribe of Gad	40500	
Tribe of Judah	76500	
Tribe of Issachar	64300	
Tribe of Zebulun	60500	
Tribe of Manasse	52700	
Tribe of Ephraim	32500	
Tribe of Benjamin	45600	
Tribe of Dan	64400	
Tribe of Asher	53400	
Tribe of Naphtali	45400	

Grand Total 601730 people or $601^{\circ}73'$ or $602^{\circ}13'$.

Deduct 360° from this value gives you the same as above. $243^{\circ}13'$.

Going back to the time of the Deluge, Genesis 8,14, we may find it strange that Noah kept a diary for posterity in all his excitement the Deluge brought him. He noted carefully, that it was in the 2nd month on the 27th day of the month in the 601st year of his life that the earth dried. This value represents nothing but the same cycle as shown above.

How close these ancient astrologers came to find the inequalities between Saturn and Jupiter may be seen in Chronicles, first book, chapter 15, verse 5 up: The number of men that carried the ark:

Uriel	120 men
Asaiah	220 men
Joel	130 men
Shemaiah	200 men
Eliel	80 men
Aminadab	112 men
Grand total 862 men.	

We have shown that these men represent degrees of the circle, but of the circle containing $368^{\circ}6'$ (actual value is $368^{\circ}10'48''$). When we turn these degrees of the 360° circle into degrees of the 368° circle, we get:

120° equal	122°43'36"
220	224 59 56
130	132 57 14
200	204 32 40
80	81 49 4
112	114 32 41
Grand total 882°35'11"	

These degrees we have to take as representing years; in that case we have the great inequalities of Jupiter and Saturn just as the astronomer found them 4000 years later....

The book of Numbers, chapter 2 gives us another account. The writer of this particular book seems to have done the work of previous writers all over and found a figure that somewhat deviates from others, and clearly shows that there was checking and rechecking done of these values:

Tribe of Judah	74600
Isashar	54400
Sebulon	57400
Reuben	46500
Simeon	59300
Gad	45650
Ephraim	40500
Manasse	32200
Benjamin	35400
Dan	62700
Asser	41500
Naphthali	53400
Grand total 603750 or 603°75'	

Chapter 2,32 tells us that there were 603550.

We wonder now what this value of $601^{\circ}23'$ and $603^{\circ}75'$ respectively means. We know from astronomy that the lunar apogee circulates in 3232,57 days. The moon's Node has a rate of retreat each day of $3'10''.4$ and is carried around the entire Zodiac in 18.6 years.

When we divide now our 601730 by 3232.57, we obtain 18.615 years. It indicates that these parts of the Bible have to do with the Moon's motion, or with astronomical laws. The stories, however, that follow and precede have to do with effects of the planets. They all denote astrological cycles and even though universities or governments do not recognize a science that is based on the greatest book in existence, the revolutionary action of Neptune at this period may bring about a change of attitude.

As a final remark it may be said, that these ancient prophets had no telescopes, not logarithmic tables or any other facilities at their disposal.

This last few lines may show you that I have gone much deeper into market movements than I can bring forth in this volume and I may state that I produce very accurate forecasts for stocks or any commodity for any period, even without using any of the laws given to you here.

An analysis of the major movements of the market for any one year including most of the intermediate swings can be produced in less than one week, subject to an occasional rectification of a plus or minus sign, which, however, can be detected before the event is due. To obtain such results meant work that did not germinate in brokers offices and that could not be learned from the usual text books.

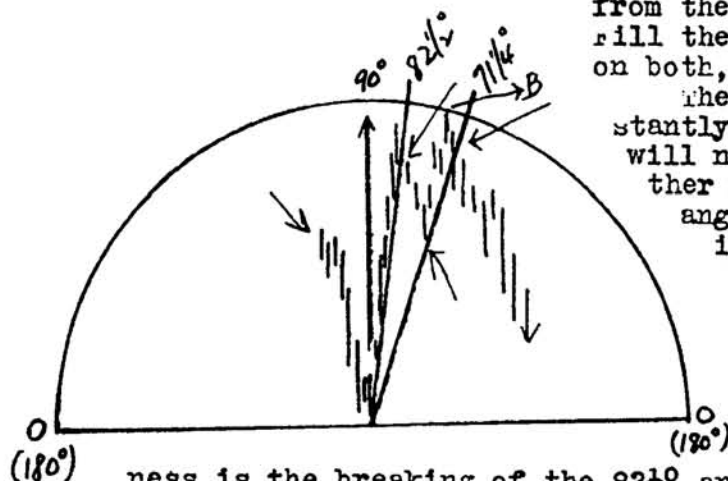
end of method #3

Method #4, Two important angles

This method, on the surface, has no relationship with the others shown so far. It should be used only for high priced stocks or for stocks (including commodities) that at times have strong moves. It indicates when one cycle is over and another one starts. Unfortunately, the event only can be seen a day late, but in as much as we know that a move extends over several days, this is of minor importance, especially when it affords a check that cannot be had any other way.

When a bottom is made in a stock or commodity (in wild movements only), lay the transparent protractor in such manner, that the fine line that runs across the protractor from 0° to 180° , i.e. 0° comes through the last eighth of this bottom and that the 90° angle falls in line with the day's price range. Scratch two lines on the protractor with a pin points, one, from the center to the $82\frac{1}{2}^{\circ}$ angle and the other from the center to the $71\frac{1}{4}^{\circ}$ angle. Fill the grooves with ink. Do that on both, left and right sides.

These lines or angles will constantly form resistance levels. You will notice that the stock will either rise and hold above the $82\frac{1}{2}^{\circ}$ angle as shown in our picture or it will rise and hold above the $71\frac{1}{4}^{\circ}$ angle as shown in the minor move (the comeback) in our picture. Strong stocks will use the former angle, the weaker, the latter. In the case of strong stocks, the first indication of weak-



ness is the breaking of the $82\frac{1}{2}^{\circ}$ angle. The stock invariably will catch a hold on the $71\frac{1}{4}^{\circ}$ angle and most likely run upward along this angle for a while, sometimes climbing above the $82\frac{1}{2}^{\circ}$ angle again. The definite sign of a change of trend is shown, however, when the stock breaks the $71\frac{1}{4}^{\circ}$ angle and holds below this angle for one full day. Thus, the trading range in that stock remains one full day below the $71\frac{1}{4}^{\circ}$ angle. In such a case, we are in a down trend. When draw your angles of 71 and 82° from the newly made top, established a little while previous, running the lines from the top eighth downward, at point B of our picture. The trend of the stock will be bearish until the price is able to crawl above the $71\frac{1}{4}^{\circ}$ angle that leads down. It is very weak as long it holds below the $82\frac{1}{2}^{\circ}$ angle. The uptrend is only resumed when one full days trading is done completely above the 71° angle, drawn downward from the last top. If this happens, then draw your angles upward again from the bottom eighth.

end of method #4.

Method #5 Planetary Influences on Numbers

Numerology as discussed in text books does not seem to have any virtue as far as stock market problems are concerned, just as little as text books on astrology can be used to discover the movements of stocks. Thus, I am not teaching numerology as such. However, the work of studying movements of stocks must produce at some time or other the idea whether or not any connection does exist between a number and the price of a stock. This idea was gone into when treating our method #2. We found four groups of stocks extremely sensitive to special prices or special areas between two fixed prices.

The present method does not duplicate method #2, in fact it has no relation to it whatever. But, just as Nature always acts, our conclusions coming out of the present method will arrive at the same tops and bottoms as any of the foregoing methods. This method deals with single stocks only. Before going into this method, we must understand a certain basic law, tear it apart, explain it, study it, broaden its application and apply it to stocks.

We have seen in our chapter on astronomy that planets rotate around the Sun. This includes the earth. The positions of these planets is always found along an imaginary line or belt in space, called ecliptic. This is called the heliocentric view, whereby the observer is on the Sun. On the other hand, if we take the geocentric view, or the view as seen by an observer from the earth, the Sun seems to rotate around the earth, accompanied by the planets. In the course of one year, the Sun passes through the entire ecliptic. You may recall that this ecliptic is inclined to the world equator at an angle of $23^{\circ}27'$. The ecliptic cuts the world equator at two opposite points, which are called the Spring and Fall equinoxes. The Sun travels upward from the winter solstice (it is below the Equator from the Fall equinox to the Spring equinox), toward the Summer solstice and reaches during the period a moment when it is exactly on the equator. This is the moment of the Spring equinox, or entry of Spring.

To figure the positions of the Planets, the entire ecliptic is divided into 12 parts, the signs of the Zodiac, given in the prior chapter. Ancient astrologers attributed a certain power, emanating from a special planet to each of these signs or areas of the heaven. Expressed in other words, they knew that specific planets had special influences upon certain signs of the Zodiac. They called that planet who was most powerful in a certain sign its ruler. At this point we are not interested how these forces operate or show what effect they have. This is a study in itself and would too great a detour from our main subject. We must, however, acquire the names of the rulers and the houses they rule, respectively the signs they rule.

- The first house (Aries) is ruled by Mars, ♂
- The second house (Taurus) is ruled by Venus, ♀ ✓
- The third house (Gemini) is ruled by Mercury, ☿
- The fourth house (Cancer) is ruled by Moon, ☾
- The fifth house (Leo) is ruled by Sun, ☉
- The sixth house (Virgo) is ruled by Mercury, ☿ ✓
- The seventh house (Libra) is ruled by Venus, ♀
- The eighth house (Scorpio) is ruled by Mars, ♂
- The ninth house (Sagittarius) is ruled by Jupiter, ♃, 7 ✓
- The tenth house (Capricorn) is ruled by Saturn, ♄, 6 ✓
- The eleventh house (Aquarius) is ruled by Uranus, ♅, 4
- The twelfth house (Pisces) is ruled by Neptune, ♆, 12

At this stage it is appropriate to acquaint ourselves with one astrological rule which we need later. Each house is supposed to govern according to astrological rules certain phases of human life, such as love, death, money, speculation, friends, sickness etc. The only house we retain is the eighth house, called the house of death. This house is ruled by Mars. That there exists enough evidence to uphold the truth of such astrological statements will be brought to light when we show how stocks act in death house numbers.

Trying all sorts of divisions of the circle so as to get to a point of beginning (the same difficulty is faced in all such work), and to prove this ancient wisdom is not a myth, and to apply its rules, if any to market movements, I finally discovered that the number 27 was the number to use. Twenty-seven is not a division of the circle, but some work of Nature. (This particular paragraph was written a few years ago already in its present wording; since, I found the circle to be $368^{\circ}10'$ and therefore $1/14$ part of that circle!! Note how laws can be found in a round about way!). Let us call the movement of 27 points one complete cycle. This cycle is divided into 4 equal parts producing quadrants of $6\frac{3}{4}$ points each. (Note the close relationship of this value to our small ellipse and the biblical value of 601-603 to it!) The first quadrant starts with 0, the second with $6\frac{3}{4}$, the third with $13\frac{1}{2}$, the fourth with $20\frac{1}{4}$ and keeps on by adding $6\frac{3}{4}$ points to each previous value.

Consider each of these quadrants one complete unit. Into each unit we place a zodiac consisting of 12 signs or 12 houses and equip each house with its ruling planet in accordance to rules given above.

When dividing $6\frac{3}{4}$ by 12 so as to arrive at the beginning of each single house, we find it is impossible to obtain a number ending in eighths, the smallest number used in trading. Therefore we must take recourse to a range. The complete and correct division of $6\frac{3}{4}$ will look as follows- adjoining each number the ruling planets of these houses are inserted:

House	Quadrant I	Ruler
1	0	Mars
2	$1/2$ to $5/8$	Venus
3	$1\ 1/8$	Mercury
4	$1\ 5/8$ to $1\ 3/4$	Moon
5	$2\frac{1}{2}$	Sun
6	$2\frac{3}{4}$ to $2\ 7/8$	Mercury
7	$3\ 3/8$	Venus
8	$3\ 7/8$ to 4	Mars
9	$4\frac{1}{2}$	Jupiter
10	5 to $5\ 1/8$	Saturn
11	$5\ 5/8$	Uranus
12	$6\ 1/8$ to $6\frac{1}{2}$	Neptune
	Quadrant II	
1	$6\frac{3}{4}$	Mars
2	$7\frac{1}{2}$ to $7\ 3/8$	Venus
3	$7\ 7/8$	Mercury
4	$8\ 3/8$ to $8\frac{1}{2}$	Moon
5	9	Sun
6	$9\frac{1}{2}$ to $9\ 5/8$	Mercury
7	$10\ 1/8$	Venus
8	$10\ 5/8$ to $10\frac{3}{4}$	Mars
9	$11\frac{1}{2}$	Jupiter
10	$11\frac{3}{4}$ to $11\ 7/8$	Saturn
11	$12\ 3/8$	Uranus
12	$12\ 7/8$ to 13	Neptune
	Quadrant III	
1	$13\frac{1}{2}$	Mars

The exact rotation of the numbers and their houses is shown in a simplified table. The planets' names are omitted; they are identified by their housenumbers.

Table of planets Numbers

1	0	27	54	81	1
2	$\frac{1}{2}$ -5/8	$27\frac{1}{2}$ -27 5/8	$54\frac{1}{2}$ -54 5/8	$81\frac{1}{2}$ -81 5/8	2
3	1 1/8	28 1/8	55 1/8	82 1/8	3
4	$1\frac{1}{2}$ -1 $\frac{3}{4}$	$28\frac{1}{2}$ -28 $\frac{3}{4}$	$55\frac{1}{2}$ -55 $\frac{3}{4}$	$82\frac{1}{2}$ -82 $\frac{3}{4}$	4
5	$2\frac{1}{4}$	$29\frac{1}{4}$	$56\frac{1}{4}$	$83\frac{1}{4}$	5
6	$2\frac{1}{2}$ -2 7/8	$29\frac{1}{2}$ -29 7/8	$56\frac{1}{2}$ -56 7/8	$83\frac{1}{2}$ -83 7/8	6
7	3 3/8	30 3/8	57 3/8	84 3/8	7
8	$3\frac{1}{2}$ -4	$30\frac{1}{2}$ -31	$57\frac{1}{2}$ -58	$84\frac{1}{2}$ -85	8
9	$4\frac{1}{2}$	$31\frac{1}{2}$	$58\frac{1}{2}$	$85\frac{1}{2}$	9
10	5-5 1/8	32-32 1/8	59-59 1/8	86-86 1/8	10
11	5 5/8	32 5/8	59 5/8	86 5/8	11
12	$6\frac{1}{8}$ -6 $\frac{1}{4}$	$33\frac{1}{8}$ -33 $\frac{1}{4}$	$60\frac{1}{8}$ -60 $\frac{1}{4}$	$87\frac{1}{8}$ -87 $\frac{1}{4}$	12
1	$6\frac{3}{4}$	$33\frac{3}{4}$	$60\frac{3}{4}$	$87\frac{3}{4}$	1
2	$7\frac{1}{2}$ -7 3/8	$34\frac{1}{2}$ -34 3/8	$61\frac{1}{2}$ -61 3/8	$88\frac{1}{2}$ -88 3/8	2
3	7 7/8	34 7/8	61 7/8	88 7/8	3
4	$8\frac{3}{8}$ -8 $\frac{1}{2}$	$35\frac{3}{8}$ -35 $\frac{1}{2}$	$62\frac{3}{8}$ -62 $\frac{1}{2}$	$89\frac{3}{8}$ -89 $\frac{1}{2}$	4
5	9	36	63	90	5
6	$9\frac{1}{2}$ -9 5/8	$36\frac{1}{2}$ -36 5/8	$63\frac{1}{2}$ -63 5/8	$90\frac{1}{2}$ -90 5/8	6
7	10 1/8	37 1/8	64 1/8	91 1/8	7
8	$10\frac{1}{2}$ -10 $\frac{3}{4}$	$37\frac{1}{2}$ -37 $\frac{3}{4}$	$64\frac{1}{2}$ -64 $\frac{3}{4}$	$91\frac{1}{2}$ -91 $\frac{3}{4}$	8
9	$11\frac{1}{4}$	$38\frac{1}{4}$	$65\frac{1}{4}$	$92\frac{1}{4}$	9
10	$11\frac{1}{2}$ -11 7/8	$38\frac{1}{2}$ -38 7/8	$65\frac{1}{2}$ -65 7/8	$92\frac{1}{2}$ -92 7/8	10
11	12 3/8	39 3/8	66 3/8	93 3/8	11
12	$12\frac{1}{2}$ -13	$39\frac{1}{2}$ -40	$66\frac{1}{2}$ -67	$93\frac{1}{2}$ -94	12
1	$13\frac{1}{2}$	$40\frac{1}{2}$	$67\frac{1}{2}$	$94\frac{1}{2}$	1
2	14-14 1/8	41-41 1/8	68-68 1/8	95-95 1/8	2
3	14 5/8	41 5/8	68 5/8	95 5/8	3
4	$15\frac{1}{8}$ -15 $\frac{1}{4}$	$42\frac{1}{8}$ -42 $\frac{1}{4}$	$69\frac{1}{8}$ -69 $\frac{1}{4}$	$96\frac{1}{8}$ -96 $\frac{1}{4}$	4
5	$15\frac{3}{4}$	$42\frac{3}{4}$	$69\frac{3}{4}$	$96\frac{3}{4}$	5
6	$16\frac{1}{4}$ -16 3/8	$43\frac{1}{4}$ -43 3/8	$70\frac{1}{4}$ -70 3/8	$97\frac{1}{4}$ -97 3/8	6
7	16 7/8	43 7/8	70 7/8	97 7/8	7
8	$17\frac{3}{8}$ -17 $\frac{1}{2}$	$44\frac{3}{8}$ -44 $\frac{1}{2}$	$71\frac{3}{8}$ -71 $\frac{1}{2}$	$98\frac{3}{8}$ -98 $\frac{1}{2}$	8
9	18	45	72	99	9
10	$18\frac{1}{2}$ -18 5/8	$45\frac{1}{2}$ -45 5/8	$72\frac{1}{2}$ -72 5/8	$99\frac{1}{2}$ -99 5/8	10
11	19 1/8	46 1/8	73 1/8	100 1/8	11
12	$19\frac{1}{2}$ -19 $\frac{3}{4}$	$46\frac{1}{2}$ -46 $\frac{3}{4}$	$73\frac{1}{2}$ -73 $\frac{3}{4}$	$100\frac{1}{2}$ -100 $\frac{3}{4}$	12
1	$20\frac{1}{4}$	$47\frac{1}{4}$	$74\frac{1}{4}$	$101\frac{1}{4}$	1
2	$20\frac{1}{2}$ -20 7/8	$47\frac{1}{2}$ -47 7/8	$74\frac{1}{2}$ -74 7/8	$101\frac{1}{2}$ -101 7/8	2
3	21 3/8	48 3/8	75 3/8	102 3/8	3
4	$21\frac{1}{2}$ -22	$48\frac{1}{2}$ -49	$75\frac{1}{2}$ -76	$102\frac{1}{2}$ -103	4
5	$22\frac{1}{2}$	$49\frac{1}{2}$	$76\frac{1}{2}$	$103\frac{1}{2}$	5
6	23-23 1/8	50-50 1/8	77-77 1/8	104-104 1/8	6
7	23 5/8	50 5/8	77 5/8	104 5/8	7
8	$24\frac{1}{8}$ -24 $\frac{1}{4}$	$51\frac{1}{8}$ -51 $\frac{1}{4}$	$78\frac{1}{8}$ -78 $\frac{1}{4}$	$105\frac{1}{8}$ -105 $\frac{1}{4}$	8
9	$24\frac{3}{4}$	$51\frac{3}{4}$	$78\frac{3}{4}$	$105\frac{3}{4}$	9
10	$25\frac{1}{4}$ -25 3/8	$52\frac{1}{4}$ -52 3/8	$79\frac{1}{4}$ -79 3/8	$106\frac{1}{4}$ -106 3/8	10
11	25 7/8	52 7/8	79 7/8	106 7/8	11
12	$26\frac{3}{8}$ -26 $\frac{1}{2}$	$53\frac{3}{8}$ -53 $\frac{1}{2}$	$80\frac{3}{8}$ -80 $\frac{1}{2}$	$107\frac{3}{8}$ -107 $\frac{1}{2}$	12

1	108	135	162	189	1
2	108½-108 5/8	135½-135 5/8	162½-162 5/8	189½-189 5/8	2
3	109 1/8	136 1/8	163 1/8	190 1/8	3
4	109 5/8-109¾	136 5/8-136¾	163 5/8-163¾	190 5/8-190¾	4
5	110½	137½	164½	191½	5
6	110½-110 7/8	137½-137 7/8	164½-164 7/8	191½-191 7/8	6
7	111 3/8	138 3/8	165 3/8	192 3/8	7
8	111 7/8-112	138 7/8-139	165 7/8-166	192 7/8-193	8
9	112½	139½	166½	193½	9
10	113-113 1/8	140-140 1/8	167-167 1/8	194-194 1/8	10
11	113 5/8	140 5/8	167 5/8	194 5/8	11
12	114 1/8-114½	141 1/8-141½	168 1/8-168½	195 1/8-195½	12
1	114½	141½	168½	195½	1
2	115½-115 3/8	142½-142 3/8	169½-169 3/8	196½-196 3/8	2
3	115 7/8	142 7/8	169 7/8	196 7/8	3
4	116 3/8-116¾	143 3/8-143¾	170 3/8-170¾	197 3/8-197¾	4
5	117	144	171	198	5
6	117½-117 5/8	144½-144 5/8	171½-171 5/8	198½-198 5/8	6
7	118 1/8	145 1/8	172 1/8	199 1/8	7
8	118 5/8-118¾	145 5/8-145¾	172 5/8-172¾	199 5/8-199¾	8
9	119½	146½	173½	200½	9
10	119½-119 7/8	146½-146 7/8	173½-173 7/8	200½-200 7/8	10
11	120 3/8	147 3/8	174 3/8	201 3/8	11
12	120 7/8-121	147 7/8-148	174 7/8-175	201 7/8-202	12
1	121½	148½	175½	202½	1
2	122-122 1/8	149-149 1/8	176-176 1/8	203-203 1/8	2
3	122 5/8	149 5/8	176 5/8	203 5/8	3
4	123 1/8-123½	150 1/8-150½	177 1/8-177½	204 1/8-204½	4
5	123½	150½	177½	204½	5
6	124½-124 3/8	151½-151 3/8	178½-178 3/8	205½-205 3/8	6
7	124 7/8	151 7/8	178 7/8	205 7/8	7
8	125 3/8-125¾	152 3/8-152¾	179 3/8-179¾	206 3/8-206¾	8
9	126	153	180	207	9
10	126½-126 5/8	153½-153 5/8	180½-180 5/8	207½-207 5/8	10
11	127 1/8	154 1/8	181 1/8	208 1/8	11
12	127 5/8-127¾	154 5/8-154¾	181 5/8-181¾	208 5/8-208¾	12
1	128½	155½	182½	209½	1
2	128½-128 7/8	155½-155 7/8	182½-182 7/8	209½-209 7/8	2
3	129 3/8	156 3/8	183 3/8	210 3/8	3
4	129 7/8-130	156 7/8-157	183 7/8-184	210 7/8-211	4
5	130½	157½	184½	211½	5
6	131-131 1/8	158-158 1/8	185-185 1/8	212-212 1/8	6
7	131 5/8	158 5/8	185 5/8	212 5/8	7
8	132 1/8-132½	159 1/8-159½	186 1/8-186½	213 1/8-213½	8
9	132½	159½	186½	213½	9
10	133½-133 3/8	160½-160 3/8	187½-187 3/8	214½-214 3/8	10
11	133 7/8	160 7/8	187 7/8	214 7/8	11
12	134 3/8-134½	161 3/8-161½	188 3/8-188½	215 3/8-215½	12

All the numbers of the fifth house, i.e. all those numbers in the table of the column marked 5, across, are ruled by the same planet, the one ruling the 5th house, which is the Sun. Any numbers falling into the 12th house, such as 6 1/8-6 1/2, 12 7/8 to 13, 19 5/8 to 19 1/2 etc are ruled by the ruler of the 12th house, Neptune. Venus, Mercury and Mars, however rule each two houses. Venus rules the second and seventh, Mercury, the 3rd and 6th, Mars the 1st and 8th.

To detect the ruling planet of a stock, you must find the lowest price at which the stock sold in the preceding bear market. The planet found next to the lowest price (check off with the first enlarged Table!) is the ruling planet. In case a stock sold at a price that is not a number ruled by any house, then use the number below it (not the one above it) and call it the ruling number of the stock and its planet the ruling planet.

A list of the most important stocks together with their bear market low price follows herewith:

DL	8 1/2	IL	4 1/2	T	70	A	17 7/8	AF	3 1/8
LW	8 1/2	M	3 1/2	ATb	44	G	15 7/8	DH	23 1/2
BS	7 1/2	CP	7 1/2	AAC	15	AIO	3 5/8	PU	10 1/2
AX	7 1/2	CN	8 1/2	K	5	W	12 3/8	AC	29 5/8
NP	5 1/2	C	3	HR	10	RBC	1 7/8	WX	15 5/8
GL	8 1/2	VA	5 1/2	SX	6 1/2	ACD	42 1/2	X	21 1/2
BO	3 1/2	Z	22	CO	9 1/2	UP	27 5/8	CTM	16 1/2

Each ruler shows power whenever the stock gets to one of its own numbers; that are HIS, his sphere, his aura. There you will mostly find that resistance is met, be it temporary or permanent. The only time care must be exercised is at a time when a major top is made from which a sharp reaction sets in. In such case, you must be on your guard to note whether or not your stock has fallen prey to some other ruler or governor, under whose influence it then will be.

Checking carefully a large number of stocks as to their rulership as they emerged from their bear market lows, it is especially interesting to note that all stocks related to agriculture, such as CTM, HR, S, M, etc., stopped at Venus numbers. Venus, according to astrological rules governs crops, causes growth and fruitfulness. On the other hand, it was noted that all the alcohol stocks stopped at Neptune numbers, such as NAD, UD, DGL, etc. This is not a coincidence. These are serious truths, laws beyond understanding of the average trader and, should you smile at these strange laws and rules, just return to your statisticians and to news reports. Serious thinkers will not shed a tear over a lost sheep. Let him, before he leaves, remember from the Bible: "Many are called, but few are chosen"!

Planets, like human beings, animals or other "beings" radiate forces, be they electric, magnetic, or both. Each individual being, however, radiates its own, unique forces. It has been proven that a particular planet is pleased or displeased by the specific forces emanated by some other planet. We are always forced to fall back upon our old astrological laws found by the ancient wizards, those keen observers of planetary influences, who were able to discern these conditions without modern instruments and were able to establish true rules for the effects such conditions brought forth.

These forces either attract or repulse. The following is a list of planetary likes and dislikes among the planets proper. I will use the plus sign for attraction, the minus sign for repulsion.

Table of Attraction and Repulsion of Planets

	Nept.	Uran.	Saturn	Jupiter	Mars	Venus	Mercury	Sun	Moon
Neptune	—o—	—	—	+	—	+	+	+	+
Uranus	—	o	—	+	—	+	+	+	+
Saturn	—	—	o	—	—	—	—	—	—
Jupiter	+	+	—	o	+	+	+	+	+
Mars	—	—	—	+	o—o	—	—	—	—
Venus	+	+	—	+	—	o	+	+	+
Mercury	+	+	—	+	—	+	o	+	+
Sun	+	+	—	+	—	+	+	o	+
Moon	+	+	—	+	—	+	+	+	o

Stocks that are ruled by Neptune, such as the alcohol stocks, will find no difficulty and will meet no resistance at numbers favoring Neptune, i.e. numbers belonging to a planet that has an affinity to Neptune and therefore to the stocks belonging to it. We see, when checking the above list, that Jupiter, Venus, Mercury, Sun and Moon are in tune with Neptune. They will not try to stop in its upmove any stock belonging to Neptune. On the other hand, the stocks belonging to Neptune will meet resistance at all numbers, belonging to planets incongenial to Neptune during an upmove. Planets resisting Neptune are Uranus, Mars and Saturn, or their equivalent in representative numbers. This rule applies solely to upward movements of stocks.

It is quite contrary, however, when stocks are on their way downward. In this case, the congenial planets try to uphold it, try to stop the decline, while the uncongenial planets delight in seeing him go down; they attempt to accelerate its downfall by giving no support. Thus, congenial numbers will cause resistance points, incongenial numbers will have no effect whatever.

In this respect, when considering Saturn or Mars stocks, you will at once notice that all planets are antagonistic to them, with the only exception of Jupiter which favors Mars. A Mars stock or Saturn stock will find resistance all along the line upward. This is why they go very slow, like old men (vide old black stocks of method #2), but they get where they are heading for. You also will discover, when carefully checking method #1 that they do not respond very well to method #1. It was impossible to mention this fact when treating method #1 because it required knowledge of many laws to make this fact comprehensible.

Early in this chapter particular attention was drawn to the 8th house, which is called the death house. Among the listed stocks on the Board, there were not two stocks that stopped during the bear market when making lowest prices at this death house number. This truth should cause deep thought as to the cause of this phenomenon. Death means death stocks seemingly did not like the idea and did not stop!

end of method #5

Detecting the Change of Trend by Means of critical Degrees

Measuring longitude on the earth is measured from a fixed meridian. Greenwich is usually taken. Longitude in this sense is the angular distance through a place, such as New York City from the fixed meridian, Greenwich. It is always measured from East to West. Astronomical books tell us that the angular distance of a point from a great circle is the angle subtended at the center of the sphere by the intercept of the secondary of the great circle through the point between it and the great circle. The angular distance of one great circle from another is the angle between two great circles. This is the same as the angle subtended at the center of the sphere by the intercept of their common secondary, lying between them. Positions of cities are determined that way.

Their explanation of celestial longitude is as follows: The celestial longitude of a body is the arc of the ecliptic intercepted between the first point of aries and the secondary of the ecliptic through that body. The value found is always expressed in degrees and minute and counted from the first point of aries.

A given longitude of $85^{\circ}15'$ means that the planet is $85^{\circ}15'$ distant from 0° aries. The value would be shown in our ephemeris as $25^{\circ}15'$ Gemini, for we have the sign of Aries 30° long, the next sign of Taurus also 30° in length, absorbing together 60° of our $85^{\circ}15'$, leaving for the sign following, Gemini, $25^{\circ}15'$. In the ephemeris all the work is done already; they are given.

Using the Tables as shown in the ephemeris and checking any possible relation between the longitudes of the various planets to the stock market as a whole, I found critical degrees in the Ecliptic. The effect of these critical upon the market as a whole is astonishing. Whenever Mars or Jupiter arrive at these locations on the Ecliptic in longitude, there is a change in the market. At times we find several planets arriving on one and the same day at critical degrees making a change of trend a surety. These critical degrees are valid for each sign of the Zodiac. They are located at 0° , 5° , $17^{\circ}30'$, 25° . Supposing Mars passes into the sign of Virgo as will happen on September 26th, 1936. Then we should find changes coming into the market the moment this planet passes over the 1st degree, over the 5th, the $17\frac{1}{2}$ th and the 25th degree. This phenomenon occurs through every sign of the Zodiac. The same is true with Jupiter; it also applies to other planets in a minor way. A planet such as Sun, Mercury or Venus due to their fast motion reach these degrees so often and soon that they cannot be used as indicators singly, only in connection with several hitting on one and the same day. It means a change for example, when Mercury happens to be at 5° of a sign, Venus passes $17^{\circ}30'$ of some sign and the Sun may enter into a new sign, thus crossing 0° and this all on one single day. In case Mars or Jupiter happens to pass one of these critical degrees also on that specific day, you surely will have a change in the market. Under change, we understand a new cycle. Therefore, when the movement happened to be upward until the day the change is due, we should move downward or, when other indices allow it, we can make a gap upward. You should have ample facilities on hand to distinguish which has to happen, especially when you know that the event is due on this day. In such a case watch your method #1 if an $8\frac{1}{2}$ move is completed; watch the volume as we approach the time for the change; watch all the factors of the other methods and combine those indicating a downmove and separately those indicating a possible gap upward and weigh carefully. We also must know that the various planets have various effects in the different houses

and you have to search old charts what effect each planet actually did have in past cycles upon the market. This is one reason why I find the movements of the various commodities much easier and surer than those of individual stocks. I have made myself charts for practically every commodity for thirty, forty years on a daily basis, such as wheat, cotton, cottonseed oil and it is from checking back the effect of the planets that I arrive at what the effect should be now. With stocks, you only have a handful that are older than twelve or fifteen years. They have not gone through a series of major cycles as yet and therefore you have to rely on secondary factors, which, as you may well realize, are not absolutely safe. This brings me once more to the statement that you should concentrate on one or two single stocks or commodities, because if you know only one and well, you can make all the money you can use and then some. Later on I will bring another reason to warrant this statement.

The other tables given in the ephemeris are not required for our work, such as latitude, declination. Thorough tests on my part have revealed that they do not contain such critical points.

This method operates, of course, in harmony with the others. Many times you will be able to detect small, sharp moves that otherwise would not be understood and that would cause uneasiness.

Explaining the simplest astrological methods you now will note that we are drifting completely away from price and swing into time only. We move away from the dollars that are in the market and measure Nature's change of mind in the feelings of the human trader.

Price changes become an "accident" while time changes are the concrete facts. These changes are caused by planetary positions in the heavens and are known and the direction of the flow of the tide can be easily arrived at. The planetary positions act only when a definite degree, a definite minute and second is reached in the Zodiac. Such events can be calculated to the second when they must happen, not when they may happen. On such a day, hour, minute and second all the cycles of our other methods will also agree and produce a bottom or a top. On that day you then must either buy or sell, as the case may be, ask no questions, expect no replies. The time of the cycle is up, the public changes its mind, its attitude towards stocks or commodities, a condition which cannot be felt physically, but figured. Is anything easier, safer? Bear in mind, that the markets are to the laymen a common gambling ground, to a few an open book, consisting of rhythms of pre-destined amplitudes, not a maze of uncertainty and guess work. Buildings, twenty stories high are filled with statisticians, selling analyses of stocks on strength of earning and what not to the greedy, by the hundred thousand, knowing as little as the statisticians themselves; on the contrary, they recognize them as "Giants of Finance and Economics" and pay them for their "information" hundreds of dollars each per year, which, as far as the market is concerned, is not worth the paper on which it is printed.

Millions of people are successful in their own lines of business. They observe subconsciously the laws of Nature. The swings of business are not so pronounced as those of the market. The same laws, of course, remain underlying. Most businesses supply necessities of life and as long as we have people living, they must purchase such necessities. The profits in such enterprises are strictly limited by keen competition. Man, as a rule, chooses the easiest path to earn a livelihood. Comparatively few work out of this rut. These few, however, step right into enormous difficulties, especially when entering the markets. They try to operate in the market under the identical laws which they carried along from their line of business. But they find that these laws will cause them to

gradually, but surely, lose their money.

Still, the stock market and commodity market afford the greatest possibility of making money constantly without much risk, without much effort, provided the work is done exclusively within certain laws and rules, however far fetched and unbelievable they may sound to the average business man. This is the secret of the market. The operations of the multitude are wrong and necessarily so. Who else would carry the costs, commissions, taxes, the fairy-like brokerage offices down-town? The proof is seen in the persistent and steadily dribbling losses taken by the majority of investors, speculators, traders, bankers and others. Only those who have within themselves vibrations attuned to the market responding thus automatically to tops and bottoms, or those who have been able to use Nature's laws, can measure with great exactness the dates of change. The first group will never be able to forecast movements. It simply is a "something" that causes them to buy or sell and discover later that they were "right again". Their response is spontaneous, but does not go beyond the present.

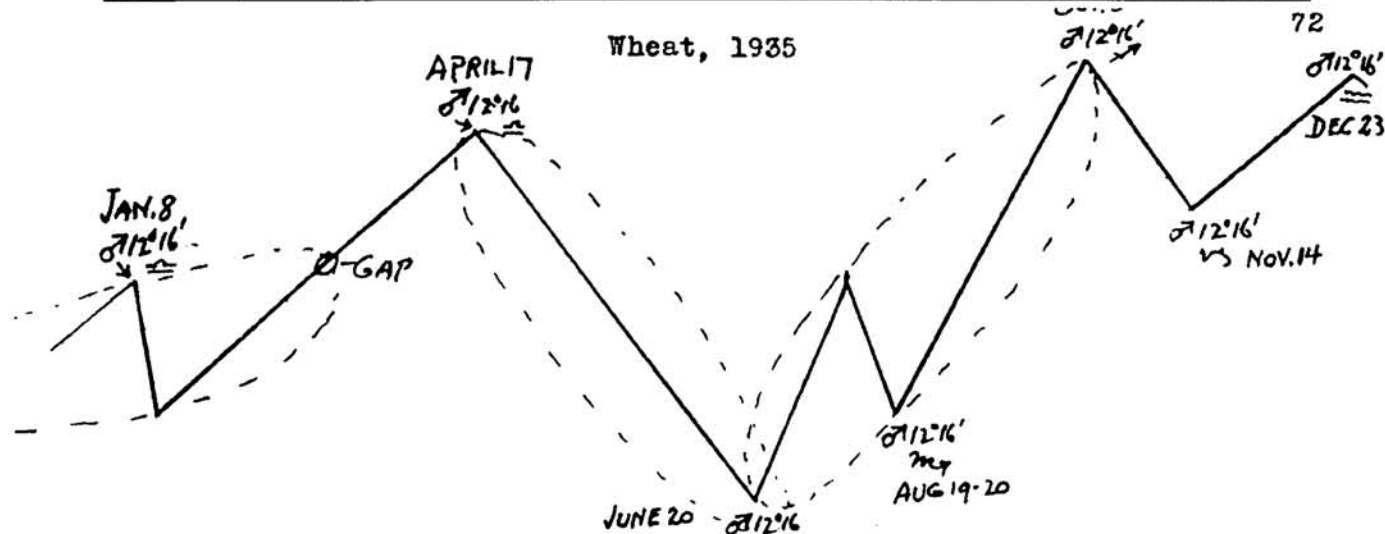
When making commitments in a stock, by either buying or selling it short, creates immediately thereafter a somewhat mixed feeling of hope and fear within any man. Supposing he bought a stock. He hopes the market will be favorable to the upside so that he can realize a profit; at the same time he fears that the market might not go up; in fact, he dreads a downmove. To conquer this feeling is almost impossible, at least with the millions who merely guess which way "the cat might jump". Even with all the methods explained herein, it is difficult to overcome this feeling, although it gradually will wear off.

At times, when an important move is in the making, which is about the only time to visit a broker's office, watch the crowd in their psychology! This is more fun than a Broadway show! See these creatures buck Nature's laws, respectively abiding to the same which ever you may call it, buying stocks or commodities right at the top of a move, happy as children who just received a "gift", while on the other hand, when Nature provides a bottom in the market, these same crowds, sell the erstwhile previous bargains for the proverbial song, far below actual values, fearing they might go lower. Nature is generous, but wicked withal. The market shows these sides in the truest fashion.

The law of critical degrees as given above refers to the market as a whole and, when following them in individual stocks, you are apt to take severe losses, although you may be right as to the trend of the general market.

Therefore, I had to do some more research to overcome this difficulty. Here is the result: Each stock reacts (also commodities) at specific degrees and minutes of the Zodiac to one or two planets in one or two positions. Taking wheat for example, we note that Venus and Mars and no other planet brings about the changes therein. These two planets, as they cross $23^{\circ}20'$, respectively $12^{\circ}16'$ of a sign, produce changes. The stock Philip Morris acts only on Venus and the changes occur when Venus passes $17^{\circ}30'$ of any sign. Each stock must be searched over a period of time and the planets bringing about the changes decoded.

In 1935, wheat made its important tops and bottoms exclusively the moment Mars passed $12^{\circ}16'$ of a sign. A rough sketch will show it:



At the same time, Philip Morris (MOs) acted as follows:

Venus at 17.30'	Aries	gave a bottom	on March 12th, 1935
"	Gemini	bottom	April 30th, 1935
"	Cancer	bottom	May 28th, 1935
"	Leo	top	June 24th, 1935
"	Virgo	top	July 31st, 1935

From August 18th, 1935 until September 30th, Venus moved retrograde and its motion was very slow, accounting for the sidewise movement in that specific stock during this period.

You may note in this example that in the sequence of the signs, we miss the sign of Taurus. This sign does not bring about a change in this stock. You further note that we have three bottoms to begin with and two tops to end with, so that some other planet is playing into this stock that brings about the reversal not found quoted herein. You may plot the daily motion of this stock for 1935 and find that planet yourself and the degree and minute that must be used.

I found that Cottonseed oil responds to the motion of Mercury-Neptune, that the prices of butter simply move up and down according to the aspects of Jupiter-Venus and, aside of that, in perfect ellipses.

end of method #6

This book is rather difficult for the man who is new to Wall Street. There are no bulky chapters devoted how to write buy-slips, how long it takes to execute an order. Nothing is said about commission rates, taxes or premiums. A day or two spent in a brokerage office will enlighten you more about the "red-tape" than the several volumes you can buy in bookstores. Of course, these writers have nothing tangible to write, they use this to fill a book. It is my belief, however, that inexperienced persons will master the contents of this work easier than the "experienced" Wall Street man, who for years burdened himself with a heavy ballast of exceptional important economic statements. He undoubtedly will find it difficult to forego such information invaluable to him so far. But to this man, a complete reversal is the wisest course.

Just as we measure a cube by length, width and breadth, a star by longitude, latitude and declination, so we measure the position of a stock or a commodity by volume, price and time. The river "time" contains the boat called stock market and individual stocks float along this river "time" with millions of other little boats around them. On the borders of this river are situated a number of search lights or

beacons, that send forth rays to this little boat as well as to the other boats, directing its motion. These beacons are the planets. Each beacon contains a specific type of ray, different from the others. The influence of these rays upon the stock market boat has been explained, causing what is commonly known as tops and bottoms.

What the author has to offer

- 1) To act as investment counselor to investors and swing traders in stocks or commodities
 - 2) To handle discretionary accounts for clients, whereby trading is done by him for the account of the clients
 - 3) To teach the astrological interpretation of the Bible in series of lessons, beginning with the first book of Genesis
 - 4) To teach in series of lessons astrology, elementary as well as advanced
 - 5) To teach advanced astrology, the five-fold horoscope
 - 6) To teach methods of forecasting markets for long periods
 - 7) To analyse your holdings of stocks and bonds.
- **A weekly bulletin, containing the analysis of stock and commodity movements at close range, is also offered. subscription rate: \$9.00 per month, \$25.00 for three months. ****

Students may obtain the necessary articles to operate with charts at the following rates;

K&E paper, 20 sheets for \$1.25; 100 sheets for \$3.50.

Celluloid transparent protractor \$1.00

Ephemeris of planet's places, any year 60¢ each

Ellipses, 6 inch and 9 inches, the pair \$2.00

Copies of daily high and low charts for stocks or commodities on K&E paper, ready for use, per year \$2.50 each.

Address all communications to: George Bayer, 3216 Crescent Street,
Long Island City, N.Y.

FINIS

BIBLE INTERPRETATION

By

George Bayer

Originally Published by

Copyright, 1937

By George Bayer

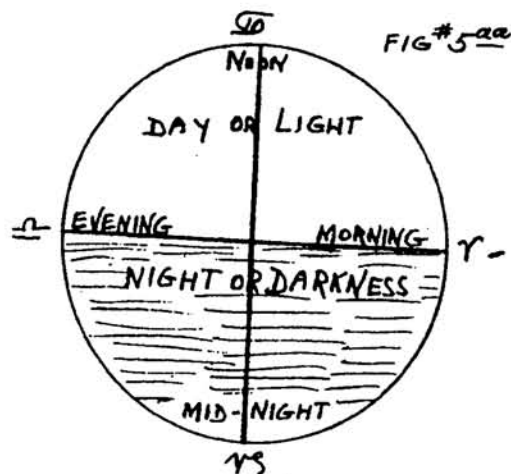
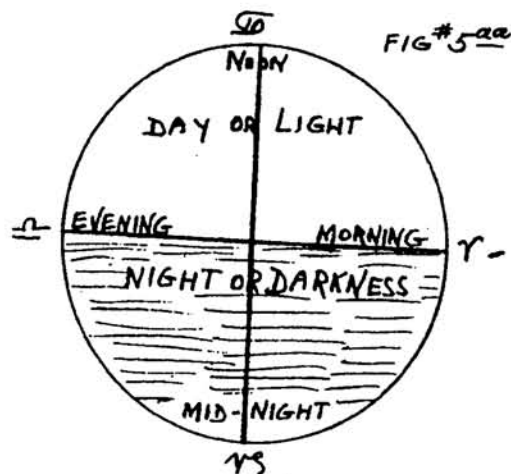
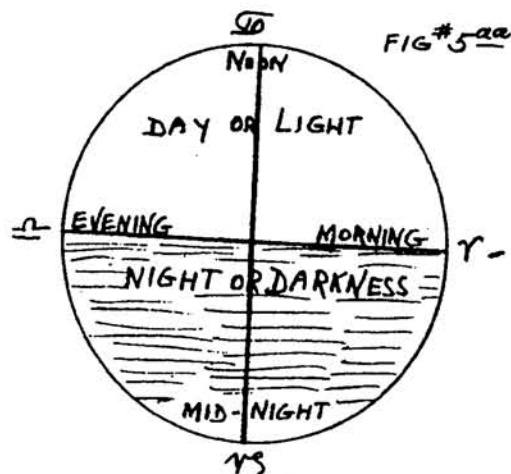
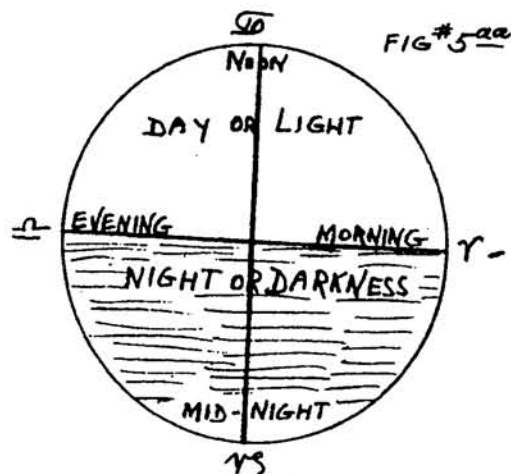
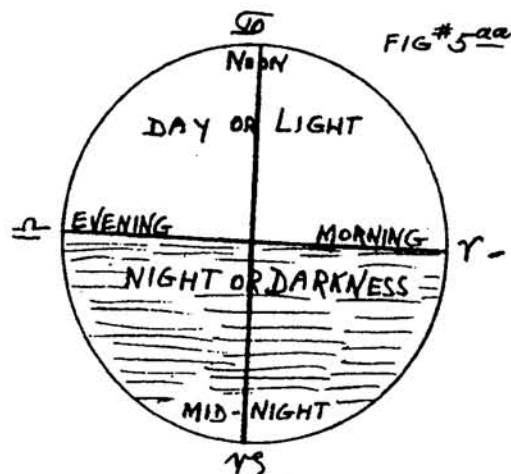
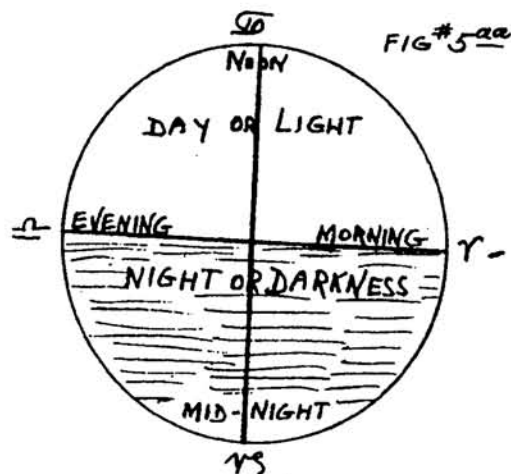
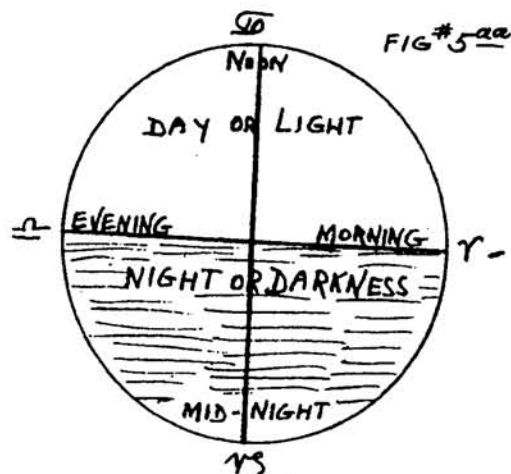
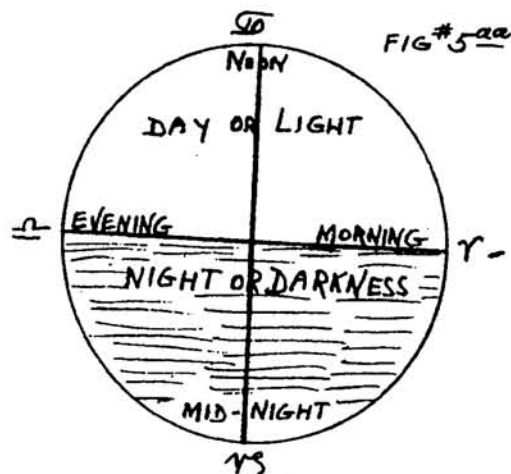
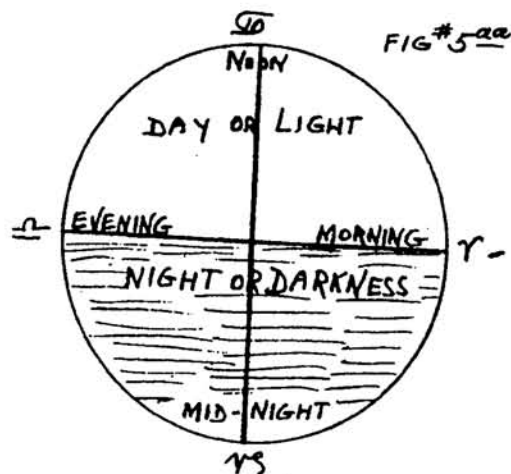
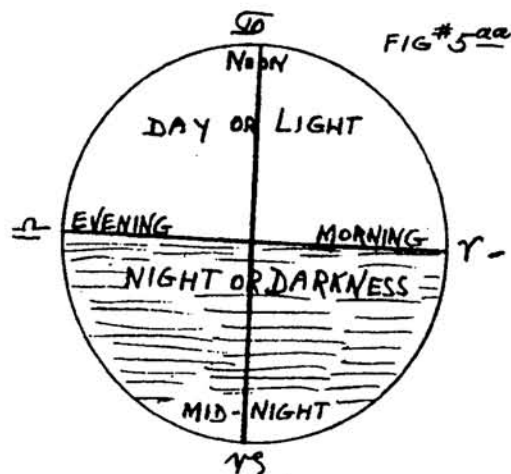
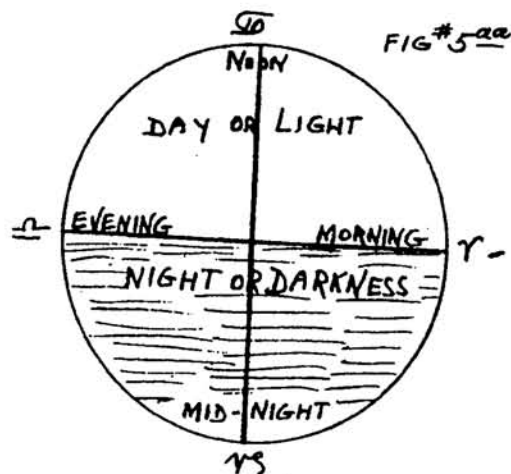
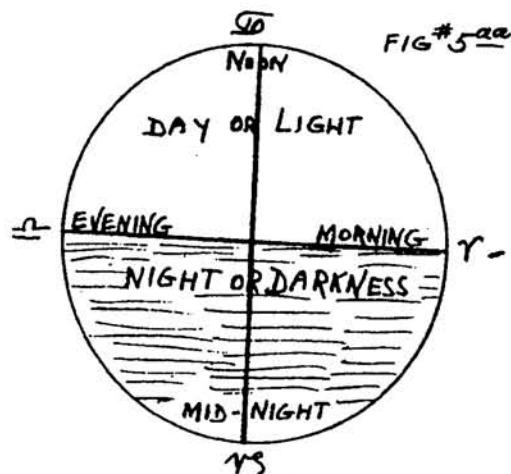
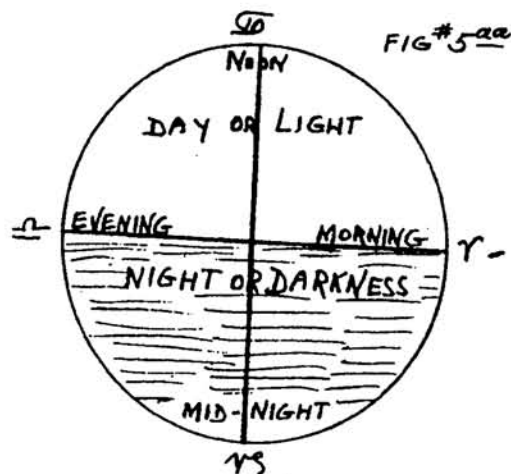
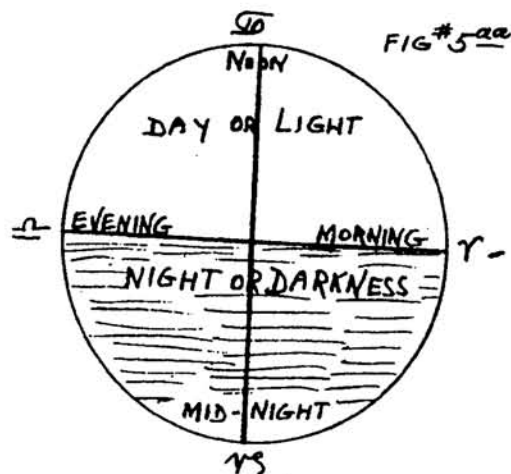
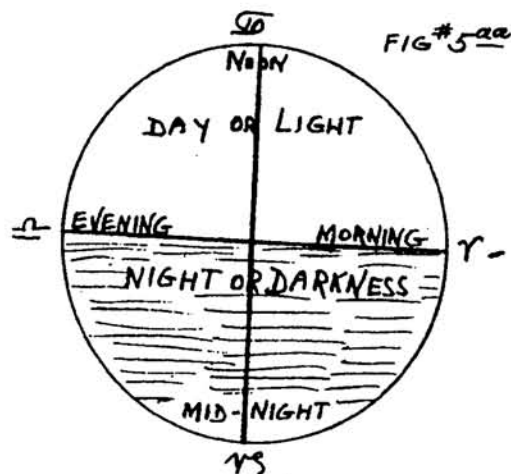
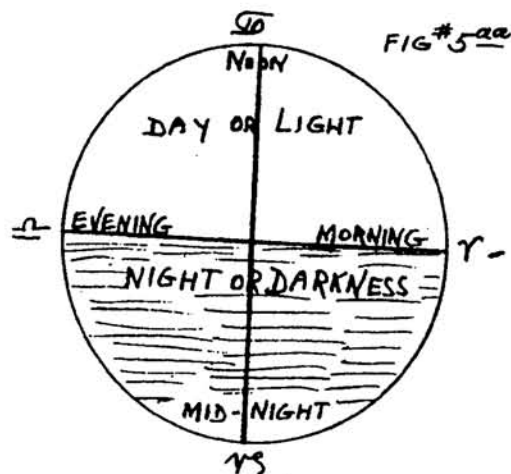
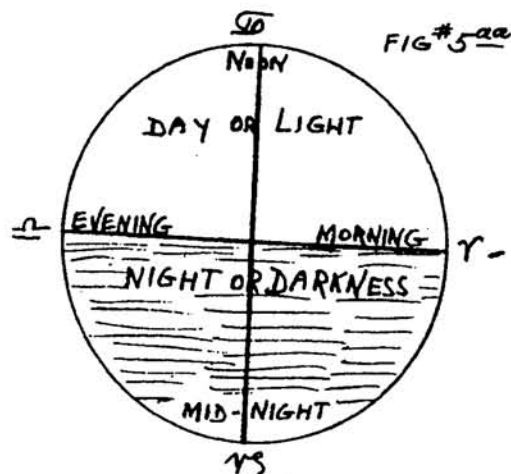
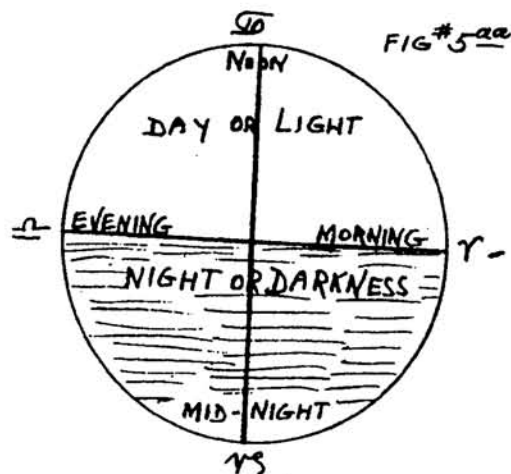
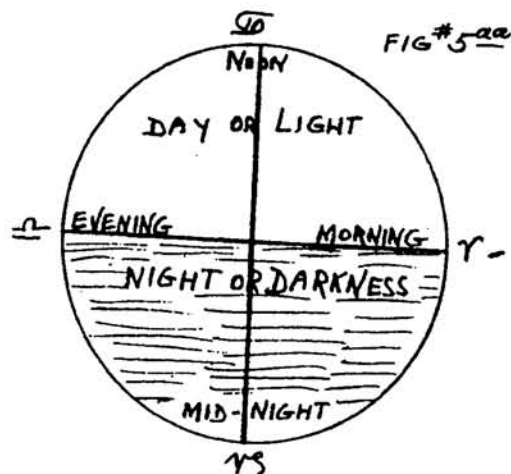
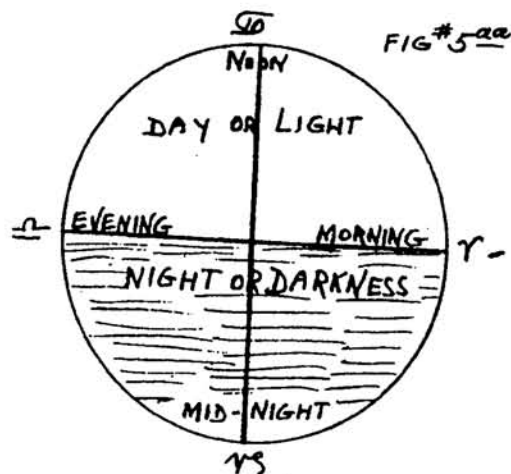
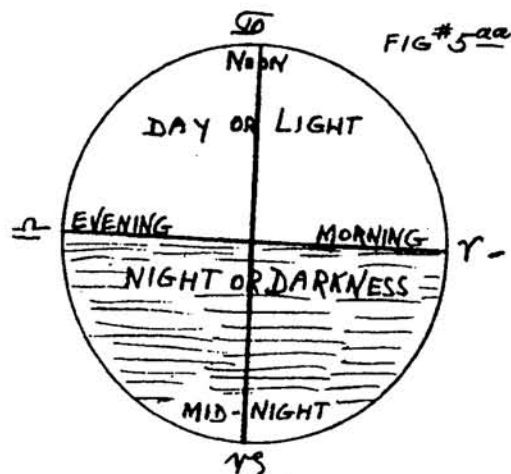
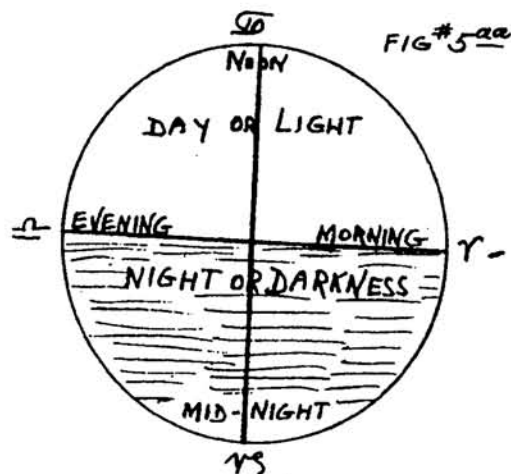
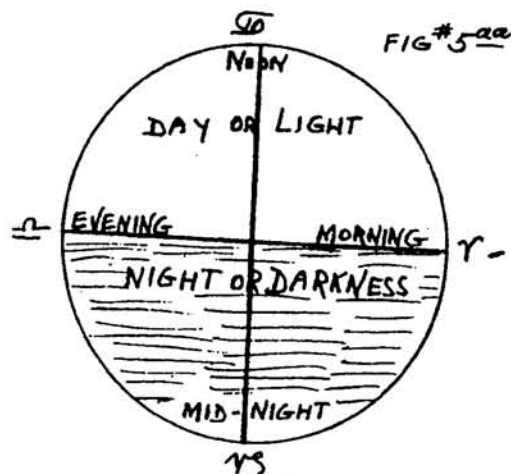
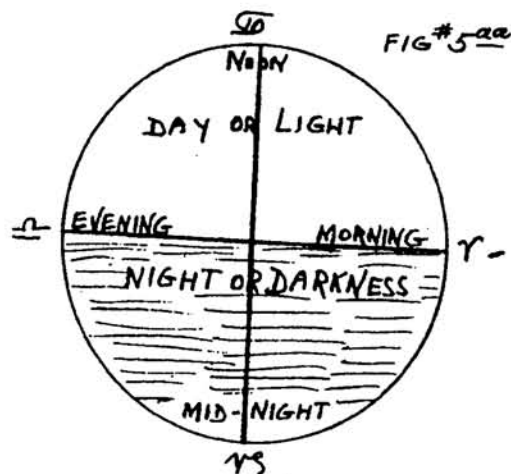
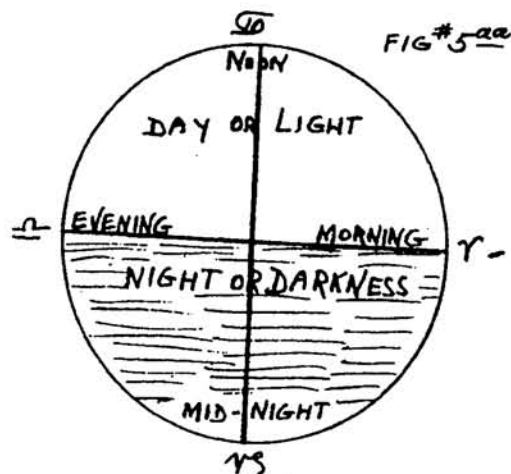
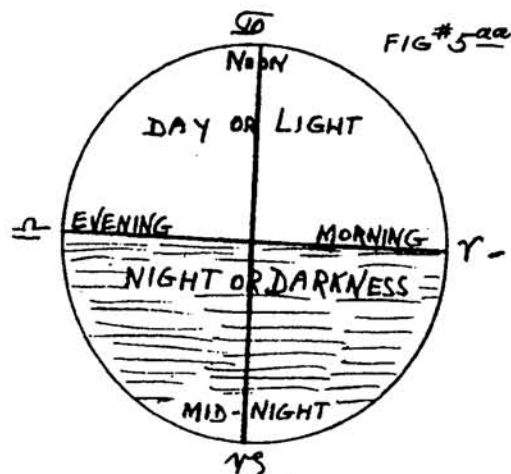
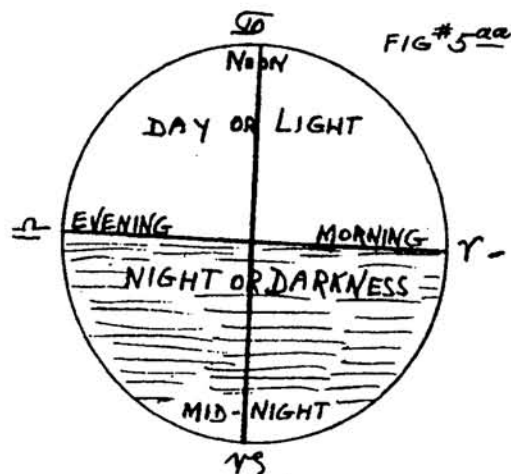
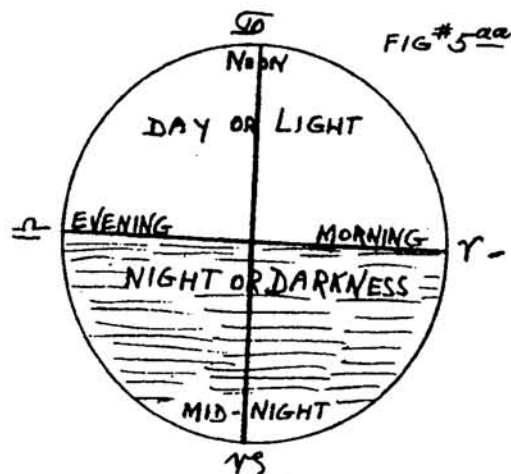
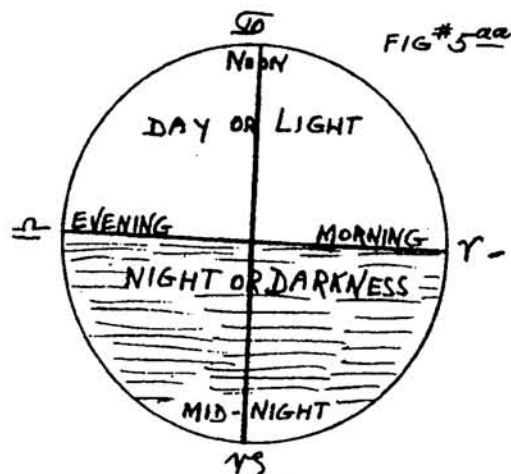
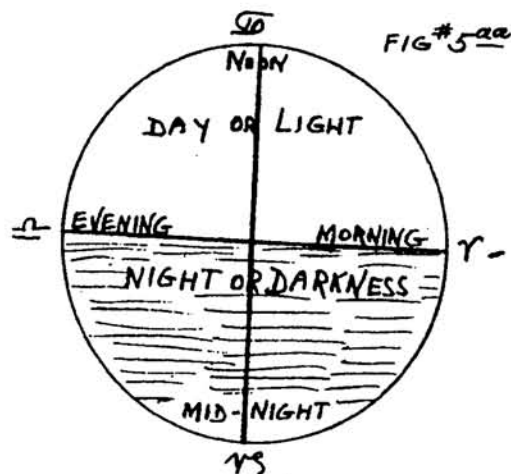
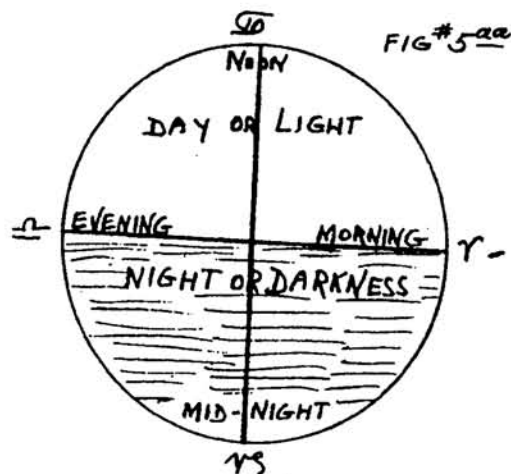
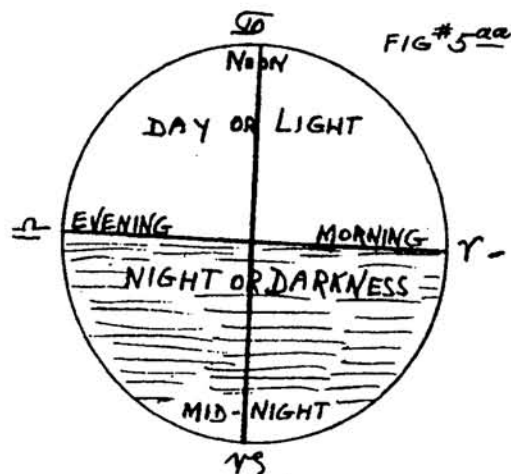
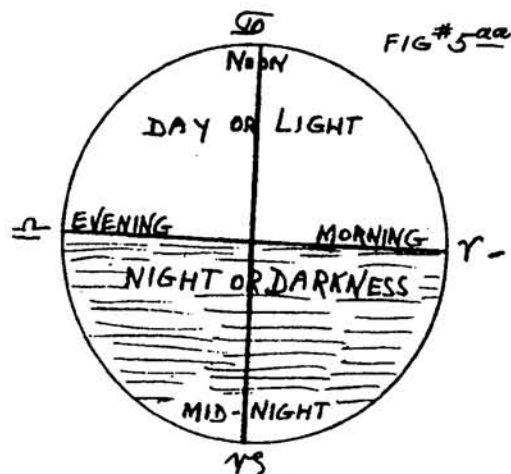
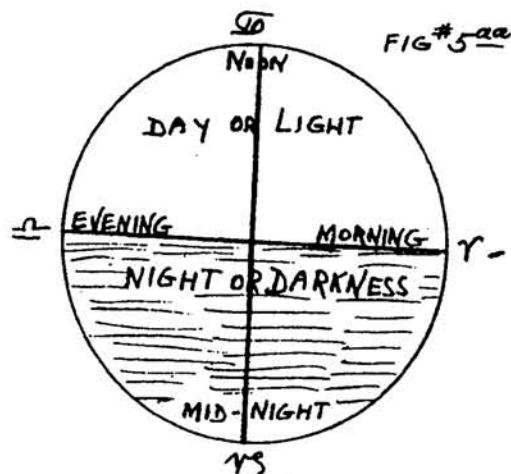
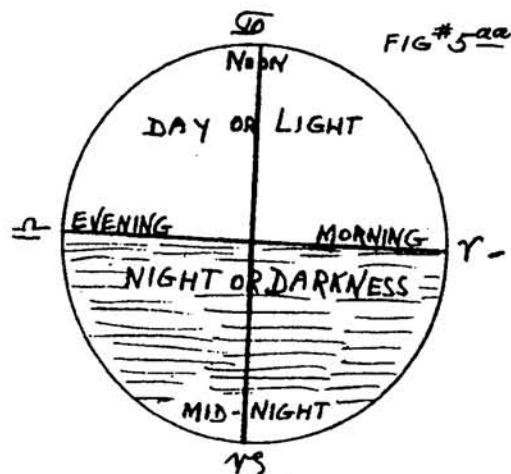
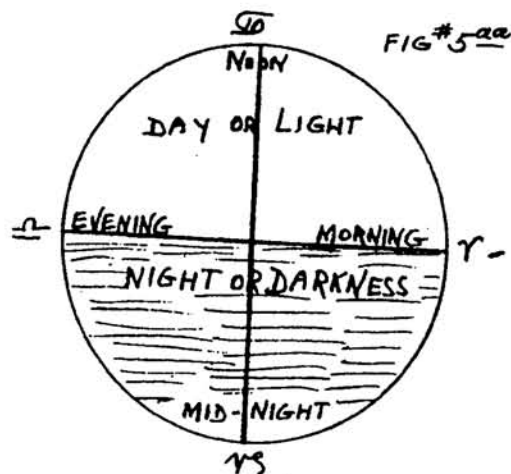
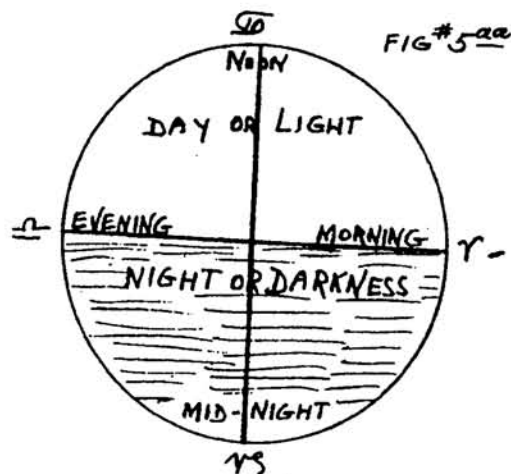
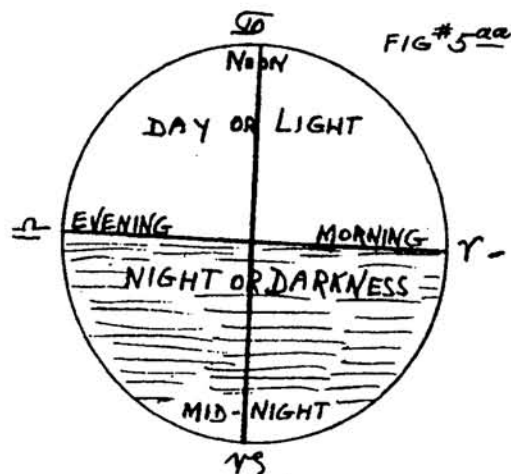
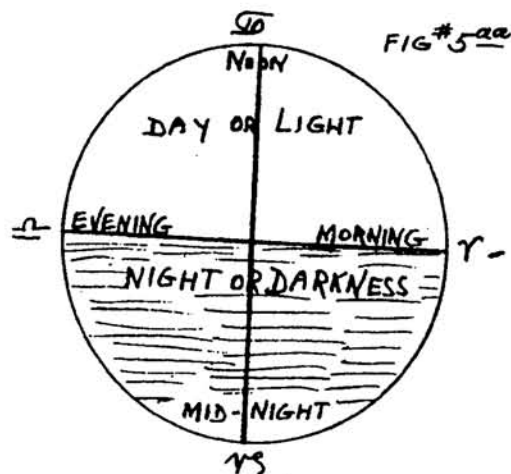
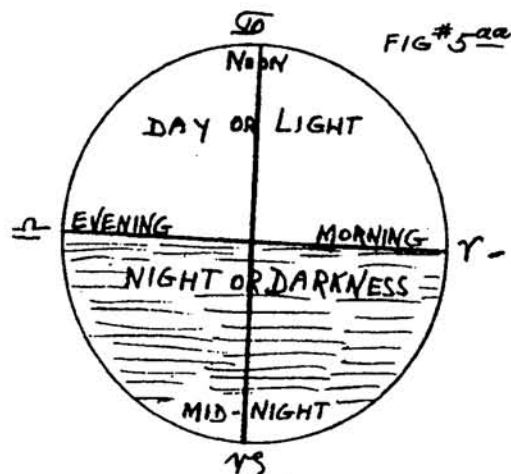
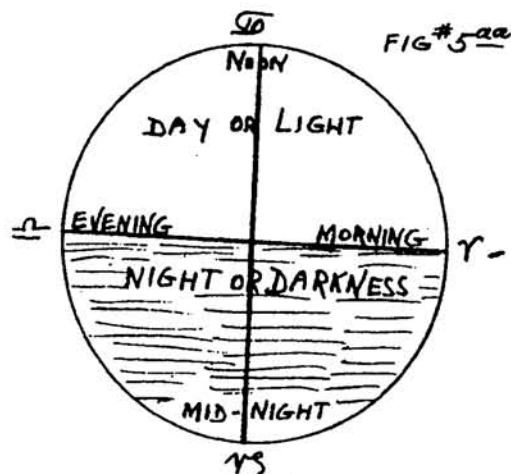
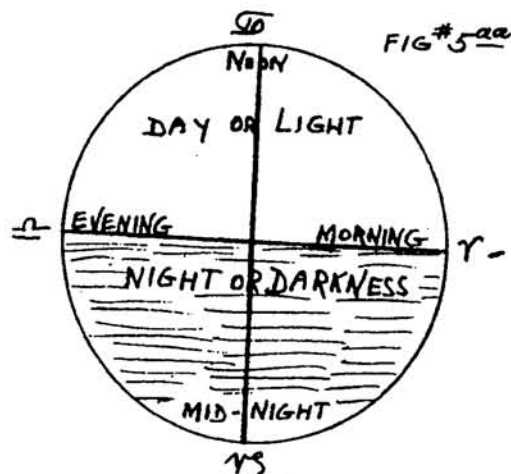
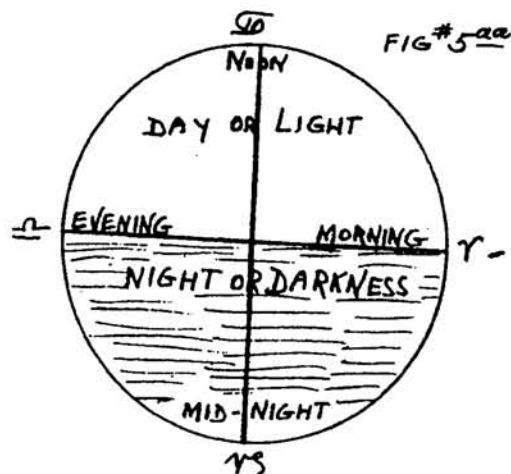
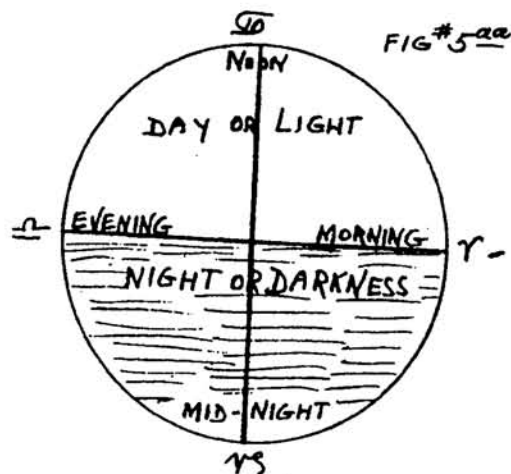
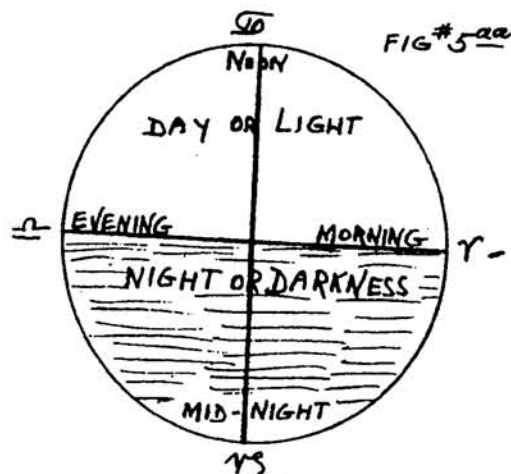
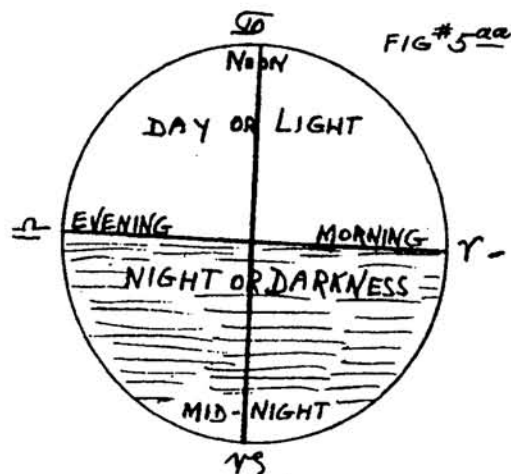
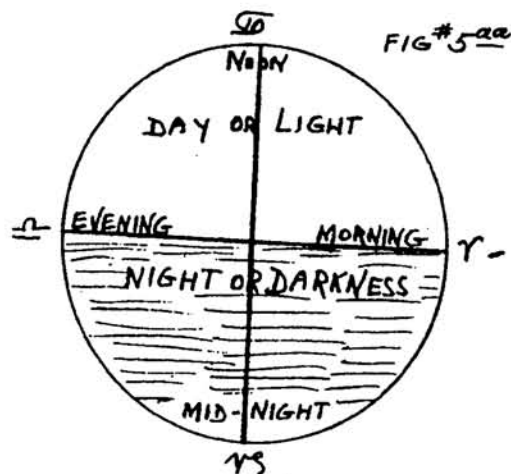
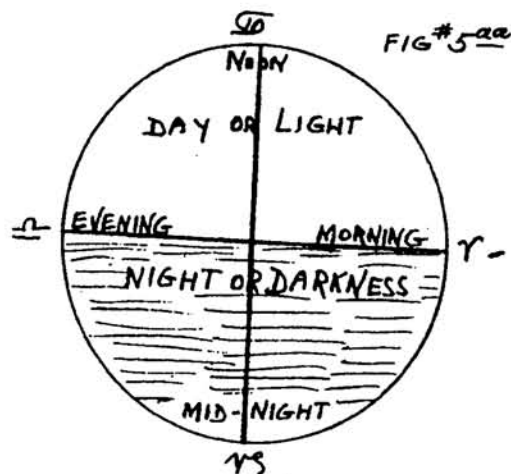
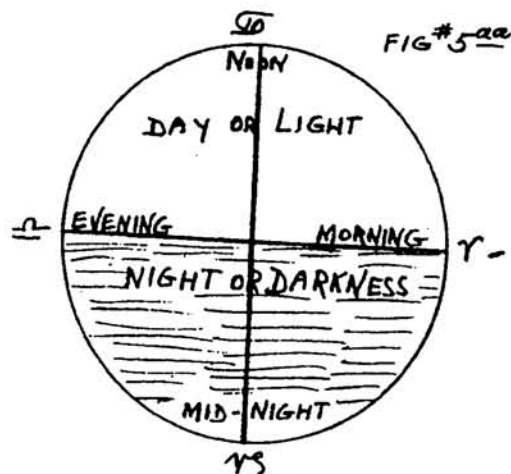
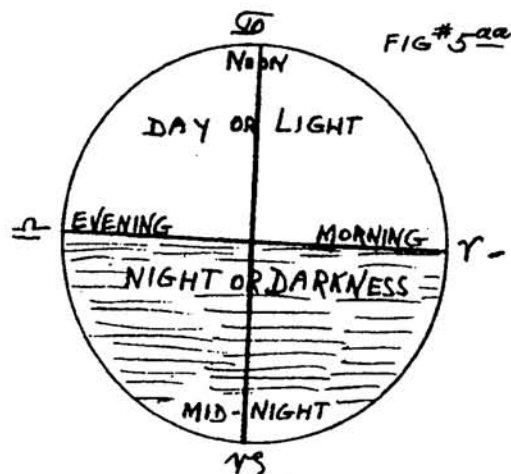
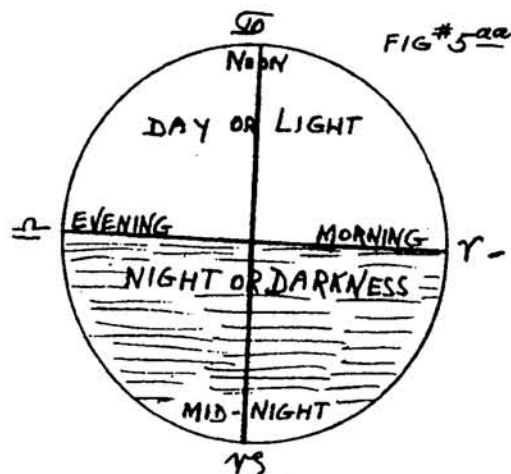
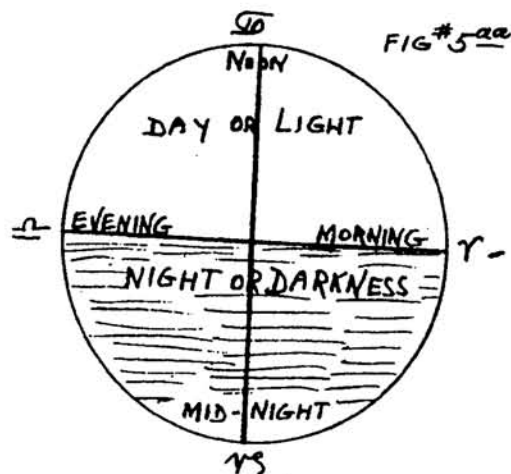
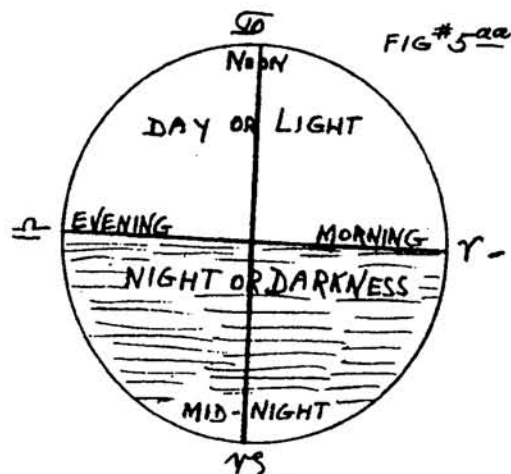
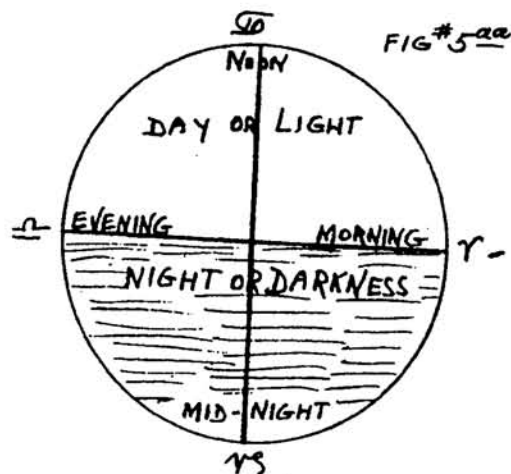
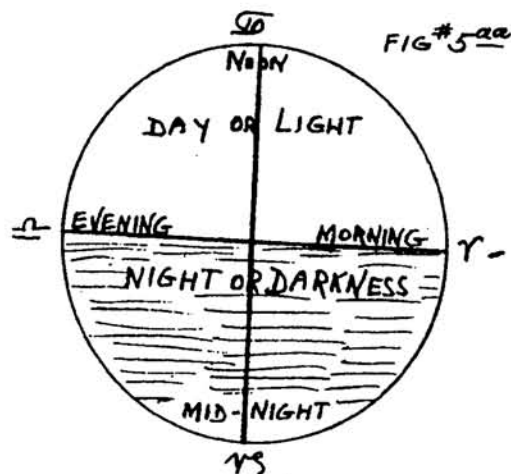
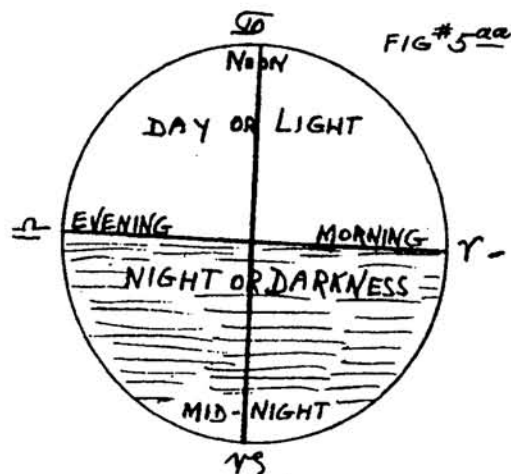
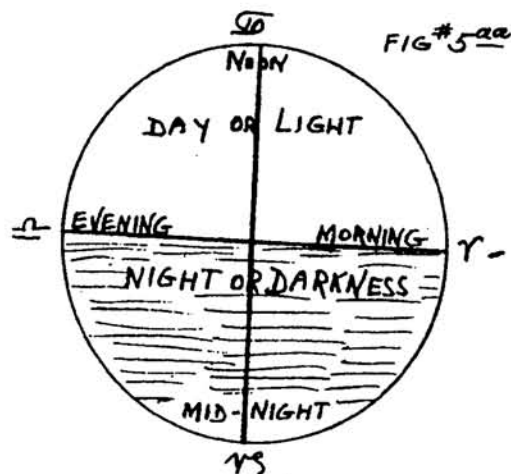
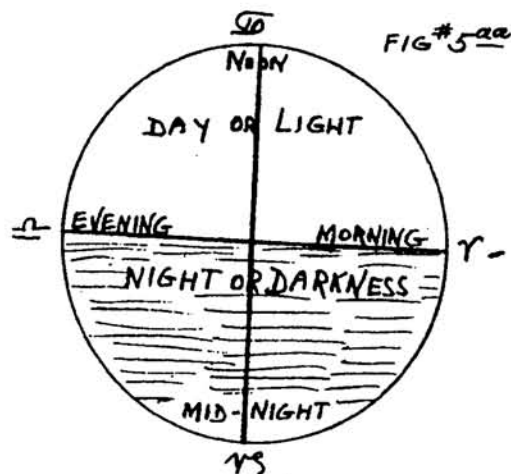
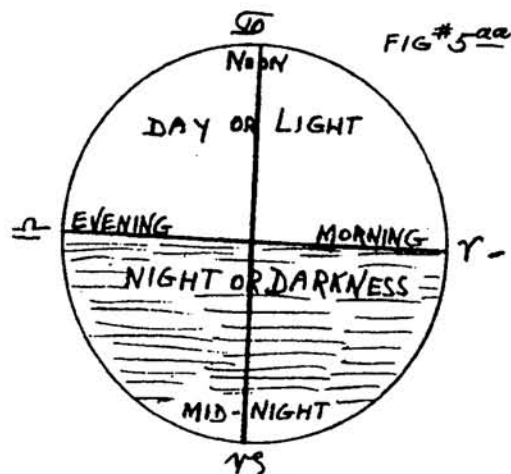
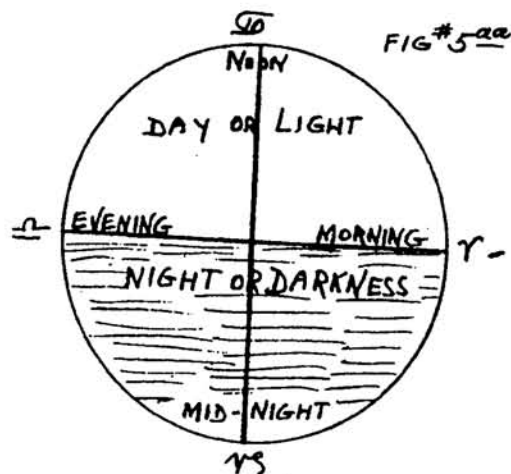
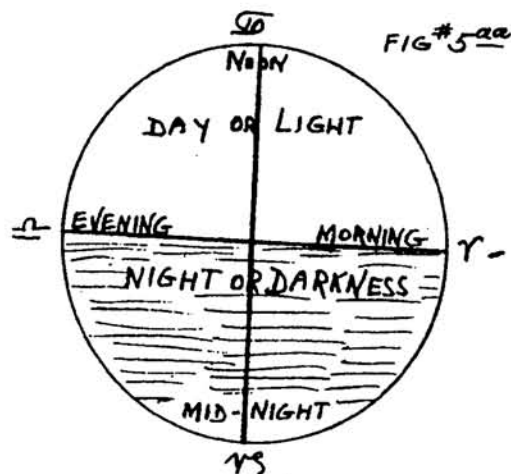
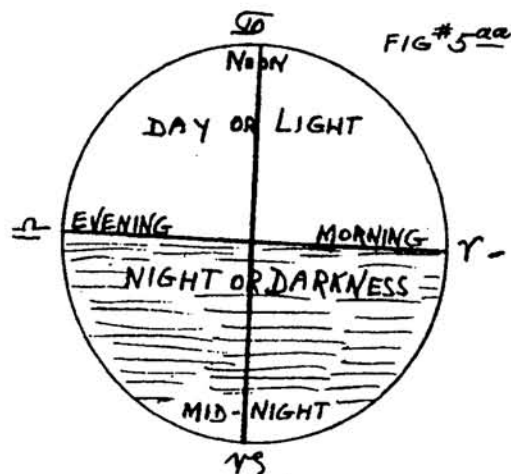
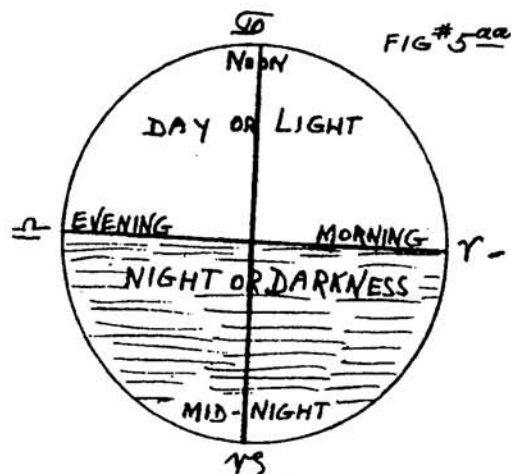
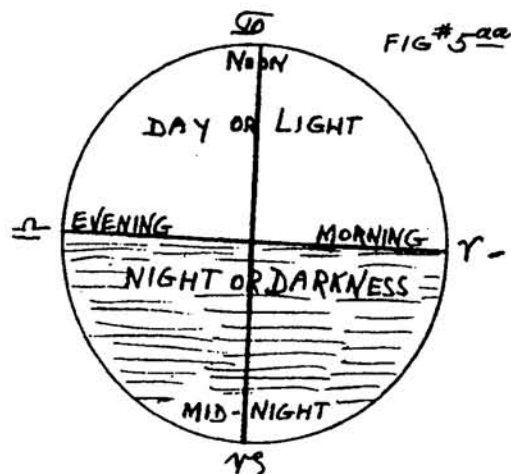
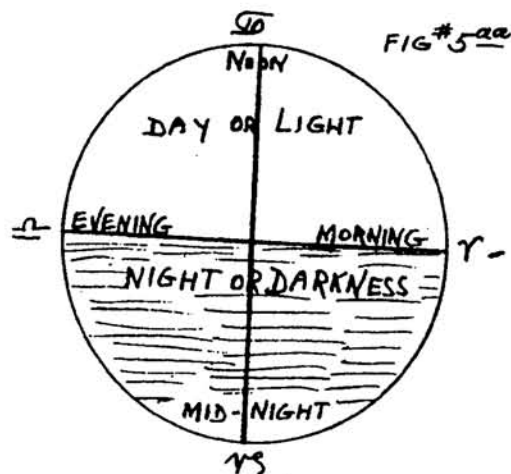
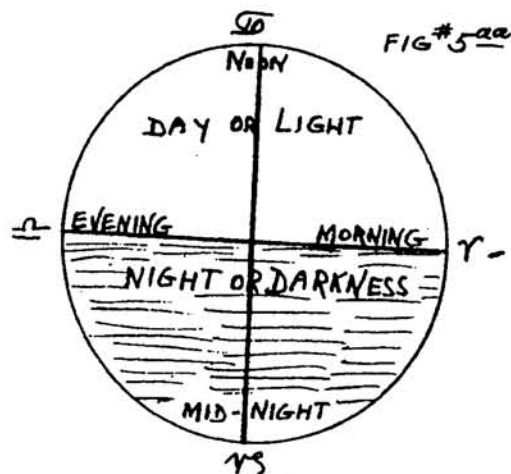
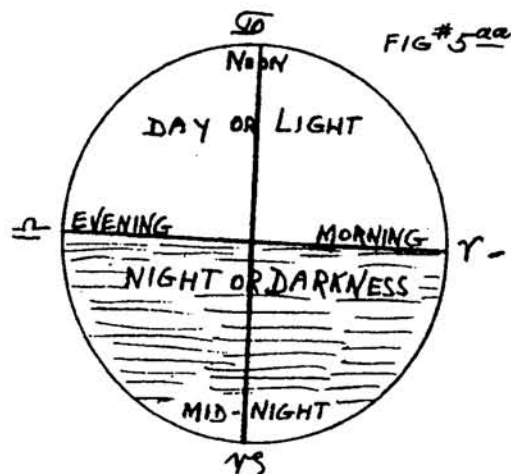
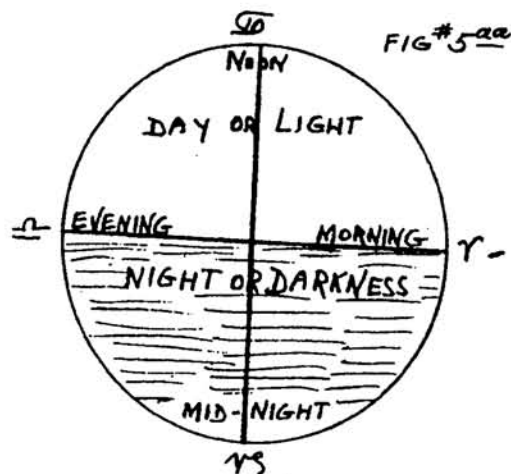
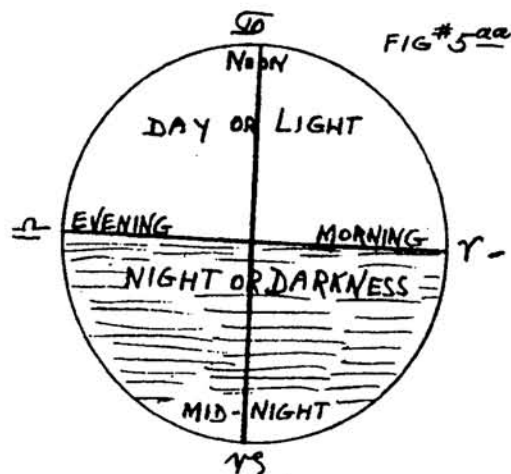
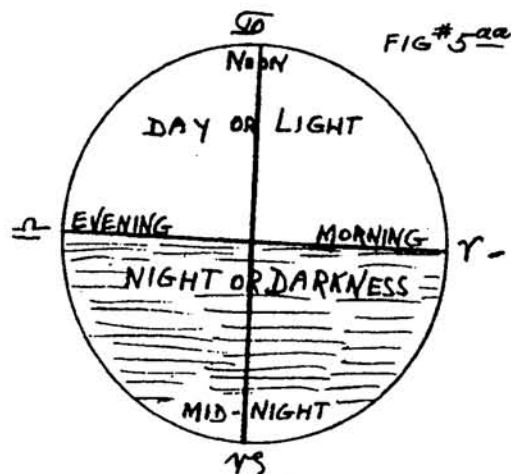
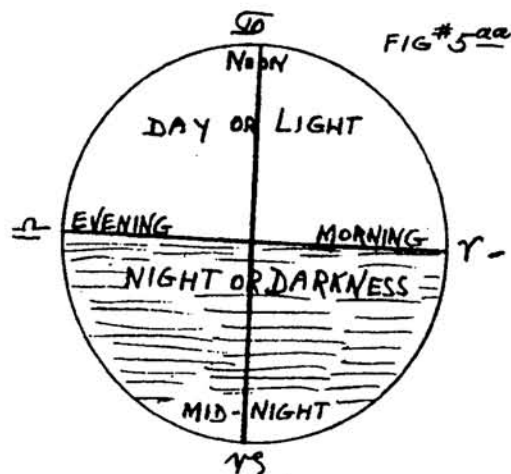
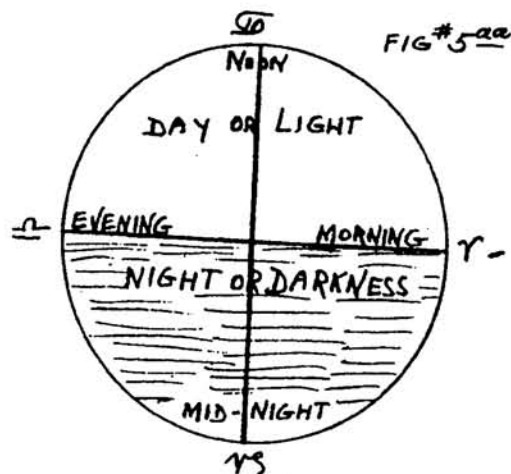
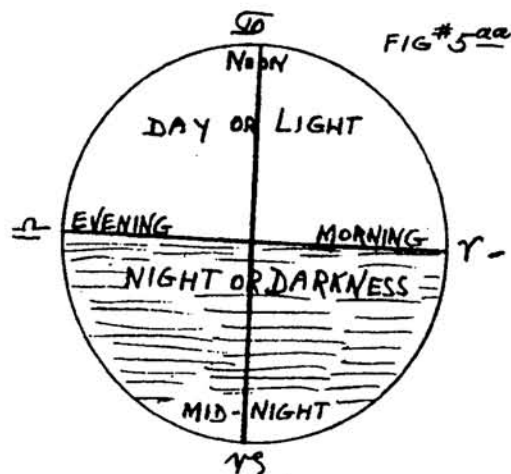
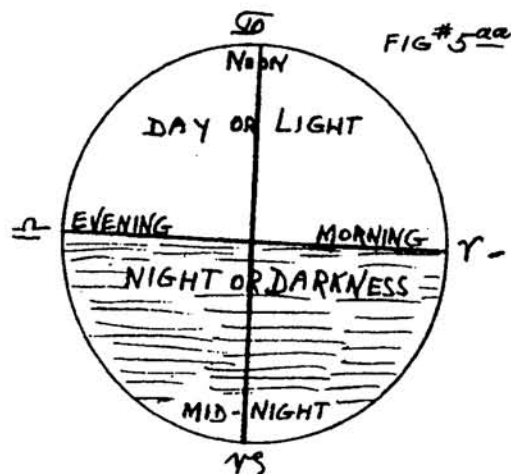
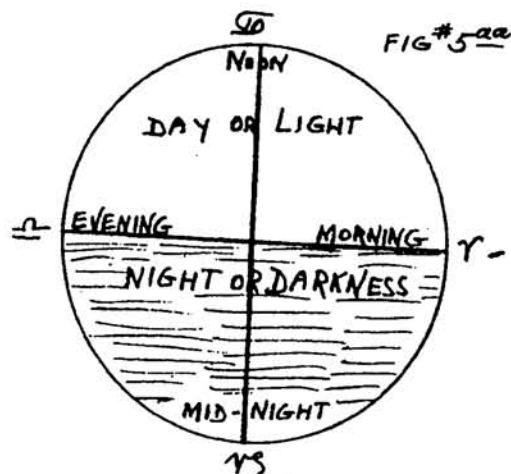
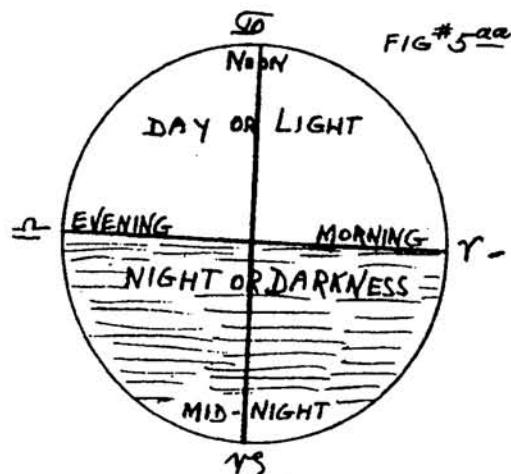
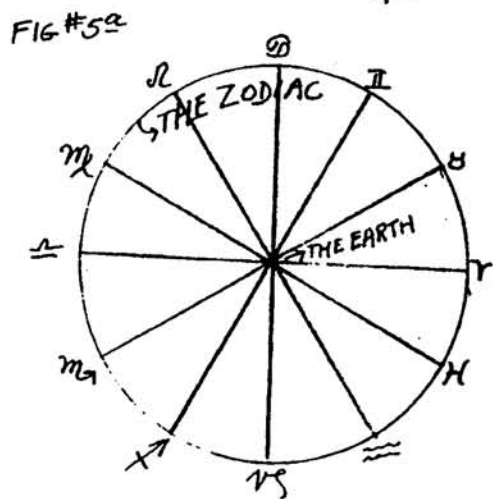
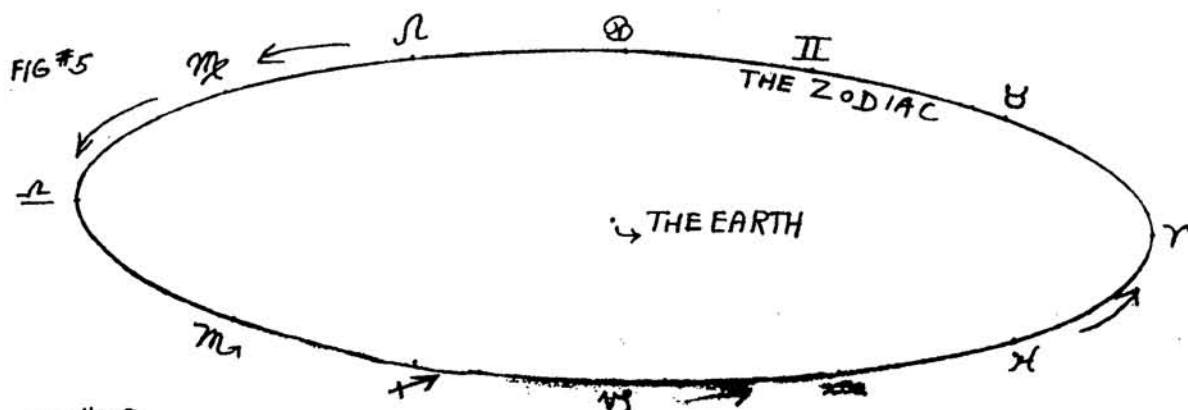
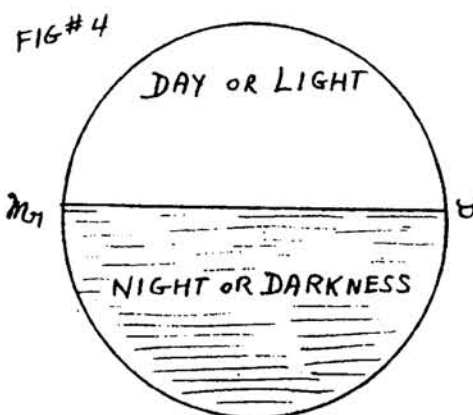
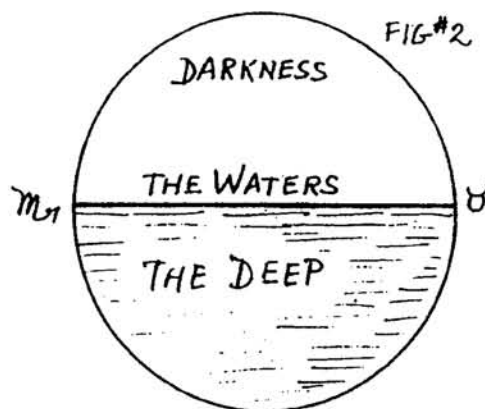
3216 Crescent Street,

Long Island City, NY.

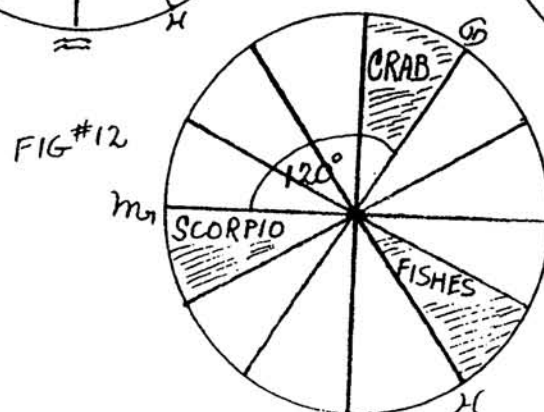
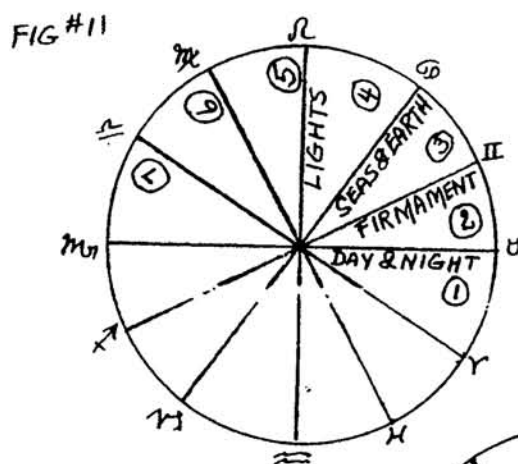
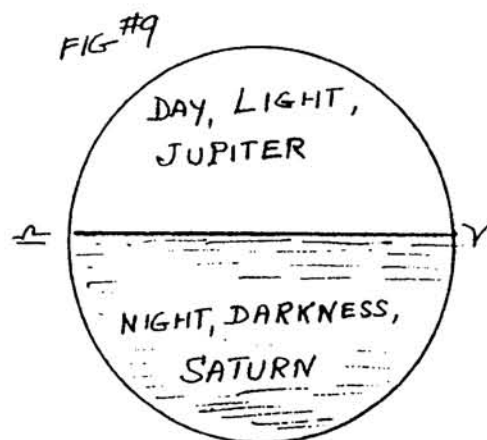
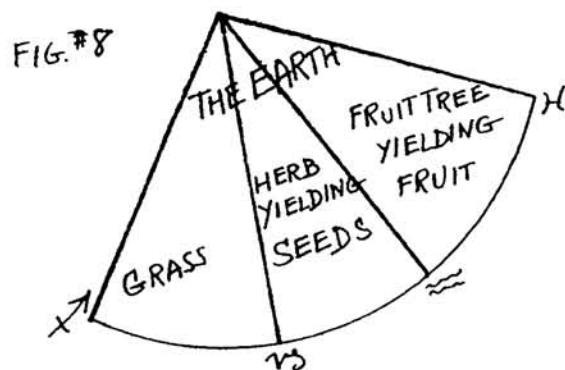
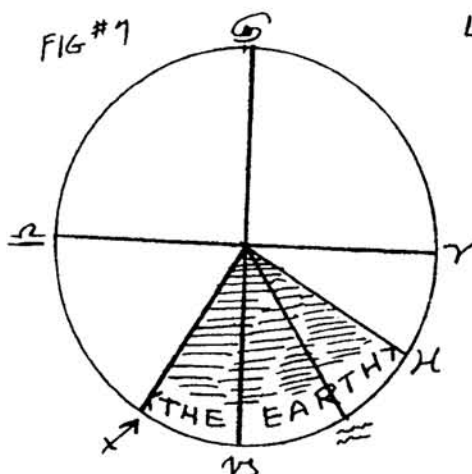
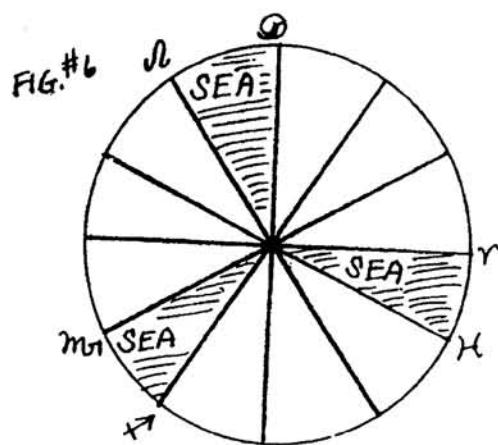


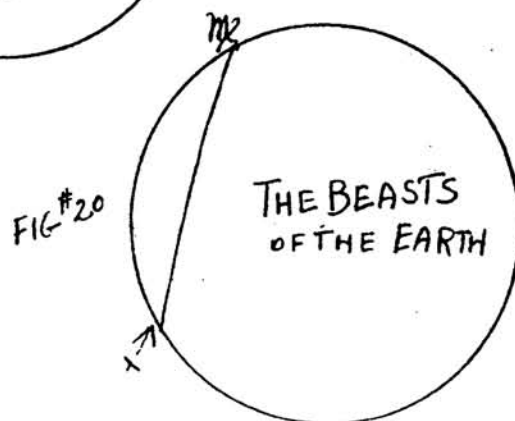
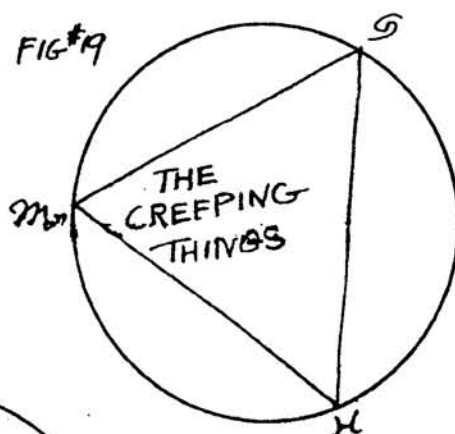
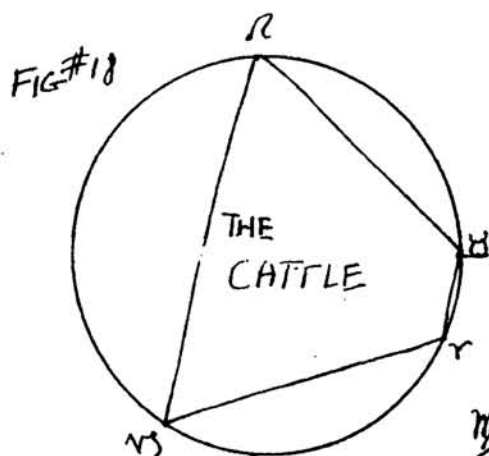
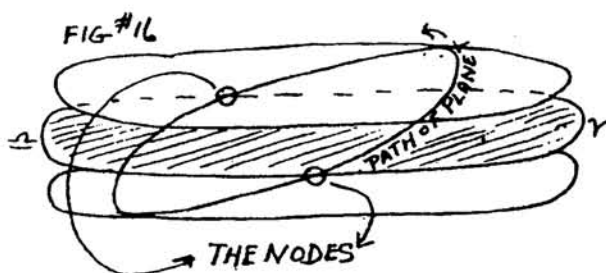
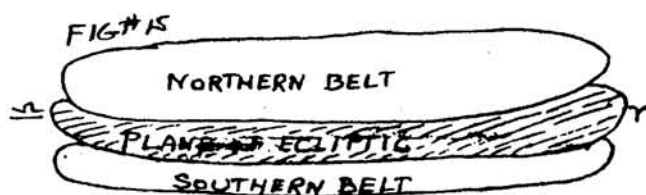
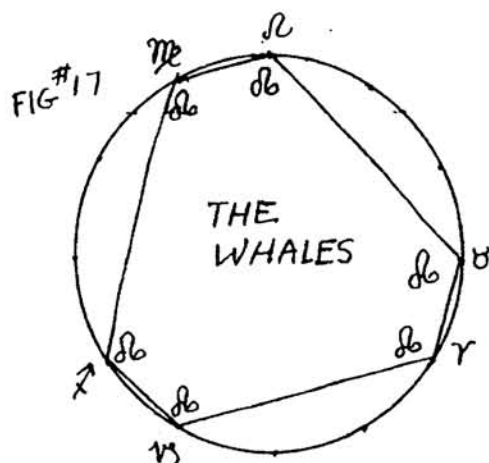
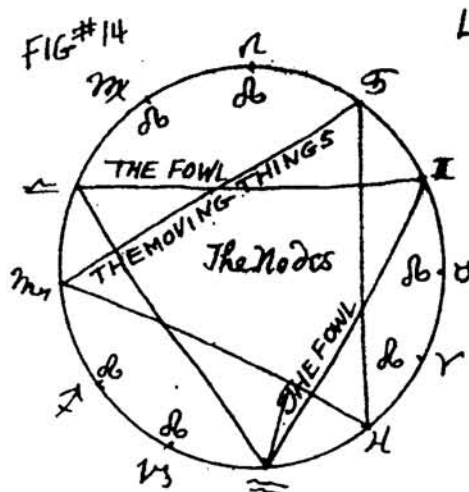
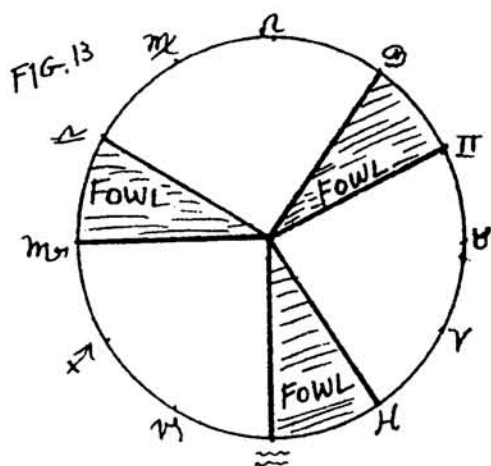
SACRED SCIENCE INSTITUTE

WWW.SACREDSCIENCE.COM

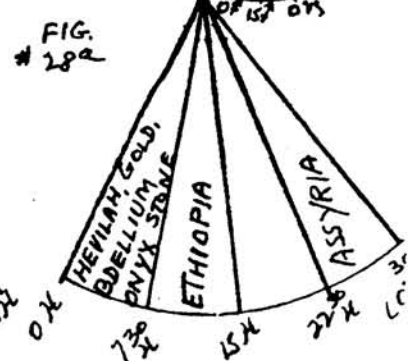
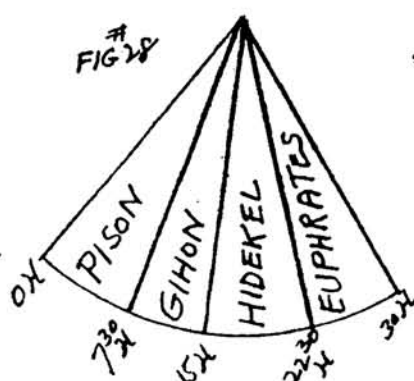
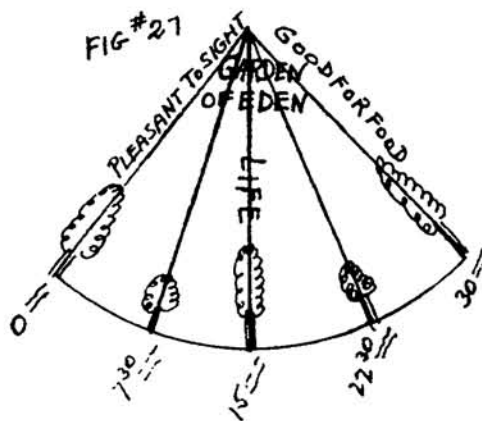
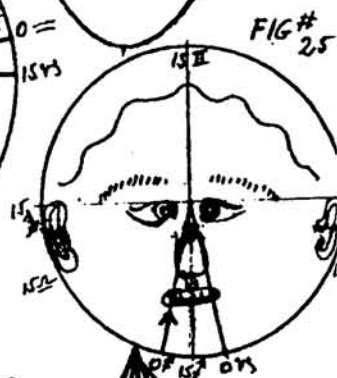
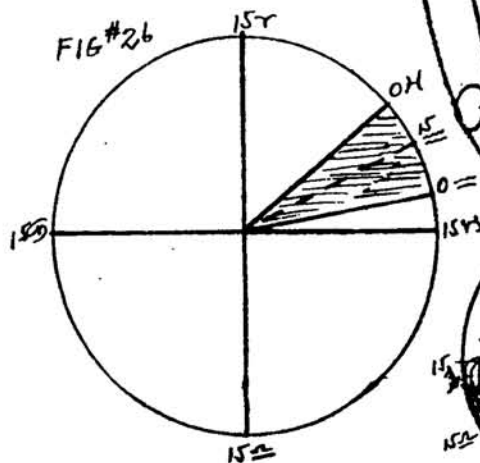
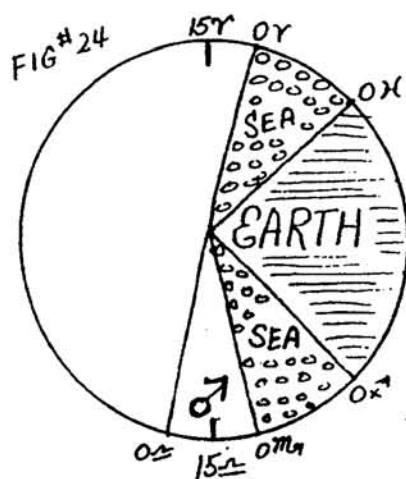
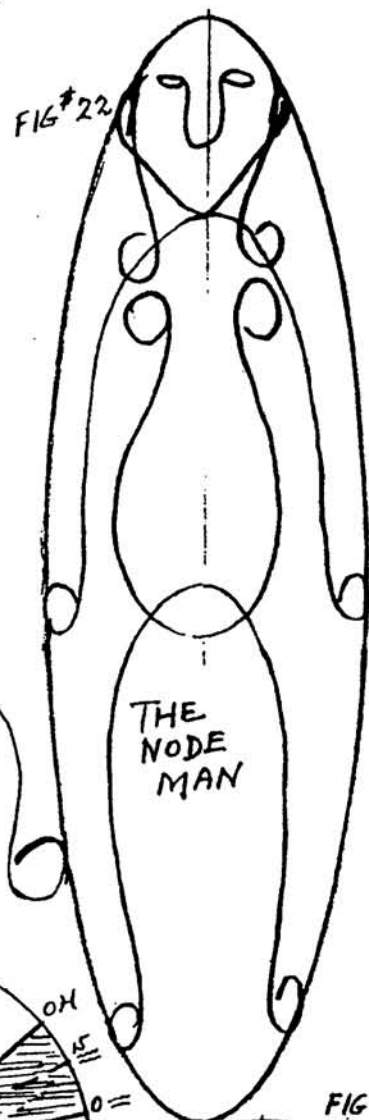
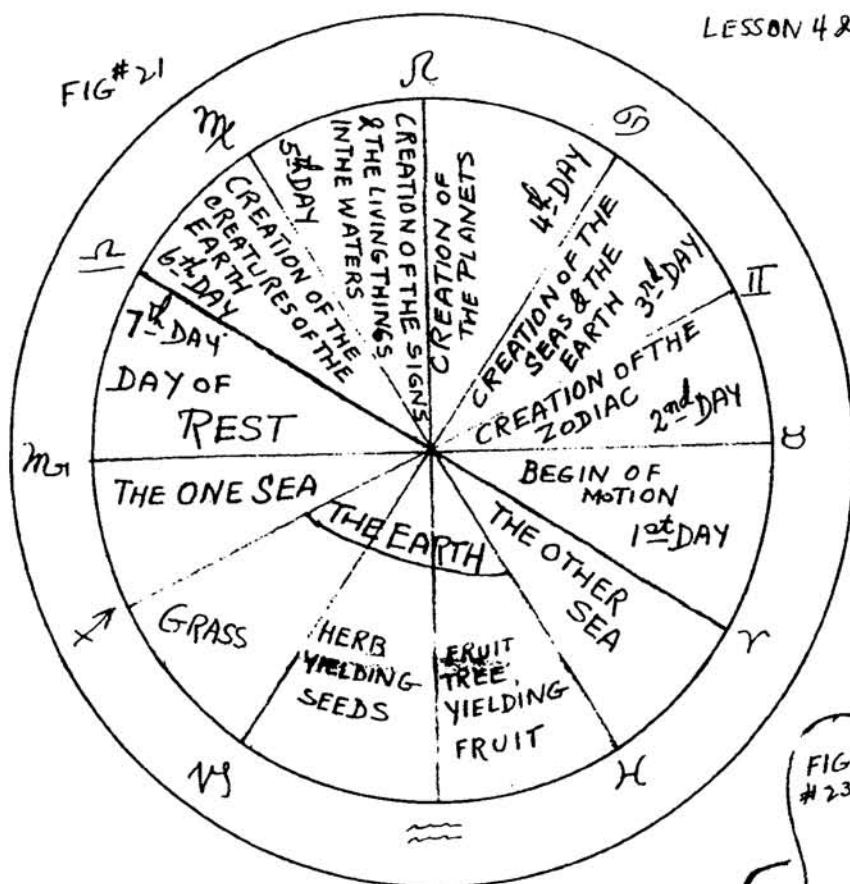


LESSON 2





LESSON 4 & 5



Illustrations for lesson #6, pages 11 and 12

Fig.#29

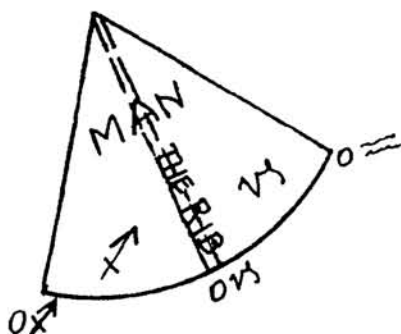


Fig.#29a

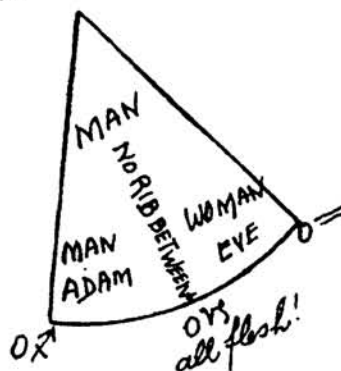


Fig.#30

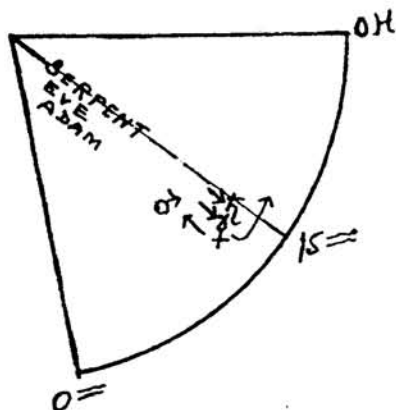


Fig.#30a

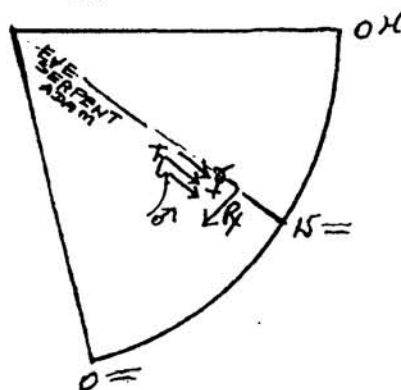


Fig.31

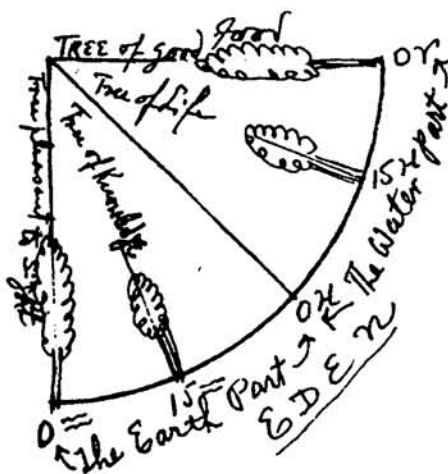
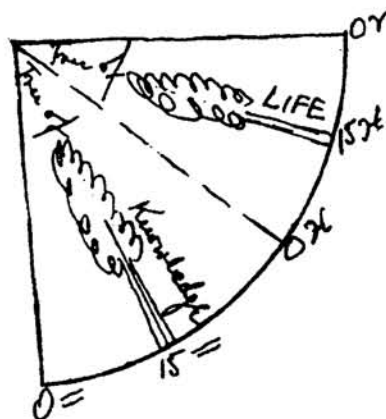


Fig.32



Lesson #7
pages 13 & 14

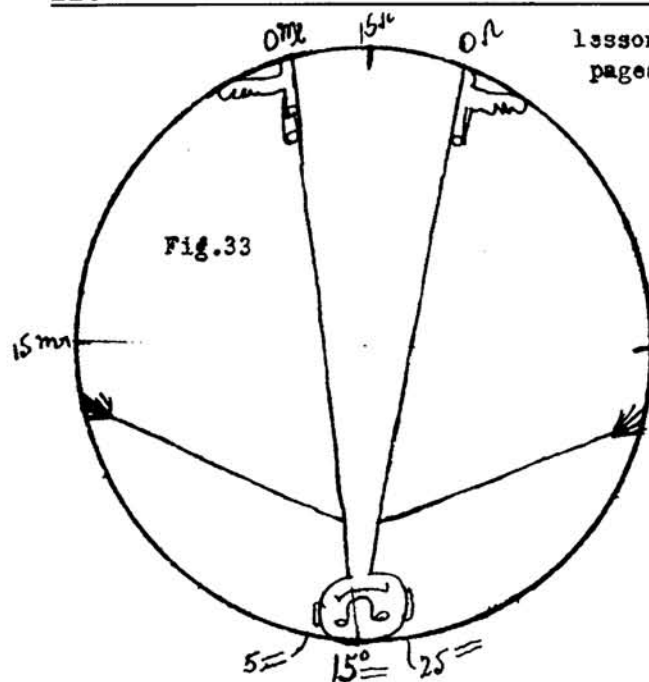


Fig. 33

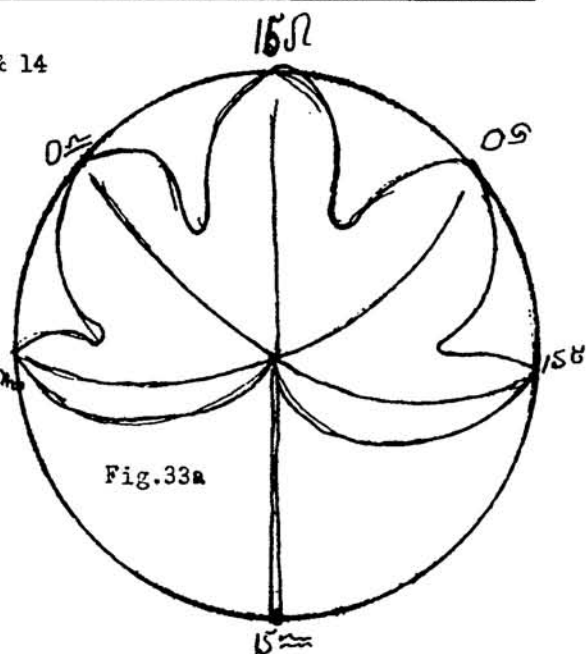


Fig. 33a

Fig. 33b

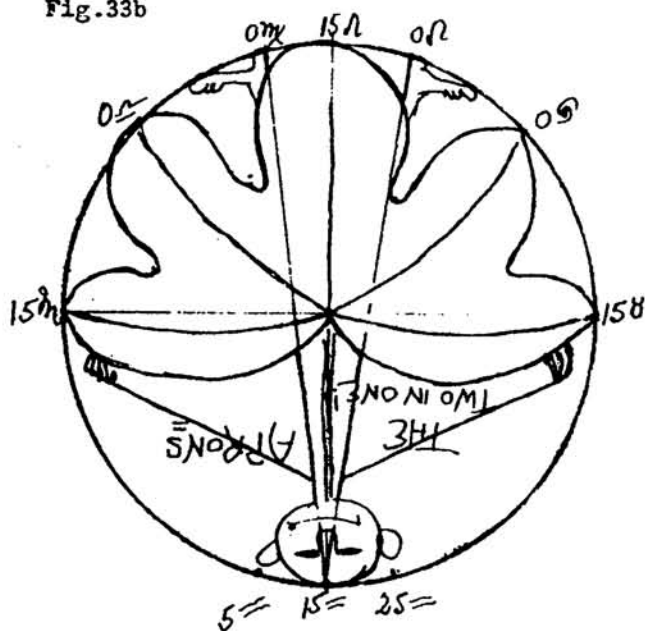


Fig. 34

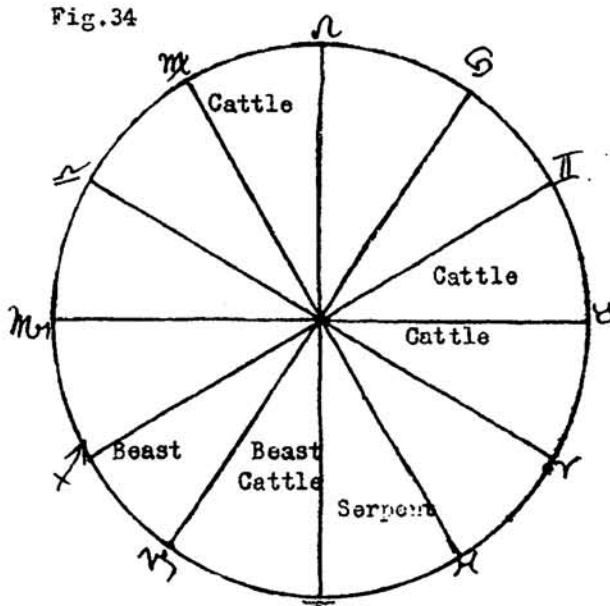


Fig. 35

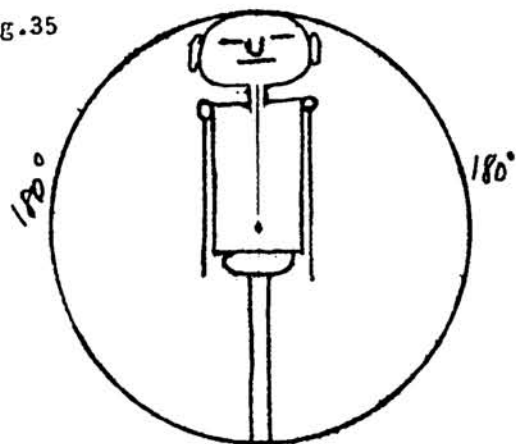
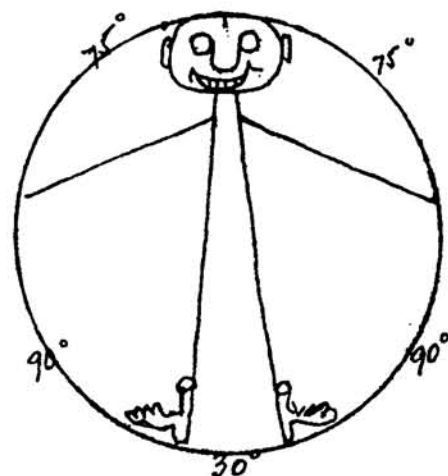
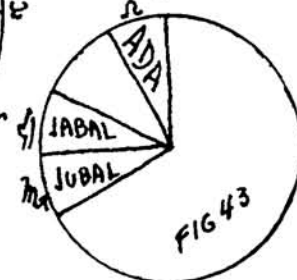
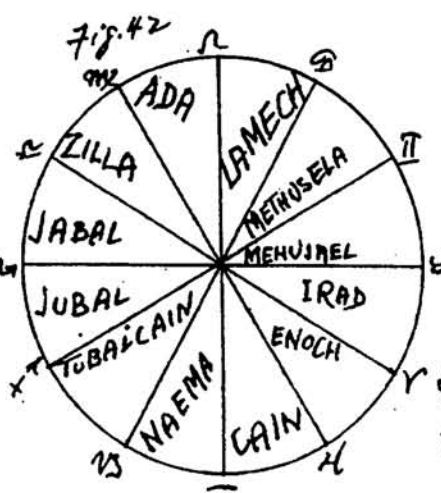
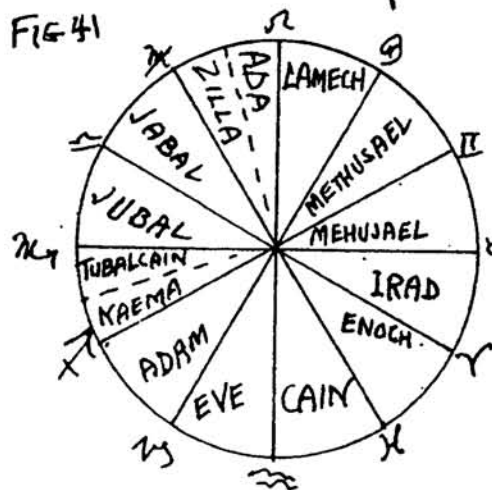
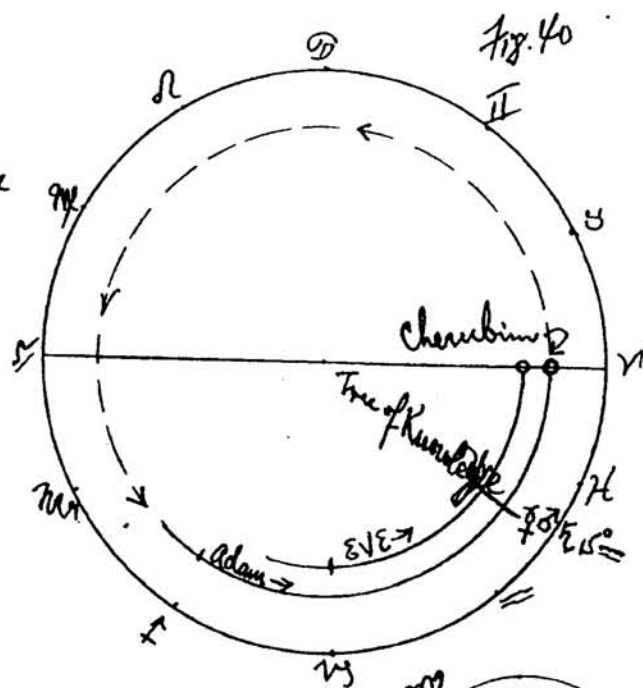
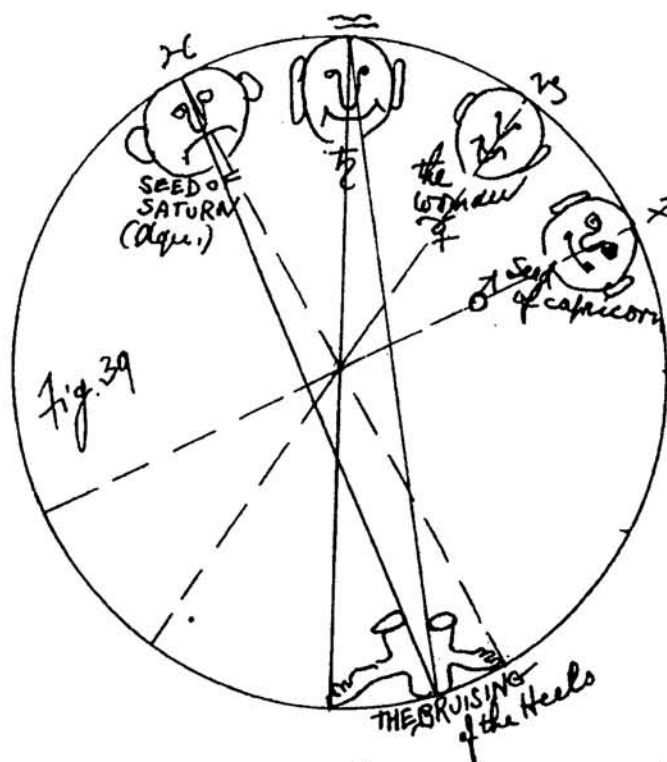
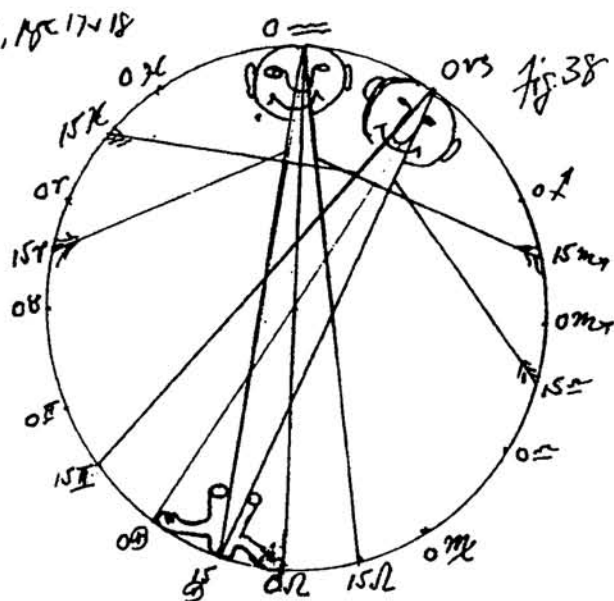
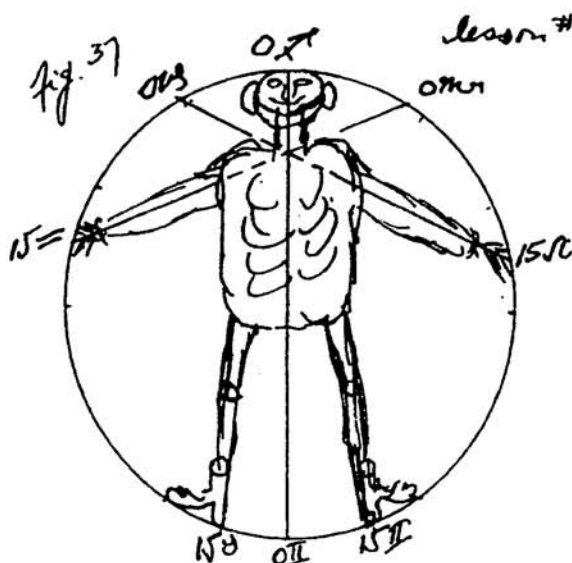


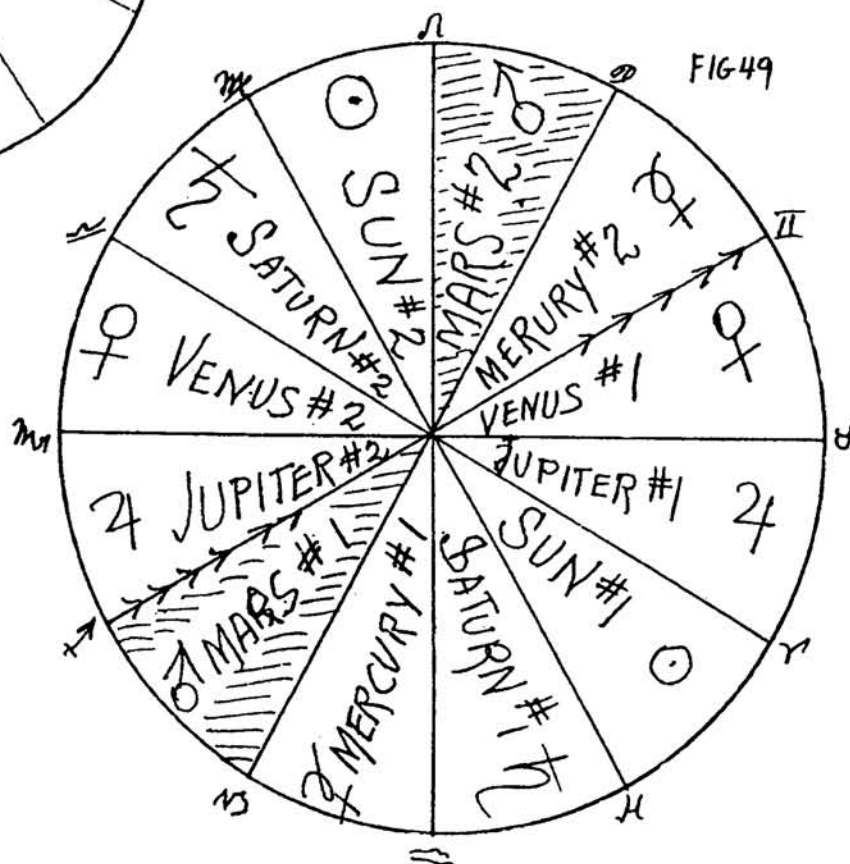
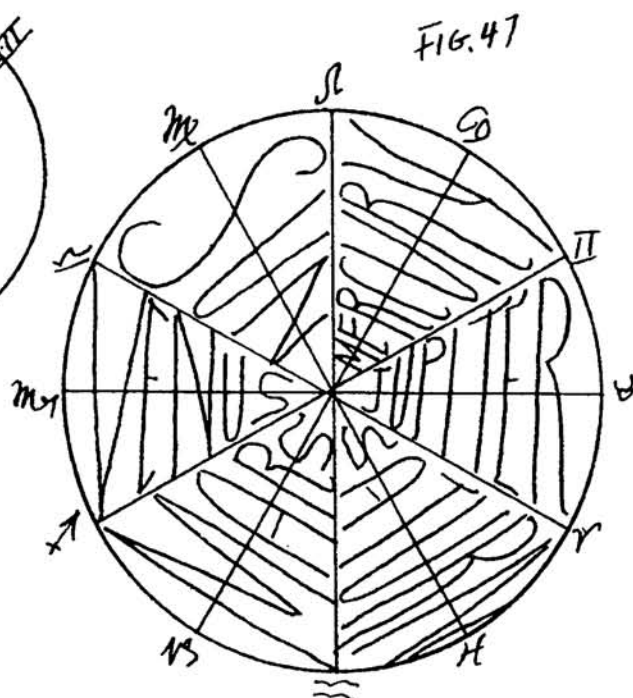
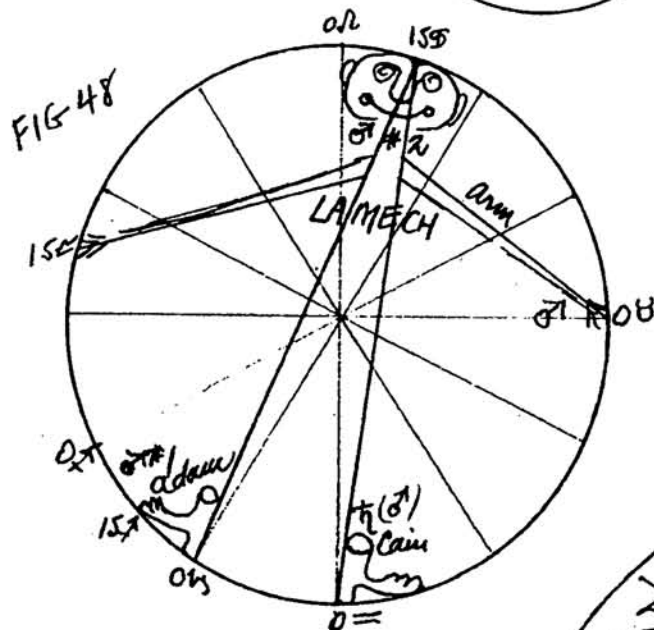
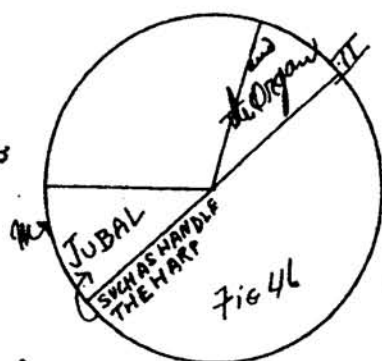
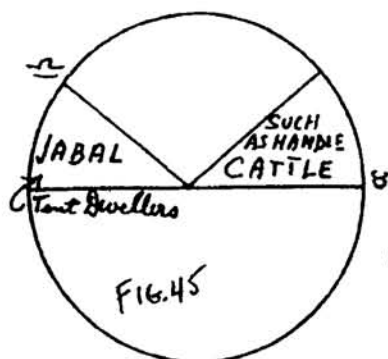
Fig. 36



Lesson #9, Apr 17-18



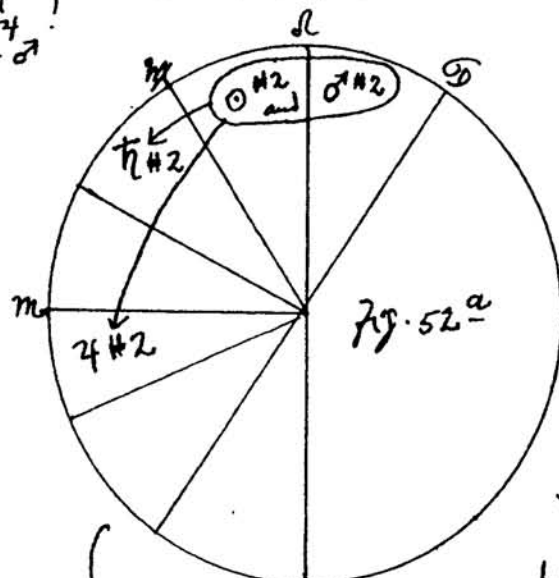
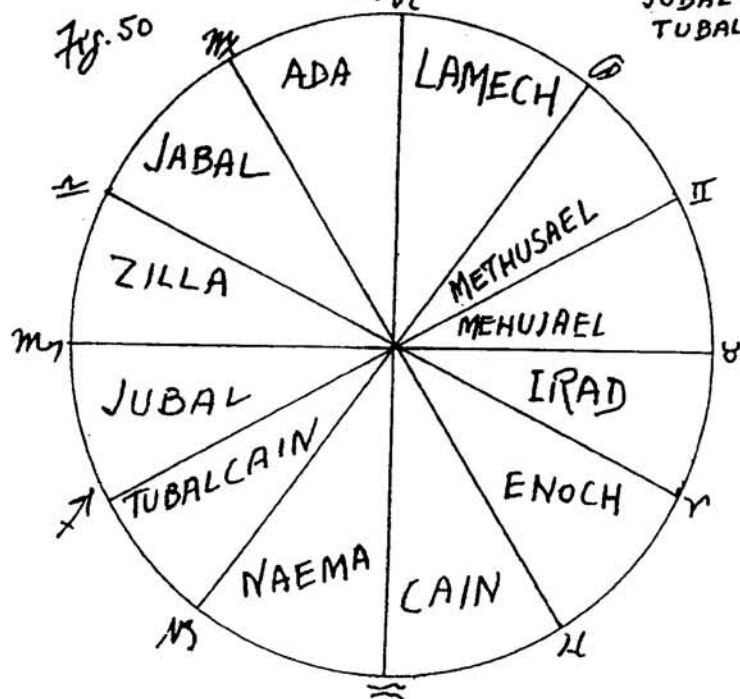
LESSON 10, pgs 19 & 20



revised fig. 41 & 42!

JABAL- $\bar{\eta}$
JUBAL- $\bar{\eta}$
TUBAL- $\bar{\eta}$

Lesson 10, Apr 19 & 20.



The three cycles in me!

Fig. 51

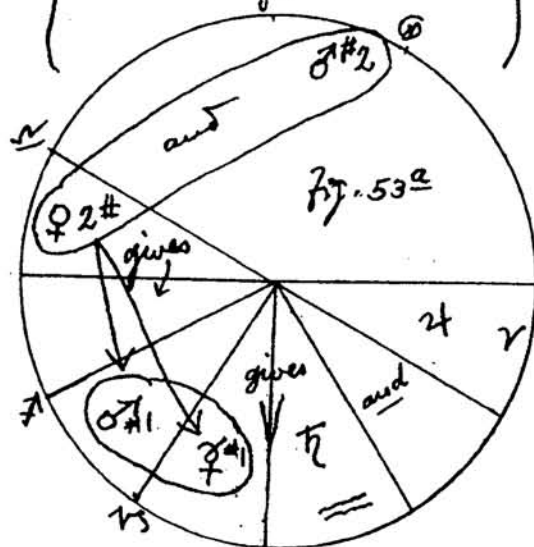
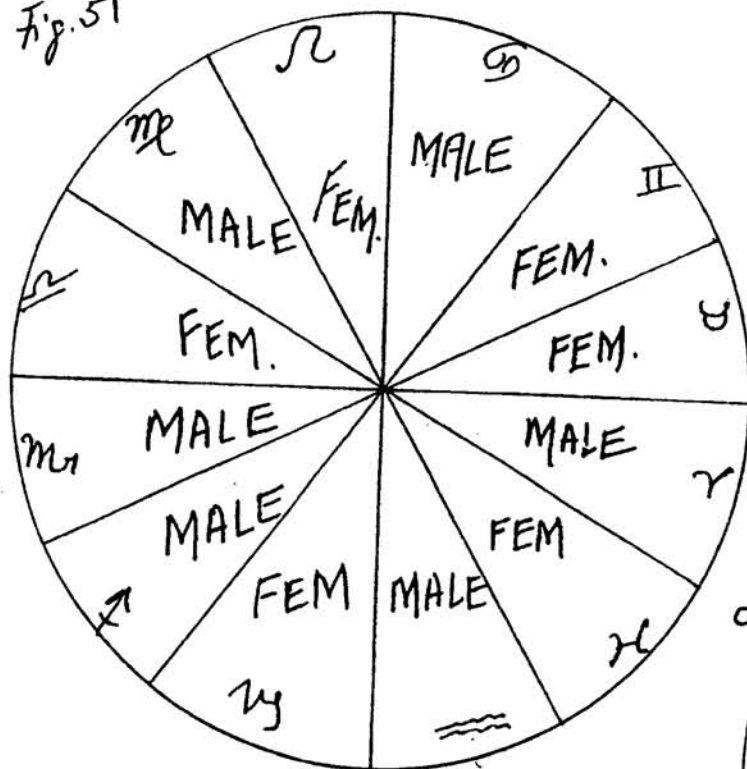
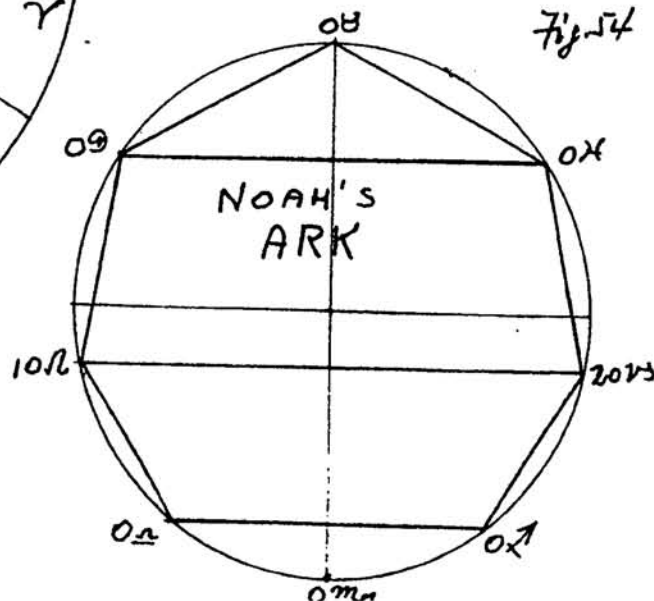
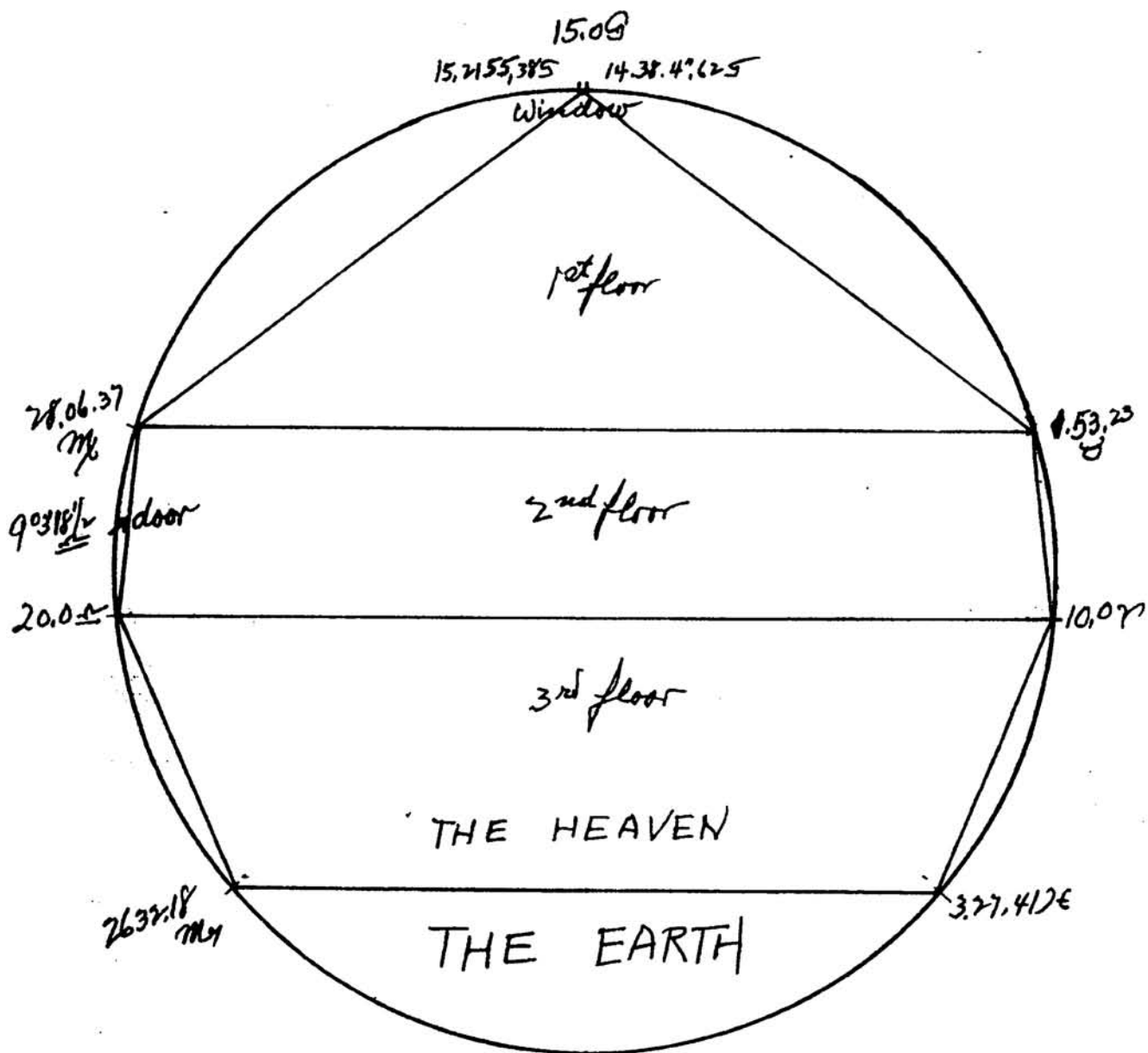


Fig. 54





NOAH'S ARK, ell. #55
to page 78

Turning

Four Hundred Years
of
ASTROLOGY
to practical USE
and
Other Matters

by GEORGE BAYER

"O how dull of perception are they who believe there is nothing regular, ordered and distinct, except what is acknowledged by the judgment of the eye!

If only they evolve visible phenomena to their causes, they will surely find nothing unarranged, nothing wandering, in the chance of conflux, and without law."

—Swedenberg, Trans. I, n. 248, seq.



SACRED SCIENCE INSTITUTE

WWW.SACREDSCIENCE.COM

Table of Contents

PART I		
CHAPTER I		
Astronomy	- - - - -	2-7
The Stars	- - - - -	2
Several Astronomical Definitions	- - - - -	3
Fixing Star Positions	- - - - -	4
Geographical Latitude and Longitude of a Place on the Earth	- - - - -	6
CHAPTER II		
Rudiments about Astrology and Astronomy	- - - - -	8-13
What is Meant when we Speak of Astrology	- - - - -	8
About Books	- - - - -	9
(Illustrations 10-11)		
Red Flags	- - - - -	12
On Astronomers	- - - - -	13
Your Own Horoscope	- - - - -	13
(Illustrations 14-15)		
CHAPTER III		
Rules for the 5-Fold Horoscope	- - - - -	16-125
The Difficulties	- - - - -	16
On Individuals	- - - - -	17
Moments of Beginning	- - - - -	19
The Door Bell	- - - - -	20
Starting from Scratch	- - - - -	20
Research	- - - - -	21
Everything Under Control	- - - - -	22
Benefits and Advantages of Astrological Studies	- - - - -	23
Basic Knowledge and Exactness of Work. Prime Factors	- - - - -	24
The Signs of the Zodiac	- - - - -	24
The Planets	- - - - -	25
(Illustrations 26-27)		
The Aspects	- - - - -	28
Sidereal Time	- - - - -	28
The First Step to Erect a Horoscope	- - - - -	29
Sidereal Time Computations	- - - - -	29
(Illustrations 30-31)		
Change of Calendar	- - - - -	34
Old Ephemerides	- - - - -	34
Necessary Tools	- - - - -	35
Cusps	- - - - -	36
Midheaven and Ascendant	- - - - -	36
The Use of The Tables of Houses	- - - - -	38
Erecting a Chart for Birth	- - - - -	39
East of Greenwich	- - - - -	39
Insertion of Planets into Radix Horoscope	- - - - -	41
Speeds of Planets	- - - - -	42
How to Adjust a Birth to London Time	- - - - -	43
Locating Planets	- - - - -	46
Differentiations Before and After Noon	- - - - -	49
(Illustrations 47-48)		
The Speculum	- - - - -	49
Pluto Ephemerides	- - - - -	50
About Retrograde Planets	- - - - -	52
Short-cuts for Calculations	- - - - -	53
To What Use Can the Student Put the Horoscope Which He Erects According to This Method?	- - - - -	53
(Illustrations 54-55)		
Transits	- - - - -	58
Fixed Stars	- - - - -	58
Qualities of Signs	- - - - -	58
Qualities of Planets	- - - - -	58
(Illustrations 59-60)		
Planetary Hours	- - - - -	59
Each Planet Rules a Day	- - - - -	59
About Planets in the Various Houses	- - - - -	59
About Mutual Aspects	- - - - -	61
(Illustrations 60)		
It's Cheaper to Learn from the Experience of Others	- - - - -	61
Idea of Five Horoscopes in One	- - - - -	62
On Sensitive Points	- - - - -	63
The Division of Each House into Three Parts	- - - - -	64
Artificial and Natural Decans	- - - - -	66
What is a Mundane Horoscope	- - - - -	66
The Erection of the Horoscope	- - - - -	67
Step 1. Assemblage of Data	- - - - -	67
Step 2. The Calculations to Find the Ascendant and the House Cusps	- - - - -	67
Step 3. Midheaven Calculations	- - - - -	68
Figuring the Remaining Cusps	- - - - -	69
Hidden Signs in Houses	- - - - -	70
Step 4. Placing Planets into the Horoscope	- - - - -	72
Step 5. The Speculum	- - - - -	75
(See Page 54)		
Weight of Aspects	- - - - -	76
Rough and Ready Judgment of Horoscope	- - - - -	77
Step 6. Entry of Radix Planets into Horoscope	- - - - -	78
Step 7. The Progressed Horoscope	- - - - -	78
Warning	- - - - -	79
Step 8. Construction of Time Table (Calendar)	- - - - -	80
Recapitulation of Several Details which we have to Recall to lead us to the other types of Horoscopes	- - - - -	81
Step 9. The Mundane Horoscope	- - - - -	82
Step 10. Permanent Formula for Mundane Calculations	- - - - -	84
The Mirrored Horoscopes	- - - - -	88
Step 11. The Radix Mirrored Horoscope	- - - - -	89
Table of Reflections	- - - - -	90
Step 12. The Mundane Mirrored Chart	- - - - -	91
Step 13. How to Figure Progressed Moon Aspects to the Progressed Planets	- - - - -	91
Step 14. About the Progressed Ascendant and the Progressed MC.	- - - - -	92
Step 15. The Production of Tables for Practical Work	- - - - -	93
Degree Rotation of the Four Horoscopes	- - - - -	94
Final Rotation of Planets' Positions for March 17, 1941	- - - - -	95
Books to Keep Calendar	- - - - -	96
Wool Calendar	- - - - -	97
About the Progressed Horoscope	- - - - -	98
Additional Information about Aspects	- - - - -	99

(TABLE OF CONTENTS CONTINUED)

Wool Chart - - - - -	100
(Illustration—Miles 101)	
Transits Over Ascendant - - -	102
Rectification of a Chart when Time of Birth is Unknown - - -	103
Daily Acceleration and Retardation in Moon Motion - - - - -	109
Explanation of Trend for Grease Wool - - -	109
The Public and Markets - - - - -	112
The Progressed Horoscope for Grease Wool for 1943 - - - - -	112
About Tables Brought in this Book - - -	113
About Lengths of One Degree in Longitude and Latitude on Earth - - -	114

PART II

CHAPTER I

The Stock and Wheat Horoscopes - - - - -	115-129
The Stock Market Horoscope - - - - -	115-125
The Stock Market Horoscope as used by George Bayer - - - - -	115
Necessary Corrections for the Stock Market Horoscope - - - - -	116
Uranus Tables of 1792 - - - - -	118
Table 28. When Planets Became Active in 1792 - - - - -	118
Table 28-A. Adjustment Table - - - - -	119
Mutual Aspects in Stock Horoscope - - -	121
Calculations to get the Planets by Progression into Exact Positions - - - - -	121
Which Trends can be Forecast with the Stock Market Horoscope? - - - - -	124
Individual Stock Horoscopes - - - - -	124
Harmony of Leaders with Horoscope - - -	124
Stock and Commodity Data - - - - -	125
Practical Application of the Five-Fold Horoscope in Markets - - - - -	125

CHAPTER II

The Wheat Horoscope of 1587 - - - - -	126-129
History How the Time Was Obtained - - -	126
Ephemeris of 1587 - - - - -	126
Details About the Wheat Horoscope - - -	126
Comparison of Stock and Wheat Charts - - - - -	127
Venus Transit Over Ascendant for Wheat - - - - -	128
Final Remarks on Wheat Trading - - - - -	129
Ellipses - - - - -	129
Graph Paper - - - - -	129

PART III

Advanced Astrology and Philosophy - - - - -	130-184
Introduction - - - - -	131
From the Old Masters - - - - -	132
On Things Printed - - - - -	133
About Classic Works - - - - -	133
About Modern Books - - - - -	134
About Magazines - - - - -	134
Books and Other Books - - - - -	134
Funny Magazines and Classics - - - - -	135
The Secret on Classic - - - - -	136
About Languages - - - - -	137
Organ Recital - - - - -	140

Clefs in Music - - - - -	141
The I and the O - - - - -	142
Festivals - - - - -	143
Two Major Religions - - - - -	144
Difficulties and Complications with the Subject Matter - - - - -	145
Data on Other Works of Bayer - - - - -	147
What were the Ancients Writing in Their Books? - - - - -	148
Greek - - - - -	148-166
Shifting of Letters - - - - -	148
Pronunciation of German Letters - - -	
Table 26-A - - - - -	150
The Greek Alphabet - - - - -	151
Individual Greek Words and Their Meaning - - - - -	155
Ballo - - - - -	155
Adam and Eve - - - - -	157
Imation - - - - -	158
The Abraham-Terah Story - - - - -	158
The Bible - - - - -	162
Polis, the City - - - - -	163
Fate - - - - -	164
Pollakis - - - - -	164
Tessarés - - - - -	165
Tetrapodos - - - - -	165
Coffee - - - - -	165
Rheipan - - - - -	166
Chalkos - - - - -	166
Cheirotonew - - - - -	166
About Latin - - - - -	167
On Hebrew - - - - -	167
On Medieval German - - - - -	168
Period of Poetry - - - - -	169
Test Words - - - - -	170
The rest of Goethe's Poem entitled "Wink" - - - - -	171
About a Star Student - - - - -	172
About Predictions - - - - -	173
Gist of Bayer's Method - - - - -	175
The required ABC - - - - -	175
Forecast of Nearby Expected Future Events - - - - -	176
About Diseases - - - - -	177
The "When" - - - - -	177
What Ordinary Astrology Is Up Against - - - - -	179
Patterns in Price Charts - - - - -	179
On Births and Deaths - - - - -	180
Final Thoughts - - - - -	181
On Paracelsus - - - - -	182

READY REFERENCE TABLES

Ephemeris of March 1941 - - - - -	30
The Grease Wool Horoscope - - - - -	60
Wool Performance Chart for 1941 - - -	100
The Wheat Horoscope of 1587 - - - - -	154
Ephemerides of 1792 - - - - -	106
The Stock Market Horoscope of 1792 - -	107
Ephemerides of 1587 - - - - -	104

List of Tables and Illustrations

- Page 10
 Fig. 1. Man and the Universe
 Fig. 2. Astronomical Explanations
 Fig. 3. " " "
 Fig. 4. " " "
 Fig. 5. Ecliptic
 Fig. 6. Longitude, Latitude, Declination
- Page 11
 Table II. Astronomical Tables
- Page 14
 Table IV. To convert Time into decimal parts of a Day
 Table V. To convert Minutes & Seconds of a Degree into decimal division of the same.
 Table IV. To convert any given Day into the decimal part of a year of 365 days.
- Page 15
 Table VII. Proportional Logarithms.
- Page 26.
 Table VIII. To change Degrees and Minutes of Arc of Circle into Minutes of Time.
 Table VIIIA. To change Time, Hours and Minutes into Degrees and Minutes
- Page 27.
 Table I & Table IX. Longitudes and Latitudes of Places on Earth.
- Page 30.
 Fig. 10A. Table of Houses for New York.
 Fig. 10B. Part of Raphael's Ephemeris for 1941.
- Page 31.
 Table XI. Permanent Table for Mid-Heaven.
- Page 45.
 Fig. 7. The Universe and the Quadrants
 Fig. 8. Houses and Cusps.
 Fig. 9. Mid-heaven and Ascendant.
 Fig. 10. The Ascendant.
- Page 48.
 Fig. 11. The Third-Division
 Fig. 12. The Aries Horoscope Frame.
 Fig. 13. The Ascendant Horoscope Frame.
- Page 50.
 The Pluto Ephemerides, 1874-1941.
- Page 54.
 Fig. 14. Simple Aries Horoscope for March 17, 1941.
 Fig. 15. Radix Horoscope for March 17, 1941.
 Fig. 16. The Speculum for Wool Tops.
 Fig. 17. Third Divisions for March 17, 1941.
 Fig. 18. The Decans.
- Page 55.
 Fig. 19. The Natural Decans.
 Fig. 19A. The Simplified Aries Horoscope.
 Fig. 20. The Artificial Decan size of each House of Horoscope for March 17, 1941.
 Fig. 20A. Our Aries Horoscope, called the Mundane Horoscope.
- Page 57.
 Fig. 21. The Reflex Idea.
 Fig. 22. Reflexes in the Horoscope.
- Page 60.
 Fig. 23. The complete Grease Wool Horoscope for March 17, 1941, progressed to 1943.
- Page 94. Degree Tabulation of Planets in Horoscope.
- Page 95. Final Rotation of Planets' positions for March 17, 1941.
- Page 97. The Calendar for Wool Tops, March 17th to Aug. 15th, 1941.
- Page 100. Chart of Wool Tops Performance from March 17th to Dec. 31st, 1941.
- Page 101. Table of Latitudes and Miles.
- Page 104. Ephemerides of January and December 1587. Also of January 1588.
- Page 106. Ephemerides of May and October 1792.
- Page 107. The Five-Fold Stock Horoscope of 1792.
- Page 150. German Letters.
- Page 151. The Greek Alphabet.
- Page 152. The Greek Letter Shifting.
- Page 153. Matthews, 22 in Holland-Dutch and Medieval German.
- Page 154. The Wheat Horoscope of 1587.



The Angel of Life and
The Angel of Death
(Bayer's Explanation)

Introduction to Part I & II

"Ye have also in cattle an example of instruction: we give you to drink of that which is in their bellies, a liquor between digested dregs and blood, namely pure milk. And of the fruits of palm trees and of grapes, ye obtain an inebriating liquor, and also good nourishment.

Verily herein is a sign unto people to understand."

Al Koran of Mohàmmmed
Chapter 16



By educating yourself constantly to make deductions on hand of similarities and combinations as they occur in Nature, instead of accepting everything as pure coin, you free yourself of mass knowledge.

This is the first step to find truth.

GEORGE BAYER
December 30, 1943

PART I

The
Five-fold Horoscope

CHAPTER I

Astronomy

ASTRONOMICAL DIVISION OF THE HEAVENS

In order to understand a science well, we have to get acquainted with its fundamentals or elements. They represent the frame of the entire building. If a fundament is lacking, in other words, when the basic laws are not completely and thoroughly understood, we are constantly limping. Otherwise everything seems to be half baked. Half-baked knowledge is very dangerous and costly.

THE STARS

Under heaven or sky we understand the blue bowl, which seems to surround our earth from all sides.

When we look into the sky and note on a clear evening the hundreds of fixed stars and planets, we cannot conceive anything about their actual distances from us. They all appear about equally far away, since nothing is present in the sky that would afford to make a comparison. The stars seem to be on the border of our sky-room. This way we obtain a conception that the sky is a round bowl dotted with stars.

But what are stars? They are heavenly bodies such as our Sun and only because we assume our Sun to be the Main Star of our Universe, can we detect and say that the other stars must be much farther distant from us, since they appear as glittering points. Fixed stars is their usual name. They sparkle and glitter. There is another type of stars, the wandering stars or planets, which change their positions in the sky continuously. It must be understood, however, that the fixed stars also possess a small movement of their own, so that actually there are not even fixed stars. These movements are minor, invisible to the naked eye. The various groups of fixed stars today form the same types of pictures as they did several thousand years ago. From this fact we get the idea that fixed stars are fastened to the heavenly sphere and that their sphere is turning every twenty-four hours from East to West around an axis.

To enable us to fix the positions of stars and planets it is necessary to run imaginary circles and use imaginary points in the sky, also lines and points on our earth, to which the places of the stars and planets can be referred to.

By comparing the stars' and planets' places with these lines and points at different periods, we obtain a basis from which to judge their movements, their apparent occasional stationary positions in the skies, their direction and speeds

THE FIVE-FOLD HOROSCOPE

5

In order to fix the position of the stars and planets, several imaginary lines are used:

- 1) the Horizon with its cardinal points and poles;
- 2) the Heavenly Equator with its World Poles and Declination Circles;
- 3) the Ecliptic with its Poles;
- 4) the Latitude Circles;
- 5) the Aries point ($0^{\circ} \gamma$).

These circles, like every circle, consist of 360° each, each single degree being equally large compared to any other. Each such ($^{\circ}$) is divided into 60 equal parts called minutes ($'$), each minute is divided into 60 equal parts called seconds ($''$) and each second into 60 equal parts, called tertia ($'''$). The diameter of the Sun or the Moon as we see them in the sky measures about half a degree or $30'$.

SEVERAL ASTRONOMICAL DEFINITIONS

What is the Horizon?

When we stand in open country and look around, we quickly note, that the earth's surface appears as a round plane, in whose centre we are ourselves. This circle of vision is called the *Apparent Horizon*. Everything seems to be bordered by the bowl of heaven, which appears to rest upon it. The *True Horizon* is a plane, parallel to the one just explained, but running through the center of the earth. Thus, this true horizon is always a greatest circle of the heavenly bowl proper, and divides that bowl into two equal parts.

Let us assume we put into the place of the observer, or into the centre of the horizon a vertical line. We then obtain with this imaginary line the Axis of the Horizon. To obtain the idea of an axis, we extend the line on both sides through the earth up to the heaven. Where this line touches the heaven we have the *Poles of the Horizon*: above, the North Pole, called the *Zenith*, below, the South Pole, called *Nadir*. Circles drawn through these two points, whose plane passes through the centre of the earth, are called *Vertical Circles*. (See Fig. 2 NZSZ') on page 10.

The distance of a Star E from the horizon or the angle that is formed by a line drawn from the Observer towards the Star, is called the *Altitude of the Star* (EMH).

The angle which complements this altitude to a right angle (to 90°), is called the *Zenith Distance* (EMZ). All points of equal altitude lie on one and the same Altitude Circle, such as EFC. These altitude circles, since the sky appears like a bowl, become smaller, the more we imagine them removed from the horizon. A point in the horizon has an altitude of 0° , whereas the point of the Zenith has an altitude of 90° . All other points lie between 0° and 90° .

The horizon is divided into four parts, the four points of the compass. When we look at noon towards the Sun and imagine through this Sun a semi-circle standing vertically on the horizon, the point that cuts this horizon is *Midday* or the south point; opposite of this point is the Midnight point or the north point, towards the left, 90° away from the former, is Morning or the East point and opposite to it, Evening or the West point. In these latter points the Sun rises and sets on March 21st and September 23rd each year.

The arcs between these points are, of course, still further divided. We obtain NE, SE, NW and SW. Between the sub-division points we still have smaller parts, but they are only used for navigation. They have no practical value

for our specialized work. They would furnish us a 16th resp. 32nd division of the circle for which we have no use and which division would be even detrimental to us in our operations. Forget them!

When we consider the axis of our earth to extend infinitely, calling it the *World Axis*, it meets the north and south pole of the heaven, or the *World Poles*. (NS) Fig. 3, page 10.

The plane of the Earth's Equator extended outward towards the heaven describes on it the *Heaven's Equator* (Fig. 3 AQ).

Therefore, the latter is an imaginary circle, placed on the inside of the apparent heavenly bowl, whose position is fixed by extending the plane of the Earth's Equator into the heavenly sphere. On March 21st or 22nd also on September 23rd of each year we find the Sun in this Heaven Equator and on these days the Sun's path indicates the position of the Heavenly Equator.

The circles which pass through the World's Poles, erected vertically to the Heavenly Equator, are called Declination or Hour Circles and the planes which lie parallel to the individual parallel circles of the earth, going through the starry heaven, define on them the Parallel and Day Circles of the Stars.

FIXING STAR POSITIONS

It is clear that with the aid of these circles we are able to fix any position of a star, anywhere in the heaven, the same way as we fix all points on our own earth.

The data necessary to accomplish this are:

1) The distance of a star E measured on the declination circle (Fig. 3) from the plane of the Equator sets its Declination ED measured from angle EOD and the complementing distance to 90° of the star from the pole, its pole distance EON. But the angle, which is formed with the Plane of the Horizon and that of the Equator (in Fig. 4 AQ for the point M), is called the *Equatorial Altitude*. (See page 10).

This altitude is complemented to 90° by the *Pole Altitude* P'MH.. From this follows, that the angle, made by the vertical line of a point with the Plane of the Equator MOA, must be equal to the Pole Altitude.

2) The distance, measured on the parallel circles of a star from the first declination circle, is called *Right Ascension*. The circle of declination which passes through the *Spring Equinox* is the first Declination Circle. From the way the place of a star is given in relation to the plane of the World Equator and the World Poles, which come to lie through the center of the vertically lying World Axis, we can also define the place of the star in relation to the Plane of the Horizon as well as the Zenith and Nadir. They lie in the center of a line running through the former. Furthermore, we can define this star's place through the *Azimuth*, i.e. the Arc of the Horizon from the South Point to the Vertical Circle of the Star, and as said already, with the aid of the Altitude, i.e. the Arc of the Vertical Circle fixed to the Horizon.

A third and similar calculation can be made in relation to the Ecliptic also called the Plane of the Sun's Path, and its Poles.

WHAT IS THE ECLIPTIC?

The entire period of the *Declination of the Sun*, takes about $365\frac{1}{4}$ days which includes the increase of the northern declination up to a certain limit, ($23^\circ 27'N$), its decrease to zero, its following increase southward to a definite

THE FIVE-FOLD HOROSCOPE

5

limit ($23^{\circ}27'S$) and its consequent decrease back to zero, thus reaching again the point of beginning. During that time the *Right Ascension* moves from 0h to 24h. At the end of this time the Sun is found very near the same point or place in the heaven as at the beginning of the movement. The path described by the Sun during this time in the heaven we can find, when we enter from day to day on an artificially made heavenly bowl the values found through actual observation of this Declination and Right Ascension. We find that this path appears to be one of the greatest circles which cuts the Equator at a certain angle. This arc (Fig. 5, page 10) BCDE, called Sun's path or Ecliptic, forms with the Equator AQ an angle of about $23^{\circ}27'$, CFQ, and this angle is called the Mean Obliquity of the Ecliptic. The Ecliptic is divided into 12 equal parts, whereby each part contains 30° . These parts are called the signs of the Zodiac. Each month, approximately, the Sun passes through one of these signs. Of course, we must not forget that actually our earth is found opposite to the sign in which the Sun seems to be. When the geocentric place of the Sun is in Aries, the heliocentric place of the earth (as seen from the center point of the Sun) must be in the sign of Libra. Whenever the Sun has passed through one complete round, one year has elapsed. Consider that after such time has passed, the Sun returns again to the same fixed star. We call this period a Sidereal Year.

We use the Ecliptic with its poles, the same as the Equator and its poles, to determine the places of the stars. Through a star, whose place shall be defined that way, we imagine to have laid a half-circle, which reaches from the North Pole of the Ecliptic to its South Pole. It cuts vertically the Ecliptic. Such a circle is called a Latitude Circle. That part of the circle which is contained between Ecliptic and the Star in question is called the *Latitude of the Star*. This Latitude may be north or south, depending upon whether the star or planet is to the north or to the south of the Ecliptic. The Latitude can extend from 0 to 90° . The star has 0° latitude when it is found exactly in the Ecliptic and 90° Latitude if the star would be exactly in the Pole of the Ecliptic. However, a star is not fixed by Latitude alone. We need also its *Longitude*. Longitude is that arc of the Ecliptic, which lies between the Aries point and that point of the Ecliptic through which the Latitude circle crosses, which passes through the Star. The measurement must always be made from West to East and be started at the Aries point ($0^{\circ}\gamma$). The point of the Spring Equinox (Aries point), as well as the Fall Equinox (Libra point), belong to both, the Equator and Ecliptic. In Fig 6 let S be the Star placed in the Heavenly Sphere, PCP the World Axis, and EE' the Equator, erected vertically on CP; when we place through the World Axis the Hour Circle Pm and O assumed to be the Spring Equinox, then we have Om according to our definition as the Right Ascension and Em as the Declination of the Star. If we imagine the Circle of the Ecliptic AOA' on which the apparent movement of the Sun occurs and draw upon it the Vertical Axis QEQ' and when we finally lay through the Star the Arc of the Biggest Circle QSn, then On is the Longitude in the Heaven and "Sn" is the Latitude of the Star S. (See illustration on page 10).

The biggest circle, placed vertically on the Ecliptic, QSn, is called the *Latitude Circle* and the points Q and Q' are the Poles of the Ecliptic. The *Right Ascension* is always given in *hours, minutes and seconds*, while the Longitude is always given in *degrees and minutes (")* from 0° to 360° or in 30° units with the zodiacal signs attached, such as we use exclusively in astrological work.

- 1) When Longitude and Latitude are known, any star or planet is fixed.
- 2) When Right Ascension and Declination are known the star or planet is fixed also.

Therefore, know, that Longitude has no direct relation to Declination, neither has Right Ascension to Latitude.

Because the plane of the Heavenly Equator falls together with the plane of the Earth's Equator, the Ecliptic, when put on to the earth's globe in our imagination, will cut this Earth Equator under the same angle as it will cut the Heavenly Equator. When we imagine the plane of the Ecliptic laid horizontally, then the Axis of the Earth stands slanting, in relation to it, and it differs from a vertical line in the same degree, as that under which Equator and Ecliptic cut each other. The angle is $23^{\circ}26'48''$.

The motion of the Sun in the Ecliptic is only an apparent motion, since it is actually the earth that moves in the Ecliptic around the Sun. It is not only the earth that moves in the Ecliptic around the Sun. All the other planets move in it too! The Sun is the center around which their motion occurs. The actual distance of the planets among themselves, as well as from the Sun, varies considerably, else there would have occurred many collisions already. The path of the Ecliptic is not completely round but has the shape of an *ellipse*.

We consider the distance from Sun to the earth as 1. Table II shows the comparative distances of the other planets from the Sun.

The time of rotations from one fixed point, such as from the 0° Aries point; back to the very same point in the Zodiac for the various planets is shown on Table II, and is called the "Sidereal period, measured in tropical years." Decimals are used, which can be turned into days with aid of Table IV. (See page 11 & 14).

The time given in this Table for Mercury and Venus represents their motions around the Sun, when viewed from the Sun. In our astrological work we sometimes use this type of motion to figure wheat or cotton prices or the prices of some other commodities, in some cases also for stocks, but the methods which are taught in this work consider only geocentric positions of the planets. [These two planets from a geocentric view (as seen from the earth) take about one year's time to get around the Zodiac.

THE GEOGRAPHICAL LATITUDE AND LONGITUDE OF A PLACE ON THE EARTH

Even for astronomical purposes it is generally sufficient to regard our earth as a sphere. Occasional mountains or valleys are exceedingly minute compared to the size of our earth as a whole.

When doing astrological work for persons or events, we use:

- 1) the birth of the person, or of the event;
- 2) the place where it happened on this earth.

Since this place must be known in values of Longitude and Latitude we either have to take recourse to Tables in which such positions are already figured, else, we may have to take recourse to regular astronomical calculations and find them ourselves. I am giving here only a few remarks how to find the places, if necessary, however, further on I shall bring a Table of the most important places together with their Longitude and Latitude, also the time differential between London and the places in question given in hours and minutes. Since there are many thousands of places missing, which, however, in each specific case can be

THE FIVE-FOLD HOROSCOPE

7

located with the aid of a good atlas, whose maps show the latitude and longitudes, the latter from Greenwich, the former from the equator. A table joined here shows how to turn "Time into Degrees" and "Degrees into Time" (hours, minutes and seconds. With the aid of this Table alone very accurate results can be assured, especially when we consult the maps of countries. Be sure to use the right scale of the map which is always found at the bottom of each map.

The mean length of one degree of a Meridian in longitude is 69.048 miles.

The difference at any instant between Local Time (Town Clock Time) whether sidereal* or solar at any place and the first Meridian, is the Longitude of the place expressed in Time; consequently, also, the difference between the Local Time, for any two places is their difference of their own longitude expressed in Time.

The truth of this principle is easily established. In the first place we remark, that the Longitude of a Place contains the same number of degrees and parts of a degree, as the arc of the celestial Equator comprises between the Meridian of Greenwich and the Meridian of the Place. It is Oh. Om. Os. of Mean Solar Time or Mean Noon, at any place, when the Mean Sun* is on the Meridian of that Particular Place. Therefore, as the Mean Sun moves in the Equator, it recedes from the Meridian towards the West at the rate of 15° per Mean Solar Hour. When it is Mean Noon at a place to the West of Greenwich it will be as many hours and parts of an hour past Mean Noon at Greenwich, as it expressed by the quotient of the division of the arc of the Celestial Equator, or its equivalent Longitude divided by 15. We assume that it is just Mean Noon there, then it will be as much before Mean Noon at Greenwich, as is expressed by the Longitude of that place, converted into time. In either way the principle stated will be true.

It is plain that the equality between the difference of the time and of the Longitude will subsist equally if Sidereal Time instead of Solar Time is used.



* "Sidereal Time": By Sidereal Time we understand a time which is measured by the diurnal motion of the Vernal Equinox (Spring Equinox). Its movement each day amounts to 3m56.555s.

* "Mean Sun": The astronomers use a fictitious sun, to which they give an average daily motion in such a way, that it will complete a year from 0° to back to 0° in exactly one year's time. In case they would use the actual sun in the heaven, which moves at times 57' per day, increasing in speed gradually to an extreme speed of 1°1', no correct work could be made. To this Mean Sun they apply each day what is termed the "Equation of Time", which, if considered (added or deducted as the case may be) gives the actual normal position of the Sun for any specific day. (See Table III).

CHAPTER II

RUDIMENTS ABOUT ASTROLOGY AND ASTRONOMY

WHAT IS MEANT WHEN WE SPEAK OF ASTROLOGY

Astrology is the art to interpret planetary influences upon people and things of nature in general.

Human beings, animals, plants, even minerals are strongly subject to the way plants rotate in the sky.

We hear of people who became "Moon struck," others who had a "Sun stroke." These expressions do not actually convey the idea it was one of the planets, sun or moon, that brought about a change in the life of such a person. Nevertheless, let us hold fast to the idea that in the first case quoted it was not food or something which the person had eaten, but actually, it was the Moon or the Sun which brought about the changed condition.

That bodies rotating at enormous distances in space should have influences upon the beings of our globe has been recognized already in the dark ages. Each and every work or book that has come over from the olden times treats exclusively about this subject. It is an idea of the so-called "Learned world" that there is no such a thing as a planet influencing the mind of people, to their actions or undertakings.

The writer has in the course of years gone through many ancient texts, that were obtainable in languages known by him. It has always been found that all the stories, contained therein, are absolutely true "stories", only written in covered language, so that the ordinary man cannot recognize their true meaning. These stories may be compared to code messages, such as are sent by business houses or governments, which on the surface mean one thing, but in reality, mean entirely different things.

Among these ancient writings we have to include practically everything that was written or brought over to us from periods prior to 1500.

STATE OF EDUCATION

Let us go a little deeper into the matter and see whether it can be proven in a round about way. I could give you the direct proof of such truth, but it requires on the part of the reader an enormous amount of stored-up knowledge, that very few could follow and grasp the deductions.

When we look at our present state of affairs as to the education and knowledge of people, we know that out of a group of boys or girls, who start together at public school to learn the three R's, only about one fourth will attend school beyond completing public school. The reason for it is that to learn a trade or to be useful in a job, public school education is sufficient to get the average man through the world.

Of the one fourth, that enters high school, let us assume the 1st grade of high school has an attendance of 50 pupils. As the years go by, here and there, a few drop out, especially when pupils reach their 18th year. At that time, we might say, nearly 50% of those, who had begun, disappeared in order to enter upon their work of life, either in some line of business, in some office or trade. At any rate, they quit their studies.

At the end of the high school term the majority of pupils consider to have completed their education.

Some 10% to 15%, estimated roughly, who began high school and complete the studies, will enter colleges or universities. The first year a large number of

THE-FIVE FOLD HOROSCOPE

9

them again find that work very difficult. They prefer to enter a line of business, thus reducing the number of students. As the last year of the university gets under way, we usually find but a small percentage left that had originally begun. All these things are natural conditions and develop automatically.

Such is the case in the 20th century. Going back some 600 or 800 years, at a time when schools of learning were few, and the majority of the people did not even know how to read or write, conditions were much worse. Education was mostly in the hands of the clergy who taught what they wanted the pupils to know and said nothing about what was injurious to their own business. Astrology was a big headache to the clergy. If planetary influences govern the people, so they said, how can we collect funds for our line of talk? Therefore, we must needs eliminate all such ideas from the public's mind. Deep thinking people, of which every century had a few, after completing the "must" studies, continued with their own ideas for their own salvation.

ABOUT BOOKS

At those times there was no printing. The publishing of magazines at the rate of one hundred thousand copies a month for mass distribution was impossible. If someone wrote a book, he wrote about real important matters, since it took a year or two to write one. Then he had one original, not even a copy.

When we glance at any of these ancient books, we note the great selectivity of words. We recognize that each word was weighed before it was put down. The first word belonged to the second and the second to the third. The whole was a masterpiece.

The subject of these ancient books was always about Gods and their doings. Seldom did they use other subjects. If we once recognize that the subject treated was constantly about astrology, meaning the laws how planets govern human beings, we soon recognize that, even though other subjects were used as a basis to explain, it was the same subject anyhow.

There are hundreds of books of Chinese, Egyptian, Greek and Roman origin. They all treat that one subject. As much as I have tried to change any of them into other meanings, I could not do it, because the astrological tenure stares one constantly in the face.

It is claimed, that the knowledge or meaning which the Ancients put into their books has been lost. That is absolutely not true. Those who claim it, never got wise themselves as to what these books contain.

But, take writers, or poets, such as Shakespeare, Goethe, Balzac, and innumerable others! They published poems and stories that can be read at any time by anyone. They knew very well the laws which were contained in these old texts, but they were wise enough not to say anything. The world did not seem fit to be told. All the ancient books are open books for us. Let each one find it out!

Emanuel Swedenborg, the great Swedish philosopher whose works cover about 20,000 printed pages on the Bible and allied subjects, could not have possibly written such quantity of sense, unless he had the rules solved, that govern everybody. His writings are clearly on astrology. Just the same, the people don't recognize it. Just try, for once, to write an article on a subject to cover about 50 printed pages! You will run out of text matter (sense-matter) after the first 10 pages. You will have to hunt through all sorts of books for additional subject matter. In this case I mean the average man, who seldom tries his ability that way.

Of course, when we compare these ancient astrological texts with those of

THE FIVE-FOLD HOROSCOPE

11

Elements of the Planetary Orbits.
Epoch, January 1, 1850, mean noon at Paris.

Planet's Name	Longitude in the Epoch	Lat. in the Epoch	Longitude of Perihelion	Rev. Per.	Rev. Per.	Rev. Per.
Mercury	1° 0' 0"	0° 0' 0"	15° 1' 14"	87.97	87.97	87.97
Venus	3° 33' 31"	4° 4' 15"	109° 31' 14"	583.92	583.92	583.92
Earth	0° 0' 0"	0° 0' 0"	102° 31' 14"	102.31	102.31	102.31
Mars	1° 51' 8"	2° 3' 45"	333° 31' 14"	686.97	686.97	686.97
Jupiter	1° 18' 40"	2° 3' 45"	11° 54' 53"	11.86	11.86	11.86
Saturn	0° 29' 38"	15° 11' 44"	104° 16' 45"	29.46	29.46	29.46
Uranus	0° 46' 30"	3° 12' 14"	168° 16' 45"	84.74	84.74	84.74
Neptune	1° 46' 50"	13° 6' 53"	129° 6' 53"	164.71	164.71	164.71

Planet's Name	Mean Distance from Sun in Miles	Mean Distance from Earth in Miles	Mean Daily Motion in 1° of Longitude	Mean Daily Motion in 1° of Latitude
Mercury	35,700,000	33,000,000	0.000000000	0.000000000
Venus	68,500,000	68,500,000	0.000000000	0.000000000
Earth	93,000,000	93,000,000	0.000000000	0.000000000
Mars	128,100,000	128,100,000	0.000000000	0.000000000
Jupiter	483,800,000	483,800,000	0.000000000	0.000000000
Saturn	914,100,000	914,100,000	0.000000000	0.000000000
Uranus	1,782,912,000	1,782,912,000	0.000000000	0.000000000
Neptune	2,795,912,000	2,795,912,000	0.000000000	0.000000000

TABLE II

Planet's Name	Apparent Diameter		Orbital Distance in Miles	Orbital Velocity in Miles per Hour	Orbital Period in Days	Density in g/cm ³	Gravity at Surface	Mean Distance from Sun in Miles	Mean Distance from Earth in Miles	Light and Heat from Sun
	Lat.	Long.								
Mercury	4.7	17.0	35,700,000	15.9	87.97	5.43	0.000000000	35,700,000	33,000,000	0.000000000
Venus	5.7	44.3	68,500,000	34.7	583.92	5.25	0.000000000	68,500,000	68,500,000	0.000000000
Earth	30.1	30.1	93,000,000	68.6	365.25	5.51	0.000000000	93,000,000	93,000,000	0.000000000
Mars	23.8	23.8	128,100,000	59.4	686.97	4.03	0.000000000	128,100,000	128,100,000	0.000000000
Jupiter	35.7	35.7	483,800,000	13.1	11.86	1.33	0.000000000	483,800,000	483,800,000	0.000000000
Saturn	14.4	14.4	914,100,000	9.5	29.46	0.69	0.000000000	914,100,000	914,100,000	0.000000000
Uranus	3.4	3.4	1,782,912,000	2.3	84.74	0.45	0.000000000	1,782,912,000	1,782,912,000	0.000000000
Neptune	2.1	2.1	2,795,912,000	1.4	164.71	0.31	0.000000000	2,795,912,000	2,795,912,000	0.000000000
Moon	28.4	28.4	238,855,000	2.2	29.53	3.34	0.000000000	238,855,000	238,855,000	0.000000000

Elements of the Retrograde Motion of the Planets.

Planet	Area of Retrograde	Duration of Retrograde	Duration of Station	Duration of Prograde	Change in the Elements	Change in the Elements
Mercury	8° 23' to 15° 45'	23 12 30	11 12 14	43° 46' 30"	118.3716	118.3716
Venus	14° 25' to 13° 13'	40 21 50	12 37 40	40° 46' 30"	583.9214	583.9214
Earth	10° 6' to 19° 38'	60 19 10	10 16 10	44° 16' 30"	365.2514	365.2514
Mars	23° 10' to 23° 10'	116 10 10	12 12 10	44° 16' 30"	686.9714	686.9714
Jupiter	35° 41' to 35° 41'	138 10 10	12 12 10	44° 16' 30"	118.3714	118.3714
Saturn	14° 41' to 14° 41'	138 10 10	12 12 10	44° 16' 30"	29.4614	29.4614
Uranus	3° 41' to 3° 41'	138 10 10	12 12 10	44° 16' 30"	84.7414	84.7414
Neptune	2° 41' to 2° 41'	138 10 10	12 12 10	44° 16' 30"	164.7114	164.7114

Table II brings various astronomical elements, which are interesting to read over to get an idea of the complicated systems of the Universe. Besides, we can use here or there, one or the other Table, specially the length of the retrograde movements of planets, also the Sid. Periods of Planets measured in Mean Solar Days. Some of these elements are given for 1801, others for the year 1850. Changes in one century are so minute, that we may just as well call them elements for 1944 as far as our work is concerned. They are taken from an old astronomy book published in 1867. They require no further explanation.

Elements of Moon's Orbit.
Epoch, January 1, 1801, mean noon at Paris.

Planet's Name	Longitude in the Epoch	Lat. in the Epoch	Longitude of Perihelion	Rev. Per.	Rev. Per.	Rev. Per.
Mercury	1° 0' 0"	0° 0' 0"	15° 1' 14"	87.97	87.97	87.97
Venus	3° 33' 31"	4° 4' 15"	109° 31' 14"	583.92	583.92	583.92
Earth	0° 0' 0"	0° 0' 0"	102° 31' 14"	102.31	102.31	102.31
Mars	1° 51' 8"	2° 3' 45"	333° 31' 14"	686.97	686.97	686.97
Jupiter	1° 18' 40"	2° 3' 45"	11° 54' 53"	11.86	11.86	11.86
Saturn	0° 29' 38"	15° 11' 44"	104° 16' 45"	29.46	29.46	29.46
Uranus	0° 46' 30"	3° 12' 14"	168° 16' 45"	84.74	84.74	84.74
Neptune	1° 46' 50"	13° 6' 53"	129° 6' 53"	164.71	164.71	164.71

Planet's Name	Mean Distance from Sun in Miles	Mean Distance from Earth in Miles	Mean Daily Motion in 1° of Longitude	Mean Daily Motion in 1° of Latitude
Mercury	35,700,000	33,000,000	0.000000000	0.000000000
Venus	68,500,000	68,500,000	0.000000000	0.000000000
Earth	93,000,000	93,000,000	0.000000000	0.000000000
Mars	128,100,000	128,100,000	0.000000000	0.000000000
Jupiter	483,800,000	483,800,000	0.000000000	0.000000000
Saturn	914,100,000	914,100,000	0.000000000	0.000000000
Uranus	1,782,912,000	1,782,912,000	0.000000000	0.000000000
Neptune	2,795,912,000	2,795,912,000	0.000000000	0.000000000

the present time, we hardly can believe the ancient books to be astrological texts. We just don't recognize them as such, because not a word is breathed about the angles, about the planets, about sidereal time etc.

But, when we examine a text book on college mathematics and compare it with an arithmetic book for the first grade public school it has some relationship. These ancient books anticipated, that all known sciences had previously been acquired by the student. The reader was supposed to be of the type who is not satisfied with common, everyday knowledge, but aspired for much deeper knowledge, a knowledge which is not intended for the masses. Another illustration that should bring home the idea clearly: Compare an ordinary calendar issued gratis by pharmaceutical companies every year with the Nautical Almanac issued by the U. S. Government! Both are almanacs. The latter sounds Greek to but a few and the masses do not even recognize that it is merely a calendar. With the latter you can do a lot of scientific work; the former can also be put to use.

Of course, there is one great hindrance to help recognize that these old texts are nothing but astrological texts, when our own education tells us: The telescope was only invented a few hundred years ago. Many instruments needed for exact observation of the planets' motions were unknown about 500 years ago. Furthermore, some contend that several of the planets were not known, which are now used for the interpretation of horoscopes.

But all these apparent disadvantages did not prevent these ancients to have ways and means of forecasting future events and to bring the laws in concise form, which never require a change.

RED FLAGS!

Of course, the lands are full of quacks in all sorts of businesses: This is true also in the field of astrology. The gullibles, who believe anything and everything without first investigating themselves the actual possibilities, are taken anywhere. "Caveat emptor," says the Latin proverb. It applies to any thing you buy. The buyer has to watch out because the seller has the advantage of possessing the goods. He can paint them rosy and in brilliant colors. You, as buyer, happen to have the aspect, the desire to want that certain thing. When one wants something, and wants it badly, he is easy going. Then he pays little attention to quality or price. Therefore, let us examine the case of a young girl who has been keeping company with a boy. She wants to know if she has a chance to marry him. The nearest fortune teller will cast a horoscope for a dollar or two. The fortune teller will usually tell her that her desire will be fulfilled. If "it" does turn "otherwise," "it" is just *too* bad. The money is spent; that's that. Such fortune tellers are not astrologers. It takes quite some time to erect a horoscope and to figure out what should happen to a person over a fixed period. This you will get to learn yourself from this work. After the fortune teller comes a certain type of would-be astrologers that sell Sun horoscopes, personal ones, they are called. They divide the people at large into 12 parts and for each 12th person, on the average, there is one horoscope available. Is this fooling the public or not? When we just think that we have over 130 million people in our country, how can 10 million of these people have the same events in life? But these types of horoscopes sell by the millions each year and may be classed among the "best sellers" of the year at any time. I may not come back to this subject anymore, but just think of this when you have progressed far enough to understand my methods.

THE FIVE-FOLD HOROSCOPE

13

The exactness of astrology can best be recognized when we check the life of twins or triplets. Some times you hear about identical twins, although twins are often times far from being identical. The difference of twins, although they may be but a few minutes apart in their actual birth moments lies in the fact that 1) the sidereal time continues to move from one second to the next, that 2) the planets also move constantly. But it is not so much the planets' positions in the signs of the Zodiac as their position in the sub-division into which they fall. The special Third-Divisions of the houses, which will be treated in a special chapter, bring mundane and mirrored positions into completely different sectors. (They account for it. It would be anticipating matters, if we would go further into this subject at present, else we split ideas too much. Suffice to say, that the *exact* work required to erect a horoscope, accounts much for the results.

ON ASTRONOMERS

A few words must be said about astronomers and their text books. I have in my library a goodly number of astronomical texts. Practically each one carries a chapter about astrology. Each of these books carries a special chapter in which it condemns astrology, being "an absurd idea of a sick brain." Poor astronomer! I always say to myself: When these wizards of astronomy have completed their studies how the planets, fixed stars and comets run around in the Universe, what have they to do afterwards in the way of study? They can figure out their planetary positions for 100 or more years ahead which would save time educating new astronomers. I don't think they can gaze all day and all night at the stars, just to have something to do, while Astrologers have an advantage over them in that they put their figures to practical use. Whatever is dead to them, abstract, we enliven and apply. Of course, we could do no work unless we had astronomers, so we are dependent upon their calculations.

But, if worse comes to worse, we just would have to figure these movements ourselves since it is nothing but a mechanical mathematical formula, that has to be continued steadily, in order to fix the planets' places for a certain moment, each day of the year. These statements do not imply that I have not great regards for any astronomer, his work and product. For astronomers to throw mud in their books on astrologers is an unfair practice. It shows how little they know about human beings. They also move around the world without recognizing great laws.

YOUR OWN HOROSCOPE

The horoscope of one-self is most important, since it affords a checking medium, as none other. The slightest ill-feelings can be traced therein. Sometimes a person may not feel quite up to date one day, though not sufficiently unwell to mention the fact even to wife or parents. But, the horoscope will usually show such a temporary weak condition. It will indicate at the same time that the weakness will flow off in a few days and all will be well once more. Horoscopes of family members are next in importance. They should be worked up and followed conscientiously, checking how they compare, how the aspects therein operate. Notes should be joined to each aspect, defining its effect as soon as something definite happened. Later on I shall show on hand of a Table how to arrange a daily horoscopolical calendar for a person, allowing sufficient space to make notations for each aspect. After three or four years have rolled by, you will have gathered enough material for interpretation of aspects of any sort and description, as they act on your own person which no text could supply.

TABLE IV

For converting time into decimal parts of a day.

Hours	Minutes	Seconds
h.	m.	s.
1 .04167	1 .00068	31 .02183
2 .08333	2 .00136	32 .04366
3 .12500	3 .00204	33 .06549
4 .16667	4 .00272	34 .08732
5 .20833	5 .00340	35 .10915
6 .25000	6 .00408	36 .13098
7 .29167	7 .00476	37 .15281
8 .33333	8 .00544	38 .17464
9 .37500	9 .00612	39 .19647
10 .41667	10 .00680	40 .21830
11 .45833	11 .00748	41 .24013
12 .50000	12 .00816	42 .26196
13 .54167	13 .00884	43 .28379
14 .58333	14 .00952	44 .30562
15 .62500	15 .01020	45 .32745
16 .66667	16 .01088	46 .34928
17 .70833	17 .01156	47 .37111
18 .75000	18 .01224	48 .39294
19 .79167	19 .01292	49 .41477
20 .83333	20 .01360	50 .43660
21 .87500	21 .01428	51 .45843
22 .91667	22 .01496	52 .48026
23 .95833	23 .01564	53 .50209
24 .1.00000	24 .01632	54 .52392
	25 .01700	55 .54575
	26 .01768	56 .56758
	27 .01836	57 .58941
	28 .01904	58 .61124
	29 .01972	59 .63307
	30 .02040	60 .65490

TABLE V

For converting Minutes and Seconds of a degree, into the decimal division of the same.

Minutes	Seconds
m.	s.
1 .01667	31 .51667
2 .03333	32 .53333
3 .05000	33 .55000
4 .06667	34 .56667
5 .08333	35 .58333
6 .10000	36 .60000
7 .11667	37 .61667
8 .13333	38 .63333
9 .15000	39 .65000
10 .16667	40 .66667
11 .18333	41 .68333
12 .20000	42 .70000
13 .21667	43 .71667
14 .23333	44 .73333
15 .25000	45 .75000
16 .26667	46 .76667
17 .28333	47 .78333
18 .30000	48 .80000
19 .31667	49 .81667
20 .33333	50 .83333
21 .35000	51 .85000
22 .36667	52 .86667
23 .38333	53 .88333
24 .40000	54 .90000
25 .41667	55 .91667
26 .43333	56 .93333
27 .45000	57 .95000
28 .46667	58 .96667
29 .48333	59 .98333
30 .50000	60 .1.00000

TABLE VI

For converting any given day into the decimal part of a year of 365 days.

Day	Jan.	Feb.	March	April	May	June
1	.000	.065	.162	.247	.329	.414
2	.002	.068	.164	.249	.331	.416
3	.004	.070	.167	.252	.334	.419
4	.006	.073	.170	.255	.337	.422
5	.011	.076	.173	.258	.340	.425
6	.014	.079	.175	.260	.342	.427
7	.016	.101	.178	.263	.345	.430
8	.019	.104	.181	.266	.348	.433
9	.022	.107	.184	.269	.351	.436
10	.025	.110	.188	.271	.353	.438
11	.027	.112	.189	.274	.356	.441
12	.030	.115	.192	.277	.359	.444
13	.033	.118	.195	.279	.362	.446
14	.036	.121	.197	.282	.364	.448
15	.038	.123	.200	.285	.367	.451
16	.041	.126	.203	.288	.370	.454
17	.044	.129	.205	.290	.373	.456
18	.046	.132	.208	.293	.375	.458
19	.049	.134	.211	.296	.378	.461
20	.052	.137	.214	.299	.381	.464
21	.055	.140	.216	.301	.384	.466
22	.058	.142	.219	.304	.386	.471
23	.060	.145	.222	.307	.389	.474
24	.063	.148	.225	.310	.392	.477
25	.066	.151	.227	.312	.395	.479
26	.068	.153	.230	.315	.397	.482
27	.071	.156	.233	.318	.400	.485
28	.074	.159	.236	.321	.403	.488
29	.077	.162	.238	.323	.405	.490
30	.079	.164	.241	.326	.408	.493
31	.082	.167	.244	.329	.411	.496

Days 31 28 31 30 31 30
 Days 31 59 90 129 151 181

For converting any given day into the decimal part of a year of 365 days.

Day	July	August	Sept.	Oct.	Nov.	Dec.
1	.486	.531	.566	.748	.823	.915
2	.489	.534	.568	.751	.826	.918
3	.491	.536	.571	.753	.828	.921
4	.494	.539	.574	.756	.831	.923
5	.497	.542	.577	.759	.834	.926
6	.510	.555	.579	.762	.837	.929
7	.513	.558	.582	.764	.839	.931
8	.516	.560	.585	.767	.842	.934
9	.518	.563	.588	.770	.845	.937
10	.521	.565	.590	.773	.848	.940
11	.523	.568	.593	.775	.850	.942
12	.526	.571	.596	.778	.853	.945
13	.529	.574	.599	.781	.856	.948
14	.532	.576	.602	.784	.859	.951
15	.534	.579	.605	.786	.861	.953
16	.537	.582	.607	.789	.864	.956
17	.540	.585	.610	.792	.867	.959
18	.542	.587	.613	.795	.870	.962
19	.545	.590	.615	.797	.873	.964
20	.548	.593	.618	.800	.876	.967
21	.551	.596	.621	.803	.879	.970
22	.553	.598	.623	.805	.881	.972
23	.556	.601	.626	.808	.884	.975
24	.559	.604	.629	.811	.887	.978
25	.562	.607	.631	.814	.890	.981
26	.564	.609	.634	.816	.893	.984
27	.567	.612	.637	.819	.896	.987
28	.570	.615	.640	.822	.899	.990
29	.573	.618	.643	.825	.902	.993
30	.575	.620	.645	.827	.905	.995
31	.578	.623	.648	.830	.908	.998

Days 31 31 30 31 30 31
 Days 212 243 273 304 334 365

THE FIVE-FOLD HOROSCOPE

15

PROPORTIONAL LOGARITHMS
DEGREES

Min.	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11
0	1.146	1.200	1.254	1.308	1.362	1.416	1.470	1.524	1.578	1.632	1.686	1.740
1	1.147	1.201	1.255	1.309	1.363	1.417	1.471	1.525	1.579	1.633	1.687	1.741
2	1.148	1.202	1.256	1.310	1.364	1.418	1.472	1.526	1.580	1.634	1.688	1.742
3	1.149	1.203	1.257	1.311	1.365	1.419	1.473	1.527	1.581	1.635	1.689	1.743
4	1.150	1.204	1.258	1.312	1.366	1.420	1.474	1.528	1.582	1.636	1.690	1.744
5	1.151	1.205	1.259	1.313	1.367	1.421	1.475	1.529	1.583	1.637	1.691	1.745
6	1.152	1.206	1.260	1.314	1.368	1.422	1.476	1.530	1.584	1.638	1.692	1.746
7	1.153	1.207	1.261	1.315	1.369	1.423	1.477	1.531	1.585	1.639	1.693	1.747
8	1.154	1.208	1.262	1.316	1.370	1.424	1.478	1.532	1.586	1.640	1.694	1.748
9	1.155	1.209	1.263	1.317	1.371	1.425	1.479	1.533	1.587	1.641	1.695	1.749
10	1.156	1.210	1.264	1.318	1.372	1.426	1.480	1.534	1.588	1.642	1.696	1.750
11	1.157	1.211	1.265	1.319	1.373	1.427	1.481	1.535	1.589	1.643	1.697	1.751
12	1.158	1.212	1.266	1.320	1.374	1.428	1.482	1.536	1.590	1.644	1.698	1.752
13	1.159	1.213	1.267	1.321	1.375	1.429	1.483	1.537	1.591	1.645	1.699	1.753
14	1.160	1.214	1.268	1.322	1.376	1.430	1.484	1.538	1.592	1.646	1.700	1.754
15	1.161	1.215	1.269	1.323	1.377	1.431	1.485	1.539	1.593	1.647	1.701	1.755
16	1.162	1.216	1.270	1.324	1.378	1.432	1.486	1.540	1.594	1.648	1.702	1.756
17	1.163	1.217	1.271	1.325	1.379	1.433	1.487	1.541	1.595	1.649	1.703	1.757
18	1.164	1.218	1.272	1.326	1.380	1.434	1.488	1.542	1.596	1.650	1.704	1.758
19	1.165	1.219	1.273	1.327	1.381	1.435	1.489	1.543	1.597	1.651	1.705	1.759
20	1.166	1.220	1.274	1.328	1.382	1.436	1.490	1.544	1.598	1.652	1.706	1.760
21	1.167	1.221	1.275	1.329	1.383	1.437	1.491	1.545	1.599	1.653	1.707	1.761
22	1.168	1.222	1.276	1.330	1.384	1.438	1.492	1.546	1.600	1.654	1.708	1.762
23	1.169	1.223	1.277	1.331	1.385	1.439	1.493	1.547	1.601	1.655	1.709	1.763
24	1.170	1.224	1.278	1.332	1.386	1.440	1.494	1.548	1.602	1.656	1.710	1.764
25	1.171	1.225	1.279	1.333	1.387	1.441	1.495	1.549	1.603	1.657	1.711	1.765
26	1.172	1.226	1.280	1.334	1.388	1.442	1.496	1.550	1.604	1.658	1.712	1.766
27	1.173	1.227	1.281	1.335	1.389	1.443	1.497	1.551	1.605	1.659	1.713	1.767
28	1.174	1.228	1.282	1.336	1.390	1.444	1.498	1.552	1.606	1.660	1.714	1.768
29	1.175	1.229	1.283	1.337	1.391	1.445	1.499	1.553	1.607	1.661	1.715	1.769
30	1.176	1.230	1.284	1.338	1.392	1.446	1.500	1.554	1.608	1.662	1.716	1.770
31	1.177	1.231	1.285	1.339	1.393	1.447	1.501	1.555	1.609	1.663	1.717	1.771
32	1.178	1.232	1.286	1.340	1.394	1.448	1.502	1.556	1.610	1.664	1.718	1.772
33	1.179	1.233	1.287	1.341	1.395	1.449	1.503	1.557	1.611	1.665	1.719	1.773
34	1.180	1.234	1.288	1.342	1.396	1.450	1.504	1.558	1.612	1.666	1.720	1.774
35	1.181	1.235	1.289	1.343	1.397	1.451	1.505	1.559	1.613	1.667	1.721	1.775
36	1.182	1.236	1.290	1.344	1.398	1.452	1.506	1.560	1.614	1.668	1.722	1.776
37	1.183	1.237	1.291	1.345	1.399	1.453	1.507	1.561	1.615	1.669	1.723	1.777
38	1.184	1.238	1.292	1.346	1.400	1.454	1.508	1.562	1.616	1.670	1.724	1.778
39	1.185	1.239	1.293	1.347	1.401	1.455	1.509	1.563	1.617	1.671	1.725	1.779
40	1.186	1.240	1.294	1.348	1.402	1.456	1.510	1.564	1.618	1.672	1.726	1.780
41	1.187	1.241	1.295	1.349	1.403	1.457	1.511	1.565	1.619	1.673	1.727	1.781
42	1.188	1.242	1.296	1.350	1.404	1.458	1.512	1.566	1.620	1.674	1.728	1.782
43	1.189	1.243	1.297	1.351	1.405	1.459	1.513	1.567	1.621	1.675	1.729	1.783
44	1.190	1.244	1.298	1.352	1.406	1.460	1.514	1.568	1.622	1.676	1.730	1.784
45	1.191	1.245	1.299	1.353	1.407	1.461	1.515	1.569	1.623	1.677	1.731	1.785
46	1.192	1.246	1.300	1.354	1.408	1.462	1.516	1.570	1.624	1.678	1.732	1.786
47	1.193	1.247	1.301	1.355	1.409	1.463	1.517	1.571	1.625	1.679	1.733	1.787
48	1.194	1.248	1.302	1.356	1.410	1.464	1.518	1.572	1.626	1.680	1.734	1.788
49	1.195	1.249	1.303	1.357	1.411	1.465	1.519	1.573	1.627	1.681	1.735	1.789
50	1.196	1.250	1.304	1.358	1.412	1.466	1.520	1.574	1.628	1.682	1.736	1.790
51	1.197	1.251	1.305	1.359	1.413	1.467	1.521	1.575	1.629	1.683	1.737	1.791
52	1.198	1.252	1.306	1.360	1.414	1.468	1.522	1.576	1.630	1.684	1.738	1.792
53	1.199	1.253	1.307	1.361	1.415	1.469	1.523	1.577	1.631	1.685	1.739	1.793
54	1.200	1.254	1.308	1.362	1.416	1.470	1.524	1.578	1.632	1.686	1.740	1.794
55	1.201	1.255	1.309	1.363	1.417	1.471	1.525	1.579	1.633	1.687	1.741	1.795
56	1.202	1.256	1.310	1.364	1.418	1.472	1.526	1.580	1.634	1.688	1.742	1.796
57	1.203	1.257	1.311	1.365	1.419	1.473	1.527	1.581	1.635	1.689	1.743	1.797
58	1.204	1.258	1.312	1.366	1.420	1.474	1.528	1.582	1.636	1.690	1.744	1.798
59	1.205	1.259	1.313	1.367	1.421	1.475	1.529	1.583	1.637	1.691	1.745	1.799
60	1.206	1.260	1.314	1.368	1.422	1.476	1.530	1.584	1.638	1.692	1.746	1.800
61	1.207	1.261	1.315	1.369	1.423	1.477	1.531	1.585	1.639	1.693	1.747	1.801
62	1.208	1.262	1.316	1.370	1.424	1.478	1.532	1.586	1.640	1.694	1.748	1.802
63	1.209	1.263	1.317	1.371	1.425	1.479	1.533	1.587	1.641	1.695	1.749	1.803
64	1.210	1.264	1.318	1.372	1.426	1.480	1.534	1.588	1.642	1.696	1.750	1.804
65	1.211	1.265	1.319	1.373	1.427	1.481	1.535	1.589	1.643	1.697	1.751	1.805
66	1.212	1.266	1.320	1.374	1.428	1.482	1.536	1.590	1.644	1.698	1.752	1.806
67	1.213	1.267	1.321	1.375	1.429	1.483	1.537	1.591	1.645	1.699	1.753	1.807
68	1.214	1.268	1.322	1.376	1.430	1.484	1.538	1.592	1.646	1.700	1.754	1.808
69	1.215	1.269	1.323	1.377	1.431	1.485	1.539	1.593	1.647	1.701	1.755	1.809
70	1.216	1.270	1.324	1.378	1.432	1.486	1.540	1.594	1.648	1.702	1.756	1.810
71	1.217	1.271	1.325	1.379	1.433	1.487	1.541	1.595	1.649	1.703	1.757	1.811
72	1.218	1.272	1.326	1.380	1.434	1.488	1.542	1.596	1.650	1.704	1.758	1.812
73	1.219	1.273	1.327	1.381	1.435	1.489	1.543	1.597	1.651	1.705	1.759	1.813
74	1.220	1.274	1.328	1.382	1.436	1.490	1.544	1.598	1.652	1.706	1.760	1.814
75	1.221	1.275	1.329	1.383	1.437	1.491	1.545	1.599	1.653	1.707	1.761	1.815
76	1.222	1.276	1.330	1.384	1.438	1.492	1.546	1.600	1.654	1.708	1.762	1.816
77	1.223	1.277	1.331	1.385	1.439	1.493	1.547	1.601	1.655	1.709	1.763	1.817
78	1.224	1.278	1.332	1.386	1.440	1.494	1.548	1.602	1.656	1.710	1.764	1.818
79	1.225	1.279	1.333	1.387	1.441	1.495	1.549	1.603	1.657	1.711	1.765	1.819
80	1.226	1.280	1.334	1.388	1.442	1.496	1.550	1.604	1.658	1.712	1.766	1.820
81	1.227	1.281	1.335	1.389	1.443	1.497	1.551	1.605	1.659	1.713	1.767	1.821
82	1.228	1.282	1.336	1.390	1.444	1.498	1.552	1.606	1.660	1.714	1.768	1.822
83	1.229	1.283	1.337	1.391	1.445	1.499	1.553	1.607	1.661	1.715	1.769	1.823
84	1.230	1.284	1.338	1.392	1.446	1.500	1.554	1.608	1.662	1.716	1.770	1.824
85	1.231	1.285	1.339	1.393	1.447	1.501	1.555	1.609	1.663	1.717	1.771	1.825
86	1.232	1.286	1.340	1.394	1.448	1.502	1.556	1.610	1.664	1.718	1.772	1.826
87	1.233	1.287	1.341	1.395	1.449	1.503	1.557	1.611	1.665	1.719	1.773	1.827
88	1.234	1.288	1.342	1.396	1.450	1.504	1.558	1.612	1.666	1.720	1.774	1.828
89	1.235	1.289	1.343	1.397	1.451	1.505	1.559	1.613	1.667	1.721	1.775	1.829
90	1.236	1.290	1.344	1.398	1.452	1.506	1.560	1.614	1.668	1.722	1.776	1.830

BASIC KNOWLEDGE AND EXACTNESS OF WORK PRIME FACTORS

When a novice looks at a horoscope he is befuzzled with the various divisions that are made, and with the planets that are put into it. Ordinarily one would think it would be sufficient to place the planets into the sign of the Zodiac in which they happen to be situated at a given time. But such a placement would be insufficient to give us the correctness, which we require, when we do our figuring.

Exact calculations are always necessary for best results. Approximate figures may put us off several days. For example, it makes a big difference whether we have a planet at $22^{\circ}41'$ or whether we just would say: the planet is at 22 degrees. Of course, I am already anticipating when I give the position of a planet with degrees and minutes.

We first must know that the Universe or the Zodiac around us is a big circle of which we are the centers. Always consider yourself or the person for whom a horoscope is made to be the little pin point in the middle of the circle. A circle, as we must recall from school days, is a line whose location is such that it is always at equal distance from a fixed point. This fixed point is the center. In order to make a circle we need a compass. The straight line distance from the center to the periphery of the circle is called the radius of the circle. We can construct 4 quadrants into any circle (Fig. 7). Each circle contains 360° measured from the center. It is an arbitrary division and we could just as well make a thousand part division or a 200 part division. In short, we are used to divide a circle into 360 equal parts and each such part is called a degree. Since a degree for fine work is a pretty rough measure, we divide each of those degrees in 60 parts and call each such part a minute of the circle, and again, for still finer work we make an additional division of 60 parts for each such minute, which gives us seconds and to top it all, they even make a division of 60 once more of each such second which then gives us tertias. The abbreviations are as follows: degrees: $^{\circ}$; minutes: $'$; seconds: $''$; tertias: $'''$.

Therefore, one of the quadrants spoken of above represents merely an angle of 90° , since 4 times 90° gives the angle of 360° . Each circle, even though round and apparently without a beginning or end must be given a beginning and an end. A beginning we obtain when we draw a horizontal line through the center and call the point of origin 0° .

THE SIGNS OF THE ZODIAC

Under ordinary astrological rules we have to divide a horoscope or the circle of the Universe into 12 equal parts, which are called *houses*. Therefore we get 12 houses or stalls. Each of these stalls must be 30° long, since the size of each equals the next, in that $12 \times 30^{\circ}$ gives 360° . 360° represents the contents of a circle. The ancients had given each of such houses a name, which we shall call the *Signs of the Zodiac*. These signs have a definite rotation which never varies. We have to learn the signs by heart as well as their abbreviations, because we have to operate with them constantly. It is best to memorize them by numbers, since I will show later that, by doing so, you can constantly and quickly measure angles between the various signs which is of great advantage (See Fig. 8, page 45).

THE FIVE-FOLD HOROSCOPE

25

The rotation and abbreviation of the signs in their correct sequence is:

House	Sign	Name	Abbreviation	Degrees
I	Aries	♈ (The Ram)	AR	(0° — 30°)
II	Taurus	♉ (The Bull)	TA	(30° — 60°)
III	Gemini	♊ (The Twins)	GE	(60° — 90°)
IV	Cancer	♋ (The Crab)	CN	(90° — 120°)
V	Leo	♌ (The Lion)	LE	(120° — 150°)
VI	Virgo	♍ (The Virgin)	VI	(150° — 180°)
VII	Libra	♎ (The Scales)	LI	(180° — 210°)
VIII	Scorpio	♏ (The Scorpion)	SC	(210° — 240°)
IX	Sagittarius	♐ (The Archer)	SA	(240° — 270°)
X	Capricorn	♑ (The Goat)	CA	(270° — 300°)
XI	Aquarius	♒ (The Jitters)	AQ	(300° — 330°)
XII	Pisces	♓ (The Fishes)	PI	(330° — 360°)
XIII	equals again	I		

The Roman letters therefore represent the signs in the rough. By an aspect we understand an angle formed between two planets. Let us assume, that one planet is located in ♈ and another is found in ♍. Knowing by heart, that ♈ is the second sign and ♍ the 6th sign, we just take the difference of the signs and know immediately the degrees between them. ♈ in 2nd, ♍ in 6th, leaves a difference of 4 signs and since each sign is 30° long, the difference must be 4×30° or 120°. It cannot be 180° nor 30°. The exact value can then be easily found.

THE PLANETS

There are many planets in the Universe which we have to consider. The list of them is given here in rotation, together with their symbols:

Sun	☉	Mars	♂	Neptune	♆
Moon	☾	Jupiter	♃	Pluto	♇
Mercury	☿	Saturn	♄	Node	♎
Venus	♀	Uranus	♅	(Rising Node)	

The last name quoted, i.e. the Node, is not a planet but the point at which the Moon cuts the Ecliptic, which is an important place, as important as if a planet was standing there. It is sometimes called the Dragon's Head, or the Rising Moon's Node. We don't use the Dragon's tail or the place opposite this head (180° away) because we measure our ☾ aspects to the ♎ position.

These planets are all of one and the same importance and not as text books say: some are more important than others. Each planet must be considered as being of equal importance with the exception of the new planet Pluto ♇ which I have not found very important, but which we shall use anyhow.

After we have learned about the signs and their rotation, the planets and their importance, we now come to the aspects proper.

THE FIVE-FOLD HOROSCOPE

TO CHANGE DEGREES AND MINUTES OF ARC OF CIRCLE
INTO MINUTES OF TIME

[illegible]

TABLE 1 CHANGES IN TEMPERATURE, HOURS & MINUTES INTO DEGREES & MINUTES

[illegible]

THE FIVE-FOLD HOROSCOPE

Latitudes and Longitudes of Places[illegible]

TABLE IX

[illegible]

THE ASPECTS

As said above, an aspect is simply an angle between two planets. Therefore, know once and for all time, that at all times and at any moment each planet casts an aspect to all the others; in other words, aspects are constantly present. How can we then distinguish between aspects? The ancients have discovered that, if and only, when two planets are certain definite spaces apart, do these aspects act or bring about changes for human beings. These distances or spaces are:

0°	♌	apart; effect strong either up or down, depending upon planets. (usually good)	
15°		apart; effect weak good	
30°	♌	" " weak good	
45°	"	" " strong evil	
60°	♌	" " strong good	
75°	"	" " strong good	If planets are direct; exactly the opposite effect if planets are Retrograde. But ♌ is always ♌!
90°	♌	" " strong evil	
105°	"	" " strong evil	
120°	♌	" " strong good	
135°	♌	" " weak evil	
150°	♌	" " weak evil	(Sometimes good)
165°	"	" " strong evil	
180°	♌	" " strong either up or down depending upon planets (usually evil)	

There are some text books which bring aspects of 36°, 72°, 144°. Others say each aspect of 7½° right around the clock to 360°, should be used, but if we would do that, we never would arrive at the important ones. One group uses each unit of 12, such as 12, 24, 36, 48, 60, 72 degrees, etc.; others 7°30', 16°, 22°30', 30°, 37°30', etc. Forget about them! I mention them to draw your attention to paths that must not be entered into, since I have wasted many weeks and months testing around with these and obtained no results whatever.

While we are at criticizing, we might just as well get something else off the chest: Don't ascribe one thing to the first house, some other thing to the second house, something else again to the third house, etc., like you find in text-books. The houses are all alike and mean nothing but twelve divisions of the Zodiac. If we are able to distinguish between good and bad we are doing very well. The same applies to the so-called rulerships of planets. Don't use any rulerships! They say: this planet rules the first house, another the 2nd, another the 5th house and because it rules that house and is in aspect to a planet which rules the 9th house this and that must happen. Bologny! Just a lot of nonsense, for want of something better.

We use the list given above and ascribe to the aspects the effect marked next to it and we shall fare well.

Some of you may notice, I am trying to get over to the matter of the Ascendant and the Sidereal Time, but as hard as I try to swing leisurely into that phase, which is very important, I don't seem to succeed. I just have to start with it some other way.

SIDEREAL TIME

There is a certain rhythm in the Heavens which is known by the name of Sidereal—or Star Time. This rhythm amounts to a regular daily movement of 3 minutes 56.555 seconds. I could explain in fancy technical terms how this

THE FIVE-FOLD HOROSCOPE

29

figure is found, but we are not astronomers and have no use for their work other than for practical application. (Tit for tat!) That we, at least, know how this value is joined in the heaven and to the γ point, we say: Each time, once a year, the Sun is at a point in the heaven which is called 0° Aries. This happens March 21st to 22nd of each year. Remember, this happens at different times on those days. Some times it may be in the early morning, at other times in the afternoon. Whenever this occurs, we call this moment 0° Aries for the Sun and 0 hours 0 minutes 0 seconds of Sidereal Time. From this place the Sidereal Time advances each day 3 minutes 56 seconds, (decimal 555), (3m56.555s), until it completes a full round of 24 hours. By that time the Solar Year is completed. For verification we look up Raphael's Ephemerides of Planets' Places for 1941, on page 6, first column left, next to the date. It shows under "Sidereal Time" as follows:

March 22nd, 23 hours 59 min. 21 sec.
 March 23rd, 0 hour 3 min. 18 sec.
 March 24th, 0 hour 7 min. 14 sec.
 March 25th, 0 hour 11 min. 11 sec.

Note, of course, that the 24 hours mentioned above are not 24 hours of our clock time. A clock, during one year, goes 730 times around the dial, the 24 hours are meant as measured in Sidereal Time, which moves in one year 24 hours.

The planets which we use to measure aspects are taken from Ephemeris Tables which show the geocentric Longitude. This means we use the planets' places as seen from the earth. We ignore completely the other possibility, that we could look at the angles as if we were on the Sun. Such a view is called heliocentric view. This represents an entirely different field and is treated in my "Handbook".

Besides, there are also other measures for planets' places, those relating to Latitude and Declination. We do not need them. Some astrologers use so-called Parallels, meaning by that expression that two planets are in the same degree of declination. But we forget also about that idea. As you will note, I am dispensing with a lot of rules that are found in text books and I have good reasons to take them out. Many rules which have to be used are not found in text books. In fact, when we get over to the actual work, you will note how perfectly easy and safe we can cast horoscopes, that give a great percentage of worthwhile data "when" things should happen to a Native. It takes a little while to clean house, but when once done, matters will proceed easier. Happy may those be called who have not wasted a lot of time on usual textbook astrology! They are more receptive to my ideas compared to those who had a lot of wrong ideas planted in them.

THE FIRST STEP TO ERECT A HOROSCOPE SIDEREAL TIME COMPUTATIONS

To the Sidereal Time of the day on which a horoscope is to be erected we have to add the number of hours, minutes and seconds that elapsed from the preceding noon. This means, if a birth occurred at 3:00 P.M., we would take the Sid. Time of that day and add the 3 hours, which had elapsed from the previous Noon. If, however, the birth occurred at 7 a.m., we would take the Sid. Time of the preceding Noon from the Ephemeris and add to it, first 12 hours to get us to midnight and then 7 more hours to bring us to the following (actual) morning of the birth.

THE FIVE-FOLD HOROSCOPE

FIG. 10A

PART OF DARHALL'S EMBLEM FOR 1941

PART OF RAPHAEL'S PUPPERS PG. 10A

[illegible]

THE FIVE-FOLD HOROSCOPE

31

TABLE XI

Permanent Table for the Mid-heaven for any Latitude North and the corresponding sidereal Time; the latter from 5 minutes to 5 minutes.

Sid.T.	K.C.	Sid.T.	K.C.	Sid.T.	K.C.	Sid.T.	K.C.
0 h 0 m	0 Ar 0 m	6 h 0 m	0 Cr 0 m	12 h 0 m	0 Li 0 m	18 h 0 m	0 Cr 0 m
0 h 5 m	1 Ar 22 m	6 h 5 m	1 Cr 2 m	12 h 5 m	1 Li 22 m	18 h 5 m	1 Cr 2 m
0 h 10 m	2 Ar 43 m	6 h 10 m	2 Cr 18 m	12 h 10 m	2 Li 43 m	18 h 10 m	2 Cr 18 m
0 h 15 m	4 Ar 5 m	6 h 15 m	3 Cr 25 m	12 h 15 m	4 Li 5 m	18 h 15 m	3 Cr 25 m
0 h 20 m	5 Ar 27 m	6 h 20 m	4 Cr 35 m	12 h 20 m	5 Li 27 m	18 h 20 m	4 Cr 35 m
0 h 25 m	6 Ar 49 m	6 h 25 m	5 Cr 44 m	12 h 25 m	6 Li 48 m	18 h 25 m	5 Cr 44 m
0 h 30 m	8 Ar 10 m	6 h 30 m	6 Cr 53 m	12 h 30 m	8 Li 10 m	18 h 30 m	6 Cr 53 m
0 h 35 m	9 Ar 31 m	6 h 35 m	8 Cr 2 m	12 h 35 m	9 Li 31 m	18 h 35 m	8 Cr 2 m
0 h 40 m	10 Ar 53 m	6 h 40 m	9 Cr 11 m	12 h 40 m	10 Li 53 m	18 h 40 m	9 Cr 11 m
0 h 45 m	12 Ar 14 m	6 h 45 m	10 Cr 20 m	12 h 45 m	12 Li 14 m	18 h 45 m	10 Cr 21 m
0 h 50 m	13 Ar 7 m	6 h 50 m	11 Cr 30 m	12 h 50 m	13 Li 35 m	18 h 50 m	11 Cr 30 m
0 h 55 m	14 Ar 56 m	6 h 55 m	12 Cr 36 m	12 h 55 m	14 Li 56 m	18 h 55 m	12 Cr 39 m
1 h 00 m	16 Ar 17 m	7 h 0 m	13 Cr 49 m	13 h 0 m	15 Li 17 m	19 h 0 m	13 Cr 49 m
1 h 5 m	17 Ar 37 m	7 h 5 m	14 Cr 58 m	13 h 5 m	17 Li 37 m	19 h 5 m	14 Cr 59 m
1 h 10 m	18 Ar 59 m	7 h 10 m	16 Cr 8 m	13 h 10 m	18 Li 58 m	19 h 10 m	16 Cr 8 m
1 h 15 m	20 Ar 18 m	7 h 15 m	17 Cr 18 m	13 h 15 m	20 Li 18 m	19 h 15 m	17 Cr 13 m
1 h 20 m	21 Ar 32 m	7 h 20 m	18 Cr 28 m	13 h 20 m	21 Li 32 m	19 h 20 m	18 Cr 22 m
1 h 25 m	22 Ar 52 m	7 h 25 m	19 Cr 38 m	13 h 25 m	22 Li 52 m	19 h 25 m	19 Cr 32 m
1 h 30 m	24 Ar 18 m	7 h 30 m	20 Cr 48 m	13 h 30 m	24 Li 18 m	19 h 30 m	20 Cr 43 m
1 h 35 m	25 Ar 37 m	7 h 35 m	21 Cr 59 m	13 h 35 m	25 Li 37 m	19 h 35 m	21 Cr 55 m
1 h 40 m	26 Ar 57 m	7 h 40 m	23 Cr 10 m	13 h 40 m	25 Li 57 m	19 h 40 m	23 Cr 10 m
1 h 45 m	28 Ar 16 m	7 h 45 m	24 Cr 21 m	13 h 45 m	29 Li 16 m	19 h 45 m	24 Cr 21 m
1 h 50 m	29 Ar 34 m	7 h 50 m	25 Cr 32 m	13 h 50 m	29 Li 34 m	19 h 50 m	25 Cr 32 m
1 h 55 m	0 Ta 53 m	7 h 55 m	26 Cr 43 m	13 h 55 m	0 Cr 53 m	19 h 55 m	26 Cr 43 m
2 h 00 m	2 Ta 11 m	8 h 0 m	27 Cr 54 m	14 h 0 m	2 9 Cr 11 m	20 h 0 m	27 Cr 55 m
2 h 5 m	3 Ta 29 m	8 h 5 m	29 Cr 6 m	14 h 5 m	3 5 Cr 28 m	20 h 5 m	29 Cr 6 m
2 h 10 m	4 Ta 47 m	8 h 10 m	0 Cr 18 m	14 h 10 m	4 3 Cr 47 m	20 h 10 m	0 Cr 15 m
2 h 15 m	6 Ta 4 m	8 h 15 m	1 Cr 30 m	14 h 15 m	5 3 Cr 4 m	20 h 15 m	1 Cr 30 m
2 h 20 m	7 Ta 21 m	8 h 20 m	2 Cr 43 m	14 h 20 m	7 3 Cr 21 m	20 h 20 m	2 Cr 42 m
2 h 25 m	8 Ta 38 m	8 h 25 m	3 Cr 56 m	14 h 25 m	5 3 Cr 38 m	20 h 25 m	3 Cr 55 m
2 h 30 m	9 Ta 55 m	8 h 30 m	5 Cr 9 m	14 h 30 m	9 3 Cr 55 m	20 h 30 m	5 Cr 9 m
2 h 35 m	11 Ta 11 m	8 h 35 m	6 Cr 22 m	14 h 35 m	11 3 Cr 11 m	20 h 35 m	6 Cr 22 m
2 h 40 m	12 Ta 27 m	8 h 40 m	7 Cr 35 m	14 h 40 m	12 3 Cr 27 m	20 h 40 m	7 Cr 35 m
2 h 45 m	13 Ta 43 m	8 h 45 m	8 Cr 48 m	14 h 45 m	13 3 Cr 43 m	20 h 45 m	8 Cr 45 m
2 h 50 m	14 Ta 58 m	8 h 50 m	10 Cr 3 m	14 h 50 m	14 3 Cr 58 m	20 h 50 m	10 Cr 3 m
2 h 55 m	16 Ta 13 m	8 h 55 m	11 Cr 17 m	14 h 55 m	15 3 Cr 13 m	20 h 55 m	11 Cr 17 m
3 h 0 m	17 Ta 29 m	9 h 0 m	12 Cr 32 m	15 h 0 m	17 3 Cr 29 m	21 h 0 m	12 Cr 32 m
3 h 5 m	18 Ta 43 m	9 h 5 m	13 Cr 47 m	15 h 5 m	18 3 Cr 43 m	21 h 5 m	13 Cr 47 m
3 h 10 m	19 Ta 57 m	9 h 10 m	15 Cr 2 m	15 h 10 m	19 3 Cr 57 m	21 h 10 m	15 Cr 2 m
3 h 15 m	21 Ta 11 m	9 h 15 m	16 Cr 17 m	15 h 15 m	21 3 Cr 11 m	21 h 15 m	16 Cr 17 m
3 h 20 m	22 Ta 25 m	9 h 20 m	17 Cr 33 m	15 h 20 m	22 3 Cr 25 m	21 h 20 m	17 Cr 33 m
3 h 25 m	23 Ta 38 m	9 h 25 m	18 Cr 49 m	15 h 25 m	23 3 Cr 38 m	21 h 25 m	18 Cr 45 m
3 h 30 m	24 Ta 51 m	9 h 30 m	20 Cr 5 m	15 h 30 m	24 3 Cr 51 m	21 h 30 m	20 Cr 5 m
3 h 35 m	26 Ta 4 m	9 h 35 m	21 Cr 22 m	15 h 35 m	25 3 Cr 4 m	21 h 35 m	21 Cr 22 m
3 h 40 m	27 Ta 17 m	9 h 40 m	22 Cr 32 m	15 h 40 m	27 3 Cr 17 m	21 h 40 m	22 Cr 32 m
3 h 45 m	28 Ta 30 m	9 h 45 m	23 Cr 56 m	15 h 45 m	28 3 Cr 25 m	21 h 45 m	23 Cr 56 m
3 h 50 m	29 Ta 42 m	9 h 50 m	25 Cr 13 m	15 h 50 m	29 3 Cr 42 m	21 h 50 m	25 Cr 13 m
3 h 55 m	0 Oe 55 m	9 h 55 m	26 Cr 31 m	15 h 55 m	0 3 Cr 54 m	21 h 55 m	26 Cr 31 m
4 h 00 m	3 Ge 5 m	10 h 00 m	27 Cr 49 m	16 h 0 m	2 3 Cr 5 m	22 h 0 m	27 Cr 45 m
4 h 5 m	3 Ge 17 m	10 h 5 m	29 Cr 7 m	16 h 5 m	3 3 Cr 17 m	22 h 5 m	29 Cr 7 m
4 h 10 m	4 Ge 28 m	10 h 10 m	0 Vi 26 m	16 h 10 m	4 3 Cr 28 m	22 h 10 m	0 Pi 26 m
4 h 15 m	5 Ge 39 m	10 h 15 m	1 Vi 44 m	16 h 15 m	5 3 Cr 39 m	22 h 15 m	1 Pi 44 m
4 h 20 m	6 Ge 50 m	10 h 20 m	3 Vi 4 m	16 h 20 m	6 3 Cr 50 m	22 h 20 m	3 Pi 4 m
4 h 25 m	8 Ge 10 m	10 h 25 m	4 Vi 23 m	16 h 25 m	8 3 Cr 10 m	22 h 25 m	4 Pi 23 m
4 h 30 m	9 Ge 11 m	10 h 30 m	5 Vi 42 m	16 h 30 m	9 3 Cr 11 m	22 h 30 m	5 Pi 42 m
4 h 35 m	10 Ge 22 m	10 h 35 m	7 Vi 2 m	16 h 35 m	10 3 Cr 22 m	22 h 35 m	7 Pi 2 m
4 h 40 m	11 Ge 32 m	10 h 40 m	8 Vi 22 m	16 h 40 m	11 3 Cr 32 m	22 h 40 m	8 Pi 22 m
4 h 45 m	12 Ge 42 m	10 h 45 m	9 Vi 42 m	16 h 45 m	12 3 Cr 42 m	22 h 45 m	9 Pi 42 m
4 h 50 m	13 Ge 52 m	10 h 50 m	11 Vi 2 m	16 h 50 m	13 3 Cr 52 m	22 h 50 m	11 Pi 2 m
4 h 55 m	15 Ge 2 m	10 h 55 m	13 Vi 22 m	16 h 55 m	15 3 Cr 2 m	22 h 55 m	13 Pi 22 m
5 h 0 m	16 Ge 11 m	11 h 0 m	15 Vi 43 m	17 h 0 m	16 3 Cr 11 m	23 h 0 m	15 Pi 43 m
5 h 5 m	17 Ge 21 m	11 h 5 m	15 Vi 14 m	17 h 5 m	17 3 Cr 21 m	23 h 5 m	15 Pi 14 m
5 h 10 m	18 Ge 30 m	11 h 10 m	16 Vi 25 m	17 h 10 m	18 3 Cr 30 m	23 h 10 m	16 Pi 25 m
5 h 15 m	19 Ge 39 m	11 h 15 m	17 Vi 46 m	17 h 15 m	19 3 Cr 40 m	23 h 15 m	17 Pi 46 m
5 h 20 m	20 Ge 49 m	11 h 20 m	19 Vi 7 m	17 h 20 m	20 3 Cr 49 m	23 h 20 m	19 Pi 7 m
5 h 25 m	21 Ge 58 m	11 h 25 m	20 Vi 39 m	17 h 25 m	21 3 Cr 59 m	23 h 25 m	20 Pi 39 m
5 h 30 m	23 Ge 7 m	11 h 30 m	21 Vi 50 m	17 h 30 m	23 3 Cr 7 m	23 h 30 m	21 Pi 50 m
5 h 35 m	24 Ge 18 m	11 h 35 m	23 Vi 12 m	17 h 35 m	24 3 Cr 18 m	23 h 35 m	23 Pi 12 m
5 h 40 m	25 Ge 25 m	11 h 40 m	24 Vi 33 m	17 h 40 m	25 3 Cr 25 m	23 h 40 m	24 Pi 33 m
5 h 45 m	26 Ge 34 m	11 h 45 m	25 Vi 55 m	17 h 45 m	26 3 Cr 34 m	23 h 45 m	25 Pi 55 m
5 h 50 m	27 Ge 42 m	11 h 50 m	27 Vi 17 m	17 h 50 m	27 3 Cr 42 m	23 h 50 m	27 Pi 17 m
5 h 55 m	28 Ge 52 m	11 h 55 m	28 Vi 38 m	17 h 55 m	28 3 Cr 52 m	23 h 55 m	28 Pi 38 m
				17 h 55 m	29 3 Cr 0 m	24 h 0 m	0 Ar 0 m

Furthermore, in order to take care of the continually progressing Sidereal Time proper, we have to *add for each hour elapsed* since the Noon (present or previous, depending upon the time explained above) an increment value of 10 seconds. For less than one hour we use the proportionate parts of the 10 seconds. This will take care of the daily sidereal motion of 3m56s for the period. We may also use the increment given in Table III instead, which is more exact, but it is not absolutely necessary.

TABLE III

TO TURN MEAN SOLAR TIME INTO SIDEREAL TIME
(The Found Values To Be Added To a Mean Time Interval)

Time Hours	Sid. Time	Time Hours	Sid. Time
1	0m 9.856s	13	2m 8.134s
2	0m 19.713s	14	2m 17.991s
3	0m 29.569s	15	2m 27.847s
4	0m 39.426s	16	2m 37.704s
5	0m 49.282s	17	2m 47.560s
6	0m 59.139s	18	2m 57.417s
7	1m 8.995s	19	3m 7.273s
8	1m 18.852s	20	3m 17.129s
9	1m 28.708s	21	3m 26.986s
10	1m 38.565s	22	3m 36.842s
11	1m 48.421s	23	3m 46.699s
12	1m 58.278s	24	3m 56.555s

Time Minutes	Sid.T. Seconds	Time Minutes	Sid.T. Seconds	Time Minutes	Sid.T. Seconds
1	0.164	21	3.450	41	6.735
2	0.329	22	3.614	42	6.900
3	0.493	23	3.778	43	7.064
4	0.657	24	3.943	44	7.228
5	0.821	25	4.107	45	7.392
6	0.986	26	4.271	46	7.557
7	1.150	27	4.435	47	7.721
8	1.314	28	4.600	48	7.885
9	1.478	29	4.764	49	8.049
10	1.643	30	4.928	50	8.214
11	1.807	31	5.093	51	8.378
12	1.971	32	5.257	52	8.542
13	2.136	33	5.421	53	8.707
14	2.300	34	5.585	54	8.871
15	2.464	35	5.750	55	9.035
16	2.628	36	5.914	56	9.199
17	2.793	37	6.078	57	9.364
18	2.957	38	6.242	58	9.528
19	3.121	39	6.407	59	9.692
20	3.285	40	6.571	60	9.856

THE FIVE-FOLD HOROSCOPE

33

$$\begin{array}{rcl}
 \text{Example: } 2\text{h}10\text{m Mean Solar Time} & & \\
 \text{Equals: } 2\text{h} = 0\text{m}19.713\text{s Sid. Time} & & \\
 \quad \quad 10\text{m} = 0\text{m} 1.643\text{s Sid. Time} & & \\
 \hline
 2\text{h}10\text{m} = 21.356\text{s Sid. Time} & &
 \end{array}$$

Let us assume a birth occurred at 7:30 A.M. We use the Sidereal Time of the previous day given in the Ephemeris, add to it first 12 hours to get us to midnight (the Sidereal Time in the Ephemeris is usually figured for Noon), then we add the extra 7h30m to get us to the birth moment at 7:30 A.M. Since the Sidereal Time has kept on moving at the rate of 3 minutes 56.555 seconds each 24 hours, we have to add to this Sidereal Time that amount of sidereal motion which was produced between the previous Noon and the time of 7:30 A.M. Here we have to add the Sidereal Time motion of 19 hours 30 minutes. We either use a flat increment of 10 seconds for each hour elapsed since the previous Noon, or else, we use our Table III and take the value from it:

$$\begin{array}{rcl}
 19 \text{ hours equals } 3\text{m}7.273\text{s (Sid. motion in 19 hours)} & & \\
 + 4.928\text{s (Sid. motion in 30 minutes)} & & \\
 \hline
 3\text{m}12.201\text{s} & &
 \end{array}$$

A small adjustment, also, is necessary on account of the distance of the various places from Greenwich. This adjustment is called the "*Reduction from Greenwich to local Sidereal Time*" which is expressed in seconds and which is found in the last column in Table IX. This reduction is minus (—) when the birth place is to the East of Greenwich and plus (+) when the place of birth is West of Greenwich. It amounts to 1 second for every $1\frac{1}{2}$ degrees in Longitude + or — (West or East).

At all times we must use the Standard Time of a place. In the event a city or region uses Daylight Saving Time, we have to turn it into Standard Time. Special adjustments must be made during war times, when clocks are moved ahead quite a bit to save daylight hours! Verify each case!

FINAL CALCULATIONS TO LOCATE THE SIDEREAL TIME OF A BIRTH

Assume a birth takes place at 7:08 P.M., on May 14, 1941, at Carmel, California. The following data must be secured:

1. Longitude of Carmel, $121^{\circ}56'$ West (taken from a map or from Table IX)
2. Latitude of Carmel, $36^{\circ}22'$ North (taken from a map or from Table IX)
3. Sidereal Time of the previous Noon (taken from the Ephemeris).
4. Time of birth, taken from observation, 7h8m P.M. (Note, the 0 between 7h08m is usually omitted in astrological work!)

From these data we produce the complete horoscope. Certain parts of the data we do not need immediately such as the Latitude of the Birth Place.

* In some Ephemeris the planets as well as the Sidereal Time is figured for midnight instead of for 12 Noon each day. In that case all your calculations are done from Midnight towards the hour of birth. On first page of each Ephemeris you will find for what time and for which place it is figured.

THE FIVE-FOLD HOROSCOPE

We insert now the actual values:

1. Sid. Time; Ephemeris shows May 14, 1941, at Noon	3h27m21s
2. Time of birth (from Noon Time)	+7h 8m
3. Reduction to Greenwich (last column Table IX)	+ 1m21s
4. Increment of Sid. passed between previous Noon and actual birth, 7h8m (from Table III) (page 32).	
7 hours	1m8.995s
30 min.	4.928s
	1m13.923s
	+ 1m14s
Final Sidereal Time to be used	19h37m52s

To be looked up in the Table of Houses for the proper Latitude of place of birth: in this case we use Tables of Houses for Algiers 36°48' North, supplied in Raphael's Tables of Houses 0—50° North.

CHANGE OF CALENDER

A student, who sooner or later works with horoscopes erected for ancient times, such as when one tries to make a horoscope for the time of the discovery of the American Continent, will first of all consider the change of the calendar made 1588 in Catholic countries and 1752 in English speaking and Protestant countries. Next, he has to consider that old Ephemerides are made for other places such as Bologna, Italy, or for Cologne, Germany, and not for Greenwich. The results will be the same, of course, if the horoscope is made right, but your distance from the place for which the Ephemeris was made is different. This will be shown when we erect the Wheat Horoscope for Jan 2, 1587.

In case someone uses old maps, to locate places on the earth to find their distances from London or from the place the Ephemeris is made for, bears in mind that they used to have the first Meridian through Ferro, an island of the Canary Islands group, which was considered the most westerly point of the Old World. Later the Greenwich Meridian was used.

Therefore, with old maps you have to consider the difference between Ferro and Greenwich. This place lies in 27°46'30"N. and 17°54'22"W. of Greenwich.

OLD EPHEMERIDES

The question comes up many times: where can I get old Ephemerides? We have Ephemerides back to about 1850, but, what to do if we want to cast a horoscope for March 18th, 1619, or for November 2nd, 1702, if need be? I discovered that Ephemerides for practically any year starting with 1490, or thereabouts, can be found in the New York Library. There is one complete collection from 1700 to 1810 there, called the "Ford Collection", which has the Index Mark "CAC". The slip to obtain any of these books looks as follows:

Collection of English Almanacs (Ford Collection). Mention which years you want.

Older ones, covering the years 1500 to 1700 can be located in the big Room 323 where books are listed on cards, under the title: "Almanacs", with sub-titles: Almanacs of Italy, Almanacs of Germany, Almanacs of Great Britain.

The older ones are mostly of Italian or German origin and printed in Latin, which should give no difficulty to use them.

THE FIVE-FOLD HOROSCOPE

35

You may have photostatic copies made of any of them at the library. Of the English almanacs there are several of one year bound together. Only one of them contains the places of the planets in degrees and minutes, while the other parts carry the planets' places only with degrees, omitting minutes, thus not useful. I do not think you could get mail orders for photostatic copies executed. You probably will have to go to the library yourself or send someone to look up the pages and order them reproduced, or copy the positions in long hand.

EXAMPLES HOW TO USE TABLE III

Assuming we have to adjust the Sid. Time for a birth which occurred at 9:43 P.M. of some day.

Use the Sid. Time, which is found in the Ephemeris. Add to it the increment of 9h43m, taken from Table III. Its value is composed of

$$\begin{array}{rcl} 9 \text{ hours} & = & 1\text{m}28.708\text{s} \\ +43 \text{ min.} & = & 7.064\text{s} \end{array}$$

$$\hline 9\text{h}43\text{m} = 1\text{m}35.772\text{s} \quad (\text{from page 32})$$

This value we shall call 1m36s. It is added to the given Sid. Time in the Ephemeris.

A birth occurred at 9:02 A.M. of some day.

Take Sid. Time of previous day as shown in the Ephemeris. Add to it the differential between that previous noon and 9:02 A.M., which amounts to 21h2m. Therefore, Sid. Time for 21m2m.

$$\begin{array}{rcl} 21\text{h} & 3\text{m}36.842\text{s} \\ 2\text{m} & 0.329\text{s} \\ \hline & 3\text{m}37.171\text{s} \end{array}$$

This value is added to the Sid. Time of the previous Noon, and everything is taken care of as far as the Sidereal Time is concerned. Of course, other adjustments which have to be made to erect a correct horoscope will be pointed out later on.

NECESSARY TOOLS

To be able to cast a horoscope it is necessary that you procure for yourself a set of Ephemerides which contain the Planets' Places for each day of the year. They are available for 50 or even 100 years backwards. Each year, in September, a new issue appears for the next year.

On the last page the Raphael's Ephemerides contain the so-called "Tables of Houses" for London and New York. But these are not useful for places which are more than four or five degrees of these latitudes. It is therefore essential that you procure Raphael's "Tables of Houses for Northern Latitudes", from the Equator, 0° to 50° North.

D. G. Nelson Co., 619 North State Street, Chicago, Ill., specialize in astrological Ephemerides, Tables of Houses, as well as astrological books of the better grade. They can supply a complete outfit at low cost.

CUSPS

With the aid of the Table of Houses for the proper latitude we proceed to adjust the values given in the Table of Houses, to get as close to exact values as possible. Fig 10A (page 30) shows part of the Table of Houses for New York as given in Raphael's *Astronomical Ephemeris of Planets' Places*.

By Cusps we understand the corners of the 12 houses of a horoscope as shown in Fig. 8. In this figure, the point marked 270° represents the cusp of the 10th House or the Mid-Heaven; the point marked 300° is the cusp of the 11th House, the point marked 330° is the cusp of the 12th House. The point marked 0° (360°) is called the Ascendant or the cusp of the first House. The point marked 30° is the cusp of the 2nd House; the point marked 60° is the cusp of the 3rd House. These cusps are given in the Tables of Houses for the 10th to the 3rd House.

MIDHEAVEN & ASCENDANT

The Mid-Heaven, as well as the Ascendant, must be figured to the minute. The other cusps may be either left the way they are shown in the Table of Houses, or adjusted to 15m, 30m, or 45m but not closer, if need be, or when it is obvious that the full degree without minutes is too inaccurate. Experience will teach you when to adjust and when not to adjust.

As to the remaining cusps of the horoscope, we obtain their values from the six given ones in that these degrees are the same, only the signs have to be reversed. If the MC. or Mid-Heaven carries $16^\circ 8'$, the cusp of the 4th House, the opposite place below carries also 16° with the sign of ♍ , which is opposite to ♊ . If the Ascendant carries $23^\circ 20' \text{♏}$, the descendant must have $23^\circ 20' \text{♌}$, quite automatically. When entering the missing cusps: 1, place the degrees belonging there, and only then; 2, enter the signs for it, which must be known by heart, else, copy them from the Table of Signs, using their opposing signs.

The beginner is much puzzled by the sudden, but necessary change of the Ascendant. Instead of starting our horoscope at 0°♈ , we have to take the right moment, the sign and degree of the birth at the Ascendant. This "rising" point is not continuing to rise, as might be assumed from the wording, but, when time progresses, this Ascendant moves downwards and NOT upwards! From the beginning of the first house of an Aries horoscope, it travels down into the first house, gets in to the second, as time goes on, and keeps on moving in this direction. Gradually, this Ascendant changes, of course, its signs. The cause behind such a movement is the Sidereal Time. Fig. 10 shows that in our case, instead of 0°♈ , we have $14^\circ 31' \text{♈}$ rising. During one day the entire Zodiac passes the Ascendant, or Cusp 1st House; therefore, any degree and any sign may be rising during one day, since the earth itself turns around its axis once a day. Yes, there is once, during a day, also 0°♈ on the Ascendant, but just for one moment, to be superceded by $0^\circ 1' \text{♈}$, $0^\circ 2' \text{♈}$ up to $29^\circ 59' \text{♈}$.

HOW TO ADJUST ASCENDANT AND MID-HEAVEN

Usually our total value of Sidereal Time shows a little variation from the value shown in the Table of Houses, which is nearest to our time.

Let us assume we have a final Sidereal Time for a place on the 45th degree

THE FIVE-FOLD HOROSCOPE

37

Latitude of 9h35m30s. Our Table shows, however, the nearest given values as 9m33m34s and the next as 9h37m29s. For the former value our Ascendant would be $10^{\circ}21'm$, for the latter it would be $11^{\circ}5'm$. There is a difference of 44 minutes, which is too much of a difference to allow for good work. We have to interpolate or proportion the difference. We say: Our actual value is very close to one-half the difference in Sidereal Time *further*, since the entire difference in Sid. Time amounts to 3m55s and from 9h33m34s to 9h35m30s are 1m56s. All we do is to take the same proportion and work it into the longitudinal distance of the Ascendant, which happens to belong to the Sid. Time of 9h33m34s, compared to the Longitude belonging to the Sid. Time of 9h37m29s. This difference amounts to 44 minutes in Longitude. In this specific case we take $\frac{1}{2}$ or 22 min. and add these to the lower value (we might also deduct it from the higher value), obtaining for the adjusted and corrected Ascendant $10^{\circ}43'm$.

Here is another example, worked somewhat shorter, since we have to understand fully how this adjustment is made::

Assuming the result of Sid. Time as final value is 10h11m4s (for 45° Lat.)		
nearest values:	10h 8m22s	Asc. belonging to it $16^{\circ}53'm$
	10h12m11s	Asc. belonging to it $17^{\circ}36'm$
difference:	3m49s	43'

From 10h11m4s back to 10h8m22s are 2m42s.

We make the following simple proportion and say:

When 3m49s or 229 sec. bring a motion of 43 min., how much motion bring 2m42s or 162s?

Make the proportion as follows

$$229 \div 43 = 162 \div x; 43 \times 162 \div 229 = 6966 \div 229 = 30 \text{ min.}$$

Therefore we add to the lower value of Ascendant, i.e. to $16^{\circ}53'm$ the calculated increment of 30m, which makes our Ascendant to be $17^{\circ}23'm$.

This value is set on the Ascendant instead of the one given in the Table as $16^{\circ}53'm$.

With the MC or Mid-Heaven (10th House) we have to use our Table XI for exact work. True, the Tables of Houses supply the cusps of the 10th House correct to the full degree, but when we work later on with aspects to the Mid-Heaven, we are not satisfied to have this value only correct to a degree, because there can be as much as 30 days difference if we are only right within one degree. Therefore, never take the MC from the Table of Houses, but take always values from Table XI, page 31.

Its use is self-explanatory. We read our Sidereal Time out of it as with the present example: 10h8m22s. We have therein the values for 10h5m and for 10h10m. The MC belonging to these two values is given as $29^{\circ}7'\Omega$ resp. $0^{\circ}26'm$. The difference in the MC amounts to 79m for those 5 min. of Sid. Time.

Here we make the same proportion as we did with the Ascendant above: 5m or 300 seconds show a difference of 79m. What is the difference, if it is a matter of a 3m22s movement or of 202 seconds (from 10h5m to

10h8m22s)? We make the proportion:

$$300s \div 9m = 202s \div xm; 79 \times 202 \div 300 = 15958 \div 300 = 53m.$$

This value is added to the M.C. of 10h5m. We then get $29^{\circ}7'\Omega$ plus 53' equals $0^{\circ}0'\eta$.

This is the cusp of the 10th House or MC.

The remaining cusps are copied from the Table of Houses, unless we figure them individually with spherical trigonometry, which is a lot of work. We won't go into that. First, it is not necessary to be too exact with the other cusps of the Houses, because the results will not be any better; besides, we save several hours of work.

THE USE OF THE TABLES OF HOUSES

(See Fig 10, page 30)

In the first column of a Table of Houses we find marked: "Sid. Time". In the second, we find marked 10, in the next 11, in the following 12; then follows a column marked "Ascendant", next a column marked 2, and a last column marked 3. This is the division into houses, whereby the entire left side of the horoscope gets numbered, as illustrated in Fig. 10. The sign underneath each number mentioned above shows what sign and degree of the Zodiac is at the "cusp" of that house. On the cusp of the 10th House is η between 7° and 8° (see Fig. 10A, lower right column, next to Sid. Time 10h34m54s). The cusp of the 11th house has $8^{\circ}\simeq$, the cusp of the 12th shows $3^{\circ}\eta$ (not " $\simeq$ " as is marked in the top row! but after the first 3 Sid. Times lines given this sign disappears and the new sign, of η , is entered, and, when entered, it means 0° of that new sign, followed in the next vertical column by 1, which means $1^{\circ}\eta$, $2^{\circ}\eta$, $3^{\circ}\eta$, and so on.

The next horizontal column, marked Ascendant shows as Sid. Time $24^{\circ}4'\eta$. The next column shows (2nd cusp) $25^{\circ}\simeq$; the 3rd cusp carries $0^{\circ}\simeq$.

ADJUSTMENT OF CUSPS

These values are the nearest supplied and are not quite exact for our horoscope as we readily can see. First of all, our Sid. Time is not the one quoted 10h34m54s, but is 10h37m52s. We are actually 3 minutes out of the way and those 3 minutes must be equally adjusted for each cusp to get closer values. For this purpose we look at the next column of Sid. Time, which is given as 10h38m40s. The difference from one given Sid. Time to the next given one is about 4 min., while our own place is about three-fourths of that amount. Consequently, in order to do justice, we add to each cusp $\frac{3}{4}$ part of the motion of each cusp in *this* case. If the difference between our own Sid. Time and the given one would be about 2 minutes, we would adjust one half of the movement from the first to the second time.

Adjusting $\frac{3}{4}$ of the movement to obtain values as close as possible, we get: 10th house cusp $7^{\circ}40'\eta$; 11th house cusp $8^{\circ}40'\simeq$; 12th house cusp $3^{\circ}40'\eta$; Ascendant or first house cusp ($\frac{3}{4}$ of 44' difference) $24^{\circ}4'\eta + 33' = 24^{\circ}37'\eta$; 2nd house cusp $25^{\circ}40'\simeq$; 3rd house cusp $0^{\circ}40'\simeq$.

These values are entered into the horoscope. Use Fig. 8 & 9 as base.

Since the other cusps are exactly opposite, we have the same degrees and minutes but opposite signs.

THE FIVE-FOLD HOROSCOPE

39

We must know that the following signs are opposite (δ) to each other:

Aries	γ	δ	$\neq$	Libra
Taurus	δ	δ	$\neq$	Scorpio
Gemini	Π	δ	$\neq$	Sagittarius
Cancer	Σ	δ	$\neq$	Capricorn
Leo	Ω	δ	$\neq$	Aquarius
Virgo	$\cap$	δ	$\neq$	Pisces

All these explanations may sound like Greek puzzles to you just yet. Confidentially, I had the hardest time with them myself when I began. When you have made several examples yourself, step by step, without jumping around, they are made quite mechanically and naturally. Operate one thing after the other; no huddling or rushing!

The Ascendant (marked Asc.) is the point rising in the East for the moment a horoscope is set. The M.C., which we have to use quite often, means the Mid-Heaven or the point above; Descendant means the opposite of the Ascendant. The Nadir is opposite to the MC.

The 10th house cusp always represents the M.C. The movement of the cusps is anti-clockwise, going from 10th via 11th to 12th, via Asc. to 2nd and 3rd. The unfinished portions which you have to fill in yourself with the same degrees on the opposite side but with reversed signs are: cusp 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, and 9.

SIZE OF SIGNS AND OF HOUSES

Each sign has a length of 30 degrees. This is not true with the size of the houses. Each house varies in length, depending upon the Latitude of the birth place and it is just this phenomenon that plays a great role in my forecasting methods as shall be explained in this work. Were it not for the variety of house lengths, no reflex formations could be built, at least not in a way to bring forth astounding combinations of aspects, that otherwise could not be seen or recognized.

Although, we are here still in the cradle, so to say, with our work having not even said a word about the planets so far, realize that a great deal has been achieved up to this time. In fact, as a teacher, I advise you right at this place to start at the beginning once more and go over carefully, step by step, what has been explained so far and you will be surprised when you reach this spot again that many things appear in an entirely different light than has been the case when you reached here the first time.

Pause! Start from the beginning again!

ERECTING A CHART FOR A BIRTH EAST OF GREENWICH

Some students are not fully satisfied with ordinary figuring of cusps. They want to have them with mathematical precision. I used to be one of these cranks, who spent days with complicated tables to figure each cusp exact to the second. Forget about all that work; it leads you astray, takes a lot of time and results are no better for reasons explained later, when the five-fold horoscope is treated.

In order to make sure that you can cast a correct chart I shall illustrate the procedure once more in a shorter way with another example. We take this time a birth at Tokio on February 24th, 1941, at 4h15m A.M.

THE FIVE-FOLD HOROSCOPE

Step No. 1—Sid. Time taken from Ephemeris (Feb. 23rd, 1941):	22h11m57s
Step No. 2—Time elapsed since previous Noon	12h + 4h15m
Step No. 3—Adjustment of 10s for each hour elapsed since Noon; $16\frac{1}{4}$ times 10s or 162s	2m42s
Step No. 4—Adjustment for Tokio, 9h19m (East of Greenwich) of 10 sec. for every hour; if West, add; East deduct the value; minus 92s or	— 1m32s
	38h28m 7s
Reject 24 hours	24h
Final, actual Sid Time	14h28m7s
Use Table of Houses for 35° or 36° .	
The Tokio Table of Houses shows the closest Sid. Time	14h26m25s
The next line shows	14h30m20s
Difference	3m55s

Whereas the MC and Asc. are to be figured exactly, all the other cusps quoted in Raphael's Tables of Houses we adjust by adding one half degree, so as to get them in proportion to our 14h28m7s value, which is about half-way between the given Sid. Times.

Therefore we get for

At the opposite cusps we have:

10th house cusp $9^\circ 26' \text{m}.$ *	4th house cusp $9^\circ 26' \text{x}.$
11th house cusp $3^\circ 30' \text{x}.$	5th house cusp $3^\circ 30' \text{II}.$
12th house cusp $25^\circ 30' \text{x}.$	6th house cusp $25^\circ 30' \text{II}.$
Asc. (1st) house cusp $18^\circ 29' \text{v}.$ **	7th house cusp (Descendant) $18^\circ 29' \text{v}.$
2nd house cusp $29^\circ 30' \text{v}.$	8th house cusp $29^\circ 30' \text{v}.$
3rd house cusp $8^\circ 30' \text{v}.$	9th house cusp $8^\circ 30' \text{v}.$

These are entered.

$$\begin{aligned}
 * \text{ Calculation: } 77 \times 187 + 300 &= 48\text{m} \text{ (from Table XI)} \\
 + 8^\circ 38' \text{m} &= 14\text{h}25\text{m} \\
 \hline
 &= 9^\circ 26' \text{m}
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 ** \text{ Calculation: } 61 \times 102 + 235 &= 26' \\
 + 18^\circ 3' \text{v} & \\
 \hline
 &= 18^\circ 29' \text{v}
 \end{aligned}$$

77m is movement of MC. from one value to the next;
187s is 3m7s, from 14h25m to 14h28m7s, Table XI to act. Sid. Time;
300s is 5m space between Table XI values.

61m is diff. between two ascendant values in Table of Houses Tokio;
102s is diff. between final Sid. Time and lower value of Sid. Time given in Table of Houses for Tokio ($35^\circ 39' \text{N}.$)
235s is 3m55s and represents one day's motion in Sid. Time.
 $8^\circ 38' \text{m}$ is MC value for 14h25m found in our Table XI.
 $18^\circ 3' \text{v}$ is Asc. value corresponding to 14h26m25s in Lat. $35^\circ 39' \text{N}.$ from Table of Houses for Tokio.

THE FIVE-FOLD HOROSCOPE

41

A SOUTH OF EQUATOR CHART

Whatever has been said so far was meant for births north of the Equator. It is different, when we have to do with births occurring south of the Equator. A small example will suffice to make this clear.

When a horoscope is to be erected for a southern birth (south of the Equator, such as in Chili or Tasmania), we add an extra 12 hours in Sidereal Time. Besides, we *reverse* all the signs completely. Let us assume the birth of February 24, 1941, had occurred at Wellington, New Zealand, instead of at Tokio. All other things being equal, we would have:

Latitude 41° South; adjustment for Wellington—11h39m from Greenwich):	
—115 seconds.	
Sid. Time 2/23/41	22h11m57s
Time elapsed since Noon	+16h15m
10s for each hour elapsed	+ 2m42s
Adjustment for Wellington (called Reduction from Greenwich to local Sidereal Time of 0h at the rate of 10 seconds per	
HOUR (not degrees)	— 1m55s
ADD FOR SOUTH OF EQUATOR	+12h
	50h27m44s
2 circles or	—48h 0m00s

Sid Time for Wellington at 4:15 A.M. Feb. 24th, 1942 2h27m44s

The nearest given Sidereal Time in the Ephemeris is 2h26m25s, using New York Latitude. It shows for New York, 41° North the following cusps:

10th house 9° 8' (to be corrected to exact value with Table XI): look for 2h25m in that Table!

11th house 15° II.

12th house 19° 50'.

1st house 18° 50' (to be corrected by proportioning of Ascendant as explained).

2nd house 10° m.

3rd house 6° 50'.

Since these values are for 41° North, we have to turn them into South Latitude to get to 41° South. We turn these signs exactly 180 degrees forward and obtain:

9° m, 15° x, 19° v, 18° z, 10° x, and 6° r as the respective house cusps.

INSERTION OF THE PLANETS INTO RADIX HOROSCOPE

We have now arrived at the point where we can erect the frame of a horoscope for any time of a day, for any place in the world. We can say to have graduated from first grade of grammar school in astrological knowledge.

After one grade has been made, the student can build easier, he understands things better and the progress from here will also be swifter and more interesting. However, make sure, that you know how to go about these steps without constantly looking back pages for guidance. When experienced, it should not take longer than 4 or 5 minutes to make the frame.

With the next step we insert the planets into their places, together with their proper degrees. As stated some time ago, we know the planets are constantly moving in space, forward but also sometimes backwards or Retrograde (R). We have to fasten them into our horoscope at the moment of a birth and remember, even though they are going to be tied down to the moment fixed at birth, they keep on moving right along, forming aspects to one another.

At some other place I have given the names of the planets. It just remains to be stated that the daily motions of the various planets is as follows:

SPEEDS OF PLANETS

☉ daily motion is about $1^{\circ}0'$, to be more exact, between $57'$ and $1^{\circ}1'$. The sun never moves $15'$ a day or 3° . I have good reasons for reminding you of this.

☿ moves in its extreme speed $2^{\circ}12'$ per day and in its least speed it is stationary; i.e. it stands still for a moment before going retrograde; i.e. backwards in the Zodiac or before going direct (D) again after it had gone R.

♂ moves in its extreme speed $1^{\circ}16'$; in its least speed it stands still.

♂ moves in its extreme speed $42'$, in its least speed it stands still.

♂ moves in its extreme speed $7'$ per day, in its least speed it stands still.

♂ moves in its extreme speed $14'$ per day and in its least speed it stands still.

♂, ♀ and ☿ move in their extreme speed about 3 minutes each day and they stand still in their least speed.

♂ moves in its extreme speed about $15^{\circ}20'$ and in its least speed $11^{\circ}46'$. It never stands still.

♂ moves daily at the rate of about $3'$. It is always retrograde R in its movement. It never stands still.

How fast a planet moves from one day to the next or in 24 hours we either figure mentally from the pages of the Ephemeris by comparing the positions of two successive days, or else, we look to Raphael's pages 26-28, where they are given for each day of the year.

We have to figure where the various planets are located at a certain moment (for which the horoscope is to be made). Therefore, we have to make some proportions of values. With slow moving planets this can always be done mentally, but with the fast moving ♄, we have to take recourse to logarithms. Please—don't jump out of your seat when I say logarithms. There won't be any trigonometry taught, neither calculus or other fancy things. The log. tables (Table VII) are easy to understand and easy to use. (See page 15).

All you do is look up the ♄ speed for the day in question, which, for illustration we shall give as $13^{\circ}17'$. In the log table (Table VII), we find the logarithm for these $13^{\circ}17'$ to be 2569. In case the ♄ speed would be $12^{\circ}43'$ the log. table shows its log. value as 2758. Now, was that hard? Nothing to it!

Of course, we know long ago that the planets' places are given in the ALL BIRTHS FIGURED AS IF THEY HAD OCCURRED IN LONDON Ephemerides for Greenwich or London and for Noon each day. However, all are neither born at Noon, nor at London. What to do? We simply adjust our time values to a time of birth, as if it had happened in London!

THE FIVE-FOLD HOROSCOPE

43

For this purpose we have to make another Table of the Time Difference between London and some of the main places on the earth to which the smaller communities can again be adjusted. When it is Noon in London, (St. Time), the clock time in different regions is as follows:

Eastern States	7 A.M. Standard Time; dif. 5 hours.
Central States	6 A.M. Standard Time; dif. 6 hours.
Mountain States	5 A.M. Standard Time; dif. 7 hours.
Pacific States	4 A.M. Standard Time; dif. 8 hours.
France	Noon Standard Time; dif. 0 hour.
Germany and Italy	1 P.M. Standard Time; dif. 1 hour.
Greece and Egypt	2 P.M. Standard Time; dif. 6 hours.
South Africa	1 P.M. Standard Time; dif. 1 hour.
India (Bombay)	5 P.M. Standard Time; dif. 5 hours.
Tokio, Japan	9 P.M. Standard Time; dif. 9 hours.
Rio de Janeiro	9 A.M. Standard Time; dif. 3 hours.

Therefore, for rough work, when it is 5 P.M. in Boston, Mass., the time in London is 10 P.M. the same evening. When it is 11:15 P.M. on May 14, 1941, at San Francisco, Calif., it is in London at the same moment 7:15 A.M. of May 15th, 1941. When it is 4:50 A.M. at Cairo, Egypt, it is in London only 2:50 A.M.

We cannot, however, say: Eastern Standard Time is 5 hours from London, meaning that each town or village that lies between Bar Harbour, Maine, and Toledo, Ohio, the Western end of the Eastern Standard Time Zone, is all the same compared to London City. We must realize that we have to use the actual geographic differential from London to any city of the Globe, expressed in hours, minutes and seconds, instead of its geographic longitude. While the clock at Pittsburgh, Pa., carries the same time as the clock in New York City, both cities are different distances from London Longitude. There is an important actual time differential which, if not considered, makes our horoscope wrong.

Let us examine this condition closer! When the clock strikes Noon at New York, it does the same at Pittsburgh, but the Sun's position at each of these cities is somewhat different. The difference amounts to about 30 minutes; and somehow this discrepancy must be adjusted. The town clock is an arbitrary time, good for an entire sector, that uses Eastern Standard Time. But we have to do with Star Time and not with adjusted or standardized values.

We shall illustrate this case with two examples. On hand of these two cases all other cases can be reckoned. We have to use Table IX, page 26.

HOW TO ADJUST A BIRTH TO LONDON TIME

New York, in actual Longitude from Greenwich, England, is +4m55m54s (see Table IX) away. The actual clock time, however, is 5 hours from London.

Chicago, Ill., is actually in Longitude +5h50m27s from Greenwich, whereas, the local time shows a differential of 6 hours.

In the first instance the clock is 4m6s too fast, in the second instance it is 9m33s too fast. When it is on the New York clock Noon, it is but 11 o'clock 55m54s A.M. This value must be used and the Time adjusted accordingly, else we would be wrong. It does not make too much difference when we are in Chi-

cago or New York, but it does make a big difference when we use for example Tucson, Ariz., which lies in the Mountain Time Zone. Its actual Longitude from Greenwich is +7h23m48s, whereas Mountain Time says 7 hours from London. When the clock strikes Noon at Tucson, the actual time is already Noon ÷ 23m48s. After you have erected a few horoscopes you get used to looking up the Tables of Houses. Then you will note what a tremendous difference this is and why anyone who does not make these adjustments for the individual towns or cities, just simply cannot expect events to come forth. He just as well might close his books and stop.

After the cusps of a horoscope are calculated correctly, the signs put at the cusps, we turn OUR ACTUAL BIRTH TIME into Greenwich Time, which we may call "our" *London Time*. By this procedure I simply mean that we consider ourselves to be born in London, at the time corresponding to our place at birth.

For example, a person born at Amherst, Mass., at 9h40m A.M., has to turn this birth time into London Time. The Table shows Amherst, Mass., has a time differential compared to London of +4h50m4s, which means that, when it is Noon in London, the Time at Amherst is 4h50m4s further than Noon or 4h50m4s P.M., besides considering the reduction adjustment of 48s which has to be added (consult Table IX, last column). This gives for the person born at Amherst, Mass., Noon, a London Time of 4h50m52s, but, since it was only 9h40m A.M. of the day, we have to swing this time differential over to 9h40m A.M. at Amherst, which therefore, gives us a London equivalent of 2h31m P.M. (the difference at Amherst from Noon back to 9h40m A.M. is 2h20m).

We go immediately a step further here, although the cause of what I am doing now, and why I am doing it, will only be recognized later on. We say: Those 2h31m are about 1/12 day from Noon at which place planets are given at London and we make special note to this effect on our horoscope blank. Furthermore, we also bear constantly in mind for this case that the birth occurred *after Noon*, when figured for London. It actually happens to be a birth before Noon if we consider Amherst, but, we are trying to eliminate all relations to the birth at Amherst and concentrate its start and existence, as if it was or had been at London.

In another case we might have a birth at 2 P.M. at Chicago, Ill. This would give for London an equivalent of 7h51m26s P.M., which is figured as follows:

$$\begin{array}{r}
 14 \text{ o'clock (2 P.M.)} \\
 + 5h50m28s \text{ Chicago Long. from Greenwich, expressed in Time} \\
 + \quad \quad 58s \text{ Reduction adjustment} \\
 \hline
 19h51m26s \text{ or } 7h51m26s \text{ P.M. at London.}
 \end{array}$$

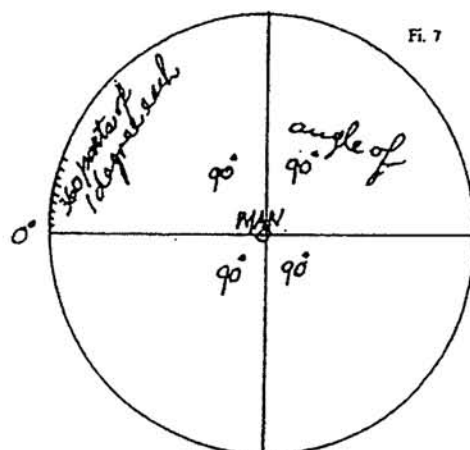
Therefore, out of the 24 hours of the day this value is about 1/3. And in this case this 1/3 of the daily movement of each planet is used and added to the London Noon position of that day.

The queer way of expressing this condition, and the use, which we shall make of it, will be explained shortly. It is important, else, I would not bring two examples, that are a close repetition.

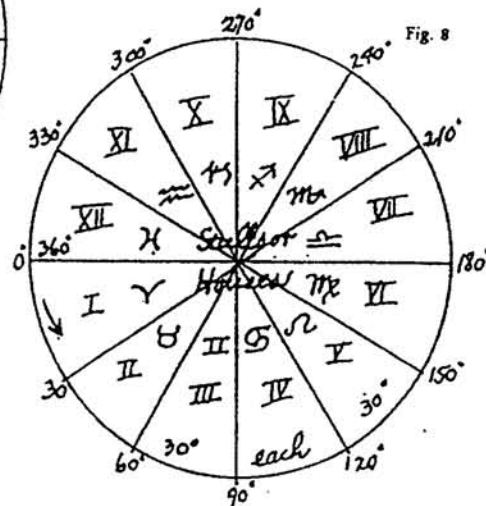
THE FIVE-FOLD HOROSCOPE

45

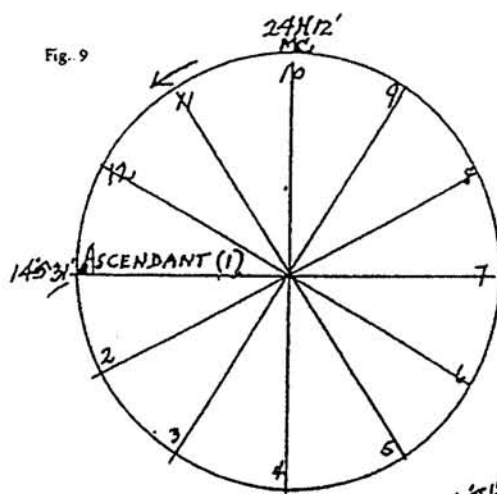
THE UNIVERSE AND THE QUADRANTS



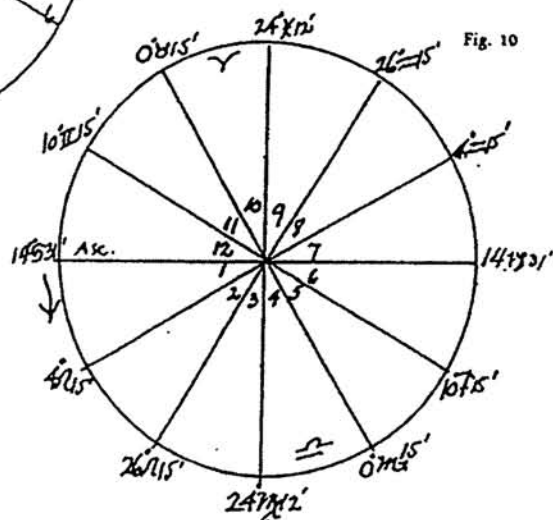
HOUSES AND CUSPS



MID-HEAVEN AND ASCENDANT



THE ASCENDANT



IMPORTANT RULES

On this page we have explained a fundamental rule to take care to get planets into a chart with ease. At all time, put the stress upon London Time. Besides, put the stress on the fraction of the day that has to pass until Noon Time, London. or, if we have to do with a birth in the afternoon, put the stress upon the fraction of a day that *has passed*, since the clock struck Noon in London. At all times, the birth times are turned over in London Time, but only AFTER the 12 houses of the horoscope have been completed. These houses are not figured over into London time. They form a unit for themselves and *stay at the place* of actual birth.

Do not confuse these two issues. Everything that was said about cusps, about the Tables of Houses and their use, about Sidereal Time and the way it is figured, has nothing to do with London Time, or what has been explained on this last page. This is why I completed one major part first. We started with major part II which has to do with placing the planets into the birth chart, to complete the radix or birth horoscope.

Here is an important rule that will facilitate all your astrological work: Any horoscope we erect has to be turned into London Time and it must be *left in that time*. Assuming some one is born at Duluth, Minn., which has Central time and his birth occurred at 6h41' A.M. of some day; then, we say: he is born at 12h41m in the afternoon London Time. We erect all planets' places for 12h41m P.M. of that day from London Raphael's Ephemeris. This is important! Someone born at 9h53m P.M. at Vancouver, B. C., which has Pacific Time, may for astrological purposes, be considered to have been born at 5h53m A.M. at London and never think of his actual birth time further.

The last two given times are only rough values. Exact values compute via exact longitudinal differences and proper reduction values from Greenwich, as explained.

LOCATING PLANETS

We now have to attempt to show how to go about to locate the exact planet's place for a certain moment of time.

When we know this of a single planet, all others are located the very same way. In Raphael's Ephemeris we look at May, 1941, and take the cross column for May 15th and May 16th, using the big lower Tables, on both sides of the pages (Fig. 10-B, page 30).

For our work we completely ignore all the Tables that are given in the upper third portion of the pages which show Latitudes and Declinations of the planets for every other day of the month. We have to try to lighten our work of complications as much as possible, since the subject is hard enough as it is. While there exist methods that require the use of those Tables, they are for entirely different purposes and have nothing to do with our present work. In fact, some of these tables I use constantly to forecast wheat prices, as is explained in the "Handbook of Trend Determination", but as said just now, we would get ourselves into an awful mess, if we would try to mix matters.

THE FIVE-FOLD HOROSCOPE

47

The Ephemeris shows for May 15, and 16, 1941, as follows:

All Longitudes given are geocentric longitudes, the way planets are seen from the earth.

☉ Sun	☾ Moon	☿ Mercury
24°14'52" ♈ Taurus	23° 1'30" ♐ Capricorn	5°10' ♊ Gemini
25°14'52" ♈ Taurus	6°34'21" ♒ Aquarius	7°13' ♊ Gemini
♀ Venus	♂ Mars	♃ Jupiter
1°10' ♊ Gemini	29°32' ♒ Aquarius	27°24' ♈ Taurus
2°24' ♊ Gemini	0°12' ♓ Pisces	27°38' ♈ Taurus
♄ Saturn	♅ Uranus	♆ Neptune
18°52' ♈ Taurus	26°5' ♈ Taurus	25°2' ♍ Virgo ♀
18°59' ♈ Taurus	26°8' ♈ Taurus	25°1' ♍ Virgo ♀

The notation ♀ between degrees and minutes in the column means that at this period the planet moves retrograde in the sky; it moves ♀ until a D appears in the column which means that from this day on the planet moves again direct or forward. This is also visible from the values, since at ♀, values become less and when D, values increase.

The positions given in this Table are always the Noon positions at London of the day. Therefore, on May 15th, 1941, at Noon in London the planet ☉ is found exactly at 24°14'52" ♈; on May 16, at 1941, at Noon in London. ☉ is in the sky at 0°12' ♓, having passed between Noon of the 15th to Noon of the 16th, from the last few minutes of ♒ into the next sign ♓. We might just as well say that ☉ went from 29°32' ♒ to 30°12' ♒, but, since 30° of a previous sign is always equal to 0° of the new or next sign we have to change the name to that of the new sign.

The next step is to measure the *daily* movement in Longitude for each planet. This is merely the difference of positions between one Noon and the next Noon. Taking first the easier planets; i.e. those which do not move fast, we note, that between May 15th and May 16th ♄ moved 1' in space retrograde, from 25°2' ♍ to 25°1' ♍. ♅ moved 3' from one Noon to the next, in our case from 26°5' ♈ to 26°8' ♈. ♄ moved 7'. ♃ moved 14'; ♂ moved 40'; ♀ moved 1°14'; ♈ moved 2°3'; ☉ moved 13°33'. We don't need the seconds. ☉ moved 58'.

This daily motion represents the motion in 24 hours. We can easily figure how fast the planet traveled in 1 hour. We simply divide by 24. Should we desire to find the planet's motion of that day for 5½ hours, we simply multiply the hourly motion which we have found by 5½.

Let us assume someone was born at a place whose adjusted birth time gives us 9h45m A.M. at London, England. Let us say this birth occurred somewhere on May 16th, 1941. The time differential from Noon London back to 9h45m A.M. London, is 2h15m. Knowing the Noon places of May 15th and May 16th from the Ephemeris we also know the daily motion of the planets and from it the hourly motion, when we divide by 24. Knowing the hourly motion, we simply multiply this hourly motion in our present case by 2¼ (the ¼ takes care of the 15 minutes) and deduct that amount from the Noon position of London May 16th, 1941, and we have the exact planet's place at the time of birth wherever it occurred, as long as its adjusted time was London Time of 9h45m A.M.

Fig. 11

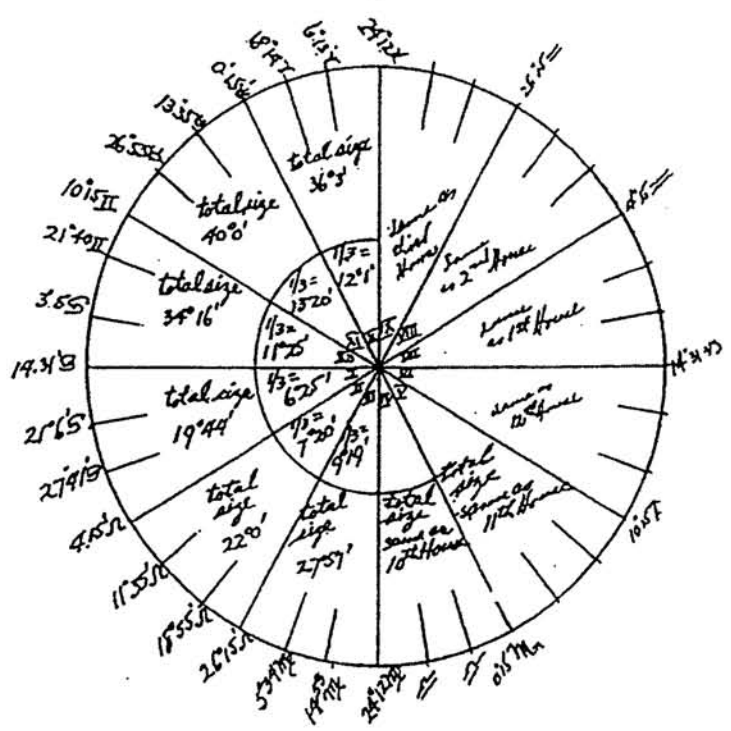


Fig. 12

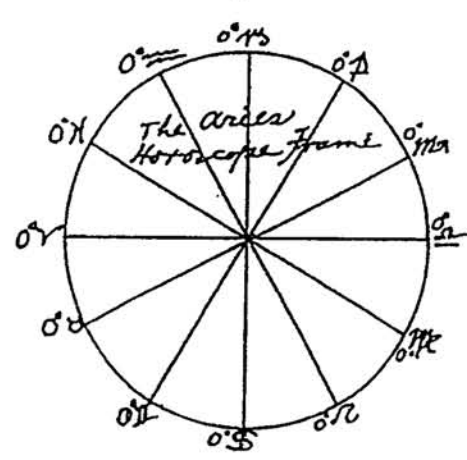
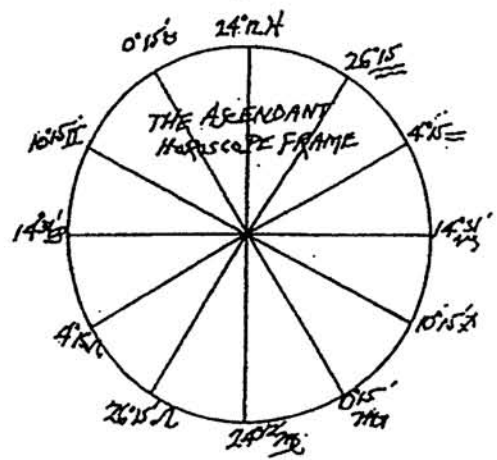


Fig. 13



THE FIVE-FOLD HOROSCOPE

49

DIFFERENTIATIONS BEFORE OR AFTER NOON

If the birth happens *after NOON* as of London we add. If it happens *before NOON*, we deduct from the nearest Noon position. Someone born at 11:58 P.M. on the 15th degree East, which would mean 10:58 London time, would add the differential (about $\frac{1}{2}$ of the planet's daily motion) to the Noon position. This is done for each planet.

Of course, you will soon find out, the slow moving planets can be figured in the mind, and many times require no adjustment whatever; it is only the faster moving ones, which need an adjustment and it is especially so with the Moon, our most important planet. The Moon must be figured exact to the minute.

A little while back we spoke of logarithms, but stopped short. I could not give an example to use them without explaining first other matters. To figure the movements of planets for any hour or minute exactly, we take recourse to logarithms, as given in Table VII, page 15.

Let us figure ♃ in our example.

♃ moved from May 15th to 16th, 1941, $13^{\circ}33'$, which we find in the log table as (from the Log. Table) .2483
For the movement of 2h15m we get +1.0280

Adding both numbers, gives 1.2763

The result in logarithms is turned back into degrees and minutes.

It shows in the Table that Log. 1.2763 = $1^{\circ}16'$ (Table XII). This is the ♃ motion during those 2 hours 15 minutes.

♃ at Noon, May 16th, 1941 $6^{\circ}34'21''$
Less for the 2h 15m $-1^{\circ}16'$

Gives $5^{\circ}18'$; the seconds we omit.

This is ♃ place at 9h45m A.M. at London at the same time also for the birth place at the time of birth.

Most planets, except the Moon can be figured by heart when we consider the amount of hours the planet has to move to reach Noon or the hours which have passed since Noon to the Time for which we have figured the planet's position. This is done best when we make portions of the day. For example, when planets are figured for around 6 P.M. London, we simply say: 6 hours is $\frac{1}{4}$ of a day and depending upon whether it is 6 A.M. or 6 P.M., we deduct or add one fourth of the daily motion of the planet of the Noon position. 3 P.M. in the afternoon respectively 9 A.M. in the morning of some day represents $\frac{1}{8}$ of the daily motion to be added or deducted. Of course, you must be sure not to make any mistakes when turning these values in your mind. If you are not firm, do it with logarithms, until you have gained experience. 10 A.M. or 2 P.M. means 2 hours out of the way from Noon. Thus, we deduct or add $\frac{1}{12}$ of the daily motion and get correct answers to the minute without using a lot of time with logarithms. But, as said above, with ♃ we cannot do this approximation. We have to use logarithms each time.

ABOUT PLUTO (♄)

The planet ♄ is not given on the main page of the Ephemerides, but we find it on page 39 of the 1941 Ephemeris listed for each 10th day. An adjustment for certain days must therefore be made in proportion to its speed over the ten days interval.

Since there are no Pluto Ephemerides available for the past years, I bring here a condensed Ephemeris for the years 1874 to 1941. Adjustments have to be made, of course, which you can easily do.

TABLE XII
♄ (Pluto) Tables from 1874 to 1941
(For later dates consult current Ephemerides)

1874 D 16°43'8 Feb. 14th;	R 22°34'8 Aug. 13th.	1908 D 22°45'11 Mar. 18th;	R 23°46'11 Sept. 14th.
1875 D 20°39'8 Feb. 9th;	R 23°32'8 Sept. 7th.	1909 D 23°46'11 Mar. 13th;	R 26°49'11 Oct. 9th.
1876 D 21°33'8 Feb. 4th;	R 24°28'8 Sept. 1st.	1910 D 24°48'11 Mar. 8th;	R 27°33'11 Oct. 4th.
1877 D 22°32'8 Jan. 29th;	R 25°15'8 Aug. 27th.	1911 D 25°31'11 Mar. 3rd;	R 28°37'11 Sept. 29th.
1878 D 23°30'8 Jan. 24th;	R 26°22'8 Aug. 22nd.	1912 D 26°35'11 Mar. 3rd;	R 0°1'11 Sept. 23rd.
1879 D 24°25'8 Feb. 16th;	R 27°17'8 Aug. 17th;	1913 D 27°39'11 Mar. 22nd;	R 1°4'11 Oct. 13th.
1880 D 25°11'8 Feb. 13th;	R 28°14'8 Sept. 10th.	1914 D 29°2'11 Mar. 17th;	R 2°10'11 Oct. 13th.
1881 D 26°18'8 Feb. 7th;	R 29°12'8 Sept. 3rd.	1915 O 0°6'11 Mar. 12th;	R 3°16'11 Oct. 8th.
1882 D 27°15'8 Feb. 2nd;	R 0°10'11 Aug. 31st.	1916 D 1°14'11 Mar. 6th;	R 4°22'11 Oct. 2nd.
1883 D 28°14'8 Jan. 28th;	R 1°6'11 Aug. 26th.	1917 O 2°19'11 Mar. 15th;	R 5°28'11 Sept. 27th.
1884 D 29°10'8 Feb. 22nd;	R 2°2'11 Aug. 20th.	1918 D 3°25'11 Mar. 26th;	R 6°34'11 Oct. 22nd.
1885 D 0°4'11 Feb. 16th;	R 2°58'11 Sept. 1st.	1919 D 4°30'11 Mar. 21st;	R 7°33'11 Oct. 17th.
1886 D 1°2'11 Feb. 11th;	R 3°57'11 Sept. 9th.	1920 O 5°38'11 Mar. 13th;	R 8°31'11 Oct. 11th.
1887 D 2°0'11 Feb. 6th;	R 4°54'11 Sept. 4th.	1921 D 6°41'11 Apr. 9th;	R 10°4'11 Oct. 6th.
1888 D 2°38'11 Feb. 1st;	R 5°52'11 Aug. 29th.	1922 D 7°53'11 Apr. 4th;	R 11°9'11 Oct. 1st.
1889 D 3°55'11 Feb. 25th;	R 6°49'11 Aug. 24th.	1923 D 9°5'11 Mar. 30th;	R 12°20'11 Oct. 26th.
1890 D 4°53'11 Feb. 20th;	R 7°47'11 Sept. 18th.	1924 D 10°13'11 Mar. 24th;	R 13°32'11 Oct. 20th.
1891 D 5°49'11 Feb. 15th;	R 8°46'11 Sept. 13th.	1925 D 11°24'11 Mar. 19th;	R 14°44'11 Oct. 15th.
1892 D 6°49'11 Feb. 10th;	R 9°45'11 Sept. 7th.	1926 D 12°37'11 Mar. 14th;	R 15°56'11 Oct. 10th.
1893 D 7°36'11 Feb. 14th;	R 10°42'11 Sept. 2nd.	1927 D 13°51'11 Mar. 9th;	R 17°7'11 Oct. 5th.
1894 D 8°43'11 Mar. 1st;	R 11°39'11 Aug. 28th.	1928 D 15°0'11 Apr. 2nd;	R 18°21'11 Oct. 29th.
1895 D 9°42'11 Feb. 24th;	R 12°39'11 Sept. 22nd.	1929 D 16°11'11 Mar. 27th;	R 19°36'11 Oct. 24th.
1896 D 10°41'11 Feb. 19th;	R 13°39'11 Sept. 16th.	1930 D 17°27'11 Mar. 23rd;	R 20°33'11 Oct. 19th.
1897 D 11°41'11 Feb. 13th;	R 14°37'11 Sept. 11th.	1931 D 18°42'11 Mar. 27th;	R 22°8'11 Oct. 14th.
1898 D 12°40'11 Feb. 7th;	R 15°36'11 Sept. 6th.	1932 D 19°38'11 Apr. 11th;	R 23°24'11 Nov. 7th.
1899 D 13°38'11 Mar. 3rd;	R 16°35'11 Sept. 1st.	1933 D 21°14'11 Apr. 14th;	R 24°41'11 Nov. 2nd.
1900 D 14°37'11 Feb. 25th;	R 17°36'11 Sept. 26th.	1934 D 22°30'11 Apr. 1st;	R 26°3'11 Oct. 28th.
1901 D 15°37'11 Feb. 23rd;	R 18°37'11 Sept. 21st.	1935 D 23°31'11 Mar. 27th;	R 27°24'11 Oct. 23rd.
1902 D 16°36'11 Feb. 18th;	R 19°37'11 Sept. 17th.	1936 D 25°15'11 Apr. 20th;	R 28°43'11 Oct. 17th.
1903 D 17°36'11 Mar. 12th;	R 20°37'11 Sept. 11th.	1937 D 26°31'11 Apr. 13th;	R 0°6'11 Nov. 11th.
1904 D 18°37'11 Mar. 12th;	R 21°37'11 Sept. 12th.	1938 D 27°32'11 Apr. 10th;	R 1°31'11 Nov. 6th.
1905 D 19°37'11 Mar. 14th;	R 22°39'11 Sept. 28th.	1939 D 29°16'11 Apr. 3rd;	R 2°36'11 Nov. 1st.
1906 D 20°29'11 Feb. 27th;	R 23°43'11 Sept. 23rd.	1940 D 0°37'11 Apr. 10th;	R 4°20'11 Nov. 6th.
1907 D 21°43'11 Feb. 22nd;	R 24°43'11 Sept. 20th.	1941 D 2°2'11 Apr. 13th;	R 5°47'11 Nov. 7th.

In the Table above are given the dates when ♄ changes from its R motion into D motion, and from the D motion back into R motion again. When you make the proper proportions you can locate with the aid of this Table the ♄ position for any day from 1874 to the present time and be right within two minutes. The dates for the actual D & R place may be a week or so out of the way, because I can only approximate them!

Pluto ♄ moves forward (Direct) about 3°, then retrogrades (R) for approximately 1°56', then forward again D, then R again, until it has completed its course through the Zodiac.

We must remember when a planet is stationary and begins to move again direct, it takes quite a while to get its normal speed again. In the middle between the direct moment and the retrograde moment its speed is the fastest, slowing off thereafter gradually until a new stationary position arrives. Therefore, when interpolating speeds, consider this! For example, Pluto begins to move direct on February 27, 1906, at 20° II 39'; it moves R again on Sept.

THE FIVE-FOLD HOROSCOPE

51

25th, at $23^{\circ} \text{II } 43'$. The entire motion over those 7 months is $3^{\circ} 4'$ and the last month of this period I would allow about $3'$ play space. I do not think you will come more than 5 minutes out of the way with the actual position of Pluto if you proceed the way suggested to locate the planet for any time covered here.

For March 1906 and September 1906, the months when $\odot$ starts and ends its direct motion, I would allow for the entire $\odot$ direct motion of $184'$ at each side about $3'$ and use for the remaining five months, i.e. from April to the end of August the balance equally divided.

The total $3^{\circ} 4'$ or $184'$, we divide as follows: For movement of $\odot$ from February 27, 1906, to March 27, 1906, allow 3 minutes, or practically no change in value as compared to the stationary position of February 27, 1906. The same would do at the other end, from August 25th to Sept. 25th, 1906, where we allow a $3'$ movement to occur during this interval. For the middle part, March 28 to August 24, 1906, we give the rest of $\odot$ direct motion, which amounts in this case to $178'$. The $178'$ we divide by the number of days between March 28th and August 24th, 149 days to be exact. $178 \div 149 = 1.2'$ per day. Therefore, let us assume a birth occurred on June 3rd, 1906, for which a Horoscope is to be made, we would figure $\odot$ as follows:

First month after direct movement $\odot$ moves about $3'$.

After that $\odot$ moves at the rate of about $1.2'$ each day. From March 28th to June 3rd are 67 days. $67 \times 1.2' = 80.4' = 1^{\circ} 30'$. Add $3'$ for the first month's motion, makes $\odot$ place for June 3, 1906, $20^{\circ} 39' \text{II} + 1^{\circ} 33'$ or at $22^{\circ} 12' \text{II}$.

This example can be used for all cases where direct motion is involved.

With R motion we proceed similarly, allowing for the first and last month of retrogression $3'$, dividing the amount of R left over by the number of days belonging to the middle part. We then take the increment found in this manner and multiply with the days elapsed to the birth date, starting the count one month after planet began to move R . But when R we have to deduct!

Assumed a birth occurred on December 5, 1922:

Procedure: $\odot$ R October 1, 1922 at $11^{\circ} 9' \text{II}$. Allow $3'$ for period of Oct. 1 to Nov. 1, 1922. Then $\odot$ on Nov. 1, 1922, at $11^{\circ} 6' \text{II}$.

D March 30, 1923, at $9^{\circ} 5'$. Allow $3'$ for period from Feb. 28 (or March 1st) to March 30, 1923. Then $\odot$ assumed to be at $9^{\circ} 8' \text{II}$ by Feb. 28, 1923.

Total R is $2^{\circ} 4'$; $3'$ off on both sides, amounts to $6'$, leaves $1^{\circ} 58'$ for the middle part from Nov. 1, 1922, to Feb. 28, 1923.

Its length is 120 days.

$1^{\circ} 58' \div 120 = 118' \div 120 = 1.0'$ (very close).

Therefore, 30 days after $\odot$ runs R , we systematically deduct $1'$ for each day until we reach the time of birth. December 5th, 1922, is 35 days after Nov. 1st and 35' we have to take off in $\odot$ R motion.

Thus:	Oct. 1st, 1922	$11^{\circ} 9' \text{II}$
	less 1 month	$3'$
	less 35 days	$35'$

gives $10^{\circ} 31' \text{II}$ R as $\odot$ place on Dec. 5, 1922.

If birth has occurred on Oct. 15, 1922, we would deduct $1'$ or $2'$ from R place of Oct. 1, 1922, and find $\odot$ at $11^{\circ} 8' \text{II}$ or $11^{\circ} 7' \text{II}$.

In the Ephemeris the only thing we use from the upper Table (at the right) is the position of the Node which is given every second day and which must be adjusted to each day.

Now, we have gone so far as to be able to insert all the various planets for any horoscope made for any time of the day, morning, noon or night. Always refer your time to London and then figure the difference of our time towards the Noon place either the day before or the day after, depending upon which one is nearer. We always have to use two consecutive days in the Ephemeris to make this calculation possible. One day alone gives us nothing because with one position we cannot figure the speed of the planet for the day, i.e. for the interval of 24 hours.

Of course, you have to learn the abbreviations which are used for the planets

LEARN ABBREVIATIONS OF PLANETS AND ANGLES

and each one must be constantly written with its abbreviation and not by long hand.

We have furnished you with the critical angles already, which cause the ups or downs in life. Some of these angles have names, others have no names. It may be preferable to call each angle just by its size, such as a 60° angle, a 120° angle, etc., instead of using a special name, but, since other astrology books constantly refer to sextiles, trines and what-not, we have to be at least acquainted with what is meant, in case we read about them. When 2 planets are together in the Zodiac, that is, at the very same degree and minute, we call this a conjunction of the two and the abbreviation is: δ . When they are 45° apart they call it a semi-square, or half a square. When two planets are 60° apart, it is called a sextile $\ast$; when 90 degrees apart, such an angle is called a square $\square$; when 2 planets are 120° apart, we speak of a trine Δ ; and when 135° apart, it is called a sesquiquadrate, $\square$; when 150° apart, it is called a quincunx, π ; and when 180° apart, it is termed an opposition, δ .

The abbreviations are as follows:

0°, δ ; 30°, γ ; 45°, $\angle$; 60°, $\ast$; 90°, $\square$; 120° Δ ; 150°, π ; 180°, δ .

There are no abbreviations for the other aspects or angles. In practice we just mark the number of degrees next to the aspect and be done with it.

ABOUT RETROGRADE PLANETS

Whenever a planet is retrograde R , we must mark it as such into the horoscope. The simple fact moving contrary (R) has as effect that they also act the opposite way compared to planets which move direct. A trine to a retrograde planet is evil and hurtful whereas a trine to a direct planet is usually favorable. Therefore so-called evil aspects, such as squares are favorable when made to a R planet.

A direct planet moves always anti-clock wise, while a retrograde planet moves with the clock. The retrograde motion lasts with Mercury a few weeks, and occurs about 4 times a year. The retrograde motion of the other planets is longer. The slow moving planets are about $\frac{1}{2}$ of their time in retrograde motion, losing not quite one half of what they gained in their previous forward movement, so that gradually, they gain on the forward side anyhow and thus

THE FIVE-FOLD HOROSCOPE

53

complete their movement around the Zodiac in more or less long periods of time. The only planets that do not move backwards are the Sun and the Moon.

With the method I am teaching, do not attempt to use helio-centric planets' positions or aspects or try to erect horoscopes for heliocentric views.

SHORT-CUTS FOR CALCULATIONS

One of the most important steps to be taken from here on is to master counting with degrees, minutes and even seconds just as if you would count dollars and cents. I know from experience that if one don't catch on to this right in the beginning, he will be constantly limping and be constantly making errors which must not happen. You will meet difficulties when you have to figure from one sign into another, since the sign following is always starting at 0°, while previously you find yourself in the 20°-30° quantity. But, when you conceive that 30° of a sign is the same as 0° of the next sign, so that you can, for calculations' sake, count 28°, 29°, 30°, 31°, 32°, etc., of the first sign and after you are through with your addition simply drop 30° and give the balance the name of the new sign, you will find it easy. The exact rotation of the signs must be learned, of course, and no error must come in from that side. Let me illustrate a case: Supposing the Moon's place at noon is 28° 14' ♍ and the logarithmic value which has to be added may amount to 8° 42', then we just say: 28° 15' ♍ plus + 8° 42' gives us 36° 57' ♍. Drop off 30° but use the next following sign, we get 6° 57' ♎ without any further ado.

Another illustration, for occasional use, may help quite often to clear up uncertainties as to what is what: For example 0° 1' ♎ is the very same as 30° 1' ♍; it is even the same as 29° 61' ♍. However, we never use a value of 29° 61' of any sign. When we make additions it happens sometimes that we arrive at such queer figures which may puzzle us for a moment. When we dissect, discard first the extra 60 minutes contained therein and call those 60' one degree; afterwards, when we see that we have reached 30° of the sign, we call this 0° of the next sign. We work all difficulties out of the way. When working with Sidereal Time similar troubles arise quite frequently. In that case we may run into several hours above the regular 24 hours; we may get 84 minutes as value at the minute side. We can't have such values, but are required to discard each 24 hours as soon as the value runs above 24. We also discard all minutes above 59 minutes, by substituting for each full minutes one degree (1°).

TO WHAT USE CAN THE STUDENT PUT THE HOROSCOPE WHICH HE ERECTS ACCORDING TO THIS METHOD?

The main purpose is to have a chart of oneself that is reliable and that can be figured several years ahead, if desired, and see one's own ups and downs as they fall due.

The next purpose is to work out charts for other people, relatives, friends and acquaintances. Of course, I do not believe you will be able to take care of everybody that way, since the work-out of such charts takes time and demands exact work, else the results are poor.

THE SPECULUM FOR HOROSCOPE OF WOOL TOPS

	⊙		♈	♉	♊	♋	♌	♍	♎	♏	♐
♈	121°40'		99°34'	113°22'	54° 3'	169°17'	166°42'	178° 2'	58°43'	112°50'	52°52'
♉	26° 6'			17°48'	41°31'	73°43'	71° 8'	82°28'	154°17'	151°36'	148°32'
♊	8°18'				59°19'	53°20'	55°55'	64°40'	172° 5'	133°48'	166°14'
♋	67°37'					115°14'	45° 2'	56°22'	179°37'	125°30'	174°38'
♌	47°37'						2°35'	8°45'	132° 0'	87°55'	137°51'
♍	45° 2'							11°20'	134°35'	80°28'	140°26'
♎	56°22'								126°15'	68° 8'	129° 6'
♏	179°37'									54° 7'	5°51'
♐	125°30'										59°58'
♑	174°32'										

Fig. 16.

SIMPLE ARIES HOROSCOPE
for March 17, 1941

Fig. 14

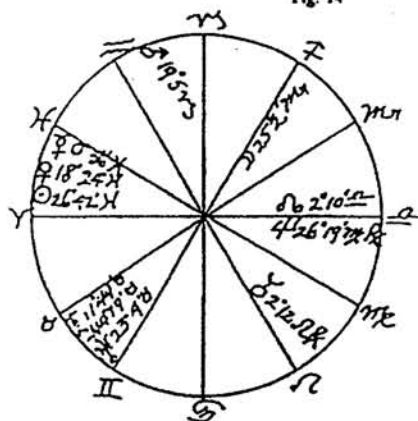
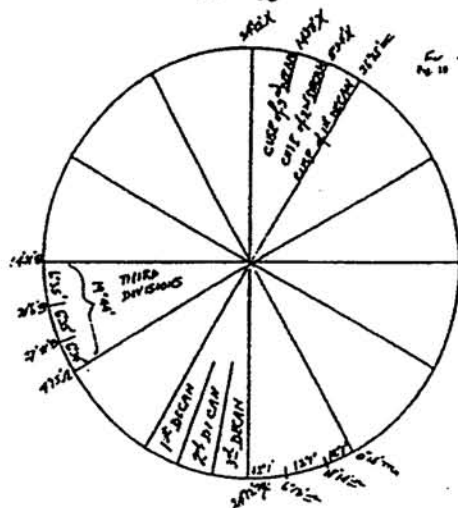
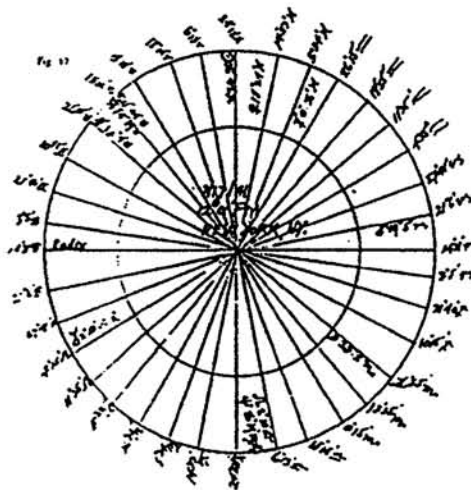
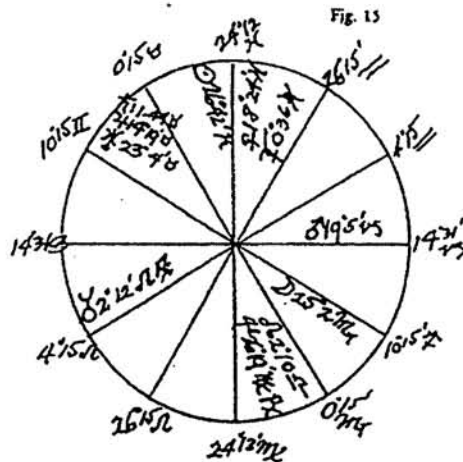
RADIX HOROSCOPE
for March 17, 1941.

Fig. 15



THE FIVE-FOLD HOROSCOPE

Another purpose to which these charts can be put is to check business events. For example, a grocer starts a store nearby. Use the time he opens his store the first time for business and erect a horoscope for that moment.

A trader in Stocks can use the day of listing of a stock as the moment of the beginning. By listing I do not mean the time when the Board of Governors of the Stock Exchange allows the stock to be traded at some later date, but the 10 A.M. time of the day when it is possible for the first time to trade that stock. Do not take the moment of the first trade which might occur at 10:41 A.M. or at 12:12 P.M. of that specific day, but use the 10 A.M. moment. If some one wanted to trade, i.e. to buy or sell that stock, he could have done so at 10 A.M. already. Watch, whether at the time such trades are begun, we have Daylight Savings Time or Standard Time or War Time. The World Almanac on page 165 gives full information.

Traders who trade commodities can use charts made for the moment a commodity was first traded. These charts work very fine, especially if they are worked out right without errors in the calculations.

For illustration's sake I shall bring and develop fully a horoscope together with all the side calculations that have to be made for a certain commodity in which trading began recently, to be more exact on March 17th, 1941. The time obtained from the floor of the Exchange was at 12:01 Noon, the location of the Exchange is at New York City.

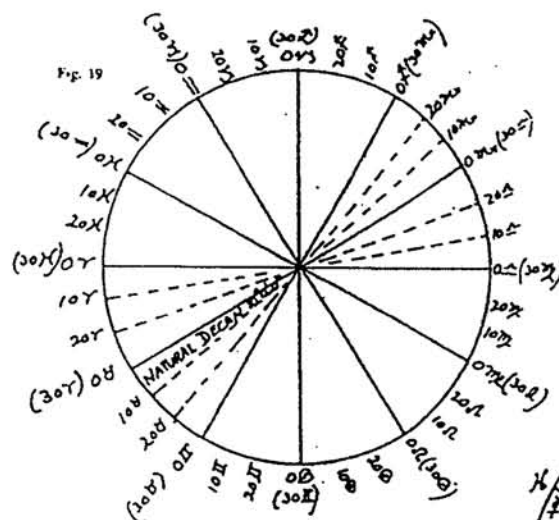
On hand of this example, you then can work up any horoscope you like, provided you have the proper ephemerides for it and provided you follow step by step the way this example shows and explains.

Of course, be it known, that we are starting in at this time with the so-called radix horoscope. We cannot speak immediately about the four other horoscopes that have to be worked into this radix horoscope, but shall gradually lead towards them. When all is finished we have a combination of five single horoscopes which have to work hand in hand together; all are needed and not one can be dispensed with. If we fail to figure all the five, the building produced may be compared to a house with only two or three walls standing.

The big trouble with astrologers is that they can only work one or at the most two horoscopes because they don't know anything but a radix horoscope with transits or a radix with a progressed Moon. The average man never understands why events occur in his life which do not show in such horoscopes. The answer lies in what I said above. I never would have found out about it either, had it not been for my special interest in the movements of stocks and commodities, where so many ups and downs occur each month that, unless we can account for these ups and downs by actual planetary aspects we might as well give up astrology altogether. There are things in this world and especially in astrology which, when once known, bring about such an upheaval of views formerly held and my work here which I fully explain, i.e. the use and application of the five-fold Horoscope should be one of them. This five-fold idea has been worked up by me patiently over a number of years, after having looked into all sorts of sciences, especially physics, in order to find some clues to create more aspects than can be had by the use of a radix horoscope only.

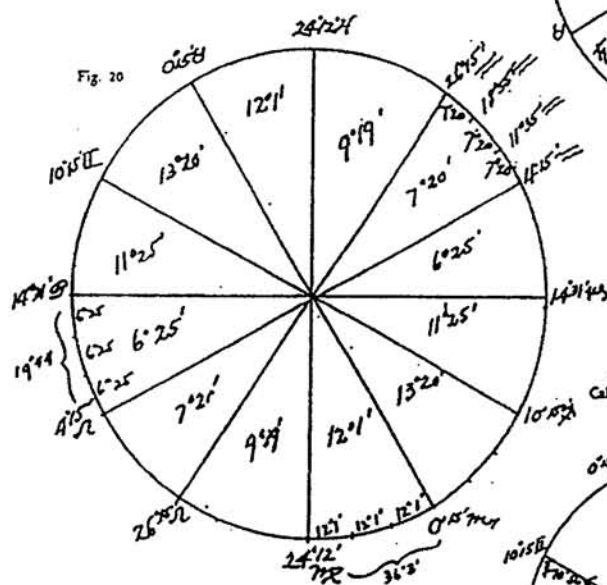
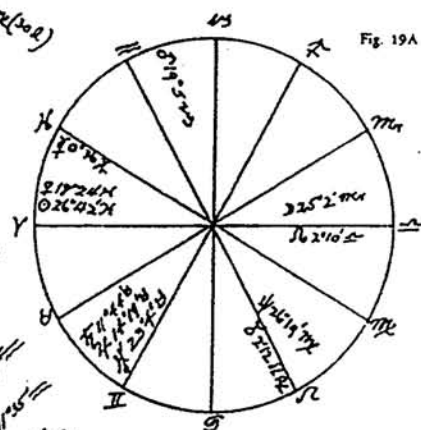
THE FIVE-FOLD HOROSCOPE

55

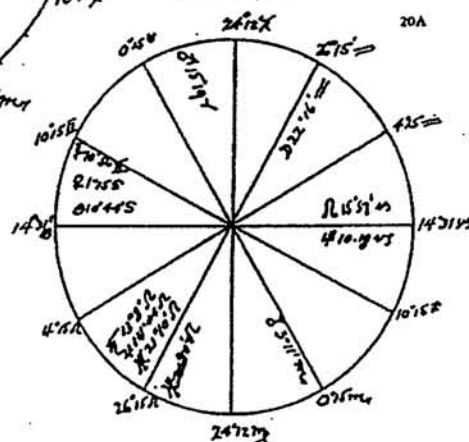


ARTIFICIAL DECAN SIZE OF EACH HOUSE OF HOROSCOPE
FOR MARCH 17, 1941

SIMPLIFIED ARIES HOROSCOPE
Not Useful for March 17, 1941



OUR ARIES HOROSCOPE
Called MUNDANE HOROSCOPE
for March 17, 1941



THE FIVE-FOLD HOROSCOPE

TRANSITS

When an astrologer tries to use so-called transits, that is when planets in the course of any year pass over the radix (birth) positions of the horoscope, it shows that he is not satisfied with the radix horoscope, because it gives him not enough aspects. But to use transits is one more item which is of little or no value, although, I may say each astrology book carries a special section covering the effects of these transits. I have spent a lot of time with them, applying them to stock and commodity horoscopes, but with little advantage; in fact I say: use them only occasionally, when ascendant is correct!

FIXED STARS

Another astrological folly is the use of fixed stars. Some books give great big registers of the places of fixed stars, they show in special chapters the supposed effect of many of these fixed stars. I have tried them too, since there has not been a stone left unturned that I did not turn around several times to make sure it does not contain a gold nugget. But, the harder I put the fixed stars to use, the worse my forecasts became. So, since you have now a book wherein the bad sides of things are also brought to the open, not only the good and glorious parts, follow my tip: leave Fixed Stars alone!

ABOUT QUALITIES OF SIGNS

In the average astrology book they ascribe various natures to the signs. They distinguish between northern and southern signs, between signs of long and short ascension, between male and female signs. They speak of fiery trines, of earthly trines, of airy and watery trines. They have movable and fixed signs, common and fruitful signs; they have mental signs and musical signs; in fact the Litany could be continued for another 30 or 40 kinds of differentiations between signs. For each of these distinctions they put several signs together. The result of such distinction causes the student to gather a lot of ideas that are worthless, meaningless and troublesome. Don't make any such distinctions! It matters little whether a planet is in a fiery sign or whether it is in a melancholic sign. An aspect coming on to it will either cause an upward or a downward move, never mind whether the planet feels melancholic or otherwise. These differentiations plainly show where these astrologers have taken their wisdom from: they took these ideas from the Ancients who meant entirely different things by it, but I cannot go into that because this book is not to be an interpretation of the Scriptures.

The next things they do give are gorgeous descriptions of the signs individually such as Gemini, Leo, etc. What each sign is supposed to cause or bring about. It causes nothing and brings nothing about! It may be compared to a street through which people walk. Take the main street of your town! Does this street bring some thing about? Does this Main Street give a good memory when you go through it, such as our famous book astrologers try to tell you when you read: Cancer gives a good memory and makes people savingsful? Whhhoo—

QUALITIES OF PLANETS

Another division astrologers make: they distinguish between fiery planets, airy ones, earthly planets and watery planets. They call some beneficial planets, others they call evil planets. There may be something to such a division but I am sure it is not what they claim. From experience, after having faithfully used

THE FIVE-FOLD HOROSCOPE

59

all these braintwisters I came to the conclusion: out with them and eradicate all these trouble-causing distinctions. In any horoscope or chart you simply want to know: is the trend of this life upward or is it downward? When are periods of good times and when are the others coming? When times run good, most anything you undertake during such times will succeed; if times are indicating evil periods, just lay low, take things easy and don't get overwrought with worry and excitement. The planets will take care of you; nobody else will.

ABOUT PLANETARY HOURS

Another one of these fancy ideas of astrologers is the part which planetary hours are supposed to play. They mean just as little to an individual as other half-baked ideas. True, there are vibrations that seem to run from hour to hour, such as a sick man will always be worse between 4 and 5 P.M., or, when you are in a big hall, where a lot of people gather together, you may notice that there are short periods of tremendous noise, followed by periods of pronounced deadness, so that you even can hear a pin drop. But with such things nothing can be done that would produce definite fixed data for events. These are conditions which we probably never can solve and are of no consequence.

Some of the astrological magazines are constantly telling people about planetary hours. Forget about that type of astrology and use safe and sound methods which, at least, give you days when something definite is due to occur and be guided accordingly to undertake things or leave them alone.

EACH PLANET RULES ONE DAY?

While we are criticising, I might just say that the idea of giving each day a certain planet is just as foolish, when we only consider this idea from a normal condition. Let us assume this to be true that it was brought over from ancient times. In this case we are a few days out of the way since the Catholics changed their calendar in October 1588 and left 10 days out. The English people changed theirs in September 1752, when they left 11 days out. Since a week consists of 7 days we are 4 days wrong anyhow.

Thus, out with giving each day of the week a planet! Having eliminated all trash, many a text-book would now look like a shorn lamb!

However, here is a general rule which you should consider: any planet that is ahead of the Sun is stronger than a planet that approaches the Sun. The former has passed the Sun recently while the latter is weaker, approaching now the Sun to be loaded, so to say, with new Sun energy. But even that is not too important when we consider that a planet approaching the Sun still has enough energy in itself to be able to reach the Sun.

ABOUT PLANETS IN THE VARIOUS HOUSES

Another idea is given to you here about certain text books which contain big descriptions of the character of people whose individual planets are located in this or that sign, in this or that house. Do not even pay any attention to where your planets are; whether they are in Aries or Virgo, whether in the 5th or in the 9th house. Just know where they are in relation to the Moon. If you read just for fun the horoscope of a person you know personally, analyzing it according to the descriptions given in those books, you, no doubt, will construct such a miscreature, such a freak man or woman that you would be ashamed to call

60

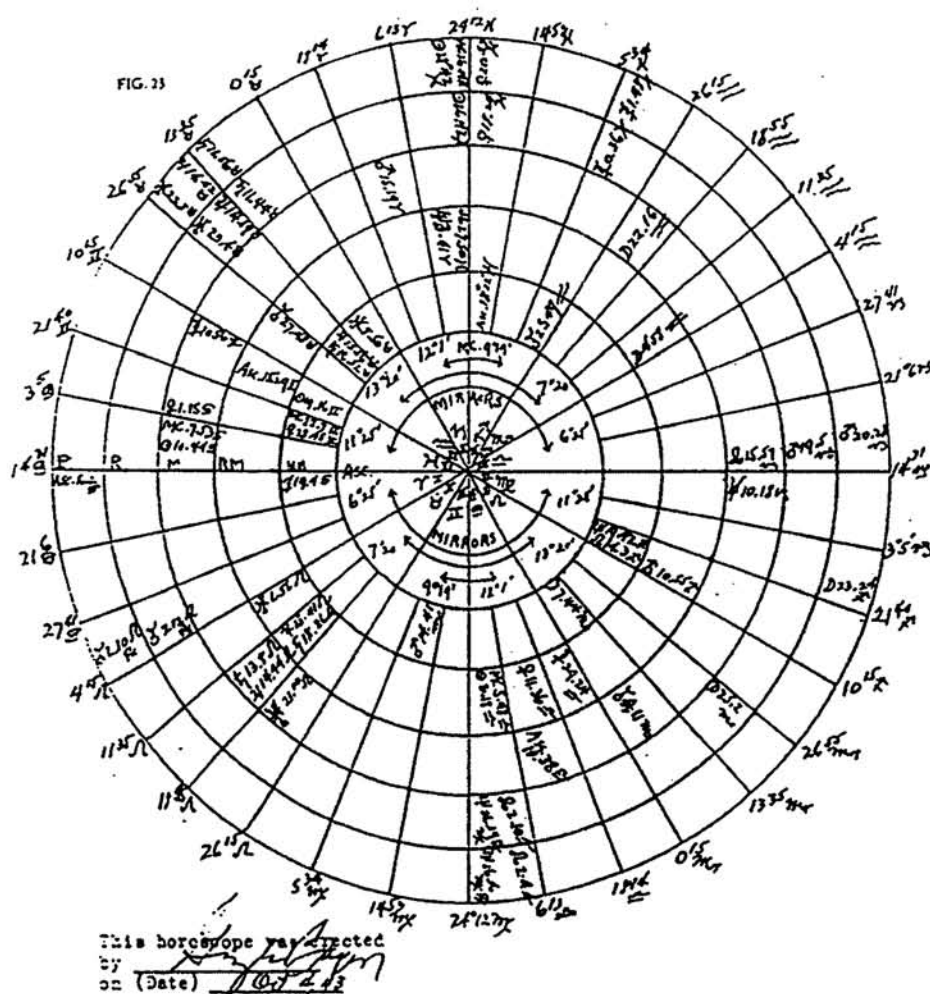
THE FIVE-FOLD HOROSCOPE

THE FIVE-FOLD HOROSCOPE FOR GREASE WOOL

Born on March 17, 1941, at New York City, N. Y.

The progressed horoscope of this chart is made for the year 1943.
 ☿ motion this year $13^{\circ}44'$.
 Daily motion ☿ $2.26'$.

Longitude 75° West
 Latitude $40^{\circ}43'$ North.
 Time: 12:01 Noon.
 ♇ Pluto in print. = ☿



THE FIVE-FOLD HOROSCOPE

61

him a man. I have tried it because my nature is such that I believe first and prove things to myself afterwards. I have analyzed myself according to one of these famous books, jotted everything down what I was supposed to be, then looked in the mirror trying to recognize myself.

It was not me, although the horoscope proper was mathematically correct.

Now a few words about the aspects with which we have mainly to do.

I told you that from $\odot$ every 15° forms an aspect. These aspects we have to use. We will not consider others.

ABOUT MUTUAL ASPECTS

There is on and off one aspect that is stronger than an other, depending upon the special angle that is cast or the planet which is involved. For our measurements, as we later see clearly, we do not use mutual aspects, i. e. aspects between a planet, not the Moon, towards another planet, not the Moon, such as aspects between Mercury and Saturn or Venus and Jupiter. They mean nothing to us, since they are very slow to form and our ephemerides are not exact enough to locate the day of their formation. Not only this is the reason for us ignoring all these mutual aspects, but I have tested so many of them with precision and found that they are not useful irrespective of what astrology books tell you about it. Those who do not believe this statement are just reminded about the ordinary mutual aspects as they occur in the sky from day to day. There are traders in stocks and wheat who just lay for such mutual aspects to make their trade commitments. When they see a trine Sun to Jupiter approaching, they buy; when they see a square Sun to Saturn coming, they sell. What does happen? Either nothing at all, or the market goes the wrong way. For practical purposes those mutual aspects just help you lose money gradually and know one thing: if they don't work on wheat to some extent, they don't work for other living things either.

Of course, if you want to work with great exactness and proceed the way I show in the case of locating Mutual Aspects of the Stock Horoscope, you would fare well; but, what work! Results are found better and easier with our regular Moon progressions.

IT'S CHEAPER TO LEARN FROM THE EXPERIENCE OF OTHERS

My work and method is not produced from copying other books or from fancy ideas that grew in my mind, which have no practical value whatever, but know, that everything which is given, which is suggested and also that which is advised to discard has a practical cause and reason. I have never used astrology to play around to amuse myself and others, but used astrology to find the laws which govern us and to follow these in a practical way. This is why, on the surface, some of my statements may sound strange, even too frank and too forward for the average student, but I have fared very well with my clients which are distributed throughout the globe on account of my frank and intrepid statements, if I am once convinced of a thing. This does not imply that I am not subject to errors like everyone else, but any statements made in this work have been thought about carefully and tested many years already and proven right and when I have discarded certain rules, including most of the common astrological rules, I have prior to it put all my efforts to make them work and if I saw one failure after the other arising from their use I just merely killed the rule and threw it out for good.

Originally, when I started writing this book I intended to pass up on those things and say nothing about them, but a few days ago in order to brush up on those long forgotten no-good rules, I took an old astrology book, still in my possession, which I found so full of notes and remarks and so full of rules which are not rules at all, that I began to tell you first about one rule that must not be used, then proceeded to the next and so, gradually going through that old book. I now have eliminated or told you all the rules that must not be used provided you want to operate with my methods. Now, since I am through, that old astrology book originally containing 252 pages has 14 pages of useful rules left. Such is the situation with astrological books. In case you are entirely a novice in astrology so much the better; if you are an old timer and begin to work with my method you soon will discover that not one word of my statements needs a revision or a change, but that everything is just as stated.

The greatest trouble why such books can circulate freely and have many takers is that there are very few astrologers who dare to speak up against such books and there are still others who cling to vague unsatisfactory laws and rules and don't even notice that they are not useful.

The book, by the way, of which I criticised so much is not an English text, but written in another language, although the style is closely related.

I believe I have told you before that due to my intense interest in astrology, I have not only studied English texts, but all other texts available in any tongue which I could understand and I happen to understand quite a few languages.

IDEA OF FIVE HOROSCOPES IN ONE

In the meantime on account of all that reviewing, we have not started yet to cast our horoscope for March 17th, 1941, the day a commodity was first traded in New York which horoscope nevertheless shall be worked out in due time. However, while we keep talking general rules, we now get off them for a while and say something about the improvements which I made to produce horoscopes that have real value, which can be read and from which we can say: this and that should happen on such and such a day. I spoke already about the small number of aspects that can be produced when we use only the radix horoscope and nothing else. This bothered me so much because I knew the market changed quite often and no aspects were available to account for any of these changes. Where to take the aspects, if apparently there are none? I set myself thinking and went straight away into optics in which field I felt I could find some sort of enlightenment. My first thought was; if there is a light somewhere, and an object, there must be a shadow. If we look into the water of a lake an image looks out of it, that looks "like" us. Based on these premises I said: Is there a way to produce for the known planets in the bowl of the sky some sort of an image or reflex? I tried all sorts of possible and impossible combinations, until I recognized that there really exists in the sky a reflex or mirrored picture at some other place of the Zodiac. Thus, I found for each planet a reflex place which, as I later discovered acts just as if a planet actually was placed at this point. This gave me, of course, immediately twice as many planets as I had previously. As the Moon passes through the Zodiac and casts angles of 0°, 15°, 30°, etc., to each and any of these places, we experience changes in ourselves, good or bad, depending upon the angle and of the same strength as brought forth by actual planets. The best testing ground proved to be the market, since with human beings we have not

THE FIVE-FOLD HOROSCOPE

63

enough records, to make us see these things. The market, however, registers from day to day the actions through actual sales taking place. When people buy or sell stocks or wheat, they are, of course, influenced by their own planets and at the same time the horoscope for wheat, for example, which I use (I use a point of beginning which lies way back in 1587 and which I dug out myself as being the nearest that can be used to forecast wheat movements) shows tops and bottoms due to come according to the way the Moon passes over the radix places of the horoscope and over the mirrored or reflexed places spoken of. There are two more horoscopes that have to be worked up which I shall discuss later aside of the regular progressed horoscope.

The latter, i.e. the progressed horoscope, is the one I have the least confidence in and, while the aspects occasionally work very nice and give good tops and good bottoms, at other times, it seems as if this horoscope is just running empty, the aspects just have no force when they arrive. Therefore, from the outset, consider the progressed horoscope the least desirable, although, as far as its construction is concerned, it is the most difficult of them all and is actually a part of the old style astrological system as is explained in text books.

But, as I write this, another trouble comes to my mind which we can avoid. When progressions are made, make them one day for one year as stated already at some other place. Do not make them in degrees, calling the first year of life one degree, the second year of life two degrees and so forth as some text books suggest. Why there are so many methods of making horoscopes this way and the other way is quite understandable to me. The reason is, that none of them works right and to have some sort of hit, they try all sorts of ways and the next is not better than the previous one. They can't account for their failures and trying to overcome them, tackle some other nonsense. There are even some more methods, most of them foreign methods, which also give little results; these I also have put to a test myself!

One of the five charts I call the mundane chart or the mundane horoscope for good reasons. The reason for its name is that I found out that the aspects produced by the use of this special horoscope have as underlying factor mostly events originating outside of the person or outside of the market in case it would be the question of a market horoscope.

ON SENSITIVE POINTS

The idea originated from a German text I used to study frequently which dealt at length with so-called "sensitive points" in the horoscope, such as the "Point for Love" whereby all you had to do was to take the place of the radix Sun and measure its distance towards Venus; the amount you obtained, you added to the Ascendant. This way you obtained a point somewhere in the horoscope which they called the "Love-point". The "Point for Traveling" was found according to this method the following way: you take the place of the radix Moon and figure its distance to Mercury; the difference found you added to the Ascendant. This way you obtained the point for trips. In this manner that book produced 13 individual point for day births and to make matters more complicated they quoted and promptly explained an extra 13 points for night births. I labored real hard for many months with all these points trying to get them to work in my market forecasts. They refused and were put on the "don't use lists". But, the whole thing had something good to it. It gave me the idea that a horoscope

not erected for the moment of birth or to be more specific, a horoscope erected that ignores the actual rising point called the ascendant, but which uses the actual point of Aries as the point of beginning, should give certain results. Sometimes people make this kind of horoscopes when the day of birth is only known, but no hour or minute of the day. But, they make a serious error which voids its usefulness, in that they do not work that horoscope into the regular radix horoscope. What I mean by that will be shown when we develop the mundane horoscope. Anyhow, a mundane horoscope is erected with the idea in mind that the zero point of Aries is rising instead of the actual ascendant, but with serious reservations as explained gradually.

The last horoscope, the fifth, which we need, is constructed by simply using this mundane horoscope and reflecting each planet contained therein by mirroring it.

Thus we have discussed in a rough and ready manner the five different horoscopes. I well know now that the explanations given are not sufficient to make you realize the monstrosity of the find and the usefulness coming out of this work, but for the moment I can do no better. The actual construction and discussion of the procedure will go a long way towards clearing up the difficulties and to show you how the laws operate. Afterwards, when you once know the ways of operation, read back this specific chapter and you will understand what I have explained in rather abstract terms.

THE DIVISION OF EACH HOUSE INTO THREE PARTS

When we look over our frame of the horoscope which we are supposed to construct on hand of some example for which we shall use temporarily yet our example on page 40, where the 12 different cusps for the Houses are given, starting with 10th house cusp at 9°30' ♍, we go a step further and make an extra division of exactly three parts for each house, whatever the size the different houses might be. This division must be done carefully and correctly since a lot of things depend upon this division and we have to use it constantly. Let us do this division with that old example! Therefore I repeat the positions:

Cusp of 10th house (MC)	9°26' ♍	Cusp of 4th house	9°26' ♂
Cusp of 11th house	3°30' ♎	Cusp of 5th house	3°30' ♏
Cusp of 12th house	25°30' ♎	Cusp of 6th House	25°30' ♏
Ascendant (1st House)	18°29' ♏	Cusp of Descendant	18°29' ♎
Cusp of 2nd house	29°30' ♏	Cusp. of 8th house	29°30' ♎
Cusp of 3rd house	8°30' ♏	Cusp of 9th house	8°30' ♎

Then we measure the space between the 10th house and the 11th house and find that it covers 20°34' in ♍ and an extra 3°30' in ♎, all told 24°4'. The space of the 10th house is therefore 24°4' long.

This space we divide into 3 equal parts:
 $24^{\circ}4' \div 3 = 8^{\circ}1\frac{1}{3}'$

After having drawn the division lines into the horoscope we give each one of the minor cusps its proper degree headings:

THE FIVE-FOLD HOROSCOPE

65

Original cusp of 10th house bears $9^{\circ}26'$ m;
 The first intermediate cusp gets $17^{\circ}27'$ m ($8^{\circ}1'$ added to first);
 The second intermediate cusp gets $25^{\circ}28'$ m ($8^{\circ}1'$ added again);
 The third or original cusp of 11th house carries $3^{\circ}30'$ x ($8^{\circ}2'$ added).

This way we go through each House, make the three divisions exactly and enter the places with the exact degrees and minutes. As in the previous case we don't have to make all the 12 houses but only 6 of them, since the opposite sides carry the very same degrees but with the opposite signs.

As a further example I shall take the division of the first House (from the first cusp to the second cusp):

Size of house $47^{\circ}1'$ ($18^{\circ}29'$ v3 to $29^{\circ}20'$ ~); we divide by 3 gives $13^{\circ}40'$ each. These parts we now add starting at the first cusp:

The 1st part extends then from $18^{\circ}29'$ v3 to $2^{\circ}9'$ ~;

The 2nd part extends from $2^{\circ}9'$ ~ to $15^{\circ}49'$ ~;

The 3rd part extends from $15^{\circ}49'$ ~ to $29^{\circ}30'$ ~.

They are entered into the Horoscope blank.

The 1' differential in dividing by 3 is not considered but used in the last third part.

We have not begun inserting our planets yet, although we have learned long ago how to figure their exact places, but this additional division of three for each single house had to be explained first, so that we now can put the planets into their right places, taking care not to put them anywhere else but into the small parts allotted to them. Besides, bear in mind, that it happens often times that two or even three planets may have to be put into one little sector, depending upon the planetary condition of the sky at the time the horoscope is made.

One more matter is important to facilitate reading a chart: write all the planets that belong into the left hand of the chart so that they face all downwards and all those to be put into the right half side of the chart so that they face towards the right. What I mean by this you can see when you look at the Main Chart Fig. 23 and the way I entered the planets, together with the degrees and sign. (Page 60).

While we have placed on the outside ring at each subdivision our correct degrees and proper sign, we have to place them also inside, next to each planet not only its proper degree and minute, but also the sign. This is done for various reasons, but mainly to avoid errors when measuring aspects. Of course, after we are finished casting our horoscope, I shall show you how to ultimately discard even the horoscope by making special tables which are for permanent use and which facilitate the work tremendously. But, don't now say: Why shall I work my head off here now when later on I can discard this portion anyhow? You cannot make the table unless you go through all the work of making first the correct horoscope and only then, after you have the complete work before you, is it possible to make out of it a sort of a short-cut Table, but not before.

The individual planets must be entered into each chart specifically into the provided rings. We shall figure all planets' positions first for the radix chart, then for the mundane chart, afterwards for the two mirrored charts and ultimately for the progressed chart. We have all told 5 rings combined into one horoscope. In the outer one we enter the progressed planets, because this ring has to be changed or adjusted each year, since the planets, which we place therein, keep on moving from day to day, from year to year, but we make the change of places

only once a year, on the day of the birth's recurrence. Otherwise we leave them intact. But should an aspect fall due in the progressed horoscope, we have to make side calculations and adjust them that way.

The four rings contain the radix, the mundane and the two mirrored horoscopes. They remain permanent and are never changed or shifted.

The inner four are to be considered the birth picture of the person analyzed, while the ☽ of the outer horoscope, the 5th, called the progressed horoscope, is the actor. It causes by its progressed motion from day to day aspects to be formed towards the other planets. The angles used were described previously. The progressed ☽ is the culprit in all cases. All other progressed planets are ignored except when they get aspects themselves from the progressed ☽.

ARTIFICIAL AND NATURAL DECANS

Each part of the three-part division, which we have made for each house of the horoscope we shall call an "Artificial Decan Division", although the name "Dekan" does not exactly apply to it. Actually deca means ten (10) and here is neither a division of ten nor is it a 10° division. We shall use this term because certain relations are present and it is helpful. But to distinguish between an Actual Decan and such a Three Parts Division, we shall call one a Natural Decan, and the other an "Artificial Decan". The reason for doing this later on!

WHAT IS A MUNDANE HOROSCOPE

Under Mundane we understand something that begins with 0° ♈ and therefore, a Mundane Horoscope is a horoscope that begins with 0° ♈ placed on the Ascendant. This way each House becomes 30° long and we find that on the cusp of the second house we must put 0° ♉, on the cusp of the 3rd house we have to put 0° ♊, on the 4th 0° ♋, on the 5th 0° ♌, and so on until we land with the 12th house at 0° ♏. That way we complete the circle of 360°. If we do make a 10° division into this type of horoscope everything is clear, because when we divide a 30° house into 3 parts, we get automatically 10° for each third division. This therefore is an Actual or Natural Decan. Inside near the center of the frame of the five rings which is to become our Horoscope, we place the 12 signs of the Zodiac in the arrangement just spoken of, starting with ♈ at the Ascendant or 1st house. The divisions of three which we made for each house gives us automatically the individual decans, whose degrees, if we would mark them, would show: 1st decan from 0° to 10°; 2nd decan from 10° to 20°, and the third decan from 20° to 30°. Since we have to use instead of 30° a new sign which lies next to it, we have to say the third decan extends from 20° to 0°. This is illustrated in Fig. 7, page 45.

I am trying very hard, as you can see, to bring each and every detail that is required first so that we can understand the process of making the final chart complete. Then we shall not run into difficulties when we actually begin. It is not a good policy to have to explain between important parts of the text some minor matter that had been overlooked before and, if not fully known or understood beforehand, we surely get things mixed up. But now I am satisfied that nothing is missing or omitted. All is explained to give us easy sailing into the real work, to make a complete horoscope for March 17th, 1941, for 12:01 Noon, New York City.

THE EGG OF COLUMBUS

or

The Hidden Movements in
Stocks and Commodities Markets

by

GEORGE BAYER

P. O. Box 1142 ♦ Carmel, California



Originally Published by

COPYRIGHT 1942

by George Bayer

As I came not into life with any knowledge
of it, and as my likings are for what is old,
I busy myself in seeking knowledge there.

Confucius.

SACRED SCIENCE INSTITUTE

WWW.SACREDSCIENCE.COM

Foreword...

The matter dealt with in this work is the hardest and most difficult subject anyone could touch. It attempts to explain the ways to make money in markets by the use of strange, natural, but true cycles.

A tiny little bit of the surface is here but scratched, when we consider that some writers have used up 20,000 pages such as Swedenborg did; Athenaeus used for the same about 3,000 pages; one old Greek text in my possession used 18 pages to cover the laws. And I try to condense the job down to the same size.

Of course, every reader will realize quickly, as soon as he has completed his first reading, that the 20,000 page work of Swedenborg covers everything of life that possesses a cycle of any kind or description, while we, for practical trading, require but the very common major moves to make money in markets. It would be a different story if we would want to get things down so close that each of the 400 or 500 contracts traded at this time during a trading day would be specified to the moment as well as to the exact eighth price. This actually is possible and in this direction I am at present working in my own research. You might gasp at this statement, but you soon will stop when you are through with this work, because you will have to catch your own breath to digest.

Do not think for a moment that there were not people living ages ago who were much smarter and wiser than anyone living today. I have my wisdom (that little which I have) from them, and don't owe the present generation a nickel's worth of thanks. The present generation actually held me back many years, having to wade through their works first until hard thinking put me on the right trail.

GEORGE BAYER

Carmel, California
January 2nd, 1942

THE FEELING of security, the scare of the unknown, the what-will-be, are terms so great and so all-embracing that we could write volumes about them, and, truly, volumes about that had been written by philosophers mostly would-be philosophers who did not know what they were talking.

And yet, the entire problem about a feeling of security, about the scare of the unknown can be solved with one single word, even with one single letter: π (Greek pi, 3.1415953). This short statement is so huge and tremendous that it cannot possibly penetrate in your mind or anybody else's mind without years of research on the matter of movements, be they movements of wheat, of stocks, of people, nations or what-have-you.

We could not possibly think of a forecast of what is due to come, for example, what will be coming in wheat or in stocks next year, if such movements had not been figured out already in the regular cycle of events. Thus, all we can accomplish is to locate the cycle, then locate the place in which our present time moves in this cycle and lastly, act accordingly. The latter is not as easy as it looks to the novice. We must know that each one of our present living creatures on earth in itself or in himself is moving in a cycle all his own which may be contrary to the cycle of something else for a while, or for all times, or, it may be in harmony. Therefore, he whose cycle, for example, is completely disharmonious to stocks, will never think of stocks, will never trade in them or have the least bit to do with them. Others, whose cycle is somewhat in harmony with the stock cycle, will trade stocks, and—win, when the cycle is harmonious, and will lose if it is inharmonious at a certain time.

If your cycle shows that you will be unhappy in marriage, you will with the aid of the devil or whatever be his name, find the right female or male that makes life a living hell to you. You will go happily to the altar with a big rope around your neck, with a feeling of security and without scare of the unknown, without even thinking about that "what-will-be."

But, we don't have to take married life at all! We can just as well take a stock and apply the very same rule. Just read over the preceding paragraph once more and substitute for "marriage" the words "stock trading" and for female or male use the word "stock."

The Dutchman says:

Als je verliefd bent, ben je stapelgek,
 Als je verloofd bent, heb je den strop al om je nek.
 Maar,—als je getrouwd bent, toen krijg je pas de straf,
 Daar hang je aan den galg, en niemand snijdt je er af.

The English version being:

If you fall in love, you are crazy,
 If you get engaged, then you already put the rope around your neck.
 But,—when you get married, then you really get punished,
 Because you hang on the gallows, and nobody cuts you off.

Speaking about stocks and applying this little idea, we all know how hopeful people get right smack on top of a bull movement, how they buy stocks irrespective of price—the volume of trading shows it. As soon as they have bought, they have the rope around their necks, stocks begin gradually to sink and they hang on the gallows and nobody cuts them off—until we reach a major low: example, March 1937 to December 1941. Only when they are at the bottom do people sell their stocks, after they have tumbled 40, 50, 70, and more points.

You may remember from school days that in Antiquity they had the Seven Wonders of the World to show. This is what Encyclopedias tell you. They were:

1. the Pyramids of Egypt.
2. the Hanging Gardens of Semiramis at Babylon.
3. the Temple of Artemis at Ephesus.
4. the Sitting Statue of Zeus (Jovis) at Pheidias.
5. the Mausoleum in Halicarnassus.
6. the Colossus at Rhodes.
7. the Light Tower at Alexandria.

These things actually did exist once, some still exist. That those things had not been made and constructed just for fun or to create jobs any one who thinks deeper will realize. What they represented has been the subject of much study among the learned world for many centuries. What these students have found or discovered, sorry to say, is incorrect to say the least. It will pay you to read on these subjects in any encyclopedia after you have completed this study and you surely will admit that my statement is right.

These productions represent nothing but the cycles of life in general, the cycles of bull and bear markets, the cycles which we are going to use in trading Stocks and Commodities, especially wheat.

These Seven Wonders of the World are representative of a Dinner from Soup to Nuts and even beyond the nuts.

Since the field of "Wonderland" is enormous and space does not allow to broaden out too far (we are here to find the cycles for stocks and commodities), I wish to draw your attention to the picture reproduced on the right. It



Le triomphe de S. Thomas d'Aquin, d'après le vitrail de Douai de Garmy. XV^e siècle.

is taken from "La Vie des Saints" (Life of the Saints) published at Lille, France in 1889 by the Abbot Pradier, curator of St. Agne (Dordogne), approved, as it says, by the Archbishop of Perigueux (France). I own a copy of it and the picture is found on page 97 with the heading: Le triomphe de S. Thomas d'Aquin, meaning: The triumph of St. Thomas of Aquini. It seems to be a photographic copy from a picture by Benozzo di Gozzoli of the 15th Century.

In this picture we find the Seven Wonders of the World reproduced in some other way above. We find the Trine or Pyramid also. Close inspection will reveal even much more and I hope you will find it yourself.

This work does not go into further details about this picture, because we are touching the Seven Wonders of the World in a quite different way, by using the idea of Athenaeus, (Athens, capital of Greece). In ancient Greece there were quite a few heathen philosophers, who were supposed to have lived there as history teaches. The most important ones were Aristotle and Plato. They taught their pupils by "wandering around." It is advisable that you read in a library or in an encyclopedia all that can be read about them. After (only after . . .) you have done that, inspect the picture on page 4 again carefully and look at the heads of the two figures that "accompany" the Saint of Aquini. Next to their heads you find the two heathens' names: Aristotle and Plato and be sure and believe that I did not put those names there myself. They were there in the original, but the public who looks at pictures, looks the same way at them as traders look at the tape or on their wheat charts: they see nothing.

After giving you two good shocks out of the blue sky let us go to the third one which treats the Seven Wonders of the World in a little different way, even though, it is exactly the same.

In Swedenborg's Genesis, vol. I, page 374, we find the following: "They who have once conceived opinions, though most false, cling to them so obstinately that they are not even willing to hear anything that is contrary to them (to the false opinions), so they never suffer themselves to be informed, even if the truth be placed before their eyes."

Swedenborg, who lived from 1688 to 1772 was the only man within that period who knew all about the secret inner meaning of the Bible and his 40 odd volumes on the subject explain it sentence by sentence.

While I do not believe that he was just then thinking about traders when he wrote that sentence, it fits them like a glove.

The traders, each and all, get somehow vaccinated with false opinions as to what moves markets through newspapers and their commentators, through books written on the subject by people who know nothing whatever about the cause of the movements. Once their ideas that frost in Iowa or rain in Kansas moves wheat up and down or that car loadings influence the price of railroad stocks, etc., are implanted into a man's mind, they are very difficult to eradicate. That is why the public pokes fun at you when you say: "I use special cycle movements." They think you are dippy, when newspapers say it's the rain and they "know", at least they think they know.

You most likely have acquired from me the various works published, such as "Time Factors in the Markets", the "Handbook on Trend Determination for Stocks and Commodities", also the "Previews" of 1939-1940 which contained many articles on trading which can be used and applied any time.

Each of these works have as the basis special cyclic movements and neither rain or sunshine, nor frost and or kilowatt output. All these ideas have been eliminated, so that we were just naked, so to say, and had to start from scratch with something else. It is not something new, as some people might want to put it, because all the ancient books explain nothing but cyclic movements, whether it be the Bible, or the Koran, Cicero or the Gallic War of Caesar. Thus, all the ancient Hebrew writings, the Egyptian, Greek and Latin Writers explain only cyclic movements and their effect upon human beings and NOTHING else.

There is also a Greek work extant, called Athenaeus, the Deipnosophists or the Banquet, similar to Dante's Banquet and many other Banquets that are treated of in Ancient Works. The meaning of the whole story is: The arrangement of the cycles in correct sequences.

We know, from our own works all about the cyclical influences, that they are present and on which days we must expect a change of trend in markets. We have absolutely no doubt in that respect. The only difficulty which we experience, for example, with the use of our ellipses, 6 inch and 9 inch whether it is to be a 6 inch ellipse or a 9 inch, whether it even could be but half of a 6 inch ellipse and we break out of it. In many cases we have no trouble, but, for safety's sake, when we have additional help to assure us of the correct trend, so much the better.

I originally bought my 5 vol. set of Athenaeus on January 15th, 1940 and went at it immediately to co-ordinate its contents with all the other works of similar type. The "Banquet" idea connected immediately with Dante and his "Banquet". I found that this Greek Banquet was much more elaborate than Dante's. Since we must take for granted that the ancient works were written with the idea in the man's mind to help others grasp the Laws of Motion, their style is rather monotonous and dry on the surface and not to the liking of the average reader. However, this work and all the others are full of juice if one knows what he or they are talking about—that they are explaining repeating cycles.

From the study of Athenaeus I have taken what I am about to show you in this little work about cycles. When, after a while, you are through reading this and you still believe that markets are "man-made", like millions of traders do and always will do, all my work went into the wrong channel and I am sorry. However, there is a natural law which says: you'll get what is coming to you and you never will get that which is not meant for you and therefore you should be able to see quickly how marvellous Nature shows itself all things.

To make sure that our mind, rather your mind, is not drifting into wrong conceptions, be it said right here that Nature itself is dead and is not alive. What makes it alive is some agency, whatever that may be.

This agency activates Nature*. When we consider that Fixed Stars in the Heavens form distinct pictures of animals, such as the Swan, the Fishes, the Bear, etc., which are a part of Nature, and then note that the actual animals are running around our globe by the millions, which are little tiny fixed stars in themselves. You may object and say: these earthly animals die. Yes, but don't forget that they perpetuate themselves through progeny, so that, even though the individuals die, they only die AFTER the next progeny or cycle has begun to live. This means for our purpose (keep that well in mind!) that a certain cycle begins, passes through the cycle, but, before it ends, conceives a new cycle and only during the time that the old cycle is about dying off the new one is already running and only after the new one has been running for a while does the old one die of itself.

THIS MUST BE CLEAR. There is an interweaving of cycles. Those who work with ellipses know that the new cycle has to be set within the end of the old ellipse!

The secrets contained in Athenaeus could be written with one word and he actually has called a 3,000 page work with the title: Dinner-table.

As we now can understand from what was explained above, the cycles of markets, of business, the life of a human being, bank accounts, trading accounts, wheat, cotton, and every commodity consists of a series of cycles, long and short, which series form one whole. Links form a chain. We may call these cycles serpents. The formation of these serpents is represented in things which we eat and IN THE ROTATION HOW we eat the various foods. You would not start with the roast when eating a seven course dinner, but you begin with the Hors d'Oeuvre or Antipasto, that is with radishes, green onions, pickles, salami, anchovies, caviar.

The serpent, called Stock Market, had its beginning on May 17, 1792. The beginning of trading Commodities we do not know, but, on hand of what I shall show here with a dinner-table, we can always find and locate the link of these serpents at any period in which we may be for the moment.

Of course, anyone who makes an invention, has to know about the subject thoroughly and discover weaknesses in it which can be improved or changed. I am not inventing anything here for you, but simply digging out again rules that had been known to the Ancients thoroughly. But, when the thing has been re-discovered and made known to others, they in turn have to be acquainted with markets as to their generalities in order to understand the improvements that were made.

This knowing or knowledge requires that we know something about eating and the series in which the various dishes of food are served at a dinner. Purely for record I shall give the correct sequence of how a dinner shall be served:

We begin with the Hors d'Oeuvre and a cocktail. Next follows the soup. After the soup comes the fish with which is served white wine.

* Nature is moved by a thing found engraved on every violin which is made. It has the form of an "I". I will not define it any closer, but that is the "It".

When the fish has been eaten, we start with the roast and with the roast goes red wine. After the roast comes the sweet stuff; with it should be served champagne. Then we get cheese and crackers, and lastly, we get almonds and nuts with which goes a little Cognac (brandy).

That there are potatoes served with fish we all know and also know that they are either small round rissolées potatoes or small boiled potatoes with parsley butter. With roast is always served a vegetable or two, a baked potato or some French fried potatoes, also a salad.

Note especially the types of potatoes I am quoting here. In order to make matters for our purpose very clear, I have to mention yet the shoe string potatoes which often are served with fish, but which become French fried potatoes when they are served with the roast.

The sooner you work your mind fully into such a menu and go over once more the various dishes and their sequence, the better you will understand the cycles of markets and don't forget, that you have a choice on the soup: thick soup or clear soup . . .

When we remember that the Scientists, Economists and others use all kinds of theories, such as the Dow Theory to forecast markets, we shall deviate from them by simply using common sense and Nature which feeds us the food so that we can live and—the market lives upon the very same food, though not actually food, but food in pictures, arranged in the form of a regular first class meal, including wine and champagne.

One group is guessing for want of having something, our method is well ordered, based on solid ground and brought over from the Ancients under covered language for our use.

It is not that I want to belittle these economists. I was in their shoes once, too. I believed everything I read except what one would say to me about planetary influence upon us until some fellow forecasted an event for me five months ahead which came true to the day and to the exact effect. This original believing cost me plenty, first in dollars and cents, and after that, in years of patient work digging into holes where few dare to dig to locate the causes of market movements. The greatest difficulty was to dig into the right hole. I tried optics; I tried the magnetic needle; I tried the laws of sound; I tried colors; I tried "book"-astrology, until I reached actual astronomy as shown in the "Handbook of Trend Determination" and last not least I have become a full fledged cook to crown the thing off. All these things combined had to do with Nature, but they do not show patterns equally well. So that as a final answer we must say: Astronomy plus Gastronomy (the art of eating) gives us what we want. This shall now be shown.

Anyone with a fair amount of brains can study chemistry and specialize in it; else, he can study physics and specialize, mathematics and specialize, astronomy and figure the way the stars move, be a cook and cook delicious food. These individual branches of science deliver chemists, engineers, mathematicians, astronomers—useful in the business world. But, you never will make an astronomer out of a chemist, nor a physicist out of a chemist, etc. To forecast markets, i.e., to find the laws

to forecast, one has to be a linguist first of all, in order to read the old texts and their difficult language, aside of translating the meaning of their words into what it actually means, then, you have to find out into which field of science the meanings belong, to use them right, so that unsurmountable difficulties represent themselves right along. One who is not flexible in thought and mind, never would think to call a small gap an onion or a radish or a potato rissolée and to call a reaction after the fish formation "white wine".

Not only do we have to know about eating and the various foods that are served and in which sequence this serving is done when forecasting markets, but we even must have some knowledge about our body, in short we must be even a doctor. What I say now is not any too refined, but it is necessary for clear understanding of the principles involved: What we eat at a dinner has to be disposed again; what we drink has also to be disposed again. We cannot eat and drink together (eat means "up" and drink means "down"); therefore, we cannot dispose of food at the very same moment as we dispose of waste water. Furthermore, depending upon the disposition of a person who has eaten and drunk and the type of food as well as drink that has been consumed, so will be the type and shape of the wastes released later on. Some people are fond of fish, others are fond of turkeys with RED cranberry sauce; others are fond of soup; the poor people have to live more on soup than on turkeys, more on potatoes than on peas. The rich people have everything their heart desires and for this reason a "complete" dinner is always for the rich. The poor people as a rule (I say so because I need this idea for the explanations of my cycles) have a difficulty disposing waste matters, while urinating is rather easy; others again who have "eaten" something wrong contract diarrhoea and get deadly sick. Those especially who drink much water, wine or other beverages have plenty liquid available for disposal.

From all this we can now recognize the first time that the markets, stocks, wheat, hides, cocoa and all other represent fully a man who lives, eats and disposes of waste matter.

This is the whole secret I have re-discovered.

Therefore, if from now on you take any chart, say the chart for wheat, daily high and low plottings, all you do is look for the Hors d'Oeuvre, then for the soup, afterwards for the fish and its fins, then for the roasted bird with its neck sticking out and even its beak from which it spits out a nut or an almond, then you have gone through the complete bull phase. And you know the phase is over because (pardon now the rough but illustrative words) he has to get rid of that what he has eaten and begins first to p-- and then to s--- and he repeats that several times, in fact, he does this so often until the tongue hangs out of his mouth, because he is so hungry again that he MUST eat at once.

The hanging out of the tongue is the surest sign that he is cleaned from what he had eaten and you never will forget the picture of a tongue if you see one: Wheat, May 27th to August 16th, 1940 was a tongue.

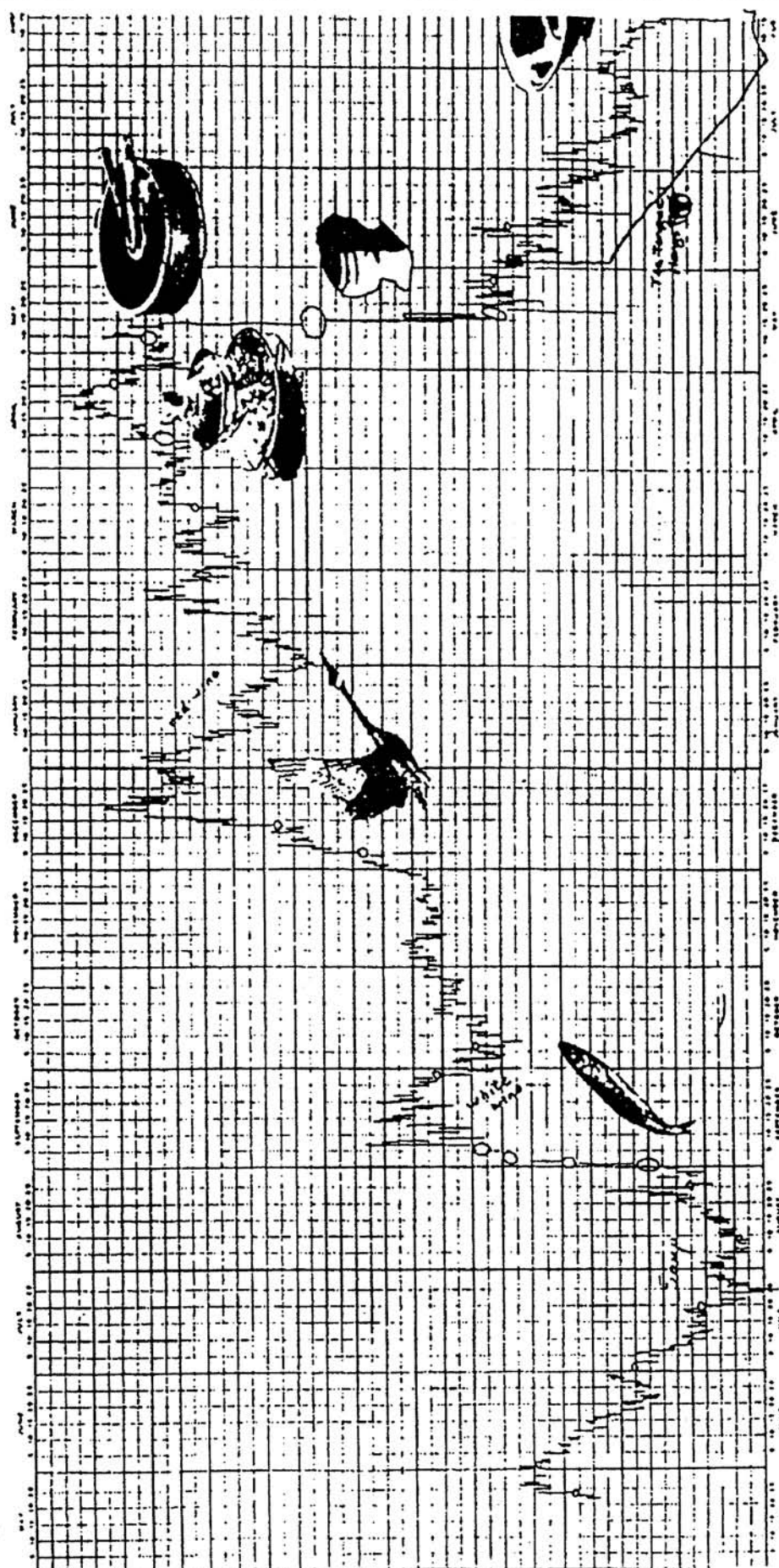
CHICAGO WHEAT

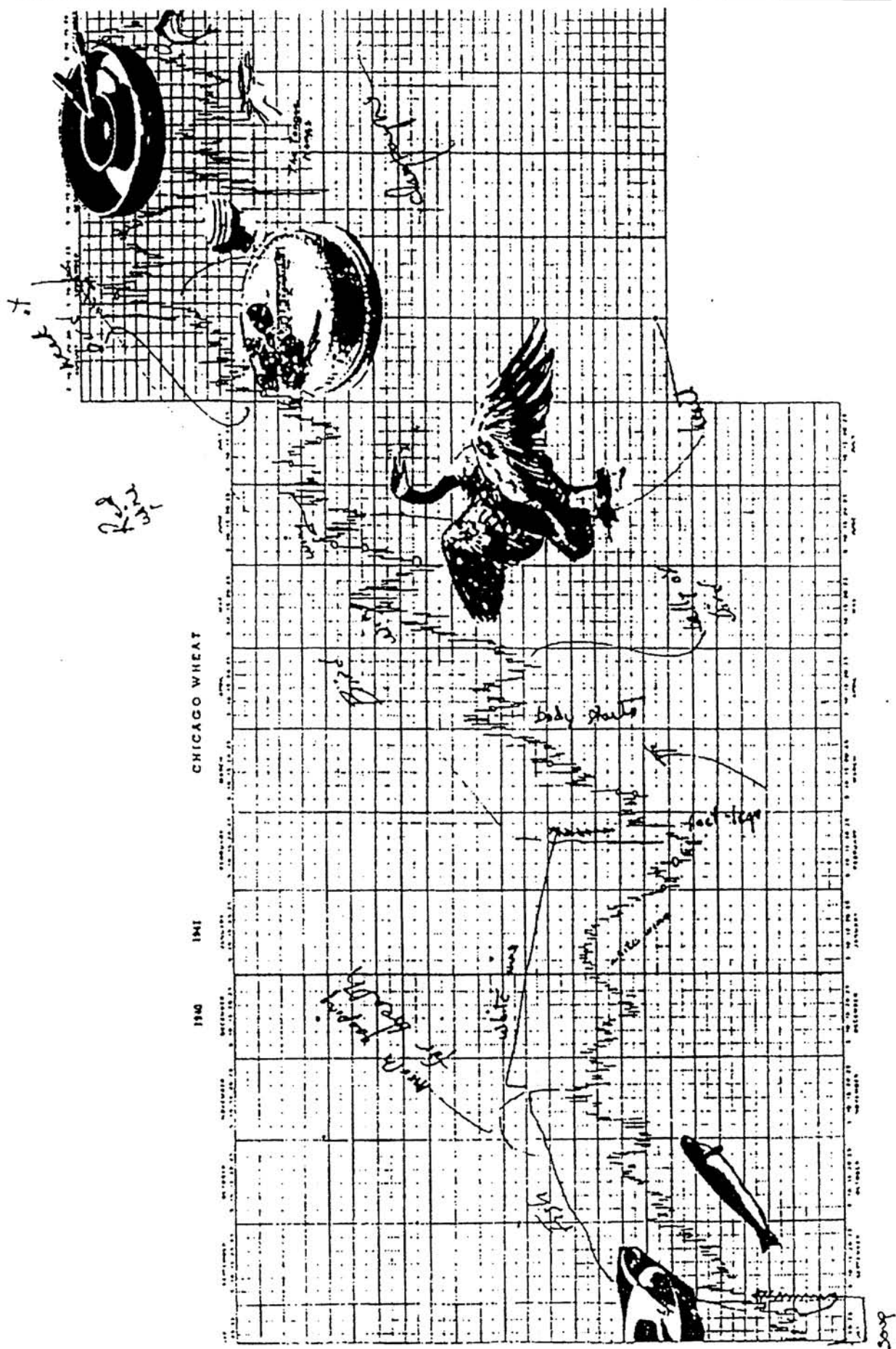
CHICAGO WHEAT

1939

1940

1908





While I think of it, i.e., about the 6 and 9 inch ellipse or half of the 6 inch ellipse, it is now plain to say when we have to use each individual one: The tongue takes half an ellipse; the fish takes a 6 inch, the bird and its neck can take a 9 inch, whereas the bird alone might be satisfied with a 6 inch size ellipse. The disposal "bear move" takes a 6, 9, even 12 or 18 inch ellipse, depending upon the size of the dinner, whereby the first p. can be a 6 inch ellipse with a comeback of half an ellipse when the hill of s. is made, following by another p. and a s. and a p. and a s., etc., until all intake is thoroughly disposed which can be seen ONLY when the tongue sticks out downwards.

The size of the move (always applicable to any commodity or active stock) depends upon the size of the tongue that sticks out. In this tongue hidden within we find our Hors d'Oeuvre, such as olives, green onions, pickles, salami, anchovies, i.e., very small moves with gaps aplenty, short ups, reversals, gaps down, green onion, followed by a little radish (gap) upward (excuse mis-statement: red is down, so a red radish is a gap down!). The form and shape of the Anti-pasto or Hors d'Oeuvre is that of a tongue hanging out of the mouth downwards.

This happened in wheat from May 27th to August 16th, 1940.

On that day (August 16, 1940) everybody was in a soup. It was a thick soup, lasting 10 days. Thin soups we had in hides for example on Thanksgiving 1937 of which you have a chart in the Handbook for checking.

Therefore, the soup lasted from August 16th to August 26th, 1941. This is a period of sweating for the longs, of selling out distress commitments and weak accounts. The previous period, the Hors d'Oeuvre period is the one that fatigues all long accounts, where timid buying comes in, but which is quickly chased out again when radishes make their appearance. They buy on olives, live on hope, during the green onion, but sell on the anchovies and radishes. Jiggle back and forth is all we then can expect and no chance for a "break-out" upwards until we get the soup! Plenty of money can be made while the tongue is formed and we don't have to be timid either, short or long, both ways. The form of the tongue is the limit within which the movement has to run.

After the soup comes the fish upwards. It starts with the tail and not with the head. Nature does that. Incidentally a few months ago I actually saw how a big fish eats the small ones and it reminded me immediately of that fish from August 26th to November 18th, 1940, made by wheat. I bought in Monterey an 8 pound fish at the wharf and had it cleaned there. When they opened the belly there were two fish in it tail at the tail side of the big fish and heads towards the head of the big one, indicating that they catch their food moving FORWARD, gulping the small fish by surprise. So does the market. The fish moves forward, its scales and fins above and below, showing very clearly in the picture of the wheat chart for that period.

Since Nature does only one thing at a time, either eat or drink, the white wine (which is "light" by the way) comes after the fish and is not within the fish. Thus, we got a reaction from November 18th to February

18th, 1941 which was just a gradual sagging; the trend was down, because "drink" means decline.

With February 18th, 1941 we began to form the roast, the bird and to go right over to the end of the bird we find it came on September 12th, 1941 which included the neck, of course, which neck we had given in our menu a special name, i.e., dessert or sweet stuff. But, to speak of the roast or bird proper, we find its shape to be that of a bird and not at all that of a fish. A fish is narrow and long stretched; a turkey has more the shape of a football, oblong, fat in the middle and narrow at the ends.

In school we learned that a bird has feet, a body, wings and a neck. Our "Market-bird" for wheat during 1941 made its feet or legs from February 17-18 which ran, so to say, right into the body of the bird by April 4th, 1941, then was the body proper formed. Imagining the form of an actual bird, we know that the legs actually disappear within the bird and therefore, the body that was being formed after the legs were run through had to be LOWER than the end part of the legs. The body extended from March 31st (note that I allow for the rear end of the bird and I also allow for the feet to come into the bird and the picture for wheat also shows this condition very clearly) over to May 2nd, 1941.

From May 2nd to May 20th we had the first wing of the bird, followed by the second wing which consisted of a double movement: the first part was down to May 31st, and then the second part was the upmovement to June 27th, 1941.

Now then, if we want to be real linnicky we even can say: where is the heart? That heart is right on June 18-19th, 1941. This heart happened to be the half-way point of the entire movement extending from February 17th to September 12th, 1941, which is, however, a coincident and not a rule!

Just because the heart is located underneath the wings towards the upper part of the body, we cannot say that the small top of June 9th was the end of the wing, but June 27th was it.

To explain everything fully and clearly I must go back once more to the fish and describe its mouth as it was formed from October 25th to November 1st and up to November 18th, 1940. Note that the mouth was wide open as if gasping for breath. Gasping for breath meant: I can go no further; I have to react now, I have to drink some white wine. It did.

The bird started in strong on February 18th, 1941. Its end was actually on June 27th, 1941. From that day on a sharp break with a "no bid for Cottonseed Oil" came into CSO, Lard, Soybeans, but not much did it affect wheat which only declined 4c, whereas the others declined 200 points and more on the "Red Wine". In order to see such conditions we absolutely should have charts for a couple of other commodities, because, were it not for CSO, lard or beans, we would not have noticed that the Red Wine went through our time cycle, although it was present. We might have taken them for a "wing" of the bird. However, in the special situation of wheat, we were arriving at the end of the 9 inch ellipse and we know that any bird has a neck which sits on top of the

body. The necks can be like that of a flamingo or of a swan, such as beans had after their reaction on June 27th, 1940, or, it may be but a bird with a short neck such as wheat had (of a goose or quail). So that from the shape of the body (February 18th to June 27th, 1941) we can draw conclusions about the shape and length of the neck, provided we have some knowledge of ornithology. The size of the body is always in proportion to the size of the neck.

The neck, which we shall call the sweet stuff of our dinner must have been upward and not down because the neck implies that something is stretching itself further on. Therefore, even though the 9 inch ellipse had run its course, the move upward could not be over because a live bird does not walk without a neck. It was rather sweet, that move, I mean. It ended on August 31st to be accurate because I have to supply you with champagne yet, which "pops"—the cork of a champagne bottle should jump up clear to the ceiling. We got that jump or "pop" from September 1st to September 12th, 1941. September 12th, 1941 ended everything.

We had some cheese and crackers from September 12th via September 20th up to October 2nd, 1941. Then came a nut, a gap from October 2nd to October 3rd, 1941.

We got after that into the p. and after October 17th we began to form the tongue, which ended November 26th, 1941, in which we are still at this moment.

When we go back a year, to April 22nd, 1940 and follow that specific downcycle, you find the cheese and crackers as May 1st, 1940 and May 10th, the almond on May 13-14th, 1940 and what a p. we got to May 18th, 1940. The s. was formed from May 20th to May 31st, followed by the long stretched tongue downward to August 16th, 1940, the place where we began our previous cycle just explained.

So goes the cycle, and every cycle and all cycles.

If we go back several years to 1924-1925, the wheat market made at that time a dinner-table that is very exquisite; length was one year, height was 100 cents, pattern exactly like the wheat picture from June 1940 to the present time.

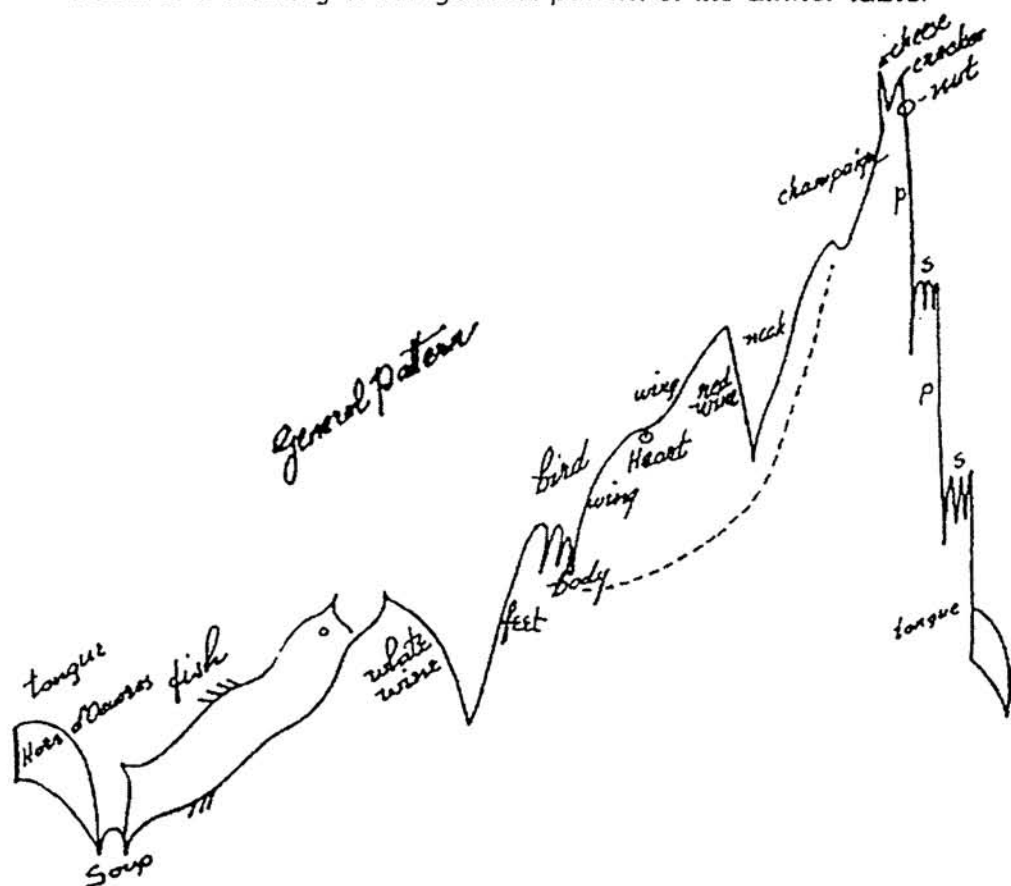
In each animal cycle we even can find several smaller but complete minor dinner-tables hidden, provided we look very carefully for it, but for practical purposes I would not advise to try for them because the main movements are worth while only.

There is a difference also in the types of fish, but as a rule I found them to be narrow and full of little "thorns" (lins). The fleet fish produce long legged birds with long necks (see Soybeans). Any bird which, after having formed its legs (see wheat February 18th to April 5th, 1941) and makes its entrails (wheat April 5th to May 2nd, 1941) but refused to continue making its regular body by going higher is a stunted bird, just right to leave alone (see cocoa and pepper April to September 1941). These are deformed birds who have little or no life to them and must be avoided. For that reason when commodities make their tongue watch

the type of tongue, the type of soup, the type of fish and, accordingly expect the bird, the neck and the rest. "Many are available, but few are selected!"—meaning many commodities or stocks.

With this knowledge now in your possession it should be impossible for you from now on to sell short at the bottom or to buy at the top of any move. It should provide you with the proper patience to see each animal formed and completed and to act at the right times.

Below is a drawing of the general pattern of the dinner table:



Get this pattern's picture thoroughly engraved into your mind!

This is the Egg of Columbus about Trading Stocks and Commodities and if you can make plenty of money with it I shall be glad. You need no calculations of any kind, nothing but an ellipse for intermediate moves, a daily high and low chart of the commodities and the knowledge of these patterns . . . And men break their heads to even get an inkling of what could move markets, if it is not rain or snow . . .

The movements were explained on hand of the present, the nearest cycle, which is still in actual memory. The farther back we take our cycles for comparison, the more difficulty we have to even think of what has happened unless back charts are available..

Most of the traders, when you tell them about what has happened will tell you immediately: I don't care what has happened; what has that to do with the present! Oh, how blind, how dumb they are; how little

do they know or even suspect that cycles repeat! They are happy in their ignorance and like it. Therefore, it is a useless task trying to even speak to them about cycles because they don't know anything about them and, as said in the first sentence where we began: they are not even willing to hear anything.

We shall now go back one actual cycle and at the same time compare it with the current one to see how they fit and also what their different lengths are.

The immediate previous cycle began on April 8th, 1938 with the peak of the neck of the bird. The cheese and crackers were formed via April 12th, 1938 up to April 19th, 1938. For the year 1938 I am using the Winnipeg wheat chart since I mislaid the Chicago chart, but the movements of both were pretty well alike during that year, at least from the period we are inspecting just now. (Use chart contained in Handbook)

The nut was made on April 25-26th, 1938 followed by a p. of 20c to May 31st, 1938. Then came an s. 50% back rally to June 21st; then followed another p. to July 27th, 1938 and then we made immediately thereafter the tongue. And what a tongue that was! 20c was its length. It seemingly ended on September 6th, 1938, but actually we must say no, it ended on October 5th, 1938 only. Why? Because during that down-move from July 27th to September 5th, 1938 there were no onions, no radishes, no green onions nor celery sticks. They came between September 5th and October 5th, 1938.

The soup of that cycle lasted a whole month, from October 5th to November 3rd or 8th, 1938. This meant one month, against the present cycle taking for the soup just 10 days, August 16th to 25th, 1940. Thus we learn that we cannot use counts of days and say: this part of the cycle takes 10 days and also 10 days in the next cycle, or it takes 35 days in this cycle therefore it must take 35 days in the next cycle, too. We would be all wrong. This shall be shown and explained on other parts of the cycle as we go along.

The fish formation began on November 8th, 1938 and lasted until May 31st, 1939. This meant nearly 7 months against the fish of the present cycle which lasted from August 25th to November 18th, 1940 or, not quite 3 months. Next comes the white wine which lasted from May 31st to August 9th, 1939. This white wine looks somewhat like being a tongue, but we had a fish before and not a p. and s. formation, so it could not be a tongue (antipasto) formation, since the sequence of the dinner table is always kept exactly. Nature does not make mistakes; we do. The low of this white wine was lower than the fish itself which did not happen in the present cycle, where the white wine was formed between November 18th and February 17th, 1941. However, we also can see from the chart, that the fish of November 8th, 1938 to May 31st, 1939 was a flat eel with very small undulations sidewise, the present one of August 25th to November 18th, 1940 was mounting upward.

We could not buy in that case (in the 1939 cycle) on June 23rd, 1939 unless it was for a small rally, because white wine has two sections or

two gulps, so to speak, which we can also see in the white wine from November 18th, 1940 to February 18th, 1941. In fact, each of these wines had three gulps if you look closely:

May 31st, 1938 to June 23rd, June 29th to July 25th and July 31st to August 9th, 1938, whereas the white wine of 1940-1941 has the same as follows:

November 18th to December 17th, 1940, January 10th, 1941 to February 1st and February 6th to February 17th, 1941.

We never work with points (i.e. with the cents profit) but with forms of the picture. Bear this constantly in your mind!

The feet of the bird were formed from August 9th to September 14th, 1939. Note, that I did not say: till September 7th, 1939 for very good reasons. The feet, as said above have to be buried within the body of the bird and are not sitting in the tail end. From other work, presented in my "Handbook of Trend Determination" September 7th could not be seen but that 15th of September 1939 stuck out like a sore tooth.

The body proper of the bird was formed between September 7, 1939 (now I have to use that date) over until either November 28th, 1939 or to December 4th, 1939. We do not have to be too picky in that respect, because we know the wings of the bird and the neck have to come yet, just the same as it was on May 2nd, 1941. The length of that body was also longer in time than was the body of March 31st to May 2nd, 1941.

But, note, that within one cycle the proportions remain very well the same, so that, a big long fish calls for a long bird, long wings, etc.

The first wing of the bird was from November 28th or December 4th, 1939 to December 19th, 1939, the reaction or red wine lasted to February 1st, 1940. The second wing last from February 1st to February 23rd, 1940. The heart which we located so well in the 1941 cycle shows for February 14th, 1940, but this time it was not the halfway mark as it happened in 1941. The sweets or the actual neck of the bird had its beginning with March 2nd, 1940 and had several kinks. Instead of making a swan's neck to 1.50 it wiggled back and forth, staying very strong though, until April 22nd, 1940. The champagne was not missing. It started with gap upward on April 8th, 1940 and is actually a part of the neck or what we also term "sweets". This neck formation was in length very well in proportion to the entire cycle respectively in fine proportion to the other parts of the cycle just explained. The cheese and crackers were made from April 22nd via May 1st to May 10th, 1940, followed by the immense p. from the nut made on May 12th, 1940 and ending on May 18th, 1940. The s. and tongue followed and we entered into a new cycle which is about to end here. So we are now at the same spot as we were in September 1938 and in June 1940, making the radishes, pickles, green onions and the salamis.

The way wheat makes its dinner table, serving complete meals at all times, the same way do other commodities, also stocks. We have to watch, of course, for stunted birds which refuse to make a nice long neck such as pepper and cocoa did during the summer of 1941.

Using cycles in the way and manner explained will make you trade in swings and will get you movements of many points without needing to watch the market from moment to moment. Only when one major part of a cycle is drawing to a close is it advisable to sit with the broker and, to pass time waiting for a top or a bottom having in your mind your dinner table, you have ample time to sort of sound out the sheep that sit in there, who don't know whether we move up or down, but who are people who have money to gamble with, to risk it without knowledge. They talk smart and it "sounds" alright, but all their talk is a lot of p and s for practical use. After you have changed your position avoid them like those in olden times avoided lepers.

These patterns repeat all the time. All we must have are charts to pick the place where we are. Sometimes the fish are longer, at other times a little shorter; sometimes the birds are bigger, taller or fatter, at other times they are thin, short, even somewhat deformed just like men are. This spring and summer we had a monster bird in Cottonseed Oil and in Soybeans, whereas in Cocoa we had a goose or a duck, whose neck was leaning back on its body. Soybeans had a neck of a flamingo and butter one of a quail or a like bird with a very short neck, or, let me call that formation a pelican (also visible in eggs, cocoa and hides).

The best period, therefore, for buying is during the time the tongue is made and the best time for selling is after the champagne has been served and a nut or two swallowed (swallow means make a gap downwards).

If, from now on, you dare not to buy around a bottom, but only get all your pep together and buy on the top, it is your own fault.

Know that a complete cycle from tongue to tongue can run from one to three years, that the different forms of animals are very clearly visible.

As far as a general rule for buying and selling is concerned, we have to use weakness to buy, and strength to sell on, while the direction is still the same. For example use weakness in the tongue formation to buy and not when the fish is already in the making. During the resting period between fish and bird you can buy again for the bird; when the bird is completed, you can buy for the neck which is sometimes long, sometimes short. If short, your profit chance is small, but you should not have to take any losses even if it be short, whereas, if it turns out to become a flamingo neck like visible in Soybeans in August 1941 . . . what profits pile up then. When almonds appear on the top short quickly until full discharge has occurred and know that there are several discharges in succession and the hanging tongue to come thereafter.

GEORGE BAYER

P. O. Box 1142
Carmel, California

VOL. I.

NO. I.

Preview of Markets for June, 1939

by

GEORGE BAYER

P. O. Box 1142
CARMEL, CALIFORNIA

COPYRIGHT 1939, *by* GEORGE BAYER

Printed in U. S. A.



SACRED SCIENCE INSTITUTE

WWW.SACREDSCIENCE.COM

INTRODUCTORY

Many years of patient research concerning the movements of stocks and commodities have passed. No field of science has been overlooked which would give even a mite of information in finding laws upon which market movements could be based with any degree of safety.

In the course of time we shall touch upon subjects so foreign to the average trader, so remote from the field of normal thought and activity that their relation to the subject could not even be suspected. It shall be shown gradually that vast unexplored fields yielding laws upon laws have been opened. These laws are not based upon what is commonly termed as astrology, but upon laws that are taken exclusively from the Scriptures and allied works.

If you enjoy the reading of my articles, and benefit by the "Preview of Markets", tell your friends and traders about it.

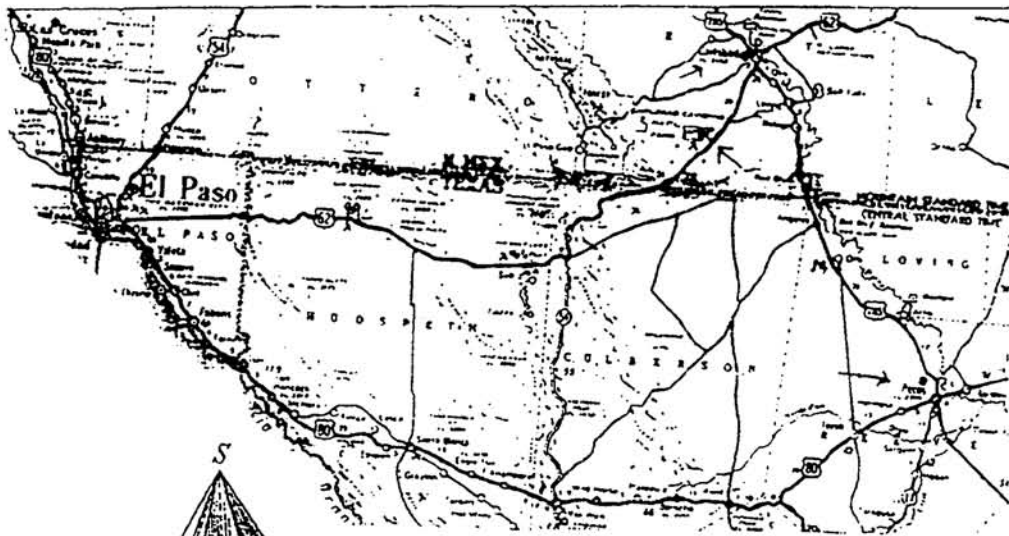
GEORGE BAYER

Carmel, California, May 20, 1939.

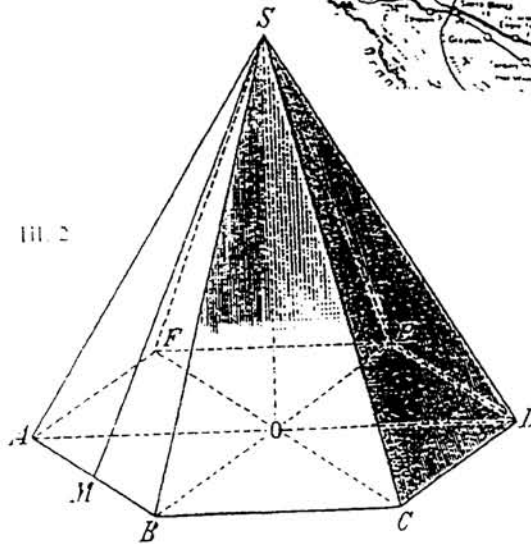
A MONTHLY PUBLICATION IN THE INTEREST OF STOCKS AND COMMODITY TRADERS

All statements made in this publication are George Bayer's personal opinion. They are based upon apparent recurring cycles of time and price. The forecasts given herein, while made with the utmost care are not guaranteed.

Subscription rates:	Single Copies	-	\$1.00
	3 months	-	2.75
	6 months	-	5.00
	1 year	-	9.50



III. 1



III. 2

FRIDAY, MAY 26, 1939

HIGH LIGHTS

CHRYSLER SALES.

Retail sales of Chrysler cars since the end of March apparently have been above the figures of a year ago by about 20 per cent less than did those of the initial quarter. Sales for the year to May 13 were still 65 per cent above a year ago.

III. 3

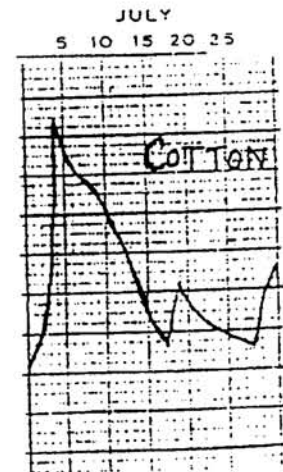
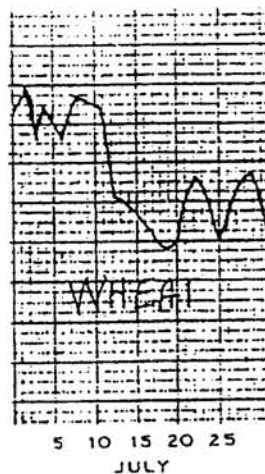
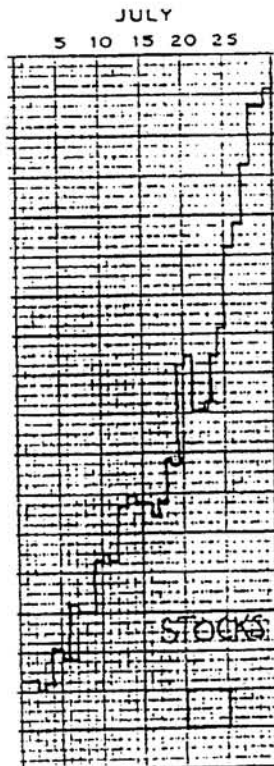


CHART FORECAST FOR
JULY 1939

(continued from page 16)

took him nearly 25 years to achieve it brought results. He found occasionally some tourists who dained to look them over, if it wouldn't cost too much. But Jim was reasonable. One day a fellow who, as Jim explained, looked like a stock broker, rich and wealthy, wanted to see the caverns. On the way over the hills Jim "made a touch" suggesting that he buys this land for a few hundred dollars, build some sort of approach and show the caverns to the world at large. Nothing came of that. But they were worth something, Jim knew it. Finally the talk about these caverns came around to Washington and the result was that today the Caverns are a National Monument with daily summer visitors amounting to between 4 and 5 thousand people. Jim's faith in his discovery was crowned with success.

He now runs the restaurant one thousand feet below the entrance near one of the large underground halls so vast that the Capitol Building at Washington would fit nicely into it, even allowing space for the grounds. He sells a book containing his life story. Most visitors come up from the Caverns with one of them, and 75c is not too much for what he has written in it. It's raining in the desert for him and it most assuredly will stay that way for him. He reserved it!

Let us turn this example into market operations, especially into commodity markets of the present time!

Commodities such as lard, cottonseed oil, cocoa, sugar have been in the dumps for 2½ years. They have been declining continuously. After darkness comes daylight. Patient accumulation of commodities at this period, especially the ones mentioned should bring big profits. Lard at 16c at the end of 1936 and 6½c in June 1939 has lost all the "water" it contained. It has to "rain" again and swell up the price of lard as well as of other commodities, even of grains. When it does begin, the advance will last some time. Anyone short of these commodities since early 1937 would have to cover now and reverse, but who had that much

nerve? This statement of holding positions for long times does not imply that in-between movements should be utterly ignored. Trading commitments should be in one direction only when the board cannot be watched closely. In a bear market it is poor policy, as far as my experience has shown, to go long for rallies and leave the market unattended for several days; while shorts may be covered on weakness temporarily, they should be put out again on sharp rallies that never fail to come into bear swings. The same way in a bull movement, short selling at such periods is often disastrous. The procedure should be to sell out on fast run-ups when big volume occurs and buy back on weakness. Should weakness not develop but important resistance points be crossed on the upside, long positions must be resumed immediately so as to remain in the trend. For this reason it is so important to keep charts of the daily performance of the commodity one actually trades.

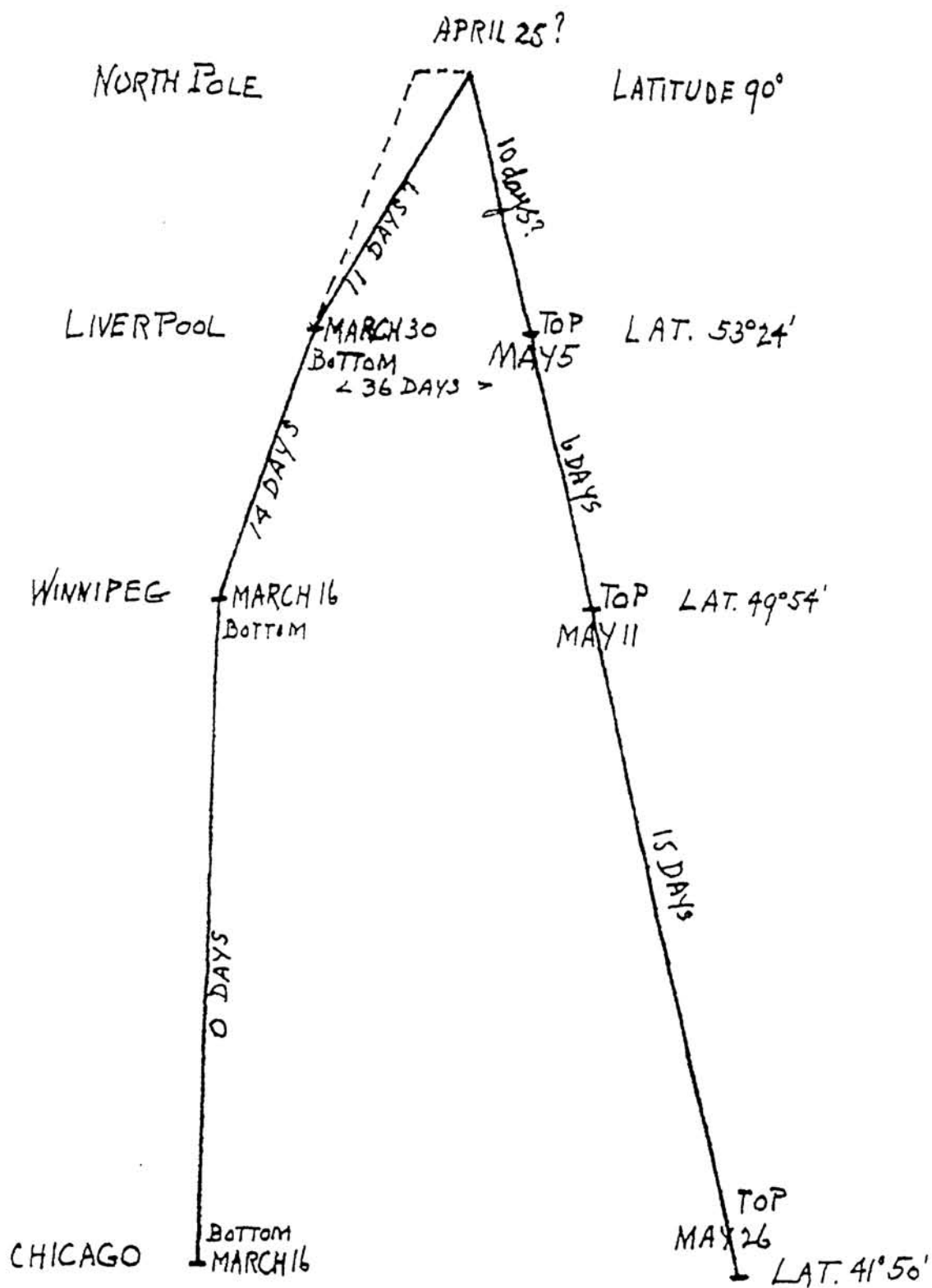
SPACE FILLERS . . .

In analyzing the statement clipped from a news paper of May 26th, 1939, with the heading "HIGH LIGHTS", I tried to get the drift of the story because Chrysler stock is one of my pets, and since this special report was found next to the stock quotations it apparently was meant for traders to decide from it whether stock should be held, sold or added to from here on. Three times I went over it; now you try and see what you can make of it! See ill. 3, page 17.

WHAT CAN WE EXPECT

THE REST OF THE YEAR?

Note: The forecast in chart form for stocks, for wheat or for cotton for the second half of the year 1939, giving you a broad view of the way the market should develop for the balance of the year is still available and may be had for \$12.50. The outcome of the next election is pretty well discernable from the stock forecast, at least Bayer thinks so. Would it help your business? If so, get them.



MOTIONS

On page 36 of the last issue I mentioned that the various planets have so many and so varied motions in respect to our earth as well as the Sun and of themselves, mentioning some 25 varieties of motion belonging to Mercury alone. All the other planets have similar motions.

Here is a list of motions belonging to Mercury:

1. Mercury's geocentric longitudinal movement. This represents the movement of Mercury in longitude measured as seen from the earth.

This motion may be direct, retrograde or stationary. Direct means that its motion is in the order of the zodiacal signs; retrograde means that its motion is contrary to the order of the signs of the zodiac. Stationary means that at certain fixed moments it has no motion whatever but stands still in the zodiac.

Example: On August 19th, 1939 noon London, Mercury's position is $12^{\circ} 14'$ in the sign of Leo retrograde; on the 20th it reaches $12^{\circ} 9'$ of Leo and there becomes stationary. The day after, on August 21st, 1939 it moves forward again so that at noon of that day its place is $12^{\circ} 11'$ in Leo. All these positions are geocentric.

2. Mercury's heliocentric Longitude (Mean Equinox of Date) for the same days is as follows: August 19th, 1939 $350^{\circ} 21' 46''$, 4; August 20th, $354^{\circ} 55' 41''$, 0; August 21st, $359^{\circ} 38' 8''$, 7. These positions are midnight positions London (0 hours) of the days. When we express these values in signs, we obtain: $20^{\circ} 21'$ Pisces, $24^{\circ} 55'$ Pisces and $29^{\circ} 38'$ Pisces, values that are completely different from the geocentric values.

3. Mercury has also two sorts of Latitudes, geocentric, the other heliocentric. On August 19th Mercury's geocentric position is at $2^{\circ} 56'$ South and on the 21st of the month it is at $2^{\circ} 21'$ South.

4. The heliocentric positions of Mercury for the same dates are as follows: August 19th: $5^{\circ} 53' 56''$, 7; August 21st: $5^{\circ} 12' 52''$, 9; both values are minus, i. e. below the celestial Equator.

5. Next comes the declination of

Mercury. It shows in the ephemeris that the declination for August 19th at noon is $14^{\circ} 19'$ North, and on the 21st it is $14^{\circ} 53'$ North.

6. We have the apparent right ascension of the planet. This value is not expressed in degrees but in hours, minutes and seconds. In our example we find that on August 19th, 1939 the apparent right ascension of Mercury at 0 Hours London is 8 h $55' 36''$, 22; on August 21st, it is 8 hours $55' 34''$, 29; on the 20th it is 8 h $55' 20''$, 52.

This apparent right ascension is the very same thing as the geocentric longitude of the planet, only one is expressed in hours, minutes and seconds, while the other is expressed in degrees, minutes and seconds of the Zodiac. The makers of the ordinary ephemerides just take the right ascension and convert it into geocentric longitude: 24 hours equal 360 degrees in this case, and 0 hours, 0', 0" represents 0 Aries $0^{\circ} 0'$.

7. The next item to consider is the true distance of the planet from the earth which varies from day to day. Of the dates in question this true distance is as follows:

August 19th, 0,701279

August 20th, 0,719863

August 21st, 0,739840

8. Not only does this position require consideration, but also the differentials of these distances which are:

between August 19th and August 20th
plus 18584

between August 20th and August 21st
plus 19977

These differentials bring the planet to an extreme far distance as well as to an extreme near distance to the earth.

9. The semi-diameter of Mercury changes also constantly. It shows that on August 19th this semi-diameter of Mercury is $4''$, 76 and on August 21st it is $4''$, 51 at 0 hours London.

10. The horizontal parallax varies also from day to day. We find it to be on August 19th $12''$, 55 and on August 21st $11''$, 89.

11. The time of the transit over the Meridian of Washington is also of im-

October 1582

Positus Planetarum Diurnus.

Die	Mer	Ven	Sol	Mars	Jov	Sat	Stellis	Latitudo
1	17	19	45	11	17	14	13	15
2	18	19	14	16	13	14	17	15
3	19	18	41	11	19	14	12	15
4	20	18	13	16	13	14	17	15
5	21	17	41	11	19	14	12	15
6	22	17	10	16	13	14	17	15
7	23	16	11	11	18	13	17	15
8	24	16	11	11	18	13	17	15
9	25	15	11	11	18	13	17	15
10	26	15	11	11	18	13	17	15
11	27	15	11	11	18	13	17	15
12	28	15	11	11	18	13	17	15
13	29	15	11	11	18	13	17	15
14	30	15	11	11	18	13	17	15
15	1	14	14	19	11	13	16	14
16	2	14	14	19	11	13	16	14
17	3	14	14	19	11	13	16	14
18	4	14	14	19	11	13	16	14
19	5	14	14	19	11	13	16	14
20	6	14	14	19	11	13	16	14
21	7	14	14	19	11	13	16	14
22	8	14	14	19	11	13	16	14
23	9	14	14	19	11	13	16	14
24	10	14	14	19	11	13	16	14
25	11	14	14	19	11	13	16	14
26	12	14	14	19	11	13	16	14
27	13	14	14	19	11	13	16	14
28	14	14	14	19	11	13	16	14
29	15	14	14	19	11	13	16	14
30	16	14	14	19	11	13	16	14
31	17	14	14	19	11	13	16	14

Latitudo Planetarum ad die

October 1582

Syzygiae Lunares.

Die	H	H	H	H	H	H	Syzygiae
1	10	40	12	13	10	15	1
2	11	40	12	13	10	15	2
3	12	40	12	13	10	15	3
4	13	40	12	13	10	15	4
5	14	40	12	13	10	15	5
6	15	40	12	13	10	15	6
7	16	40	12	13	10	15	7
8	17	40	12	13	10	15	8
9	18	40	12	13	10	15	9
10	19	40	12	13	10	15	10
11	20	40	12	13	10	15	11
12	21	40	12	13	10	15	12
13	22	40	12	13	10	15	13
14	23	40	12	13	10	15	14
15	24	40	12	13	10	15	15
16	25	40	12	13	10	15	16
17	26	40	12	13	10	15	17
18	27	40	12	13	10	15	18
19	28	40	12	13	10	15	19
20	29	40	12	13	10	15	20
21	30	40	12	13	10	15	21
22	31	40	12	13	10	15	22
23	1	40	12	13	10	15	23
24	2	40	12	13	10	15	24
25	3	40	12	13	10	15	25
26	4	40	12	13	10	15	26
27	5	40	12	13	10	15	27
28	6	40	12	13	10	15	28
29	7	40	12	13	10	15	29
30	8	40	12	13	10	15	30
31	9	40	12	13	10	15	31

Latitudo Planetarum ad die

Explanations of a few Latin words and sentences:

Positus planetarum diurnus: noon positions of planets

Latitudo planetarum ad die: Latitude of planets on the day

Syzygiae Lunares: Moon aspects

Anni veteris: old years

Anni Gregori: Gregorian years

cu or cum, with:

cauda, the tail

the names following the Moon aspects represent the various fixed stars which are passed, such as hydra, the water snake: Rigel, Orion, Hercules, Arcturus, Lyre,

Stellis fixis, fixed stars.

Die, the day

The hours given in the Table of Syzygiae lunares as well as planetarum mutuae are up to 24 hours.

The Ephemeris was made for Bologna, Italy, noon.

portance. On August 19th the transit occurs at 11 h 7' and on August 21st at 11 h 0'.

12. The value arising from the reduction to Orbit which contains the correction to be applied to the heliocentric longitude in order to obtain the longitude measured along the orbit of the planet. This orbit longitude is equal to the distance from the mean equinox to the node, plus the distance from the node to the planet.

August 19th this value is minus 11' 41", 7

August 21st this value is minus 12' 47", 9

13. The next value of importance is the Radius Vector of the ellipse. This value is given in logarithms and represents the distance of the center of the planet from that of the Sun.

The values for our dates are:

August 19th, 9,5634116

August 21st, 9,5495621

14. The differentials of the logs also form a sort of a motion.

They are:

between August 19th and 20th, minus 69102

between August 20th and 21st, minus 69303

15. The stellar magnitude of the planet from day to day is another item that requires watching. During August this magnitude diminishes from 2.8 to 0 and covers in this time August 9th to August 29th. There is a plus and a minus side to the magnitude.

16. The illuminated disk of Mercury represents another important item. We can distinguish 4 kinds of motions and not one has anything to do with the

other except that they pertain to Mercury's disk.

16a. (16) The ratio of the area of the illuminated portion of the apparent disk to the area of the entire apparent disk regarded as circular.

This value changes as follows during August 1939:

August 14th, 0,026

August 19th, 0,111

August 24th, 0,265

16b. (17) The angle between the Sun and the Earth as seen from the planet. This value changes very rapidly and the figures for August are:

August 14th, 162

August 19th, 141

August 24th, 118

16c (18) The angle which the line joining the cusps, or extremities of the illuminated portion, makes with the meridian.

This angle is of great importance due to its swift change causing there by changes in the human brains as to wanting something and not wanting it shortly thereafter. To show the fast changes occurring with this angle I have to bring its size over a few months:

July 25th, 26°

August 4, 41

August 9, 76

August 14th, 160

August 19, 183

August 24, 191

Sept. 3, 202°

16d (19) The next value of interest is the brilliancy of the disk. Also this value undergo swift changes as shown below:

July 30th, 19.1

August 4th, 9.8

August 9th, 2.5

August 14th, 4.6

August 19th, 18.9

August 24th, 39.7

Besides these actual motions in space which all belong to but one planet (Mercury), we must not forget that there are fixed places of great importance whose proper motion in space is very

small so as to be negligent for our work. The planet crossing over these spots requires attention:

20. Mean longitude of node (Mercury) $47^{\circ} 36' 29''$, 4

21. Mean longitude of Perihelium (Mercury) $76^{\circ} 30' 22''$, 8

22. Mean longitude at the Epoch (Mercury) $149^{\circ} 59' 50''$, 79

Thus, we can see that the average astrologer who plays around with the geocentric longitude of the planets does not use nor even think of the many other motions contained in one simple planet, all of which must be considered and weighed as to their possible effect.

In the event you are sufficiently interested to learn more about the effects of some of these motions and how they bring forth tops and bottoms in stocks and commodities, write me for a special course of instruction on this subject.

All we have done here was analyze roughly Mercury's motions. We have 6 more planets to contend with. Uranus, Neptune and Pluto we don't need since they are not useful for our work. They are intensifying certain spots but that's all.

A report came out on the news ticker some time ago about Chesapeake & Ohio Railroad paying some dividend. The "town cryer," of which every office nearly can boast of one, being a little foreigner, read it off: "Shakespeare & Ohio pays regular dividend."

The WEEKLY ANALYSIS, issued each Saturday supplies a closer view of market trends; it should assist you in shorter trades and at times of uncertainty. \$12.50 three months. Many opportunities for "in-between" trades in stocks and commodities. Send your subscription now. Box 1142.

VOL. 1

No. 8

Preview of Markets for January, 1940

by

GEORGE BAYER

P. O. Box 1142
CARMEL, CALIFORNIA

COPYRIGHT 1939, by GEORGE BAYER

Printed in U. S. A.

THE SUN AND MARKET MOVEMENTS

On page 75 I showed that eclipses have a lot to do with movements of markets. There is much more to consider yet.

Very few people realize that the Sun has a motion of itself. Not only does the Sun run around the Zodiac, consuming what we call one year by completing one of these rounds, but, she turns around her own axis every 25 days 5 hours and 38 minutes. The Sun has two poles upon which to turn around; these poles are inclined towards the Ecliptic at an angle of 7 degrees. The longitude of the rising node of the Sun's Equator is $74^{\circ} 36'$ or 14.36 Gemini.

All these facts were discovered through observation of the so-called Sun spots. On and off we read in newspapers that a large quantity of Sun spots are visible upon the surface of the Sun which apparently create great disturbances all around; some even went as far as claiming that the number of Sun spots give an indication as to the trend of the market! However, such statements may be compared to a person who suddenly gets a lot of pimples in the face and thus is supposed to get sick or be sick. The cause of it is for the doctor to find out.

Sun spots themselves are eruptions at fixed places on the surface of the Sun. Therefore, their apparent change on the Sun ties in with the Sun's rotation and not with their own movement. For this reason we can see Sun spots move in straight lines, at a time when the Sun is found in or near one of the nodes, while at other times this movement must appear in ellipses. The elliptic forms are most pronounced March 5-7 and September 11th of each year. The lines are straight lines June 3-4 and December 5-6 of each year. In other words, the Sun spots' path is straight when the earth is in the plane of the Sun's rotation, June 3 and December 5.

When I stated above that the Sun's own rotation requires 25 days 5 hours, we must not forget that during one of

these rotations the earth has also moved further and it takes a Sun spot an extra 46 hours to reach actually the previous point as seen from the earth. We can compare this movement with that of the hour and minute hand of a clock. Each hour the hour hand has to move an extra 5 minutes to catch the minute hand.

The total run amounts to about $27\frac{1}{4}$ days.

The position angle of the Sun's axis changes as follows:

- 0° Jan. 4 and July 6.
- 5° West: Jan. 15 and June 25.
- 10° West: January 26 and June 14.
- 15° West: February 7 and June 2.
- 20° West: February 22 and May 18.
- $23^{\circ}27'$ West: March 7 and May 5 (same as earth).
- 25° West: March 18 and April 25.
- $26^{\circ}20'$ West: April 4-5. (extreme)
- 5° East: December 24 and July 17.
- 10° East: December 15 and July 29.
- 15° East: December 5 and August 11.
- 20° East: November 19 and August 27.
- $23^{\circ}27'$ East: Nov. 7 and Sept. 11. (same as earth)
- 25° East: October 29 and September 21.
- $26^{\circ}20'$ East October 10-11. (extreme)

The Sun has therefore a sort of a tilting motion on each side of its North Pole, extending to $26^{\circ}20'$ the extreme possibility East as well as West. (See Illustration No. 13)

When you look over these dates and check tops and bottoms of stocks and commodities, no doubt, you will notice that they all form major as well as minor turning points; in short, days when to expect a change of trend.

Let us go deeper into this subject, by making tables. The first one gives the series of the true Sun motion, the second gives the series of the synodic motion. We merely add up the duration of the rounds.

TABLE NO. 14
SUN CYCLES

Time required for making circuit	Turns which we shall call	Sun turning around its own axis. From hour hand back to the hour hand
TRUE	DAYS	SYNODIC
25,35	1	27,28
50,70	2	54,56
76,05	3	81,84
101,40	4	109,12
126,75	5	136,40
152,60	6	163,68
177,45	7	190,96
202,80	8	218,24
228,15	9	245,52
253,50	10	272,80
278,85	11	300,08
305,10	12	327,36
330,45	13	354,64
	13 1/4	+ 1/4
355,80	14	360

Total 14 units Total 13 1/4 units

The synodic revolution less the true revolution gives the actual rotation differential, or:

27,28 days

— 25,35 days

= 1,93 days

Taking one half of this value to establish a mean between true and synodic motion, we get: $1,93:2=0,96$.

This value we add to the true revolution and obtain:

25,35

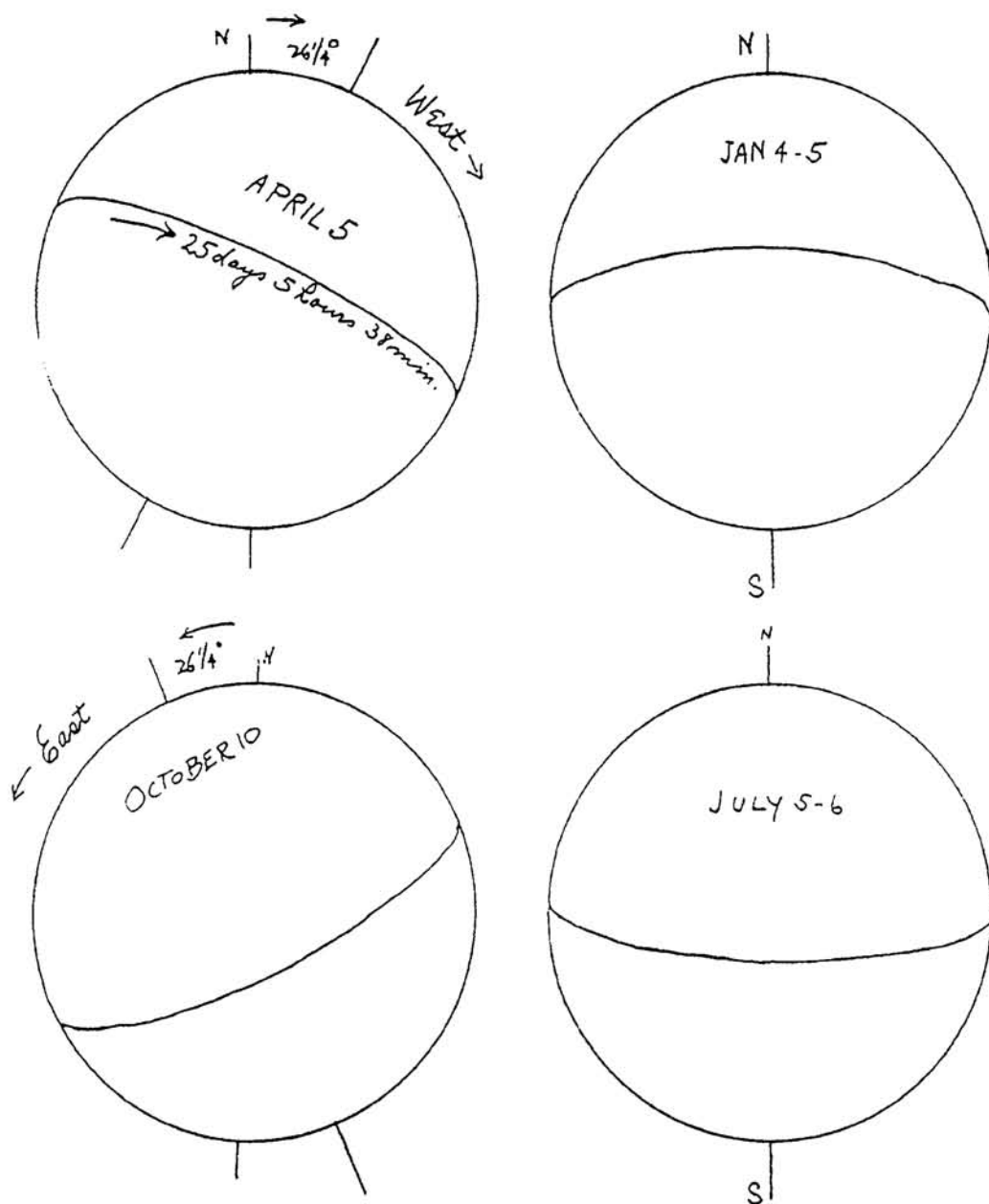
+ 0,96

= 26,21 days, which, without explaining the reason for the adjustment I am going to make: 26,25 days.

The purpose of all this work is to arrive at values that would also define price levels of stocks. After long trials in this direction (made according to my records on January 20th, 1935), I divided this value (26,25) by 24 to establish an "hour" system. The unit obtained was: 1,09375 or, to make it a little more simple, we used: 1,094 as the unit. This unit becomes especially valuable when four (4) of them are used and, we shall soon discover that my $8\frac{3}{4}$ law found many years ago as explained in "Time Factors" has this law as the basis.

TABLE NO. 15
Unit is 1,094 (made from Sun's rotation)

1	1,094	25	27,350	49	53,604	73	79,862	97	106,118
2	2,188	26	28,444	50	54,698	74	80,956	98	107,212
3	3,282	27	29,538	51	55,792	75	82,050	99	108,306
4	4,376	28	30,632	52	56,886	76	83,144	100	109,400
5	5,470	29	31,726	53	57,980	77	84,238	101	110,494
6	6,564	30	32,820	54	59,074	78	85,332	102	111,588
7	7,658	31	33,914	55	60,168	79	86,426	103	112,682
8	8,750	32	35,000	56	61,262	80	87,500	104	113,776
9	9,844	33	36,094	57	62,356	81	88,594	105	114,870
10	10,938	34	37,188	58	63,450	82	89,688	106	115,964
11	12,032	35	38,282	59	64,544	83	90,782	107	117,058
12	13,126	36	39,376	60	65,638	84	91,876	108	118,152
13	14,220	37	40,470	61	66,732	85	92,970	109	119,246
14	15,314	38	41,564	62	67,826	86	94,064	110	120,340
15	16,408	39	42,658	63	68,920	87	95,158	111	121,434
16	17,500	40	43,750	64	70,014	88	96,250	112	122,528
17	18,594	41	44,844	65	71,094	89	97,344	113	123,622
18	19,688	42	45,938	66	72,186	90	98,438	114	124,716
19	20,782	43	47,032	67	73,280	91	99,532	115	125,810
20	21,876	44	48,126	68	74,374	92	100,626	116	126,904
21	23,970	45	49,220	69	75,468	93	101,720	117	127,998
22	24,064	46	50,314	70	76,562	94	102,814	118	129,092
23	25,158	47	51,408	71	77,656	95	103,908	119	130,186
24	26,250	48	52,512	72	78,768	96	105,024	120	131,280



(Illustration No. 13)

This table is large enough to cover most stocks traded. What is now the purpose of such a table and how can it be used? First of all, knowing that it is developed from the Sun's rotation we have to use constantly the Sun in its various motions, especially its angles when it crosses on the dates given above. The degrees being even degrees throughout, except the 23° which is 23°27' and the extreme position angle of 26°20', we find that we have a total motion of 54°40' from the extreme East side to the extreme West side. This

value shows in our Table No. 15, 50 Units or 50 days, (40 minutes=0,698 hours). This again points out that the cross column 2, 26, 50, 74, 98 of Table No. 15 is of utmost importance, although when looking at it haphazardly, we do not recognize this fact. In other words, whether it be in days or in price, these levels are important for a change of trend.

As a practical example about the use of this Table we check on U.S. Steel from June to the end of November 1939. The low was 41½; which corresponds to our 38th day. The high was 82 or our

75th day; the reaction made $65\frac{1}{2}$ or our 60th day. The upmove was 37 days expressed in Table days (38 to 74) (not calendar days), the reaction was 15 days. So that, by using the day column but substituting the column with the decimals, we obtain pretty good results, especially so when we don't forget that it says in Revelation: "in time and time and half a time the woman gets" i. e. in $2\frac{1}{2}$ times.

As a special note I wish to draw your attention to the fact that my Table of Unit contains not only a division and adjustments to suit our own purpose, never mind what the astronomers think about us throwing around with these values, but, what I call in that Table "Days" are actually degrees East and West of the Sun's pole, since the extreme position angle extends to $26^{\circ}15'$, which equals $26\frac{1}{4}^{\circ}$ or 26,250. However, what I have studied from astronomical works such as Madler, Herschel, Newcomb and others, the astronomers are not any too sure of their $26^{\circ}20'$ value. However, we know ours is correct, since we prove such laws via market movements which measuring stick is so much more accurate than their telescope, being the absolute expression of how the traders' mind all over the world is reacting upon angles. Price levels are nothing but momentary planetary angles. We know $26\frac{1}{4}$, $52\frac{1}{2}$, $78\frac{3}{4}$, 105, $131\frac{1}{4}$ are absolute resistance points. A daily chart of "Case Threshing Machine" over the past eight years would prove this statement as true as two and two are four. (Make a "Case" chart from Library records to get the real benefit by actually seeing what I am talking about, else, read back what I explained on "Case Threshing" in my work "Time Factors".

The purpose of this article is solely to give you a clue as to the direction, into which holes we have to dig, so as to

get results and become able to measure extent of movements as well as time changes.

As you will note, we have not used longitude nor declination of the Sun, but only its tilting motion.

I shall give as an additional example Chrysler's action this past summer (1939). Low was around 63; high was around 96 and the reaction brought it back end of November to 83.

Table No. 15: Move of Chrysler began at unit 58, ended at unit 88; advance was 30 units; let us divide 30 by $2\frac{1}{2}$: we get 12 units. Deduct 12 units from the peak of 88 units: 76 Units or $83\frac{1}{8}$. The same we now try with U.S. Steel. Steel started at the 38 unit, rose to 75 unit or 37 units; $37 \div 2\frac{1}{2}$ equals close to 15 units which was the amount of the reaction ($41\frac{1}{4}-82-65\frac{1}{2}$).

I have explained just now the law for strong stocks. With weak stocks we have to proceed by expecting a reaction to $2\frac{1}{2}$ above measured from the low. This is hard to express in a few words, but an illustration will quickly show what I mean. Let us take Goodyear Tire and use approximate prices from recollection since I have no Goodyear chart on hand. Low was around $18\frac{1}{2}$. High was about 31. Therefore, we use units 17 to 29 or 12 units. $2\frac{1}{2}$ of 12 is close to 5. Instead of deducting these 5 units from the high unit (29 which is the same as the \$31 price it reached) we add it to the low unit or to 17 which equals the low price of about $18\frac{1}{2}$. 17 plus 5 gives 22 as the unit. This 22 is in dollars $24\frac{1}{8}$ which it reached. Therefore, when we size up situations of individual stocks the reactions will show the strength or weakness compared to the market as a whole. You now may proceed to work up an idea how to figure the new tops due to be made by using the very same table the other way round!

About Boccaccio's Decamerone

Since taking Boccaccio's Decamerone to pieces, I am living in Italy. My thoughts bring me back to the several months spent in lovely Sicily, Palermo, Segesta, Trapani, on Monte Pelegrini.

It's a long time ago, but somehow the

Italian acquired at that time still clings to my ears and comes in handy right now.

Boccaccio's Decamerone deals with the "Black Plague" which, according to the story had taken place in the year of our Lord 1348. Be it said, before we go any further, that if we can interpret the writings of Boccaccio, we see that there

The 5-4 3-3 Method

DEFINING TOPS AND BOTTOMS WITH A MECHANICAL DEVICE

When we speak of mechanical devices, we must immediately bear in mind that mechanical things are rigid and not flexible unless flexibility is built into it. In markets anything that is mechanical is rather dangerous to apply, unless several other factors are considered with it.

During the many years of research on markets I have struck on the craziest ideas one can imagine, to try and make movements fit something. I am digging a few things out of my files and you can play around with them and see how you fare. This mechanical device explained here may be applied to individual stocks, to individual commodities or options. It requires daily (not once in a while) five minutes work for one stock or one (each) commodity. If kept up for a while, and plotted properly on K&E paper, you will gradually obtain a line formation which does not look at all like a wheat chart or a stock chart. The work should be calculated on a daily basis and—don't forget—also on a weekly basis. There is one thing sure about this mechanical device: It has limits of possibilities; i. e., limits of extremes. When the line hits the ceiling it cannot be a bottom, irrespective of how swell stocks or wheat look just then, or cotton, as far as that goes or another commodity that is plotted. When the line reaches the other extreme on the minus side, we are near a low and we cannot expect another plunge. If the law or rather the mechanical device helps you only insofar as to prevent you from becoming too bullish at a top or too bearish right near a low, I have done some good with it. It is strange how the psychology of man runs when it comes to trading, but, a look at the volume of US Steel in the article discussed in this issue and considering the extreme levels when this happened in 1936, it ought to tell us enough.

RULE: You use a center line which is called the zero line. Make on K&E dated paper a scale by calling each square 2

points. One square on K&E paper is the size as we use to enter a one point fluctuation for a stock or 1c for wheat.

Use about 50 points for the plus side and a little less for the minus side, drawing the zero line through the middle of the sheet across (January 1 to December 31).

Use a separate sheet or a plain copy book with several columns to calculate your values.

In the first column comes the date.

In the second column you enter the amount of the advance of the day (if any) compared to the previous day. Turn the eights into decimals, such as: $2\frac{3}{8}$ which you call 2,62; $1\frac{1}{8}$ you call 1,12 or 1,13.

We can make three different kinds of charts by using the three different advances possible from day to day: a) the advance from the closing price to the next closing price, b) the advance from the high price compared to the high price of the next day, c) the advance from the low price of one day compared to the low price of the next day. I have used and tested all three, the pictures obtained are very similar and you may pick from a, b, c, the one that is easiest to use. I also have used the advance from the high and the advance from the low and later on, after fully calculating the figures put the two results in line form on one chart.

The next columns you can't use until you have enough data piled up to enable you to do some figuring; you need actually 9 days performance in succession to obtain the first final value needed to make an entry on the chart.

The whole idea is based on "weight", meaning the pressure that is exerted upon the stock or wheat price by traders. A straight arithmetical chart does not give results at all, but, when we use several days and weigh them accordingly, we have a good indicator. After I have

demonstrated how to compile it, you will note that the values farthest back are the least weighed, while the greatest weight falls within the last three days of market action. It seems as if I am talking around the bush just now, but somehow, this method has grown in my head and never was put down in writing and here I realize how hard it is to put ideas like that down so that they make sense and can be understood. The whole combination is odd as you will soon see, in that I weighed the upside in a 5-4 way while the downside I only weighed in a 3-3 way. This I did after long tests with all kinds of combinations and this one turned out to give the best results.

You add for 5 consecutive days the daily advances and carry the figure thus obtained over into the adjoining column. This you keep up for a while, omitting on the 6th day the figure used on the first day so that you add but five days each time which sum is to be carried over into the third column. Each day the new figure is carried out into the adjoining column until you have 4 new values in the adjoining third column. Then you begin to carry out in the fourth (next) column the total value of four such figures obtained. The value obtained and entered is the final value OF THE PLUS SIDE, or the side of the advance.

The next, (5th) column you leave open for the time being. It will be used to enter therein the difference of the 4th columns of plus and of the value coming from the minus side in order to get our final value which itself is added or deducted from the current value. For this current value a separate column is provided which is the value to be plotted on the chart.

The remaining half of the columns are used to figure the values of the declines.*

*By decline I mean here the difference of yesterday's high for example as compared to to-day's high if such difference should become minus; this will happen when yesterday's high for wheat was 1.07 $\frac{3}{4}$ while to-day's high is 1.05. This would give a value of $-2\frac{3}{4}$ and this I call here the decline.

You enter in the next column the actual decline, if any, of the day compared to the previous trading day. If no decline, mark the entry as 0 (zero). This also applies to the side of the advance: if no advance, mark 0 and use the zero in the additions.

You need on the decline side three figures of three consecutive days which are carried out into a new column and of these new values you again need three figures to be carried over into the final column.

This minus final is then deducted from the plus final, giving you either a plus or a minus figure, depending upon which side is bigger. This final figure is then entered in the center column and also plotted on the chart. Omit Sundays and holidays; do not enter them as zero on each side.

An example will illustrate this much better: (assumed values):

On page 5 (June issue, 1939) we have the wheat chart for Winnipeg from July 1937 which we can use to make comparisons to see the effect of this method when the line is plotted. (Ill. No. 19) The line illustrated was developed for Chicago Wheat from February 1937 to the November low (7th) 1937.

Off hand, you may say: "I can't see anything out of this chart". Looking at it closer, however, we discover that the line does not bend over unless we are coming to a top or a bottom. Furthermore, we see that we can only reach a certain limit on the down side which is around minus 10. Whenever this level is reached we can buy wheat on weakness or wait for the day when the line actually bends upwards again. The kinks of July 29-31, 1937 and August 27th to August 31st 1937 had to be ignored since they did not occur near the extreme possible

Date	ADVANCES			Difference between the 2 finals (+ or —)	Current Value	DECLINES		
	5 values	4 values	+ Final			3	3	— Final
1	2.50	_____			To be tabulated	0.	_____	
2	1.75	_____				0.	_____	
I 3	.12	_____				0.	0. *	
I 5	0.	_____				2.87	2.87	
6	0.	4.37*				1.25	4.12	7.00*
7	1.00	2.88				0.	4.13	11.12
8	.38	1.50				0.	1.25	9.50
9	.25	1.63	8.38*	+3.00	+3.00	0.	0.	5.38
I 10	0.	1.62	7.63	+1.63	+4.63	4.75	4.75	6.00
I 12	.13	1.75	6.50	—3.00	+1.63	0.	4.75	9.50

I—4th and 11th—Sunday or holiday, no entry made.

*—Totals carried over from previous columns.

levels. It happens once in a while that a double kink is made near a top or near a bottom. If so, they are sure indications of a change of trend in the opposite direction such as is shown: July 17th-21st 1937, August 5th-9th, September 24th-30th 1937.

The beauty about this method is that you can establish already during the day the value which has to be plotted approximately, especially, if you get quotations during trading hours or if you watch the market. It needs some practice. The values to be omitted are known and we can estimate those that have to be substituted for the next serial so as to obtain the new values for the end of the day. Many times the latter can be judged from the action of the market.

The major trend cannot be discovered with this method. Of course, making a weekly index along the same way—using one Saturday and comparing it with the next one as explained for days—will be an additional help towards recognizing trend.

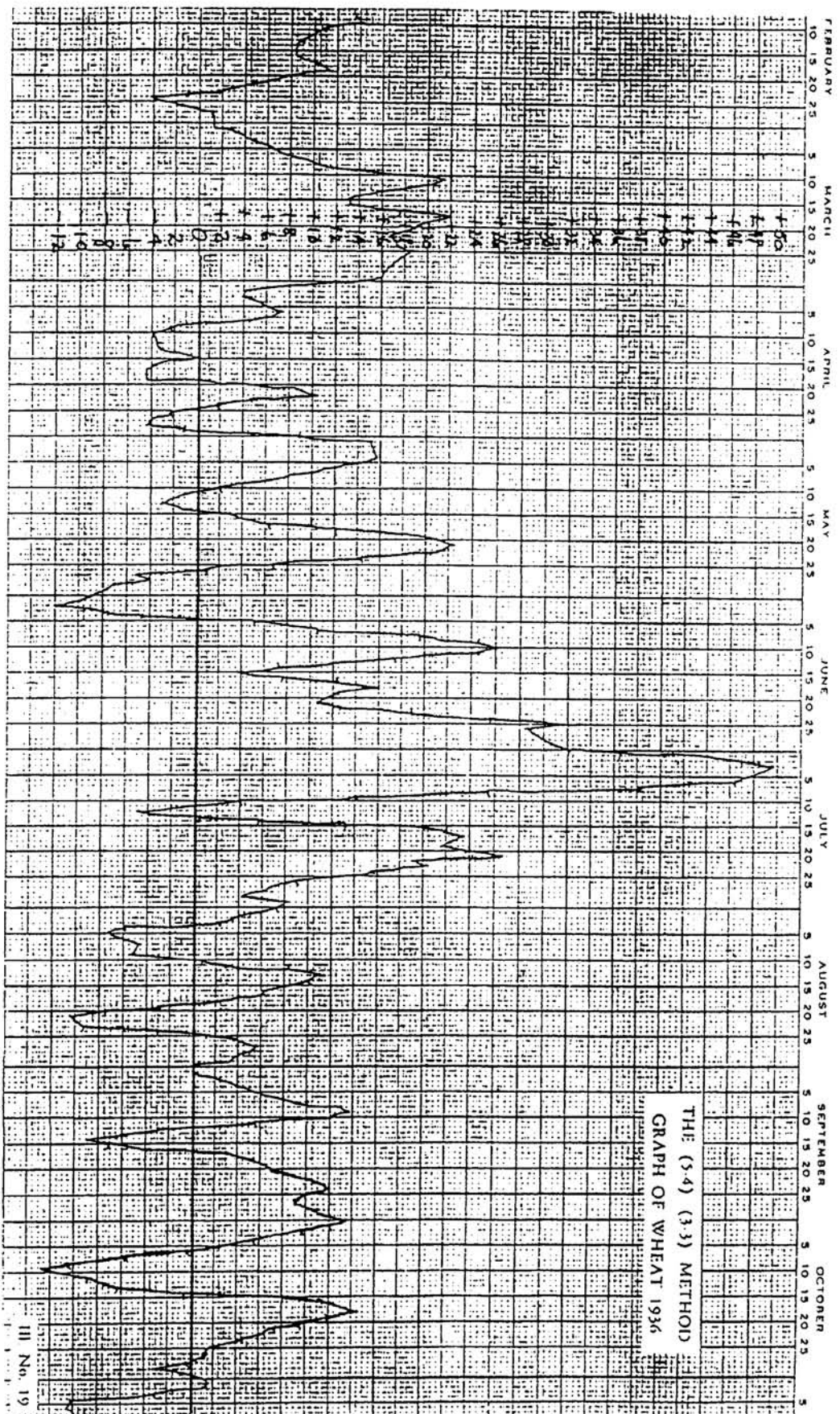
Mistakes in doing the figuring may

prove very expensive and great care must be used in compiling.

For commodities, such as rubber, hides, cocoa, etc., we have to adjust the scale somewhat so that the line does not run off the page, but figuring out a series during a medium sized movement will quickly show the scale required. With stocks it is the same. Anyone who wants to plot the action of a low priced stock may have to double the fluctuations in order to get some sort of a movement into the line. The rules of interpretation and plotting remain the same.

The difference between the two final values of plus and minus must be "attached" to the line to get a continuance. They are not plotted or measured from the zero line each day, so that we need a column which we shall call "running value", to which we add or from which we deduct from day to day the differential of the 5-4 column and the 3-3 column.

In our example which starts on the first of some month we can only begin plotting the 9th of the month. The previous compilation of figures is the "work-up" towards obtaining a final value by weighing the 5-4 3-3 combination.



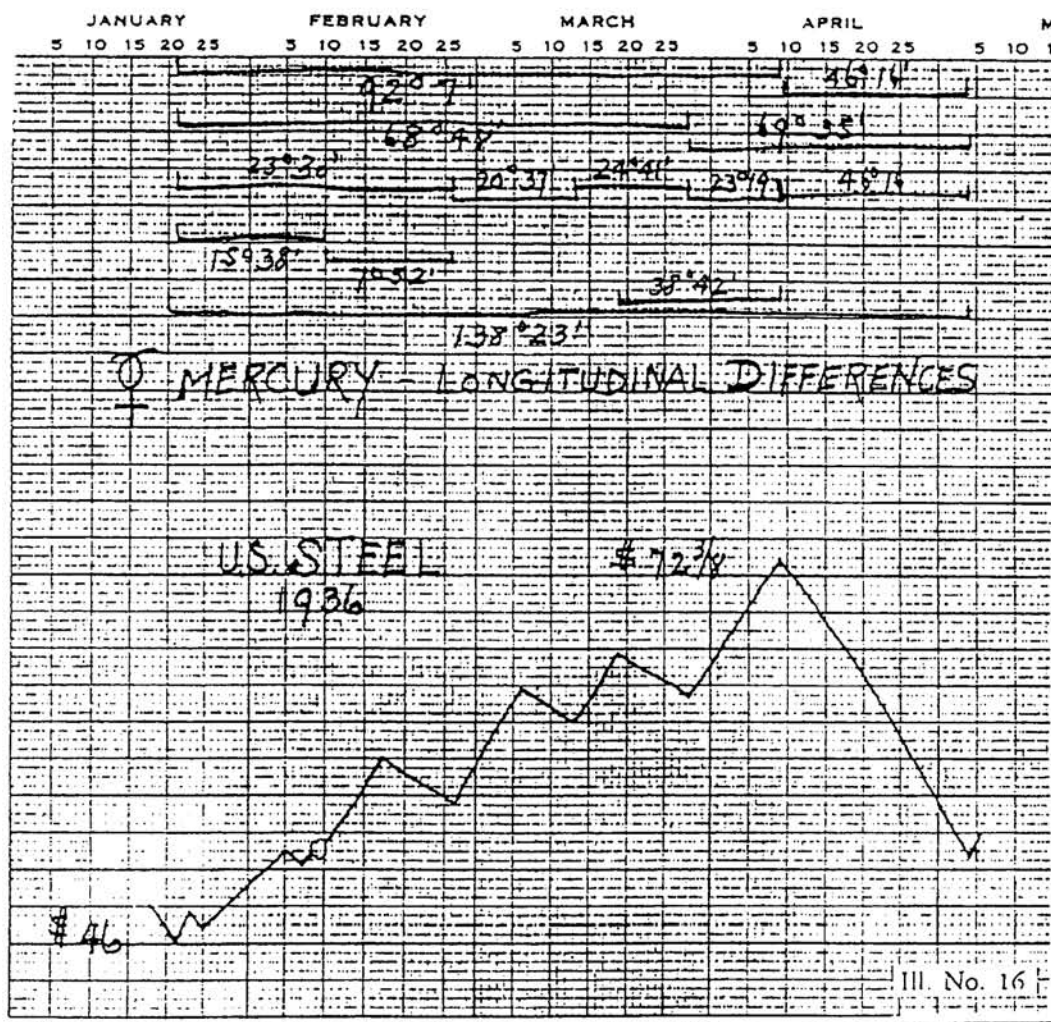
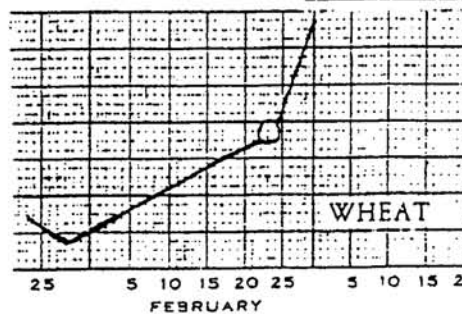
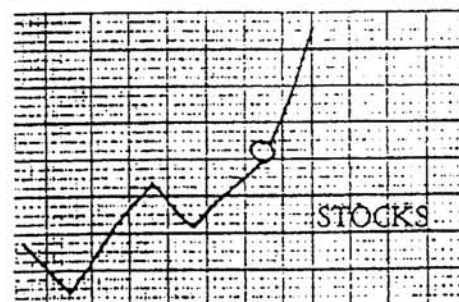
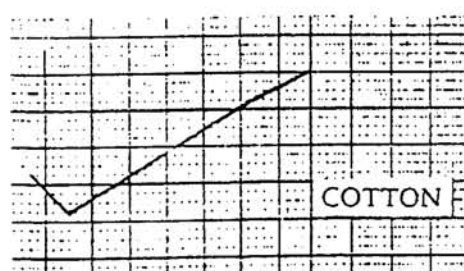


CHART FORECAST FOR FEBRUARY, 1940.



the explanation given above, that we, as inhabitants of this earth, have nothing to do with planets as they can be seen from the Sun. And it was these "devilish" ideas that kept me on earth for many years, until, like Enoch, I moved one day up to heaven to stay there. Only once a month I had to come down, writing articles for "Preview," thinking in geocentric terms that all of you as geocentric students would understand. But, as it is, patience has an end. I am fed up to think geocentrically, when I know and practice for many years solely the study of heliocentric astrology.

You now may say: where can I get a book teaching me heliocentric astrology. There are no new books on this subject and, if there are any, anywhere, I would not suggest them for study. The only books that teach helio astrology are the Scriptures and allied works, of which we talk right along in "Preview." So, the best heliocentric astrology book you can get at Woolworth's for a quarter, plus tax.

When we look over old books of the 15th and 16th century, we often find pictures of alchemists. Old bewhiskered

men are seen in laboratories among vials and retorts; fat pig-skin bound books are seen lying next to them; as "they" tell us, these fellows were trying to make gold out of other chemicals.

However, gold in the astrological sense is not the gold which is used for ornaments or for minting coins. Gold means that "special line" that throws all ordinary astrological methods at any unexpected time into confusion. These old fellows have been trying to find this "special line". They did not want others to get wise to what they were looking for (unfortunately, they could not find it either), so they filled up their workshops with vials and chemicals in case anybody would drop in to snoop around. If so, the snoopers could suspect nothing and would not be wiser than before. In fact, it would give them ideas which the researchers wanted them to have. So the alchemists stories and pictures present another farce and a cover of the real doings of these people.

They knew that, if they could find this "special line," it would be the real "gold line."

THE CATERPILLARS

When a trend in the market or in a particular commodity has been started, it lasts for quite some time. By "time" I mean eight months to a year, once in a while even longer. Let us begin to follow one of these movements upwards (the very same rule applies downwards, only remember, declines are of shorter duration in "time" and therefore much steeper, since it takes less time to tear down a house than it takes to build one).

Speed around a low is very slow; price changes are very small. At fairly regular intervals a reaction sets in and those who still are used to play the bear side having gotten used to it from the previous major decline, will sell short at all opportunities but cover these shorts higher up. The general formation shows "hooks," a sort of fish hooks, of which the longer part forms the upswing and the shorter part, on which the tiny "hook"

is attached, forms the downswing. As the rise keeps up for a while, consisting of several such hooks regularly attached to one another, we can define a picture which looks like a caterpillar winding its way upward. As we go higher, there appear larger hooks. The proportion of the one side of the hook compared to the other side of the hook is nearly always the same from one hook to the other. The higher we go, the bigger the fluctuations. There will be a time coming when we feel as if the "real upmove" is now beginning. When this feeling overcomes a regular trader I say: instead of getting more bullish and instead of using all profits that have accrued to buy more and more, it is time to get out of the long side.

Yesterday, January 29th, I had lunch over at Watsonville, in the Pajaro Valley. The soup tasted fine, because I was

hungry (the upmove started for my intestinal system); the salad was enjoyed too, which we shall call a "gap upwards"; the meat was swell, chicken giblets, rice, mashed potatoes, string beans and plenty of curried gravy. Half-way finished with this dish I began to breathe deeply and said to my boss: "I just feel like wheat when it is at the top." I kept on eating at a slower speed, but the feeling of hunger (of the upmove) was gone and I "should" have stopped. "I should have," but I didn't; I did what all traders do when a top is reached. They keep on buying and I kept on eating. The caterpillar, the "tube" which leads to the stomach, was filled, so that it just simply could not stand any more food. (Please imagine for our illustration of a bull movement that the stomach is above or caterpillar runs up to it). I could not resist the sweetest thing of all, the huckleberry pie. Stocks and commodities look the sweetest right on the top, so good that even the public has to buy them. Now, since I told you all about that meal, I also will tell you that shortly thereafter I felt really miserable. I should not have eaten that pie. It was simply the reaction that comes after the top is made. That extra piece caused the trouble. In the market, it defines that period when stocks have made a top (had enough) when they jiggle around so beautifully at the top, while they are just waiting for the moment that planets say: "down with you". This period does not have the form and shape of a caterpillar or of fish hooks joined together. It pictures on the chart like something all "blown-up," a half-moon, in some cases it forms a side-wise movement in narrow range with big volume. To point out exact cases for comparison, look at the wool-tops chart from end December to mid-January 1940. It illustrates the "half-moon" which afterward sinks down to produce a sharp drop. For the second case explained, look at cotton in the same period end of December to mid-January 1940.

The first sharp break always has a comeback, the same way as when we drop a ball to the ground it bounces up

again. This bounce-back "they" call: "over-sold" condition. Prices rise very sharply, but miss the old highs. At that time begins also the caterpillar formation downwards, first fast, then gradually slower; each successive top is lower compared to the previous top until finally, after many months, we reach a bottom. There we stay for quite a while.

How do we recognize bottoms? They are easy to recognize because at that time you begin to worry about eighths. When you buy wheat at 61 1/8 and try to sell it at 61 7/8 and the blame thing only goes to 61 3/4, turns down and breaks 61 1/8 and when you then reverse and double up for the down side at 60 7/8, but as soon as you are short it is up at 61 7/8, you worry terribly at that time. You are at a loss what will happen. The world seems to have an end because . . . wheat is at a low and you don't feel it. On the other side, when wheat sells at 1.10, drops in a few days to 98, runs up to 1.07 again, your feeling is: what the . . . just a little reaction, nothing to it; you begin to put out a small short after it hit 1.10, say at 1.05; you ride it down, but before you know it, the price is back to 1.07. If you then get into a state where you send to me a wire as follows: "Shall I cover shorts and reverse to long side, quick answer appreciated," then you are in the same state as you were at the bottom. You don't see the top. The first case happened in Buffalo, N. Y., August 1939; the second case occurred at Laramie, Wyo., early in January 1940.

When you begin to worry about eighth after a long decline, when you don't care about any limits, after long advance, then the stocks or commodities which you trade have reached their outside limits. Then it's time to reverse positions.

Be sure to keep daily high and low charts; they are very important, else you can't see the caterpillars, nor understand my lunch example. Pictures or formations develop very fast as soon as you have plotted a chart for a month or so.